

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

### **1 Nephi**

#### **1 Nephi Chapter 1**

1. An account of Lehi and his wife Sariah, along with their four sons, starting from the oldest: Laman, Lemuel, Sam, and Nephi. The Lord warns Lehi to leave Jerusalem because he is prophesying about the people's wickedness, and they want to kill him. He travels into the wilderness with his family for three days. Nephi takes his brothers back to Jerusalem to get the record of the Jews. Their experiences and hardships are detailed. They marry the daughters of Ishmael. They take their families and go into the wilderness. They face suffering and challenges during their travels. They reach the ocean. Nephi's brothers turn against him. He confronts them, and builds a ship. They name the place Bountiful. They cross the ocean to the promised land, and so on. This record is from Nephi; in other words, I, Nephi, wrote this.

2. Nephi starts the story of his peopleLehi sees a vision of a pillar of fire and reads from a book of prophecyHe praises God, predicts the coming of the Messiah, and foresees Jerusalem's destructionHe faces persecution from the Jews. Around 600 B.C.

3. I, Nephi, was born to good parents, so I learned a lot from my father, and even though I faced many troubles in my life, I was still greatly blessed by the Lord; I have a deep understanding of Gods goodness and mysteries, and thats why I am keeping a record of my experiences.

4. Yes, I am writing in my fathers language, which includes Jewish learning and Egyptian language.

5. I know my record is true; I am writing it by my own hand and based on what I know.

6. In the first year of King Zedekiah's reign in Judah (my father, Lehi, had lived in Jerusalem all his life), many prophets came that year, warning the people to repent or Jerusalem would be destroyed.

7. So, my father, Lehi, went out and prayed earnestly for his people.

8. As he prayed, a pillar of fire appeared on a rock before him, and he saw and heard many things that made him tremble with fear.

9. He returned home to Jerusalem and fell onto his bed, overwhelmed by the Spirit and the things he had

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

witnessed.

10. Overcome by the Spirit, he was shown a vision where he saw the heavens opened and thought he saw God on His throne, surrounded by countless angels singing and praising Him.

11. Then he saw One coming down from heaven whose brightness was greater than the midday sun.

12. He also saw twelve others following Him, and they were brighter than the stars in the sky.

13. They came down to earth, and the first one approached my father and gave him a book, instructing him to read it.

14. As he read, he was filled with the Spirit of the Lord.

15. He read: "Woe to Jerusalem, for I have witnessed your abominations! Indeed, my father read many things about Jerusalem how it would be destroyed and many people would die by the sword or be taken captive to Babylon.

16. After reading these extraordinary things, my father cried out to the Lord, saying: "Great and marvelous are your works, O Lord God Almighty! Your throne is lofty in the heavens, and your power, goodness, and mercy extend to all people on earth; because you are merciful, you will not let those who come to you perish!"

17. This was how my father expressed his praise to God, for he was filled with joy and his heart was full because of what the Lord had shown him.

18. Now, I, Nephi, will cover everything my father wrote, as he recorded many visions and dreams, as well as prophecies and messages to his children, which I won't go into in detail.

19. But I will focus on my own experiences. I am summarizing my father's record on plates I made with my own hands; after summarizing his record, I will write about my own life.

20. Therefore, I want you to know that after the Lord revealed many wonderful things to my father, Lehi, about the destruction of Jerusalem, he began to go among the people, prophesying and declaring what he had seen and heard.

21. The Jews mocked him for his testimonies; he truly spoke about their evil and wickedness; he testified that what he saw and read in the book clearly pointed to the coming of the Messiah and the redemption of the

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

world.

22. When the Jews heard these things, they became angry with him, just as they had been with the prophets of the past, whom they had rejected, stoned, and killed; they sought to take his life. But I, Nephi, will show you that the Lord's tender mercies are upon all whom He has chosen, due to their faith, giving them the strength for deliverance.

### **1 Nephi Chapter 2**

1. The Lord spoke to my father in a dream, saying: "Lehi, you are blessed for what you've done, for being faithful and declaring my words; your life is in danger because these people want to kill you."
2. Then the Lord commanded my father in a dream to take his family and leave into the wilderness.
3. He obeyed the Lord's command and did as He instructed.
4. So he left for the wilderness, taking only his family, food, and tents, leaving behind his house, land, gold, silver, and other valuables.
5. He journeyed near the Red Sea and traveled through the wilderness with his family, which included my mother, Sariah, and my older brothers, Laman, Lemuel, and Sam.
6. After three days in the wilderness, he set up his tent in a valley next to a river.
7. He built an altar using stones, made an offering to the Lord, and thanked God.
8. He named the river Laman, and it flowed into the Red Sea; the valley was located near its mouth.
9. When my father saw that the river connected to the Red Sea, he spoke to Laman, saying: "I hope you become like this river, always flowing into the source of true righteousness!"
10. He also spoke to Lemuel: "I hope you become like this valley, strong, steady, and unwavering in following the Lord's commandments!"
11. He said this because Laman and Lemuel were stubborn; they complained about many things regarding their father. They claimed he was a visionary man who had taken them away from Jerusalem, causing them to abandon their inheritance, gold, silver, and precious possessions to perish in the wilderness. They thought he did this because of foolish ideas he had.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

12. Thus, Laman and Lemuel, being the oldest, complained against their father. They didnt understand the ways of the God who created them.

13. They also didnt believe that the great city of Jerusalem could be destroyed, as the prophets said. They were similar to the Jews in Jerusalem who wanted to kill my father.

14. Then my father spoke to them in the valley of Lemuel with great power, filled with the Spirit, making them tremble before him. He confounded them, so they didnt dare speak against him, and they obeyed his commands.

15. My father lived in a tent.

16. I, Nephi, though still young, was tall and had a strong desire to understand Gods mysteries. I cried out to the Lord, and He visited me, softening my heart so that I believed all the words my father spoke; thus, I did not rebel against him like my brothers did.

17. I spoke to Sam, telling him what the Lord revealed to me through His Holy Spirit. Sam believed my words.

18. However, Laman and Lemuel refused to listen to me. Because I was saddened by their hard hearts, I prayed to the Lord for them.

19. The Lord spoke to me, saying: "You are blessed, Nephi, because of your faith; you have sought me earnestly and humbly."

20. If you keep my commandments, you will prosper and be led to a promised land I have prepared for you, a choice land above all others.

21. If your brothers rebel against you, they will be cut off from my presence.

22. If you keep my commandments, you will become a ruler and a teacher over your brothers.

23. For when they rebel against me, I will curse them severely, and they will have no power over your descendants unless they also rebel against me.

24. If they rebel against me, they will become a scourge to your descendants, to remind them of their wrongdoing.

## **1 Nephi Chapter 3**

1. Nephi returned to his father's tent after talking with the Lord.
2. His father spoke to him, saying: I had a dream in which the Lord commanded that you and your brothers return to Jerusalem.
3. Laban has the records of our people, as well as our family history, which are written on brass plates.
4. So, the Lord has instructed me that you and your brothers should go to Laban's house to seek the records and bring them back to the wilderness.
5. Now, your brothers are complaining, saying that what I've asked of them is too difficult; but actually, I haven't made this request a command from the Lord.
6. Therefore, go, my son; you will be blessed by the Lord, because you have not complained.
7. Nephi replied to his father: I will go and do what the Lord has commanded, for I know that the Lord doesn't give commandments without preparing a way for us to fulfill them.
8. When his father heard these words, he was very happy, for he knew that Nephi had received a blessing from the Lord.
9. Nephi and his brothers set out into the wilderness, taking their tents, to head towards Jerusalem.
10. Once we reached Jerusalem, my brothers and I talked it over with each other.
11. We drew lots to see who would go into Laban's house, and the lot fell to Laman. Laman went into Laban's house and spoke with him while he was sitting there.
12. Laman asked Laban for the records engraved on the brass plates, which included our family history.
13. But Laban became angry and kicked him out, refusing to give him the records. He accused Laman of being a thief and threatened to kill him.
14. Laman hurried out and told us what had happened. We became very sad, and my brothers were ready to return to our father in the wilderness.
15. But I told them: As the Lord lives, and as we live, we will not return to our father until we have accomplished what the Lord commanded us to do.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

16. So, let's stay faithful to God's commandments; let's go back to our fathers' land, for he left behind gold, silver, and many riches because of the Lord's commandments.

17. He knew that Jerusalem would be destroyed due to the people's wickedness.

18. They have rejected the words of the prophets. If my father stayed in the land after being warned to flee, he would also be destroyed, so he must leave.

19. And it is wise in God's eyes that we obtain these records, so we can keep our ancestors' language alive for our children.

20. Additionally, we need to preserve the words spoken by all the holy prophets since the beginning of the world up to this time.

21. I used this kind of reasoning to persuade my brothers to remain faithful in keeping the Lord's commandments.

22. Then we went back to our land of inheritance and gathered our gold, silver, and valuable items.

23. After gathering these things, we went back to Laban's house.

24. We entered Laban's house and asked him to give us the brass plates in exchange for our gold, silver, and valuable items.

25. When Laban saw how much property we had, he wanted it so badly that he drove us out and sent his servants to kill us to take our possessions.

26. We ran away from Laban's servants and had to leave our property behind, which Laban seized.

27. We fled into the wilderness, and Laban's servants did not catch us, so we hid in a rocky cave.

28. Laman and Lemuel were upset with me and my father; they followed Laman's words and spoke harshly to us, their younger brothers, even hitting us with a rod.

29. As they were hitting us, an angel of the Lord appeared before them and asked: Why are you hitting your younger brother? Don't you realize that the Lord chose him to lead you because of your wrongdoings? You will go back to Jerusalem, and the Lord will hand Laban over to you.

30. After the angel spoke, he left.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

31. Once the angel was gone, Laman and Lemuel began to complain again, saying: How can the Lord give Laban into our hands? He is a powerful man who can command fifty men, and he could kill us; so why wouldn't he?

### **1 Nephi Chapter 4**

1. I spoke to my brothers, saying: Lets go back to Jerusalem and be faithful in following the Lords commandments; after all, He is stronger than anyone on earth, so He is certainly stronger than Laban and his fifty men, or even his tens of thousands.

2. So lets go; lets be strong like Moses, who spoke to the waters of the Red Sea and they parted, allowing our ancestors to escape captivity on dry land while Pharaohs armies drowned.

3. You know this is true; youve even heard from an angel, so why doubt? Lets go; the Lord can rescue us just as He did our ancestors, and He can destroy Laban like He did the Egyptians.

4. After I said this, my brothers were still angry and continued to complain; still, they followed me until we reached the outer walls of Jerusalem.

5. It was nighttime, and I had them hide outside the walls. After they concealed themselves, I, Nephi, quietly entered the city and made my way to Labans house.

6. I was guided by the Spirit, not knowing in advance what I was meant to do.

7. As I approached Laban's house, I saw a man who had fallen to the ground because he was drunk.

8. When I got closer, I realized it was Laban.

9. I saw his sword and took it out of its sheath; the hilt was pure gold, and it was beautifully made. The blade was of very high-quality steel.

10. The Spirit urged me to kill Laban, but I thought to myself: I have never killed anyone. I hesitated, wishing I wouldnt have to do it.

11. The Spirit spoke to me again, saying: Look, the Lord has placed him in your hands. I remembered that he had sought to kill me, refused to follow Gods commandments, and had taken our belongings.

12. Then the Spirit told me again: Kill him, for the Lord has given him into your hands.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

13. The Lord removes the wicked to fulfill His righteous purposes. It is better for one person to die than for a whole nation to lose faith and perish.

14. When I, Nephi, heard these words, I remembered what the Lord had said to me in the wilderness: As long as your descendants keep my commandments, they will prosper in the promised land.

15. I thought that they wouldnt be able to follow the commandments of the Lord according to the law of Moses unless they had the law.

16. And I knew that the law was written on the plates of brass.

17. Again, I realized that the Lord had delivered Laban into my hands so that I could obtain the records as He commanded.

18. So I obeyed the Spirit's voice, grabbed Laban by the hair, and killed him with his own sword.

19. After I killed him with his sword, I took Labans clothes and wore them completely; I even put on his armor.

20. Once I had done this, I went to Labans treasury. As I approached, I saw Labans servant who had the keys to the treasury. I commanded him, using Labans voice, to come with me into the treasury.

21. He thought I was Laban because of my clothes and the sword I wore.

22. He spoke to me about the elders of the Jews, knowing that Laban had been out at night among them.

23. I answered him as if I were Laban.

24. I also told him I was carrying the engravings on the plates of brass to my older brothers who were outside the walls.

25. I instructed him to follow me.

26. He believed I was talking about the leaders of the church, and since he thought I was really Laban, he followed me.

27. He asked me many times about the Jewish elders as I went to my brothers waiting outside the walls.

28. When Laman saw me, he was very scared, as were Lemuel and Sam. They ran away, thinking it was Laban who had killed me and was now trying to take their lives too.



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

29. I called after them, and they heard me; so they stopped fleeing from me.

30. Then Labans servant saw my brothers and began to tremble, ready to run back to Jerusalem.

31. I, Nephi, being tall and strengthened by the Lord, grabbed Labans servant to stop him from fleeing.

32. I spoke to him, saying if he would listen to me, as the Lord lives and I live, if he obeyed our words, we would spare his life.

33. I assured him with an oath that he didnt need to fear; he would be free like us if he came with us into the wilderness.

34. I also told him: Surely the Lord has commanded us to do this; shouldnt we diligently follow His commandments? Therefore, if you will come with us to my father in the wilderness, we will make a place for you.

35. Zoram found courage in the words I spoke. Zoram was the servants name, and he promised to follow us into the wilderness. He also made an oath that he would stay with us from then on.

36. We wanted him to stay with us so that the Jews wouldnt discover our escape into the wilderness and pursue us to destroy us.

37. When Zoram made his promise to us, our fears about him subsided.

38. We took the plates of brass and Labans servant and went into the wilderness, journeying to our fathers tent.

### **1 Nephi Chapter 5**

1. After we had come down into the wilderness to see our father, he was very happy, and my mother, Sariah, was extremely glad because she had truly been worrying about us.

2. She thought we had died in the wilderness; she also complained to my father, saying that he was a dreamer. She said: Look, you have taken us away from our home, and now my sons are gone and we are dying out here.

3. This is how my mother complained to my father.

4. Then my father spoke to her, saying: I understand I am a dreamer; if I hadnt seen Gods things in a vision, I wouldnt have known how good He is, and would have stayed in Jerusalem, where I would have died with my

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

people.

5. But look, I have been given a promised land, and I am happy about it; indeed, I know that the Lord will save my sons from Laban and bring them back to us in the wilderness.

6. This was how my father, Lehi, comforted my mother, Sariah, while we traveled in the wilderness toward the land of Jerusalem to get the record of the Jews.

7. When we got back to our fathers tent, their happiness was complete, and my mother felt much better.

8. She said: Now I am certain that the Lord told my husband to escape into the wilderness; yes, I am sure that the Lord protected my sons and saved them from Laban, and gave them strength to do what He commanded them. Thats how she spoke.

9. And then they rejoiced greatly, offering sacrifices and burnt offerings to the Lord, and they thanked the God of Israel.

10. After they had thanked the God of Israel, my father, Lehi, took the records engraved on the brass plates and began to read them from the start.

11. He saw that they contained the five books of Moses, which tell the story of the creation of the world, as well as the story of Adam and Eve, our first parents.

12. They also included a record of the Jews from the beginning all the way to the start of Zedekiahs reign, king of Judah.

13. They also had the prophecies of the holy prophets from the beginning down to Zedekiahs reign; many of those prophecies were spoken by Jeremiah.

14. Then my father, Lehi, also found a family tree of his ancestors on the brass plates; thus, he knew he was a descendant of Joseph, the son of Jacob, who was sold into Egypt and preserved by Gods hand so he could save his father, Jacob, and all his family from starving.

15. And they were also led out of slavery and out of Egypt by that same God who had kept them safe.

16. Thus, my father, Lehi, discovered his family lineage. Laban was also a descendant of Joseph, so he and his ancestors kept the records.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

17. Now, when my father saw all these things, he was filled with the Spirit and began to prophesy about his descendants

18. That these brass plates would be shared with all nations, kindreds, languages, and peoples of his descendants.

19. He said that these brass plates would never be destroyed nor faded by time. He prophesied many things concerning his descendants.

20. So far, my father and I have followed the commandments the Lord gave us.

21. We have obtained the records that the Lord commanded us to get, examined them, and found them valuable; truly, they are of great worth to us because we could pass down Gods commandments to our children.

22. Therefore, it was wise of the Lord for us to take them with us as we traveled in the wilderness toward the promised land.

### **1 Nephi Chapter 6**

1. Nephi writes about the matters concerning Godhis goal is to encourage people to turn to the God of Abraham and find salvation. Around 600592 B.C.

2. Now, I, Nephi, will not provide the family history of my ancestors in this part of my record; nor will I include it later on these plates I am writing; because it's already recorded by my father; so, I wont repeat it here.

3. Its enough for me to say that we are descendants of Joseph.

4. I dont feel the need to give a detailed account of everything my father did, as those things cannot fit on these plates, since I want to make space to write about God's matters.

5. My main goal is to persuade people to turn to the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, and to find salvation.

6. Therefore, I wont write about things that are appealing to the world, but instead about things that please God and those who are not focused on worldly matters.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

7. Thus, I will instruct my descendants not to fill these plates with things of little value for humanity.

### **1 Nephi Chapter 7**

1. After my father, Lehi, finished prophesying to his descendants, the Lord spoke to him again, telling him it was not good for Lehi to journey into the wilderness with his family alone. Instead, his sons were to marry so they could have children in the promised land.

2. The Lord instructed him that I, Nephi, and my brothers needed to return to Jerusalem to bring Ishmael and his family with us into the wilderness.

3. So I, Nephi, along with my brothers, went back into the wilderness to head to Jerusalem once more.

4. When we arrived at Ishmael's house, we found favor in his eyes and spoke to him about the Lords message.

5. The Lord changed Ishmaels heart, as well as the hearts of his family, so they agreed to travel with us into the wilderness to meet our father.

6. As we traveled, Laman and Lemuel, along with two of Ishmael's daughters, two of Ishmael's sons, and their families, rebelled against us against me, Nephi, Sam, our father Ishmael, and his wife, along with his three other daughters.

7. During this rebellion, they wanted to go back to Jerusalem.

8. Seeing their hard hearts saddened me, so I spoke to Laman and Lemuel: You are my older brothers, yet why are your hearts so hard and your minds so blind that I, your younger brother, need to lead by example?

9. Why have you not listened to the Lord's words?

10. Why have you forgotten that you saw an angel of the Lord?

11. And why have you forgotten the great miracles the Lord has performed for us, saving us from Laban and helping us obtain the record?

12. Why do you not remember that the Lord can do all things if we have faith in Him? So lets be faithful.

13. If we are faithful, we will gain the promised land, and someday you will realize that what the Lord said about Jerusalem's destruction will happen; everything the Lord has spoken about this destruction will surely take place.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

14. The Lord's Spirit will soon stop trying to reach them because they have ignored the prophets, even imprisoning Jeremiah. They have also tried to harm my father, driving him out of the land.

15. I tell you, if you go back to Jerusalem, you will also die with them. If you have the choice, go forward instead, and remember my words: if you go back, you will perish, for the Spirit of the Lord urges me to speak this.

16. After I, Nephi, said these words, my brothers became angry with me, laying hands on me. They were furious and bound me with cords, intending to kill me and leave me in the wilderness for wild animals to devour.

17. But I prayed to the Lord, saying: O Lord, please deliver me from my brothers because of my faith in you and give me the strength to break these ropes.

18. After I prayed, the cords on my hands and feet fell off, and I stood before my brothers and spoke to them again.

19. Once again, they were angry and tried to seize me, but one of Ishmael's daughters, her mother, and one of Ishmael's sons pleaded with my brothers, softening their hearts so they stopped trying to kill me.

20. They felt remorse for their wickedness and begged me for forgiveness.

21. I forgave them completely and encouraged them to pray to the Lord for forgiveness, and they did just that. After they prayed, we continued our journey to our father's tent.

22. We arrived at our father's tent, and after I, my brothers, and all of Ishmael's household got there, they thanked the Lord their God and offered sacrifices and burnt offerings to Him.

### **1 Nephi Chapter 8**

1. We collected all kinds of seeds, including various grains and fruits.

2. While my father stayed in the wilderness, he talked to us, saying: I had a dream, or in other words, I saw a vision.

3. I have reason to be joyful in the Lord because of Nephi and Sam; I believe that they and many of their descendants will be saved.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

4. But I am very worried about Laman and Lemuel; I think I saw a dark and gloomy wilderness in my dream.
5. Then I saw a man dressed in a white robe, who came and stood before me.
6. He spoke to me and told me to follow him.
7. As I followed him, I realized I was in a dark and desolate place.
8. After traveling for many hours in darkness, I began to pray to the Lord for mercy because of his great kindness.
9. Once I prayed to the Lord, I saw a large, open field.
10. In that field, I saw a tree with fruit that looked very appealing and made one feel happy.
11. I approached the tree and ate the fruit, which I found to be incredibly sweet, better than anything I had ever tasted. Its fruit was so white, it surpassed any whiteness I'd ever seen.
12. As I ate the fruit, it filled me with immense joy; I wanted my family to try it too since I knew it was the best fruit.
13. Looking around to find my family, I saw a river that ran alongside the tree where I was eating.
14. I looked upstream and noticed your mother Sariah, Sam, and Nephi standing there, seemingly unsure of where to go.
15. I called to them loudly, inviting them to come and eat the fruit, which was more desirable than any other.
16. They came to me and also ate the fruit.
17. I wished for Laman and Lemuel to come and eat the fruit too, so I looked up the river again to see if I could find them.
18. I saw them, but they refused to come and partake of the fruit.
19. I also noticed a rod of iron, which stretched along the riverbank and led to the tree where I stood.
20. There was also a narrow and straight path next to the rod of iron, leading to the tree, as well as towards the head of the fountain, which opened into a large and spacious field, almost like a world.
21. I saw countless crowds of people trying to move forward to reach the path that led to the tree where I was standing.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

22. They began to walk along the path towards the tree.

23. Then a thick mist of darkness arose, causing those who started on the path to lose their way and wander off, getting lost.

24. I noticed others who were pushing forward; they reached for the end of the rod of iron and moved through the mist, holding on tightly until they reached the tree and ate the fruit.

25. After eating the fruit, they looked around, appearing ashamed.

26. I also looked around and saw a large, impressive building on the other side of the river, standing high above the ground.

27. It was filled with people of all ages and genders, dressed very finely, mocking and pointing at those who were eating the fruit.

28. After tasting the fruit, some felt ashamed because of the mockery, and they strayed into forbidden paths and got lost.

29. Now, I, Nephi, won't tell all my father's words.

30. To be brief, he saw other crowds coming forward, holding on to the end of the rod of iron and making their way to the tree, where they fell down and ate the fruit.

31. He also saw other groups trying to find their way to that grand building.

32. Many ended up drowning in the depths of the fountain, and others got lost wandering on strange roads.

33. A large number entered that strange building. After they went inside, they pointed fingers of scorn at me and those who were eating the fruit, but we didn't pay attention to them.

34. My father's words are: As many people listened to them, they fell away.

35. Laman and Lemuel didn't partake of the fruit, my father said.

36. After sharing all the details of his dream or vision, which were many, he expressed deep concern for Laman and Lemuel; he worried they might be cast off from the Lord's presence.

37. With great tenderness, he urged them to listen to his words, hoping the Lord would show them mercy and not abandon them; yes, my father preached to them.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

38. After preaching and prophesying many things, he urged them to keep the Lord's commandments and then stopped speaking to them.

### **1 Nephi Chapter 9**

1. Nephi creates two sets of records Each is called the plates of Nephi The larger plates contain regular history, while the smaller ones focus mainly on spiritual matters. About 600 B.C.
2. My father experienced, heard, and talked about all these things while living in a tent in the valley of Lemuel, as well as many other things that cannot be recorded on these plates.
3. Now, as I mention these plates, understand that they are not the ones where I write a complete history of my people. The plates where I keep a full account of my people are named after me, Nephi; therefore, they are referred to as the plates of Nephi, and this set is also called the plates of Nephi.
4. However, I have been instructed by the Lord to create these plates with the specific goal of recording the ministry of my people.
5. The other plates should contain a record of the kings' reigns, and the conflicts and struggles of my people; thus, these plates mainly focus on the ministry, while the other plates primarily document the reigns of kings and the wars and disputes of my people.
6. Therefore, the Lord has commanded me to make these plates for a meaningful reason that I do not fully understand.
7. But the Lord knows everything from the beginning; thus, He prepares a way to fulfill all His plans among humanity; for He has the power to bring all His words to pass. And so it is. Amen.

### **1 Nephi Chapter 10**

1. Nephi begins to record his experiences, reign, and ministry. To do this, he will share some details about his father and his brothers.
2. After finishing his story about his dream and encouraging his family to work hard, he talked to them about the Jewish people



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

3. He stated that Jerusalem would be destroyed, and many would be taken captive to Babylon. However, at the right time determined by God, they would return and regain their homeland.
4. Indeed, six hundred years after my father left Jerusalem, God would raise up a prophet among the Jews a Messiah, or Savior for the world.
5. He also mentioned how many prophets had testified about this coming Messiah and Redeemer.
6. Because of this, all people were lost and in a fallen state, and would remain so unless they relied on this Redeemer.
7. He spoke about a prophet who would come before the Messiah to prepare the way for the Lord
8. This prophet would go into the wilderness and proclaim: "Make way for the Lord and straighten His paths; there is someone among you whom you don't recognize, and He is greater than I, and I am not worthy to untie His sandals." My father talked a lot about this.
9. He said this prophet would baptize in Bethabara, across the Jordan River, and he would baptize with water, even the Messiah himself.
10. After baptizing the Messiah, he would see and testify that he had baptized the Lamb of God who would take away the sins of the world.
11. After sharing these thoughts, my father spoke to my brothers about the gospel that would be shared among the Jews and how they would be increasingly faithless. After they crucified the Messiah, He would rise from the dead, showing Himself through the Holy Ghost to the Gentiles.
12. Yes, my father also talked a lot about the Gentiles and the house of Israel, comparing them to an olive tree whose branches would break off and spread out across the earth.
13. He said it was necessary for us to be led together to the promised land to fulfill God's word, and that we would be scattered all over the earth.
14. After Israel was scattered, they would be regathered; once the Gentiles had received the fullness of the Gospel, the natural branches of the olive tree, or the remnants of Israel, would be brought back in or come to know their true Messiah, their Lord and Redeemer.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

15. In this way, my father prophesied and instructed my brothers, sharing many other things that I haven't written in this book, as I have included only what I felt was important in my other writings.
16. All these events took place while my father was living in a tent in the valley of Lemuel.
17. After hearing all my father's words about what he envisioned and what he spoke by the power of the Holy Ghost given to him through faith in the Son of God, who was the promised Messiah, I, Nephi, also wanted to see, hear, and understand all these things, through the Holy Ghost, which is a gift from God for everyone who sincerely seeks Him, both in the past and in the present.
18. For He is the same yesterday, today, and forever, and the way is ready for everyone from the beginning of the world, as long as they repent and turn to Him.
19. Those who earnestly seek will find, and the mysteries of God will be revealed to them through the Holy Ghost, just as they have been in past times and will be in the future; thus, God's plan is an everlasting cycle.
20. Therefore, remember, O human, that all your actions will lead you to judgment.
21. If you have chosen to do wrong during your time of testing, then you will be found unclean before God's judgment, and nothing unclean can live with God; therefore, you will be cast out forever.
22. The Holy Ghost has given me the authority to speak these things and not deny them.

### **1 Nephi Chapter 11**

1. After I wanted to understand the visions my father had seen, and I believed the Lord could reveal them to me, while I was thinking deeply, I was suddenly taken away by the Spirit of the Lord to a very high mountain that I had never seen before.
2. The Spirit asked me: What do you want?
3. I replied: I want to see the things my father witnessed.
4. The Spirit asked: Do you believe your father saw the tree he described?
5. I responded: Yes, I believe everything my father said.
6. After I said this, the Spirit shouted with a loud voice, saying: Praise be to the Lord, the greatest God; for He is the ruler of all the earth, above all things. And you, Nephi, are blessed because you believe in the Son of the

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

greatest God; therefore, you will see what you desire.

7. And this will be a sign for you: after you see the tree that produced the fruit your father tasted, you will also see a man coming down from heaven, and you shall witness him; after witnessing him, you will testify that he is the Son of God.

8. Then the Spirit told me: Look! I looked and saw a tree, similar to the one my father had seen; its beauty was beyond anything, exceeding all other beauty, and it was whiter than pure snow.

9. Once I saw the tree, I said to the Spirit: You have shown me the most precious tree of all.

10. The Spirit asked: What do you want?

11. I said: I want to understand its meaning because I spoke to him as one man speaks to another; I realized he appeared in human form; yet, I knew it was the Spirit of the Lord, and he spoke to me as a person speaks to another.

12. Then he said to me: Look! I looked to see him, but he was no longer there.

13. I then looked and saw the great city of Jerusalem and other cities. I saw the city of Nazareth, and in Nazareth, I saw a virgin who was exceptionally beautiful and fair.

14. I then saw the heavens open, and an angel descended and stood before me. He asked me: Nephi, what do you see?

15. I replied: A virgin, more beautiful than all other virgins.

16. He asked me: Do you understand the condescension of God?

17. I said: I know He loves His children; however, I don't understand everything.

18. He told me: Look, the virgin you see is the mother of the Son of God, in the flesh.

19. Then I saw her taken away in the Spirit; after a while, the angel spoke to me again, saying: Look!

20. I looked and saw the virgin again, holding a child.

21. The angel said: Behold the Lamb of God, the Son of the Eternal Father! Do you understand the meaning of the tree your father saw?

22. I answered: Yes, it represents the love of God, which spreads throughout the hearts of mankind; therefore,

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

it is the most desirable thing of all.

23. He responded: Yes, and it brings the greatest joy to the soul.

24. After saying this, he said: Look! I looked, and I saw the Son of God among the people; many fell at his feet and worshipped him.

25. Then I saw that the iron rod, which my father had seen, represented the word of God, leading to the fountain of living waters, or the tree of life; these waters symbolize the love of God; and I also saw that the tree of life represented the love of God.

26. The angel told me again: Look and witness the condescension of God!

27. I looked and saw the Redeemer of the world, whom my father had described; I also saw the prophet who would prepare the way before him. The Lamb of God went forth and was baptized by him; after this baptism, I saw the heavens open, and the Holy Ghost descended and rested upon him like a dove.

28. I saw him ministering to the people with great power and glory; many gathered to hear him, but I also saw that they expelled him from among them.

29. I noticed twelve others following him. Then they were taken away by the Spirit, and I no longer saw them.

30. The angel spoke to me again, saying: Look! I looked and saw the heavens open again, with angels coming down to serve the people.

31. He spoke to me again, saying: Look! I looked and saw the Lamb of God among the people. I saw many who were sick and afflicted with all kinds of diseases and evil spirits; the angel showed me these things. They were healed by the power of the Lamb of God, and the evil spirits were cast out.

32. Then the angel spoke to me again, saying: Look! I looked and saw the Lamb of God being taken by the people; indeed, the Son of the everlasting God was judged by the world; I saw and can testify of this.

33. And I, Nephi, saw that he was raised upon the cross and killed for the sins of the world.

34. After he was killed, I saw the people of the earth gathering to fight against the apostles of the Lamb; for these were the twelve that the angel of the Lord had called.

35. The people were gathered in a large and spacious building, similar to the one my father had seen. Then the

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

angel of the Lord spoke to me again, saying: Look at the world and its wisdom; behold, the house of Israel has gathered to fight against the twelve apostles.

36. I saw and can testify that the large and spacious building represented the pride of the world; it fell down, and the destruction was great. The angel of the Lord spoke to me again, saying: Thus will be the downfall of all nations, families, languages, and people that fight against the twelve apostles of the Lamb.

### **1 Nephi Chapter 12**

1. The angel said to me: Look and see your descendants and your brothers' descendants. I looked and saw the promised land, with so many people that they were like the grains of sand on the beach.

2. Then I saw many people gathered to fight each other; I witnessed wars, battles, and many violent deaths among my people.

3. I watched as many generations passed away due to the wars and conflicts in the land, and I observed countless cities, so many that I couldn't count them all.

4. I saw a foggy darkness covering the promised land; there were lightning flashes, loud thunder, earthquakes, and chaotic noises; the ground split apart, mountains crumbled, plains were broken, many cities sank, some burned in fire, and others fell to the earth due to the trembling of the ground.

5. After seeing these things, I noticed that the darkness lifted from the earth, and I saw many who had survived the terrible judgments of the Lord.

6. I saw the heavens open, and the Lamb of God coming down from heaven; He approached and revealed Himself to them.

7. I also witnessed that the Holy Ghost descended upon twelve others, and they were chosen and ordained by God.

8. The angel spoke to me, saying: Look at the twelve disciples of the Lamb, chosen to serve your descendants.

9. He asked me: Do you remember the twelve apostles of the Lamb? They will be the ones judging the twelve tribes of Israel; your twelve ministers will be judged by them since you belong to the house of Israel.

10. These twelve ministers you see will judge your descendants. They are righteous forever; because of their

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

faith in the Lamb of God, their garments are as white as His blood makes them.

11. The angel told me: Look! I saw three generations pass away in righteousness; their garments were as white as the Lamb of God. The angel explained: They are made white in the blood of the Lamb due to their faith in Him.

12. I, Nephi, also saw many from the fourth generation who passed away righteously.

13. I then saw the countless people of the earth gathered together.

14. The angel told me: Behold your descendants and your brothers' descendants.

15. I looked and noticed my descendants gathered in great numbers against my brothers' descendants, preparing for battle.

16. The angel said to me: Look at the filthy water that your father saw; it's the same river he spoke of, and its depths are the depths of hell.

17. The mist of darkness represents the devil's temptations, which blind people's eyes, harden their hearts, and lead them away down wide roads to their destruction.

18. The large, fancy building that your father saw represents empty dreams and the pride of mankind. A vast and terrible divide separates them; this is the justice of the Eternal God and the Messiah, the Lamb of God, whom the Holy Ghost testifies about from the beginning of time to now and forever.

19. While the angel was speaking, I saw my brothers' descendants fighting against mine, just as the angel said; due to the pride of my descendants and the devil's temptations, my brothers' descendants were able to overpower my people.

20. I witnessed the descendants of my brothers defeating my people, and they spread across the land in great numbers.

21. I saw them gather in crowds; I witnessed wars and rumors of wars among them, and throughout these wars and conflicts, many generations passed away.

22. The angel told me: Look, these people will fall away from belief.

23. I then saw that after they fell into disbelief, they became dark, disgusting, and filthy, filled with laziness

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

and every kind of wickedness.

### **1 Nephi Chapter 13**

1. And then the angel spoke to me, saying: Look! So I looked and saw many nations and kingdoms.
2. The angel asked me: What do you see? I replied: I see many nations and kingdoms.
3. He explained: These are the nations and kingdoms of the Gentiles.
4. As I continued to look among the Gentile nations, I noticed a large and terrible church taking shape.
5. The angel then told me: Look at this church, which is more wicked than any other; it kills the saints of God, tortures them, binds them with chains, and takes them into captivity.
6. I saw that this great and wicked church was founded by the devil.
7. I also saw wealth: gold, silver, silks, scarlet cloth, fine linen, and all kinds of luxurious clothing, along with many prostitutes.
8. The angel said to me: Look at the gold, silver, silks, scarlet clothing, fine linen, and expensive clothing, along with the prostitutes; these represent the desires of this great and wicked church.
9. They destroy the saints of God for the praise of the world and take them into captivity.
10. I then saw many large bodies of water, which separated the Gentiles from the descendants of my brothers.
11. The angel said to me: Notice that Gods anger is directed at your brothers' descendants.
12. I saw a man among the Gentiles, who was separated from my brothers by those many waters. Then I saw the Spirit of God come down and act upon him, and he traveled across the waters to reach my brothers, who were in the promised land.
13. I saw the Spirit of God also affect other Gentiles as they left captivity and traveled across the waters.
14. I noticed many Gentiles in the promised land and saw that God's anger was upon my brothers' descendants; they were scattered and beaten by the Gentiles.
15. The Spirit of the Lord was with the Gentiles, and they prospered, inheriting the land. I noticed they looked fair and beautiful, like my people had before they were killed.
16. I, Nephi, saw that the Gentiles who had escaped captivity humbled themselves before the Lord, and the

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

Lords power was with them.

17. I observed that their Gentile parents gathered on the waters and on land to fight against them.

18. I also saw that Gods power was with them, and His anger was upon all who were gathered to fight them.

19. I, Nephi, saw that the Gentiles who had escaped captivity were saved by God's power from all other nations.

20. I noticed that they prospered in the land and saw a book being carried among them.

21. The angel asked me: Do you know what this book means?

22. I replied: I dont know.

23. He said: This book comes from the mouth of a Jew. I, Nephi, saw it; and he told me: The book you see is a record of the Jews, containing the Lord's covenants with the house of Israel; it also includes many prophecies from holy prophets. It is a record similar to the engravings on the brass plates, though it does not contain as many. Nevertheless, it contains the Lord's covenants, making it very valuable to the Gentiles.

24. The angel of the Lord said: You have seen that the book comes from a Jew; when it came from a Jew, it contained the fullness of the Lord's gospel, as recorded by the twelve apostles, who testify of the truth found in the Lamb of God.

25. Thus, these teachings go from the Jews in their pure form to the Gentiles, reflecting the truth that is in God.

26. After being delivered by the twelve apostles from the Jews to the Gentiles, you will notice the formation of that great and wicked church, the most wicked of all churches, because they have removed many plain and precious parts from the gospel of the Lamb, and many of the Lord's covenants have also been removed.

27. They have done all this to distort the right ways of the Lord and to blind the eyes and harden the hearts of people.

28. Therefore, you will see that after the book is sent out through this great and wicked church, many plain and precious things are missing from the book, which is the book of the Lamb of God.

29. Once these plain and precious teachings are removed, the book will spread to all nations of the Gentiles;



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

and when it reaches all the nations, even across the many waters you've seen with the Gentiles who have escaped captivity, you will notice that due to the missing plain and precious teachings, which are easy to understand, many will stumble so much that Satan will have great control over them.

30. However, you will see that the Gentiles who have escaped captivity and have been raised by God's power above all other nations, on this choice land that the Lord God promised your father would belong to his descendants; thus, you will see that the Lord God will not allow the Gentiles to completely destroy the mixture of your descendants among your brothers.

31. He will not allow the Gentiles to destroy your brothers' descendants.

32. Nor will the Lord God allow the Gentiles to remain in that terrible state of blindness you see, which is due to the plain and precious parts of the Lamb of Gods gospel that have been hidden by that wicked church, which you have witnessed.

33. For this reason, the Lamb of God declares: I will show mercy to the Gentiles during the time of judgment upon the remnant of Israel.

34. Then the angel of the Lord spoke to me, saying: Listen, the Lamb of God says that after I have judged the remnant of Israel and this remnant is your father's seed after I have judged them and struck them through the Gentiles, and after the Gentiles stumble greatly due to the plain and precious parts of the Lamb of Gods gospel that have been hidden by that wicked church, which is the mother of prostitutes, says the Lamb I will show mercy to the Gentiles in that time, bringing to them much of my gospel, which will be clear and precious, says the Lamb.

35. For, behold, says the Lamb: I will make myself known to your seed, and they will write many things that I will teach them, which will be clear and precious; after your seed is destroyed and loses their faith, and after the seed of your brothers, behold, these teachings will be hidden, only to come forth to the Gentiles through the gift and power of the Lamb.

36. In them will be written my gospel, says the Lamb, and my rock and my salvation.

37. Blessed are those who seek to establish my Zion in those days, for they will have the gift and power of the

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

Holy Ghost; if they remain faithful until the end, they will be lifted up on the last day and saved in the eternal kingdom of the Lamb; and how beautiful will be the footsteps of those who bring good news and glad tidings upon the mountains.

38. I then saw the remnant of my brothers descendants along with the book of the Lamb of God, which had come from the mouth of a Jew, as it went from the Gentiles to the remnant of my brothers descendants.

39. After it reached them, I saw other books that came forth by the power of the Lamb from the Gentiles to them, aimed at convincing both the Gentiles and the remnant of my brothers descendants, as well as the scattered Jews everywhere, that the records of the prophets and the twelve apostles of the Lamb are true.

40. The angel said to me: The last records you have seen among the Gentiles will confirm the truth of the first records from the twelve apostles and will reveal the plain and precious things that were removed from them; they will show all nations, tribes, and peoples that the Lamb of God is the Son of the Eternal Father and the Savior of the world; and that everyone must come to Him, or they cannot be saved.

41. And they must approach according to the words established by the Lamb; these words will be revealed in the records of your seed and also in the records of the twelve apostles; therefore, both will be united into one, since there is one God and one Shepherd over all the earth.

42. The time will come when He will reveal Himself to all nations, both Jews and Gentiles; then, after He has revealed Himself to the Jews and the Gentiles, He will finally reveal Himself again to both groups, and the last will be first, and the first will be last.

### **1 Nephi Chapter 14**

1. If the Gentiles listen to the Lamb of God, in that day He will reveal Himself to them through His words and powerful actions, removing their obstacles.

2. If they do not harden their hearts against the Lamb of God, they will be counted among the descendants of your father; indeed, they will be part of the house of Israel and will be a blessed people in the promised land forever; they will no longer be taken captive, and the house of Israel shall no longer be ashamed.

3. That deep pit dug for them by the great and wicked church, established by the devil and his followers to

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

lead souls to hell; yes, that pit meant for the destruction of mankind will be filled by those who created it, leading to their ultimate ruin, says the Lamb of God; this destruction does not mean the death of the soul, except for being cast into an endless hell.

4. This reflects the devil's captivity and the justice of God upon all who choose to act wickedly and commit sinful acts before Him.

5. Then the angel spoke to me, Nephi, and said: You have seen that if the Gentiles repent, they will be blessed; and you also know about the Lord's promises to the house of Israel; and you have heard that those who do not repent will face destruction.

6. So, woe to the Gentiles if they harden their hearts against the Lamb of God.

7. For the time will come, says the Lamb of God, when I will perform a great and marvelous work among humanity; a work that will last forever, whether it brings peace and eternal life or leads to the hardening of their hearts and blindness in their minds, leading to their captivity and destruction, both in this life and spiritually, as referenced in the devil's captivity.

8. When the angel finished speaking, he asked me: Do you remember the promises of the Father to the house of Israel? I replied, Yes.

9. Then he told me: Look and see that wicked church, the mother of all wickedness, whose founder is the devil.

10. He said: There are only two churches; one is the church of the Lamb of God, and the other is the church of the devil; therefore, anyone who does not belong to the church of the Lamb of God is part of that wicked church, which is the mother of all evil and is the whore of all the earth.

11. I then looked and saw the whore of all the earth seated upon many waters; she had control over all nations, tribes, languages, and peoples.

12. I then saw the church of the Lamb of God, which was small in number because of the wickedness and evils of the whore seated upon many waters; however, I saw that the church of the Lamb, made up of the saints of God, existed all over the earth, though their numbers were small due to the great whore's wicked acts.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

13. I also saw that the great mother of all wickedness was gathering many people from all over the earth, from all the nations of the Gentiles, to fight against the Lamb of God.

14. Then I, Nephi, witnessed the power of the Lamb of God, which came down upon the saints of the church and the covenant people of the Lord, who were scattered across the earth; they were equipped with righteousness and the power of God in great glory.

15. I saw that God's anger was directed against that great and wicked church, leading to wars and rumors of wars among all the earth's nations and people.

16. As wars started and rumors spread among all the nations belonging to the mother of evil, the angel said to me: Behold, the wrath of God is upon the mother of harlots; and look, you see all these things

17. When the day comes that God's anger is unleashed upon the mother of harlots, the great and wicked church of all the earth with the devil as its founder, then that day will mark the beginning of the Father's work, preparing the way to fulfill His promises made to His people of the house of Israel.

18. Then the angel spoke to me again, saying: Look!

19. I turned and saw a man dressed in a white robe.

20. The angel said: Look, he is one of the twelve apostles of the Lamb.

21. He will see and write about these things; indeed, he will write about many things that have happened.

22. He will also write about the end of the world.

23. So, the things he will write are true and just; behold, they are recorded in the book that you saw coming from the mouth of the Jew; at that time, the things written were clear, pure, and invaluable, easily understood by everyone.

24. And behold, the writings of this apostle will contain many things you have seen; and you will see the rest.

25. But the things you will see later must not be written down; for the Lord God has set apart the apostle of the Lamb of God to be the one to write them.

26. Others have been shown everything, and they have written their accounts; these records will be revealed in their pure form, according to the truth found in the Lamb, in the Lord's perfect timing, for the house of Israel.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

27. I, Nephi, have heard and testify that the apostle of the Lamb is named John, according to the angels message.

28. And behold, I, Nephi, have been commanded not to write what I saw and heard after this; thus, the things I have written are sufficient for me, and I have only written a small part of what I experienced.

29. I testify that I saw the things that my father saw, and the angel of the Lord made them known to me.

30. Now I've finished sharing what I saw while I was in the Spirit; if not everything I saw is recorded, what I have written is true. And so it is. Amen.

### **1 Nephi Chapter 15**

1. I returned to my father's tent after I, Nephi, was spiritually taken away and saw many things.

2. I saw my brothers arguing with each other about what our father had told them.

3. He spoke many important things, but they were difficult to understand unless someone asked the Lord for help; since their hearts were hard, they didn't seek the Lord as they should have.

4. I felt sad because of their stubbornness and because I knew what I had seen would inevitably happen due to the great wickedness among people.

5. I was overwhelmed by my suffering because I felt my troubles were great, especially because of the destruction of my people, whose downfall I had witnessed.

6. After I gained strength, I talked to my brothers to understand why they were fighting.

7. They told me they couldn't grasp our father's words about the natural branches of the olive tree and the Gentiles.

8. I asked them if they had asked the Lord about it.

9. They replied they had not because they felt the Lord had not revealed anything to them.

10. I said to them: Why don't you follow the Lord's commandments? How can you expect to survive with hardened hearts?

11. Do you not remember what the Lord has said? If you do not harden your hearts and pray to me in faith, believing you will receive, and are diligent in keeping my commandments, these things will be made known to

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

you.

12. I told them that the Lords Spirit likened the house of Israel to an olive tree; are we not part of Israel, as branches of this olive tree?

13. What our father meant by the natural branches being grafted back in through the fullness of the Gentiles is that in the last days, after many generations when our descendants have lost faith, the fullness of the gospel of the Messiah will come to the Gentiles and from them to the remnant of our people.

14. At that time, our descendants will realize they are part of the house of Israel and the Lords chosen people; they will then learn about their ancestors and the gospel of their Redeemer, which was preached to their forefathers by Him, so they will know how to reach Him and be saved.

15. Then, will they not rejoice and praise their eternal God, their rock and their salvation? Yes, in that day, will they not draw strength and nourishment from the true vine, and will they not return to Gods true fold?

16. Indeed, I tell you, they will be remembered again among the house of Israel; they will be grafted back as natural branches into the true olive tree.

17. This is what our father meant; he indicated that this would occur only after they were scattered among the Gentiles; it will come through the Gentiles so that the Lord can demonstrate His power, especially since He will be rejected by the Jews, the house of Israel.

18. Therefore, our father spoke not only of our descendants but of all the house of Israel, pointing to the covenant that will be fulfilled in the last days; this is the covenant the Lord made with our father Abraham, saying: Through your descendants, all nations of the earth will be blessed.

19. I talked to them at length about these matters; yes, I told them about the restoration of the Jews in the last days.

20. I recounted the words of Isaiah, who spoke about the restoration of the Jews, saying that they would not be confused or scattered again after that. Eventually, my words calmed them, and they humbled themselves before the Lord.

21. Then they asked me again: What does the dream our father had mean? What does the tree symbolize?

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

22. I replied: It represents the tree of life.

23. They asked me: What does the iron rod mean that our father saw leading to the tree?

24. I told them it represents the word of God; whoever listens to the word of God and holds on to it will never perish or fall to temptations and the fiery darts of the enemy, leading them to destruction.

25. So, I, Nephi, urged them to pay attention to the word of the Lord; I encouragement them with all my heart and soul to remember to always keep His commandments.

26. They then asked me: What does the river of water represent that our father saw?

27. I explained that the water represented filth, and our father's mind was so consumed with other things that he didn't see the filthiness of the water.

28. I told them that this water symbolized a terrible separation, keeping the wicked from the tree of life and from the saints of God.

29. I said to them that it also represented the awful hell, which an angel told me was prepared for the wicked.

30. I mentioned that our father saw how Gods justice did separate the wicked from the righteous, and its brightness was like a flame that rises up to God forever without end.

31. They asked me: Does this refer to the suffering of the body during life, or does it refer to the final condition of the soul after death, or does it address temporary things?

32. I explained that it represents both temporary and spiritual matters; the day will come when they will be judged for their actions, including those done by their physical body during life.

33. Therefore, if they die in their wickedness, they will also be rejected in terms of spiritual matters relating to righteousness; thus, they must stand before God to be judged based on their actions. If their actions have been filthy, they will be filthy; and if they are filthy, they cannot dwell in God's kingdom; otherwise, Gods kingdom would also have to be filthy.

34. But I assure you, God's kingdom is not filthy, and nothing unclean can enter it; therefore, there must be a place for the filthy.

35. And there is indeed a place prepared, namely that terrible hell I spoke of, and Satan is the one who

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

prepares it; thus, the ultimate fate of souls is to dwell in God's kingdom or to be cast out according to the justice I described.

36. Therefore, the wicked are separated from the righteous and also from the tree of life, whose fruit is the most precious and desirable of all; indeed, it is the greatest of all the gifts of God. And thus I spoke to my brothers. Amen.

### **1 Nephi Chapter 16**

1. The wicked find it hard to accept the truthLehis sons marry Ishmael's daughtersThe Liahona leads them in the wildernessMessages from God appear on the Liahona from time to timeIshmael dies; his family complains about their hardships.

2. After I, Nephi, finished talking to my brothers, they told me: You have told us things that are difficult, more than we can handle.

3. I told them that I knew I had spoken tough truths about the wicked; and I have justified the righteous, explaining that they will be rewarded in the end. Thus, the guilty find the truth hard because it strikes them deeply.

4. Brothers, if you were righteous and open to the truth, wanting to live rightly before God, you wouldnt complain because of the truth, saying: You speak harshly about us.

5. I, Nephi, urged my brothers earnestly to follow the Lords commandments.

6. They humbled themselves before the Lord; and I felt joy and great hope that they would choose to follow the right path.

7. All these events occurred while my father lived in a tent in the valley he named Lemuel.

8. I, Nephi, married one of Ishmael's daughters, and my brothers also married Ishmael's daughters, as did Zoram, who married Ishmael's eldest daughter.

9. Thus, my father fulfilled all the Lord's commandments given to him. And I, Nephi, received many blessings from the Lord.

10. One night, the Lord spoke to my father, directing him to journey into the wilderness the next day.



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

11. When my father woke up in the morning and went to the tent door, he was astonished to see a round ball of intricate design on the ground; it was made of fine brass. Inside the ball were two spindles, and one pointed the way we were to go in the wilderness.

12. We gathered all the things we would take into the wilderness, as well as the remaining provisions the Lord had provided; we also took seeds of every kind.

13. We then packed our tents and headed into the wilderness, crossing the river Laman.

14. We traveled for four days, mostly heading south-southeast, and set up our tents again, naming the place Shazer.

15. We took our bows and arrows and went into the wilderness to hunt for our families; after securing food, we returned to Shazer. We went back out into the wilderness, following the same route and staying in the best areas near the Red Sea.

16. We traveled for many days, hunting along the way with our bows and arrows, as well as stones and slings.

17. We followed the guidance of the ball, which led us to the more fertile areas in the wilderness.

18. After many days of travel, we set up our tents for a while so we could rest and gather food for our families.

19. When I, Nephi, went out to hunt, I unfortunately broke my bow, which was made of fine steel. After breaking my bow, my brothers were upset with me because we couldnt find any food.

20. We returned to our families empty-handed and very tired; they suffered greatly from hunger due to our long journey.

21. Laman, Lemuel, and the sons of Ishmael began to complain loudly about their hardships in the wilderness; my father also started to complain against God. They were all deeply sorrowful for their situation and voiced their complaints against the Lord.

22. Because of losing my bow and watching my brothers bows lose their springs, we found it extremely difficult to get food.

23. I spoke to my brothers often because they had hardened their hearts and started to complain against the Lord.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

24. So I made a bow out of wood and fashioned an arrow from a straight stick; I equipped myself with these weapons along with a sling and stones. Then I asked my father: Where should I go to find food?
25. He sought the Lords guidance, having humbled himself due to my words, which I spoke with deep conviction.
26. The Lords voice came to my father, chastising him for his complaints against God and bringing him to a state of deep sorrow.
27. The Lord told him: Look at the ball and see what is written on it.
28. When my father looked, he was filled with fear and trembled greatly, as did my brothers, the sons of Ishmael, and our wives.
29. I, Nephi, saw the pointers on the ball working according to the faith, effort, and attention we gave to them.
30. There was also new writing upon it that was easy to read, giving us understanding about Gods ways; this writing changed from time to time according to our faith and diligence. Thus, we can see how by small means, the Lord can accomplish great things.
31. I, Nephi, climbed to the top of the mountain, following the directions on the ball.
32. I hunted wild animals there and collected food for our families.
33. When I returned to our tents with the food I had gathered, joy filled their hearts! They humbled themselves before the Lord and thanked Him.
34. We then continued on our journey, retracing nearly the same route as before. After many days of travel, we set up our tents again to rest for a while.
35. Ishmael died and was buried in a place called Nahom.
36. The daughters of Ishmael mourned greatly for their father and for their struggles in the wilderness; they complained against my father for bringing them out of Jerusalem, saying: Our father is dead! We have wandered a lot in the wilderness and faced many hardships, hunger, thirst, and exhaustion; now, after all this suffering, we will die here of hunger.
37. Thus, they complained against my father and me, expressing a desire to return to Jerusalem.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

38. Laman said to Lemuel and the sons of Ishmael: Let us kill our father and our brother Nephi, who took it upon himself to lead and teach us, despite being the younger brother.

39. He claimed that the Lord had spoken to him and that angels had visited him. But we know he is lying; he tells us these things and does many things to deceive us, perhaps hoping to lead us into some strange wilderness and then make himself king and ruler over us, doing whatever he pleases with us. In this way, Laman incited anger in their hearts.

40. The Lord was with us; indeed, the voice of the Lord spoke many words to them, chastening them severely. After that, they turned away their anger and repented of their wrongdoings, so the Lord blessed us with food, ensuring we would not perish.

### **1 Nephi Chapter 17**

1. We resumed our journey through the wilderness and traveled almost entirely eastward from that point on. During this time, we faced many hardships in the wilderness, and our women gave birth to children amidst our struggles.

2. The Lord blessed us greatly; even while we survived on raw meat, our women were able to breastfeed their children and showed extraordinary strength, similar to the men, and they continued on our journey without complaining.

3. Thus, we see that God's commandments must be fulfilled. If people follow God's commandments, He supports them, strengthens them, and provides what they need to do what He has asked. So, He provided for us while we were traveling in the wilderness.

4. We spent many years in the wilderness eight years in total.

5. Eventually, we arrived at a land we named Bountiful because of its abundant fruit and wild honey. Everything there was provided by the Lord to keep us from dying. We also saw the ocean, which we named Irreantum, meaning "many waters."

6. We set up our tents by the shore. Despite all the hardships we faced, which are too many to write about, we felt immense joy when we reached the shore and called the place Bountiful for its rich resources.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

7. After spending many days in Bountiful, I, Nephi, heard the Lord's voice telling me to go up into the mountain. I followed His command and went up the mountain to pray.
8. The Lord spoke to me, instructing me to build a ship according to His design so I could carry my people across these waters.
9. I asked the Lord where I could find metal to make tools for constructing the ship as He had shown me.
10. The Lord directed me to the place where I could find the ore to make the tools.
11. So, I made a bellows out of animal skins to blow the fire, and then I struck two stones together to create fire.
12. Previously, the Lord had not allowed us to make much fire while we traveled in the wilderness, saying, "I will make your food sweet so you won't need to cook it."
13. He also promised to be our light in the wilderness and to prepare our way if we kept His commandments; thus, if we followed His commandments, we would be guided to the promised land and recognize that it was Him leading us.
14. The Lord also said, "Once you reach the promised land, you will know that I am God, and that I delivered you from destruction; I led you out of Jerusalem."
15. So, I, Nephi, worked hard to keep the Lord's commandments, and I encouraged my brothers to be faithful and diligent.
16. I used the ore I had melted from the rock to make tools.
17. When my brothers saw that I was preparing to build a ship, they began to complain, saying, "Our brother is foolish; he thinks he can build a ship and cross these vast waters."
18. My brothers continued to grumble, wanting to avoid work because they didn't believe I could build a ship, nor that I had received instructions from the Lord.
19. I felt deep sorrow because of their stubbornness; when they noticed my sadness, they took joy in it, saying, "We knew you couldn't build a ship; you don't have good judgment, so you can't accomplish such a great task."
20. They compared me to our father, claiming he was misled by foolish thoughts. They reminded me how he

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

led us away from Jerusalem into the wilderness, where we have suffered for many years. Our women have endured hardships while giving birth, and they have faced everything except death itself; they would have been better off dead than to have gone through such trials.

21. Look at how weve suffered in the wilderness for all these years, when we could have enjoyed our home and land of inheritance, and we could have been happy.

22. We know that the people in Jerusalem were righteous because they followed all of Gods laws and commandments. Therefore, we conclude that they are righteous, and our father has judged them and led us away because we listened to his words. They asserted that my brother was just like him and continued to complain like this.

23. So, I, Nephi, asked them, "Do you think our ancestors, the Israelites, would have been rescued from the Egyptians if they hadnt listened to the Lords words?"

24. Do you think they would have escaped slavery if the Lord hadnt commanded Moses to lead them out?

25. You know that the Israelites were enslaved and overwhelmed with hard tasks to bear, so surely it was a good thing that they were freed from bondage.

26. You also know that Moses was commanded by the Lord to perform that great work, and by his command, the Red Sea was divided, allowing them to pass through on dry ground.

27. But the Egyptians were drowned in the Red Sea, those armies of Pharaoh.

28. You also remember that they were provided manna to eat in the wilderness.

29. Yes, and you know that Moses, through the power of God within him, struck a rock and water flowed out so the Israelites could drink.

30. Despite being guided by the Lord their God, their Redeemer, who led them by day and provided light at night, they still hardened their hearts, blinded their minds, and spoke against Moses and the living God.

31. So, according to His word, He destroyed them and led them; everything happened by His command.

32. Once they crossed the river Jordan, He made them mighty to drive out the inhabitants of that land, leading them to destruction.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

33. Now, do you think the people in this promised land who were driven out by our ancestors were righteous?

I tell you, no.

34. Do you think our ancestors would have been better if they had been righteous? I tell you, no.

35. The Lord sees all people as one; whoever is righteous is favored by God. However, this people rejected Gods words and were filled with sin; they were under God's wrath, and He cursed their land and blessed it for our ancestors, giving them power over it.

36. God created the earth to be inhabited and His children to possess it.

37. He raises up righteous nations and destroys wicked ones.

38. He guides the righteous to good lands while punishing the wicked and cursing the land to their detriment.

39. He reigns high in the heavens, and the earth is His footstool.

40. He loves those who choose Him as their God. He loved our fathers and made covenants with them, including Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. He remembered those promises and brought them out of Egypt.

41. In the wilderness, He tested them because they had hardened their hearts, just like you have; He sent fiery serpents among them, and when they were bitten, He provided a way for them to be healed. Their task was simply to look, but many perished because they couldnt accept the simplicity of it.

42. They hardened their hearts repeatedly and spoke against Moses and God, yet you know they were powerfully led to the promised land.

43. Now, after all these experiences, they have become wicked, nearly completely sinful, and I fear they are about to be destroyed, except for a few who might be taken into captivity.

44. The Lord commanded my father to leave into the wilderness because the Jews wanted to kill him; and you too have sought to kill him; thus, you are murderers at heart and similar to them.

45. You are quick to commit sins but slow to remember the Lord your God. You have seen an angel who spoke to you; you have heard His voice from time to time, but have become insensitive, unable to feel His words; so, He has spoken to you as thunder, making the earth tremble.

46. You also know that by the power of His almighty word, He can cause the earth to pass away; He can make

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

rough places smooth and smooth areas broken. So, why is your heart so hardened?

47. My soul is filled with anguish and my heart is pained; I fear you might be abandoned forever. I am overflowing with the Spirit of God, and it gives me no strength.

48. When I finished speaking, they became angry and wanted to throw me into the sea. As they approached to harm me, I said to them: "In the name of the Almighty God, do not touch me, for I am filled with the power of God, and anyone who lays a hand on me will wither like a dried reed; they will be powerless before Gods might."

49. I, Nephi, told them to stop complaining about their father and to not withhold their help from me, for God had commanded me to build a ship.

50. I said to them: "If God commands me to do anything, I can accomplish it. If He tells me to turn this water into earth, it will happen."

51. If the Lord has such power and has performed many miracles among people, why would He not be able to instruct me on how to build a ship?

52. I, Nephi, spoke many things to my brothers, leaving them confused and unable to argue with me; they dared not touch me at all for many days. They were afraid to do this because the Spirit of God was so powerful within me.

53. Then, the Lord told me to reach out my hand again to my brothers, promising they wouldn't wither, but He would shake them so they might know I am the Lord their God.

54. So I reached out to them, and they did not wither; but the Lord shook them, just as He said.

55. Then they acknowledged, "We know for certain that the Lord is with you; it is clear that His power has shaken us." They fell before me, about to worship me, but I refused and said, "I am your brother, even the younger one; therefore, worship the Lord your God and honor your parents so you may live long in the land the Lord is giving you."

## **1 Nephi Chapter 18**

1. They began to worship the Lord and went with me; we worked on the wooden parts of the ship with

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

intricate designs. The Lord occasionally guided me on how to construct the ship's timbers.

2. I, Nephi, did not use the methods of men to build the ship; instead, I followed the instructions the Lord gave me, so it was not built like a typical vessel.

3. I often went up the mountain to pray to the Lord, and during those times, He revealed great things to me.

4. Once I completed the ship as the Lord had instructed, my brothers saw that it was good and that the craftsmanship was exceptional; they humbled themselves before the Lord once more.

5. Then, the Lord spoke to my father, telling us to get up and board the ship.

6. The next day, after we prepared everything, which included plenty of fruit, meat from the wilderness, and an abundance of honey along with other provisions as the Lord commanded, we descended into the ship with all our supplies, seeds, and everything we brought, each according to their age. Thus, we all boarded the ship, including our wives and children.

7. My father had two sons while in the wilderness; the older was named Jacob, and the younger, Joseph.

8. After we all boarded the ship and took our provisions as commanded, we set sail into the sea and were carried along by the wind towards the promised land.

9. After days of being driven by the wind, my brothers and the sons of Ishmael, along with their wives, began to celebrate, dancing, singing, and behaving rudely. They even forgot the power that had brought them to this place and became extremely disrespectful.

10. I, Nephi, became very worried that the Lord would be angry with us for our wrongdoings and that we might be drowned in the sea. So, I spoke to them seriously, but they became angry with me, rejecting the idea of me being their leader.

11. Eventually, Laman and Lemuel took me and bound me with ropes, treating me very harshly; however, the Lord allowed this to demonstrate His power and fulfill His words about the wicked.

12. After I was restrained so that I couldn't move, the compass given by the Lord stopped working.

13. As a result, they didn't know where to steer the ship, and a terrible storm arose, pushing us back on the waters for three days. They grew exceedingly afraid that they would drown, yet they didn't free me.



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

14. On the fourth day, as we continued to be driven back, the storm became more intense.

15. We were on the verge of being consumed by the depths of the ocean. After four days of being blown away, my brothers realized that God's judgments were upon them and that they would perish unless they repented of their wrongdoings. They came to me and untied the ropes on my wrists, which were greatly swollen, and my ankles were also very swollen and painful.

16. Still, I looked to my God and praised Him all day; I did not complain about my suffering.

17. My father Lehi told many things to them and the sons of Ishmael; however, they threatened anyone who tried to speak for me. My parents, aged and already suffering much sorrow because of their children, were very weak and close to death.

18. Due to their grief over my brothers' sins, they seemed near death, their grey hairs poised to descend to the dust, and they were close to being lost at sea filled with sorrow.

19. Jacob and Joseph, being young and needing much care, were upset over their mothers suffering; my wife also cried and prayed, but none of this softened my brothers' hearts to free me.

20. Nothing could soften their hearts except the power of God, which threatened them with destruction. When they saw the storm was about to drown us, they finally repented and untied me.

21. After they released me, I took the compass, and it worked as I desired. I then prayed to the Lord; after my prayer, the winds and storm stopped, and there was a great calm.

22. I, Nephi, then guided the ship, and we sailed again towards the promised land.

23. After sailing for many days, we finally reached the promised land; we disembarked and set up our tents, naming the land the promised land.

24. We began to cultivate the land and plant seeds as we had brought from Jerusalem. The seeds grew very well, and we were blessed with abundance.

25. During our journey in the wilderness within the promised land, we discovered various animals in the forests, including cows, oxen, donkeys, horses, goats, and other wild creatures useful for men. We also found different types of minerals, including gold, silver, and copper.

## **1 Nephi Chapter 19**

1. The Lord instructed me to create metal plates to write down the history of my people. On these plates, I recorded my father's accounts, our travels in the wilderness, his prophecies, and many of my own prophecies.
2. At the time I created these plates, I didn't realize I would be commanded to make them; thus, the record of my father's history, his ancestry, and most of our experiences in the wilderness are engraved on those original plates. Therefore, significant events that happened before I made these plates are detailed on those first plates.
3. After completing these plates as instructed, I, Nephi, received a directive to write the more essential and valuable parts of our ministry and prophecies on these plates; that which was recorded was meant for the guidance of my people who would inherit the land and for other wise purposes known to the Lord.
4. So, I created a record on the other plates, giving a more detailed account of the wars, conflicts, and the destruction of my people. I did this and instructed my people on what to do after I was gone, ensuring these plates would be passed down from one generation to the next, or from one prophet to another, until further instructions from the Lord.
5. I will provide an account of how I made these plates later; now, I will proceed as I have mentioned, doing this so that the more sacred information may be preserved for my people.
6. However, I only write on these plates if I believe the content to be sacred. If I make mistakes, others have done so in the past; I don't mean to excuse myself based on others, but I acknowledge my weakness as a person.
7. Some people value things greatly, both physically and spiritually, while others disregard them completely. Indeed, they treat even the very God of Israel as insignificant; they do not listen to his guidance.
8. And behold, according to the angel's words, he will come six hundred years after my father left Jerusalem.
9. Because of their sins, people will see him as worthless; they will beat him, and he will endure it; they will strike him, and he will endure it. Yes, they will spit on him, and he will endure it, out of his love and patience for humanity.
10. The God of our ancestors, who led them out of Egypt and protected them in the wilderness the God of

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob will, as foretold by the angel, willingly allow himself to be taken by evil men to be raised up, as Zenock prophesied, to be crucified, as Neum said, and to be buried, as Zenos described, which included a sign of three days of darkness that would signal his death to those living on the islands of the sea, especially those from the house of Israel.

11. For the prophet says: On that day, the Lord God will visit all of Israel's house; some will hear his voice, bringing great joy and salvation because of their righteousness, while others will experience his power through storms, fire, smoke, darkness, the earth splitting open, and mountains being lifted.

12. All these events will undoubtedly happen, according to the prophet Zenos. The earth will shake; and because of the earth's groans, many rulers of the islands will be moved by God's Spirit to cry: The God of nature suffers.

13. And about those in Jerusalem, the prophet says they will be punished by all people because they will crucify the God of Israel, turning their hearts away and rejecting signs, wonders, and God's power and glory.

14. Because they reject him, the prophet declares, they will wander as they live in the flesh, and they will come to be a curse and a taunt, hated by all nations.

15. However, when the day comes that they no longer turn their hearts away from the Holy One of Israel, then God will remember the promises made to their ancestors.

16. Then he will remember the islands of the sea; yes, all the people of the house of Israel will be gathered, says the Lord, as the prophet Zenos predicted, from all corners of the earth.

17. Indeed, all the earth will witness the Lord's salvation, says the prophet; every nation, group, language, and people will be blessed.

18. And I, Nephi, have written these things for my people, hoping to persuade them to remember the Lord, their Redeemer.

19. Thus, I address all of Israel's house, hoping they can receive these writings.

20. For behold, I have been deeply affected in spirit, even to the point of weakness, for those in Jerusalem; had the Lord not shown mercy in revealing these truths to me, like he did to the prophets of old, I too would have

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

perished.

21. Indeed, he revealed all things about them to the ancient prophets, and he also showed many things about us; thus, we must understand these matters because they are written on the brass plates.

22. Now it came to pass that I, Nephi, taught my brothers these truths; I read many things from the brass plates to them to show them the Lord's deeds in ancient lands.

23. I read a lot from the books of Moses; however, to fully persuade them to trust in the Lord, their Redeemer, I also read from the writings of the prophet Isaiah; I connected all scriptures to our situation for our benefit and understanding.

24. So, I spoke to them, saying: Listen to the prophet's words, you who remain from Israel's house, a branch that has been severed; hear the prophets words written for all of Israel's house and relate them to your lives, so you can have hope, just like your brothers from whom you have been separated, for this is how the prophet wrote.

### **1 Nephi Chapter 20**

1. Listen closely, O house of Jacob, called by the name of Israel, who have emerged from the waters of Judah, or from the waters of baptism, who swear by the name of the Lord and mention the God of Israel, but they do not swear truthfully or righteously.

2. Even though they call themselves from the holy city, they do not rely on the God of Israel, who is the Lord of Hosts; indeed, that is his name.

3. Look, I have announced the previous events from the beginning; they came out of my mouth, and I revealed them. I made them known quickly.

4. I did this because I knew you are stubborn, with a neck as hard as iron and your forehead like brass.

5. From the beginning, I have declared these things to you; before they happened, I showed them to you; I revealed them so that you wouldnt claim that your idol brought them about, or that your graven image or molten image commanded them.

6. You have seen and heard all of this; will you not proclaim it? And I have shown you new things that were

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

hidden until now, things you did not know.

7. They exist now, not from the beginning; even before the day when you did not hear them, I announced them to you, so you would not say, "Look, I already knew about them."

8. Indeed, you did not hear them; indeed, you did not understand; your ears were not open at that time because I knew you would be very untrustworthy and were called a transgressor from birth.

9. However, for the sake of my name, I will delay my anger, and for my praise, I will hold back from you, so I do not cut you off.

10. Look, I have refined you; I have chosen you in the furnace of suffering.

11. For my own sake, yes, for my own sake, I will do this because I will not allow my name to be dishonored, and I will not give my glory to another.

12. Listen, O Jacob, and Israel whom I have chosen, for I am he; I am the first, and I am also the last.

13. My hand has laid the foundation of the earth, and my right hand has measured the heavens. I call to them, and they come together.

14. All of you, gather together and listen; who among them has revealed these things to them? The Lord has loved him; yes, and he will fulfill the word he has declared through them; and he will do what he wishes against Babylon, and his power will come upon the Chaldeans.

15. Also, says the Lord; I the Lord, yes, I have spoken; yes, I have called him to declare, I have brought him, and he will succeed.

16. Come close to me; I have not spoken in secret; from the beginning, when it was announced, I have spoken; and the Lord God, along with his Spirit, has sent me.

17. Thus says the Lord, your Redeemer, the Holy One of Israel; I have sent him, the Lord your God who teaches you how to gain from it, who guides you along the path you should walk, has done it.

18. Oh, if only you had listened to my commandments your peace would have been like a flowing river, and your righteousness would have been like the waves of the sea.

19. Your descendants would have been like the sand, your offspring like the gravel; their name would not have

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

been cut off or destroyed in my presence.

20. Leave Babylon, escape from the Chaldeans, and with joyful voices, proclaim this, declare it to the ends of the earth; say: The Lord has redeemed his servant Jacob.

21. And they did not thirst; he led them through the desert; he made the waters flow from the rock for them; he split the rock, and the waters gushed out.

22. And despite all that he has done, and even greater things, the Lord says there is no peace for the wicked.

### **1 Nephi Chapter 21**

1. The Messiah will be a light for all nations and will set free those who are imprisoned Israel will be united with strength in the last days Kings will care for them like mothers. This is similar to what Isaiah said. About 588570 B.C.

2. Listen, O people of Israel, all of you who have been separated and driven away because of the wrongdoing of the leaders of my people; yes, all of you who have been scattered, who belong to my people, O house of Israel. Pay attention, O distant lands, and hear, you people from afar; the Lord has called me since I was born; even before I was born, my name was known.

3. He has made my speech like a sharp sword; he has hidden me in the shelter of his hand, and he has prepared me like a polished arrow; he has concealed me in his quiver.

4. And he said to me: You are my servant, O Israel, through whom I will be honored.

5. Then I said, I have worked hard for nothing; I have used my strength for no good reason; surely my cause is with the Lord, and my work is with my God.

6. And now, the Lord says who formed me from birth to be his servant, to bring Jacob back to him even if Israel is not gathered, I will still be honored in the eyes of the Lord, and my God will be my strength.

7. And he said: It is a small thing for you to be my servant to restore the tribes of Jacob and to bring back those of Israel who remain. I will also make you a light for the Gentiles, so that you may bring my salvation to the ends of the earth.

8. Thus says the Lord, the Redeemer of Israel, his Holy One, to the one whom people despise, to the one

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

whom nations reject, to the servant of rulers: Kings will see you and rise, and princes will bow down because the Lord is faithful.

9. Thus says the Lord: At the right time I have listened to you, O distant islands, and in a day of salvation I have helped you; I will protect you and give you my servant as a promise to the people, to help rebuild the earth and restore the abandoned lands.

10. So you may tell the prisoners: Come out; to those who sit in darkness: Show yourselves. They will find food along the paths, and their pastures will be on high ground.

11. They will not go hungry or thirsty, nor will they be scorched by the heat or the sun; for the one who is merciful to them will lead them, and he will guide them by the springs of water.

12. I will make all my mountains into roads, and my highways will be elevated.

13. And then, O house of Israel, look, these will come from far away; and here, these will come from the north and west; and these from the land of Sinim.

14. Sing, O heavens; and rejoice, O earth; for those in the east will be established; and shout for joy, O mountains; for they will be hurt no more; for the Lord has comforted his people and will show compassion to his suffering ones.

15. But, look, Zion has said: The Lord has abandoned me, and my Lord has forgotten me but he will prove that he has not.

16. Can a mother forget the child she is nursing, and not care for her own flesh and blood? Yes, she might forget, but I will never forget you, O house of Israel.

17. Look, I have engraved you on the palms of my hands; your city walls are always before me.

18. Your children will quickly rise up against your enemies; those who ruined you will leave you.

19. Lift your eyes and see; all these gather together, and they will come to you. And as I live, says the Lord, you will surely adorn yourself with them all like jewelry, and tie them on like a bride.

20. For your abandoned and desolate places, and the land that has been destroyed, will soon become too small because of the number of its inhabitants; and those who took everything from you will be far away.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

21. The children you will have, after losing the first, will again say in your ears: This place is too small for me; make room for me to live.
22. Then you will think to yourself: Who has given me these, since I have lost my children, and am desolate, moving about as a captive? Who has raised these? Look, I was left alone; where did these come from?
23. Thus says the Lord God: Look, I will raise my hand to the Gentiles, and set up my standard for the people; and they will carry your sons in their arms, and your daughters will be held on their shoulders.
24. Kings will care for you like nursing fathers, and their queens like nursing mothers; they will bow down to you with their faces to the ground and lick the dust off your feet; and you will know that I am the Lord; for those who wait for me will not be disappointed.
25. Can anyone take something away from a strong person, or set free those who are held lawfully captive?
26. But thus says the Lord, even the captives of the strong will be taken away, and the spoils of the terrible will be rescued; for I will fight against those who are fighting against you, and I will save your children.
27. I will feed those who oppress you with their own flesh; they will be drunk with their own blood as if it were sweet wine; and all people will know that I, the Lord, am your Savior and Redeemer, the Mighty One of Jacob.

## **1 Nephi Chapter 22**

1. Israel will be spread out all over the earthIn the last days, the Gentiles will care for and support Israel by sharing the gospelIsrael will be gathered and saved, and the wicked will be destroyedThe power of evil will be defeated, and Satan will be restrained. About 588570 B.C.
2. After I, Nephi, read these records on the brass plates, my brothers asked me: What do these words mean? They wondered if they should be understood in a spiritual way, relating to what will happen through the spirit rather than the physical world.
3. I, Nephi, explained to them: These messages were revealed to the prophet through inspiration from the Spirit; everything is revealed to prophets by the Spirit regarding what will happen to humanity in the physical world.



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

4. Therefore, what I read refers to both physical and spiritual matters; it seems that the house of Israel will eventually be scattered all over the world and among all nations.
5. And indeed, many already have lost connection with those in Jerusalem. Most of the tribes have been led away; they are scattered across the seas, and nobody knows where they are, except that we know they have been led away.
6. Because they have been led away, prophecies have been made about them and about those who will later be scattered and be confused due to the Holy One of Israel; they will harden their hearts against Him, and they will be scattered among all nations and disliked by everyone.
7. However, after the Gentiles support them, and the Lord raises them up as a banner, and their children are cared for, these messages refer to physical matters; this is how the Lord's promises to our ancestors relate to us in the future, as well as all our brothers from the house of Israel.
8. It signals that the time will come when, after all of Israel has been scattered and confused, God will raise up a powerful nation among the Gentiles, even in this land; and through them, our descendants will be scattered.
9. Once our descendants are scattered, the Lord will perform a wonderful work among the Gentiles that will greatly benefit our descendants; it's like being nurtured by the Gentiles, being carried in their arms and on their shoulders.
10. This work will also be valuable for the Gentiles; and not just for them but for all of Israel, fulfilling the promises of Heaven's Father to Abraham, who was told: Through your descendants, all the families of the earth will be blessed.
11. I want you to understand that all families on earth can't be blessed unless God reveals His power to the nations.
12. Thus, the Lord will reveal His power to all nations by bringing His promises and gospel to the house of Israel.
13. Consequently, He will free them from captivity, gather them to their promised lands, bring them out of darkness, and they will understand that the Lord is their Savior and Redeemer, the Mighty One of Israel.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

14. The blood of that wicked church, known as the great whore of all the earth, will fall upon them; they will fight among themselves, and the consequences of their own actions will return to them, and they will be consumed by their own violence.

15. Every nation that wars against you, O house of Israel, will turn against each other and fall into the trap they set for the Lord's people. All who oppose Zion will be destroyed, and that great whore, who has twisted the right ways of the Lord, will crumble to the ground, and its fall will be great.

16. For the prophet says, the time is coming swiftly when Satan will no longer possess power over the hearts of people; soon, those who are arrogant and wicked will be like dry grass, and they will face destruction.

17. The time is approaching when God's full wrath will be unleashed upon all humanity; He will not allow the wicked to destroy the righteous.

18. So, He will protect the righteous with His power, even if it means His full wrath must come, ensuring the righteous are safe, even if it requires their enemies to be destroyed by fire. Therefore, the righteous need not be afraid; the prophet says they will be saved, even if it means through fire.

19. Listen up, my brothers, I tell you that these events must happen soon; indeed, blood, fire, and smoke will soon cover the earth, coming to people as a result of their hard hearts against the Holy One of Israel.

20. The righteous will not perish; the time surely will come when all who fight against Zion will be cut off.

21. The Lord will certainly prepare a way for His people to fulfill Moses' words: A prophet will be raised up by the Lord your God, like me; you must listen to everything he says. Anyone who ignores that prophet will be separated from the people.

22. Now, I, Nephi, declare to you that the prophet Moses spoke of was the Holy One of Israel; He will judge fairly.

23. The righteous need not fear, for they will not be confused. But the kingdom of evil will be built among people, which is established among those in the physical world

24. For the time will come swiftly when all churches built for profit, those seeking power over people, striving for popularity in the world, pursuing lust and doing wrong; indeed, everyone in the kingdom of evil will be

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

those who should fear and tremble; they will be brought low, consumed like dry grass, as the prophet has foretold.

25. Soon, the righteous will be lifted up like calves from the barn, and the Holy One of Israel will reign with authority, might, and great glory.

26. He gathers His children from all corners of the earth; He knows His flock, and they recognize Him; there will be one fold and one shepherd; He will feed His sheep, and they will find rest in Him.

27. Because of the righteousness of His people, Satan has no power; he cannot act for many years, as he has no control over the hearts of people living righteously while the Holy One of Israel reigns.

28. Now I, Nephi, tell you that all these things will happen in the physical world.

29. However, all nations, families, languages, and people will find safety in the Holy One of Israel if they choose to repent.

30. Now I, Nephi, conclude; for I dare not speak further on these matters.

31. So, my brothers, I want you to think about the truth of what is written on the brass plates; they testify that a person must follow God's commandments.

32. Therefore, do not think that only my father and I have taught these truths. If you follow the commandments and persevere to the end, you will be saved in the last days. And that is the truth. Amen.

## **2 Nephi**

### **2 Nephi Chapter 1**

1. After I, Nephi, finished teaching my brothers, our father, Lehi, also spoke many things to them and reminded them of the great things the Lord had done for them by bringing them out of Jerusalem.

2. He talked to them about their rebellions on the sea and how God showed them mercy by saving their lives, ensuring they weren't swallowed up by the ocean.

3. He also discussed the promised land they had received how merciful the Lord had been to warn us to escape from Jerusalem.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

4. He said, "Look, I have seen a vision showing that Jerusalem is destroyed; if we had stayed there, we would have perished too."
5. But he added, despite our struggles, we have received a promised land, one that is better than all others; a land that the Lord God has promised me will be for my descendants. Yes, the Lord has given this land to me and to my children forever, along with all those who are led here from other countries by His hand.
6. Therefore, I, Lehi, prophesy based on the inspiration I feel inside me that no one will come to this land unless they are guided here by the hand of the Lord.
7. Thus, this land is dedicated to those whom He brings here. If they serve Him according to His commandments, it will be a land of freedom for them; they will never be taken captive unless they commit wrongdoing. If sin is prevalent, the land will become cursed for their sake, but for the righteous, it will be blessed forever.
8. And indeed, it is wise that this land remains unknown to other nations; many nations would overrun it and leave no space for inheritance.
9. For I, Lehi, have been given a promise that as long as those whom the Lord brings from Jerusalem keep His commandments, they will thrive in this land; they will be protected from other nations so they can possess this land for themselves. If they keep His commandments, they will be blessed in this land, and no one will harm them or seize their inheritance; they shall live safely forever.
10. But when the time comes that they fall into disbelief, after receiving so many blessings from the Lord knowing about the creation of the earth and mankind, aware of the marvelous works of the Lord since the beginning; given power through faith to do anything; having received all the commandments, and being brought by His infinite goodness into this precious promised land if the day comes when they reject the Holy One of Israel, the true Messiah, their Redeemer and God, then the just judgments of God will rest upon them.
11. Yes, He will bring other nations against them, give them power, take away their lands, and cause them to be scattered and afflicted.
12. Yes, as one generation passes to another, there will be bloodshed and severe punishments among them;

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

therefore, my sons, I wish you would remember; I hope you will listen to my words.

13. Oh that you would awake; awaken from a deep sleep, even from the torment of hell, and shake off the terrible chains that bind you, which lead men to be captured and suffer eternal misery.

14. Awake! Arise from the dust, and hear the words of a concerned parent whose life you must soon lay to rest in the cold, silent grave, from which no traveler returns; just a few more days, and I will follow the path of all mortals.

15. But behold, the Lord has saved my soul from hell; I have seen His glory, and I am forever surrounded by His love.

16. And I wish for you to remember to follow the laws and commandments of the Lord; this has been my deepest concern since the beginning.

17. My heart has been burdened with sorrow from time to time, because I fear that due to your stubbornness, the Lord your God may come out with His full wrath against you, cutting you off and destroying you forever;

18. Or that a curse could fall upon you for many generations; you could suffer from swords, famine, hatred, and be led according to the will of the devil into captivity.

19. Oh my sons, may these things not happen to you, but instead, may you be a chosen and favored people of the Lord. However, may His will be done; for His paths are always right.

20. And He has said that if you keep My commandments, you will thrive in the land; but if you do not keep them, you will be cut off from My presence.

21. And now, so my soul may rejoice in you, and my heart may leave this world with happiness because of you, and I may not be overwhelmed by grief and sorrow in the grave, arise from the dust, my sons, be strong, and be united in mind and heart, so that you will not fall into bondage;

22. So you will not be cursed with a dreadful curse and not incur the anger of a just God upon you, leading to the destruction of both body and soul.

23. Awake, my sons; put on the armor of righteousness. Shake off the chains that hold you, and come forth from obscurity, and rise from the dust.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

24. Do not rebel against your brother, whose opinions have been wonderful, who has followed the commandments since we left Jerusalem, and who has been an instrument in God's hands in bringing us to this promised land; for if not for him, we would have starved in the wilderness; yet you sought to take his life; and he has suffered greatly because of you.

25. I am extremely afraid and tremble for you, lest he suffer once again; for see, you have accused him of seeking power and authority over you; but I know he does not seek power or authority over you; he seeks the glory of God and your own eternal wellbeing.

26. You have complained because he has been straightforward with you. You say he has been harsh; you claim he has been angry with you; but behold, his sharpness was the strength of Gods words within him; and what you call anger was simply the truth, according to what is in God, which he could not suppress, speaking boldly about your wrongdoings.

27. It must be that God's power must be with him, even in commanding you to obey. But it is not him, rather, it is the Spirit of the Lord in him, which opens his mouth with words he cannot restrain.

28. And now my son, Laman, and also Lemuel and Sam, as well as my sons who are the sons of Ishmael, listen: if you will hear Nephi's voice, you will not perish. And if you listen to him, I leave you a blessing, yes, even my highest blessing.

29. But if you do not listen to him, I will take back my highest blessing, yes, my blessing, and it shall rest upon him.

30. And now, Zoram, I speak to you: Behold, you are Laban's servant; nevertheless, you have been brought from Jerusalem, and I know you are a true friend to my son, Nephi, forever.

31. Thus, because you have been faithful, your descendants will be blessed with his descendants, that they may live in prosperity for a long time in this land; and nothing, unless there is wrongdoing among them, will harm or disrupt their prosperity in this land forever.

32. Therefore, if you keep the Lord's commandments, the Lord has designated this land for the safety of your descendants along with my son's descendants.

## **2 Nephi Chapter 2**

1. Redemption is found through the Holy Messiah Having the ability to choose is crucial for life and growth Adam fell so that people could exist People have the freedom to choose liberty and eternal life.
2. Jacob, I want to talk to you: You are my first child during my struggles in the wilderness. You have faced hardships and much sadness in your youth because of how harsh your brothers have been.
3. Still, Jacob, my first child in the wilderness, you know how great God is; He will turn your difficulties into something good for you.
4. As a result, you will be blessed, and you will live safely with your brother, Nephi; you will spend your life serving God. Therefore, I am confident that you are saved because of the goodness of your Redeemer; you have seen that in due time, He comes to offer salvation to all people.
5. You have seen His glory in your youth; thus, you are blessed just like those He will help in person; the Spirit remains the same through all time. The way has been prepared since the beginning, and salvation is freely available.
6. People are taught enough to recognize right from wrong. Laws have been given to them. However, no one can be justified by the law; or, through the law, people are separated from good. Yes, through earthly laws they were cut off; and also, through spiritual laws they lose connection with what is good and become forever miserable.
7. Thus, salvation comes through the Holy Messiah; He is full of grace and truth.
8. Look, He offers Himself as a sacrifice for sin, fulfilling the requirements of the law for those who are brokenhearted and humble; and no one else can fulfill the laws requirements.
9. Hence, it is very important to share these truths with the people of the world, so they understand that no one can stand in the presence of God without the merits, mercy, and grace of the Holy Messiah, who sacrificed His life in the flesh, and took it back by the Spirits power, to bring about the resurrection, being the first to rise.
10. Therefore, He is the first to bless God since He will intercede for all mankind; and those who believe in Him will be saved.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

11. And because He intercedes for everyone, all people can come to God; thus, they will stand in His presence to be judged according to the truth and holiness that are found in Him. Consequently, the purposes of the law given by the Holy One involve punishment, which contrasts with happiness; this serves the purpose of making atonement

12. For there must be an opposition in all things. If this were not the case, my firstborn in the wilderness, righteousness could not exist, nor could wickedness, holiness or misery, or good or bad. Hence, all things must be a mixture; if it were solely one kind, it would remain lifeless, lacking life or death, corruption or purity, joy or distress, or sensitivity or insensitivity.

13. Thus, it could only have been created for no reason; therefore, there would be no purpose in its creation. This scenario would undermine the wisdom of God and His eternal plans, along with His power, mercy, and justice.

14. If you claim there is no law, you must also claim there is no sin. If you say there is no sin, then you must also say there is no righteousness. And without righteousness, there can be no happiness. And if there is neither righteousness nor happiness, then there can be neither punishment nor misery. If none of these exist, then there is no God. If there is no God, then we do not exist, nor does the earth; because there could have been no creation or actions; thus, everything would have simply vanished.

15. Now, my sons, I share these truths with you for your understanding and benefit; for there is a God who created everything, both the heavens and the earth, and all that exists in them, including things that act and things that are acted upon.

16. To accomplish His eternal goals for humanity, after creating our first parents, along with the animals and birds, and everything that exists, there must have been opposites; even the forbidden fruit contrasted with the tree of life; one being sweet and the other bitter.

17. Thus, God gave man the ability to choose for himself. Therefore, man could not choose unless he was tempted by one option or the other.

18. According to what I, Lehi, have read, I must conclude that an angel of God, as written, fell from heaven;



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

thus, becoming a devil by seeking evil in Gods sight.

19. And because he fell from heaven and became forever miserable, he sought to bring misery to all humanity.

Thus, he told Eve, through the ancient serpent, who is the devil and the father of lies: Eat the forbidden fruit, and you will not die, but you will be like God, knowing good and evil.

20. After Adam and Eve ate the forbidden fruit, they were cast out of the garden of Eden to cultivate the earth.

21. They started families; indeed, all of humanity came from them.

22. And the life of humans was extended by Gods will so they could repent during their time on earth; hence, their existence became a test, and their time was prolonged, according to the commandments given by the Lord God. He commanded that everyone must repent, as He showed everyone that they were lost because of their parents' mistakes.

23. Now, behold, if Adam had not sinned, he would not have fallen, and he would have stayed in the garden of Eden. Everything that was created would have stayed in the same condition as it was upon creation; they would have remained forever without end.

24. And they would not have had children; thus, they would have remained innocent and would have lacked joy, for they would not have known suffering; they would have done no good, for they would not have known sin.

25. However, everything has occurred in the wisdom of the One who knows all things.

26. Adam fell so that individuals could exist; and individuals exist so they can find joy.

27. The Messiah comes at the perfect time to redeem humanity from the fall. Because they are redeemed, they become free forever, able to distinguish right from wrong; they can make their own choices rather than being controlled, except by the consequences of the law on the final judgment day, according to the commands given by God.

28. Therefore, people are free in their physical existence; and all things that are beneficial are given to them. They have the freedom to choose liberty and eternal life through the great Mediator of everyone, or to choose captivity and death, subject to the devils power; for he desires all to be miserable like him.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

29. Now, my sons, I urge you to look to the great Mediator, listen to His important commandments; be devoted to His teachings, and choose eternal life according to the will of His Holy Spirit;

30. And do not choose eternal death, according to the desires of the flesh and the evil that resides within, which empowers the devils spirit to control you, leading you to destruction, where he may rule over you in his own domain.

31. I have shared these brief words with you all, my sons, during the final moments of my life; I have chosen what is good, following the prophets words. My only goal is the everlasting welfare of your souls. Amen.

### **2 Nephi Chapter 3**

1. Joseph in Egypt had a vision of the NephitesHe predicted the coming of Joseph Smith, a prophet of the latter days; of Moses, who would free Israel; and the appearance of the Book of Mormon. About 588570 B.C.

2. Now I speak to you, Joseph, my youngest son. You were born during a time of great hardship for me; yes, your mother brought you into the world during my deepest sorrow.

3. May the Lord also dedicate this land to you, a very valuable land for your inheritance and that of your descendants, alongside your brothers, for your forever security, if you and your descendants keep the commandments of the Holy One of Israel.

4. And now, Joseph, my youngest son, whom I have brought out of my wilderness of struggles, may the Lord bless you always, for your offspring will not be completely destroyed.

5. For you are a part of my family; and I am a descendant of Joseph who was taken captive in Egypt. And the promises made to Joseph by the Lord were significant.

6. So, Joseph truly foresaw our time. He received a promise from the Lord that from his lineage, the Lord would raise up a righteous person for the house of Israel; not the Messiah, but a branch that would be separated, yet remembered in the Lord's covenants, so that the Messiah would be revealed to them in the last days, bringing them from darkness to lightyes, from hidden darkness and slavery to freedom.

7. For Joseph truly testified, saying: The Lord my God will raise up a seer who will be a special prophet from my descendants.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

8. Yes, Joseph truly declared: The Lord said to me: I will raise up a special seer from your family, and he will be highly regarded among your descendants. To him, I will command to do a great work for your family, which will be very valuable to them, bringing them to the understanding of the covenants I made with your ancestors.

9. And I will command him to do nothing but what I instruct him to do. And I will make him important in my eyes; for he will accomplish my work.

10. And he will be great like Moses, whom I said I would raise up for you to free my people, O house of Israel.

11. And I will raise up Moses, to deliver your people from Egypt.

12. But a seer will I raise up from your lineage; to him, I will give the power to bring forth my word to your descendants and not just to bring forth my word, says the Lord, but to convince them of my word, which will already have been shared among them.

13. Therefore, your descendants will write; and the descendants of Judah will write; and the writings from your descendants, along with those from the descendants of Judah, will come together, causing confusion for false beliefs, settling disputes, bringing peace among your descendants, and leading them to remember their ancestors in the last days, and also to understand my covenants, says the Lord.

14. And out of weakness, he will gain strength on the day when my work begins among all my people, to restore you, O house of Israel, says the Lord.

15. And so Joseph prophesied, saying: Look, that seer will be blessed by the Lord; and those who try to harm him will be confused; for this promise I received from the Lord about my descendants will come true. Look, I am confident about the fulfillment of this promise;

16. And his name will be after mine; and it will be after his father's name. He will be like me; because what the Lord will bring forth through him will lead my people to salvation by the power of the Lord.

17. Indeed, thus Joseph prophesied: I am certain about this matter, just as I am certain about the promise given to Moses; for the Lord has said to me, I will preserve your lineage forever.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

18. And the Lord has also said: I will raise up a Moses; and I will give him power with a rod; and I will provide him with written judgments. Yet, I will not loosen his tongue, so he will not speak much, for I will not make him powerful in speech. But I will write my law to him with my own hand; and I will provide him a spokesperson.

19. And the Lord also said to me: I will raise up someone from your descendants; and I will provide him a spokesperson. And behold, I will have him write the words for his genealogy, to his descendants; and the spokesperson for your descendants will announce them.

20. The words that he will write will be what I consider necessary to go forth to your descendants. And it will be as if your descendants had called out to them from the dust; for I know their faith.

21. And they will call from the dust; yes, even asking for repentance for their brothers, even after many generations have passed. And it will happen that their calling will resonate, even in simple words.

22. Because of their faith, their words will come forth from my mouth to their brothers who are your descendants; and I will strengthen their weak words in their faith, reminding them of my covenant made with your ancestors.

23. And now, behold, my son Joseph, in this way did my father of old prophesy.

24. Therefore, because of this covenant, you are blessed; for your descendants will not be destroyed, for they will listen to the words of the book.

25. And there will arise a mighty one among them, who will do much good in both word and deed, serving as an instrument in Gods hands, with great faith, to perform mighty miracles, and accomplish great things in Gods sight, to bring about much restoration to the house of Israel and your brothers descendants.

26. And now, blessed are you, Joseph. Behold, you are small; so listen to the words of your brother, Nephi, and it will be done to you according to the words I have spoken. Remember the words of your dying father. Amen.

## **2 Nephi Chapter 4**

1. Now, I, Nephi, want to talk about the prophecies my father shared about Joseph, who was taken to Egypt.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

2. He truly predicted things about all his descendants. There are not many prophecies greater than those he wrote. He also prophesied about us and our future generations, and these are recorded on the brass plates.
3. After my father finished discussing Josephs prophecies, he called the children of Lamanhis sons and daughtersand addressed them: Listen to my words, my sons and daughters, who are the descendants of my firstborn.
4. The Lord God has said: If you keep my commandments, you will do well in the land; if you do not keep my commandments, you will be cut off from my presence.
5. But look, my sons and daughters, I cant die without leaving you a blessing; I know that if you are raised in the right way, you will not stray from it.
6. So, if you are cursed, I leave my blessing with you, that the curse may be lifted from you and fall upon your parents instead.
7. Because of my blessing, the Lord God will not allow you to be destroyed; He will show mercy to you and your descendants forever.
8. After my father finished speaking to Lamans children, he had Lemuel's children brought to him.
9. He spoke to them, saying: Look, my sons and daughters, who are the children of my second son; I give you the same blessing I gave the children of Laman; you will not be completely destroyed; ultimately, your descendants will be blessed.
10. Then my father spoke to the sons of Ishmael and all his family.
11. After he finished with them, he addressed Sam, saying: You are blessed, along with your descendants; you will inherit the land just like your brother Nephi. Your descendants will be counted with his; you will be like your brother, and your descendants be like his; you will be blessed all your days.
12. After my father, Lehi, had spoken to everyone in our family, as he felt in his heart and by the Spirit of the Lord within him, he grew old. Eventually, he died and was buried.
13. Not long after his death, Laman, Lemuel, and the sons of Ishmael became angry with me because of the Lord's guidance.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

14. I, Nephi, felt compelled to speak to them, as the Lord commanded; I had shared many things with them, as had my father before he passed away; many of those words are recorded on my other plates, which tell a more detailed history.

15. On these plates, I write about my soul and many of the scriptures found on the brass plates. I truly enjoy the scriptures; I reflect on them and record them for the education and benefit of my children.

16. My soul finds joy in the Lords things; I continually think about what I have seen and heard.

17. Despite the incredible goodness of the Lord in showing me His great and marvelous works, I lament: What a miserable person I am! I feel sorrow for my physical weaknesses; my soul grieves because of my wrongdoings.

18. I am surrounded by temptations and sins that easily ensnare me.

19. When I want to rejoice, my heart aches because of my sins; still, I know in whom I have faith.

20. My God has been my strength; He has guided me through challenges in the wilderness and has kept me safe on the vast waters.

21. He has filled me with His love, even to the point of overwhelming me.

22. He has confused my enemies so that they tremble before me.

23. He has heard my cries in the daytime and granted me understanding through visions at night.

24. During the day, I have been bold in prayer before Him; I have lifted my voice high, and angels have come down to help me.

25. By the power of His Spirit, I have been carried away to high mountains. I have seen incredible things, too great for man; therefore, I was told not to write them down.

26. If I have witnessed such great things, and if the Lord has shown so much mercy toward humanity, why should my heart weep and my soul linger in sorrow, and my body wear out and my strength wane because of my troubles?

27. Why should I give in to sin just because of my physical desires? Why let temptations take control of my heart and disrupt my peace and afflict my soul? Why should I feel anger because of my enemies?

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

28. Awake, my soul! Do not give in to sin any longer. Rejoice, my heart, and do not allow the enemy of my soul to have a place.

29. Do not let anger take hold because of my enemies. Do not weaken my strength due to my struggles.

30. Rejoice, my heart, and call out to the Lord, saying: O Lord, I will praise you forever; my soul will rejoice in you, my God, and the rock of my salvation.

31. O Lord, will you save my soul? Will you rescue me from my enemies grasp? Will you strengthen me to resist sin?

32. May the gates of hell be forever closed to me, for my heart is broken, and my spirit is humble! O Lord, do not close the gates of your righteousness before me, that I may walk the path of humility, clear and straight!

33. O Lord, wrap me in your robe of righteousness! O Lord, make a way for my escape from my enemies! Make my path clear before me! Do not let me stumble, but clear my way and obstruct my enemies instead.

34. O Lord, I trust in you and will continue to trust in you forever. I will not rely on human strength; I know that it is a curse to depend on the arm of flesh. Yes, it is a curse to trust in man or make flesh your support.

35. I know that God gives generously to those who ask. Yes, my God will give me what I need if I ask sincerely; therefore, I will lift my voice to you; I will cry out to you, my God, the rock of my righteousness.

My voice will always rise up to you, my rock and eternal God. Amen.

## **2 Nephi Chapter 5**

1. Look, I cried out a lot to the Lord my God because my brothers were angry with me.

2. But their anger grew even more intense, to the point that they wanted to kill me.

3. They complained about me, saying: Our younger brother thinks he should be in charge; we've suffered a lot because of him. So now let's kill him to stop being troubled by his words. We don't want him as our leader; we, the older brothers, should lead our people.

4. I won't write down everything they said against me, but it's enough to say that they wanted to take my life.

5. Then the Lord warned me that I, Nephi, needed to leave them and flee into the wilderness, bringing whoever wanted to join me.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

6. So, I took my family, Zoram and his family, my older brother Sam and his family, my younger brothers Jacob and Joseph, my sisters, and everyone else who wanted to come with me. Those who chose to come with me believed in Gods warnings and revelations, so they listened to what I said.

7. We gathered our tents and everything we could carry, and we traveled in the wilderness for many days. After traveling for many days, we set up our tents.

8. The people wanted to name the place Nephi, so we called it Nephi.

9. All those who were with me decided to call themselves the people of Nephi.

10. We made sure to follow the teachings, rules, and commandments of the Lord in everything, according to the law of Moses.

11. The Lord was with us, and we achieved great success; we planted seeds and reaped bountifully. We started raising flocks, herds, and all kinds of animals.

12. I had also brought the records engraved on the brass plates, and the ball or compass that the Lord had prepared for my father, as mentioned in the scriptures.

13. We prospered greatly and multiplied in the land.

14. I took Laban's sword and made many swords like it, to protect ourselves from the people now known as Lamanites, because I knew about their hatred toward me, my children, and my people.

15. I taught my people how to build structures and work with all sorts of materials like wood, iron, copper, brass, steel, gold, silver, and precious metals, which were plentiful.

16. I built a temple, modeled after Solomon's temple, but not made of precious materials because they werent available, so it couldnt be exactly like Solomons temple. However, it was constructed in a similar way, and the workmanship was very fine.

17. I made sure my people worked hard and labored with their hands.

18. They wanted me to be their king, but I preferred that they have no king; nonetheless, I did what I could for them.

19. The Lords words to my brothers were fulfilled, saying I should be their ruler and teacher. So, I led and



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

instructed them according to the Lord's commandments until they sought to kill me.

20. Thus, the Lord's word was fulfilled, which said that because they would not listen to me, they would be cut off from His presence. And indeed, they were cut off.

21. The Lord caused a serious curse to come upon them because of their wickedness. They hardened their hearts against Him, becoming as hard as stone. As they were a beautiful people, to prevent them from being attractive to my people, the Lord made their skin dark.

22. The Lord God said: I will make them detestable to your people unless they repent of their sins.

23. And anyone who mixes with their people will also be cursed, receiving the same curse. The Lord spoke, and it happened.

24. Because of their curse, they became a lazy, troublesome people, seeking wild animals to hunt in the wilderness.

25. The Lord God told me: They will be a scourge to your descendants, to remind them of me; and if they do not remember me and listen to my words, they will be punished even to destruction.

26. I consecrated Jacob and Joseph to be priests and teachers for my people.

27. We lived happily together.

28. Thirty years had passed since we left Jerusalem.

29. I kept the records of my people on the plates I made.

30. Then the Lord God instructed me to create more plates to engrave many good things for the benefit of my people.

31. So, I, Nephi, obeying the Lord's commandments, went and made these plates where I engraved these things.

32. I wrote what is pleasing to God. If my people appreciate God's words, they will like what I've engraved on these plates.

33. If my people want to know more details about their history, they should search my other plates.

34. It's enough to say that forty years had passed, and we had already engaged in wars and conflicts with our

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

brothers.

### **2 Nephi Chapter 6**

1. Jacob recounts Jewish history: The Babylonian captivity and return; the ministry and crucifixion of the Holy One of Israel; the help received from the Gentiles; and the Jews latter-day restoration when they believe in the Messiah. About 559545 B.C.
2. The words of Jacob, the brother of Nephi, which he spoke to the people of Nephi:
3. Listen, my dear friends, I, Jacob, have been called by God and set apart for my sacred role, and my brother Nephi has ordained me; you look to him as your king and protector, and you rely on him for your safety. You know that I have shared a lot with you already.
4. Still, I want to talk to you again because I care deeply about your spiritual well-being. Yes, I worry greatly for you, as you know I always have. I have urged you with great effort; I have taught you the words of my father; and I have discussed everything that has been written since the beginning of the world.
5. Now, I want to talk to you about both current events and future happenings; therefore, I will share with you the words of Isaiah. These are the words my brother asked me to convey to you. I speak for your benefit, so that you may learn and honor the name of your God.
6. Now, the words I will read are those that Isaiah proclaimed for all the descendants of Israel; thus, they can be related to you, as you are also part of the house of Israel. Many of the things Isaiah said can be related to you, because you belong to the house of Israel.
7. Here are the words: This is what the Lord God says: Look, I will raise my hand to the Gentiles and establish my banner for the people; they will carry your sons in their arms, and your daughters will be held on their shoulders.
8. Kings will care for you like fathers, and queens will care for you like mothers; they will bow to you with their faces to the ground and lick the dust off your feet; and you will know that I am the Lord; for those who wait for me will not be ashamed.
9. Now I, Jacob, want to say a bit about these words. Look, the Lord has revealed to me that the people in

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

Jerusalem, where we came from, have been killed and taken captive.

10. However, the Lord also revealed to me that they will return. He also showed me that the Lord God, the Holy One of Israel, will reveal himself to them in person; and after he reveals himself, they will beat and crucify him, just as the angel told me.

11. After they have hardened their hearts and resisted the Holy One of Israel, the judgments of the Holy One of Israel will come upon them. A day will come when they will be struck down and suffer greatly.

12. So, after they are tossed about, as the angel says, many will suffer in body but will not perish because of the prayers of the faithful; they will be scattered, stricken, and hated; yet, the Lord will be merciful to them. When they come to recognize their Redeemer, they will be gathered back to their rightful lands.

13. Blessed are the Gentiles, the ones the prophet talked about; for behold, if they repent and do not fight against Zion, and do not join that great and wicked church, they will be saved; for the Lord God will keep his promises to his children; and this is why the prophet wrote these things.

14. Therefore, those who oppose Zion and the Lord's covenant people will bow down to them; and the people of the Lord will not be ashamed. For the people of the Lord are those who wait for him; they still look forward to the coming of the Messiah.

15. And look, according to the prophet's words, the Messiah will come again to reclaim them; therefore, he will reveal himself to them with great power and glory to destroy their enemies, at the time when they believe in him; and none who believe in him will be destroyed.

16. But those who do not believe in him will be destroyed by fire, storms, earthquakes, violence, disease, and famine. And they will know that the Lord is God, the Holy One of Israel.

17. Can the strong take away the prey, or set free those taken captive?

18. But the Lord says: Even the captives of the strong will be taken away, and the prey of the cruel will be rescued; for the Mighty God will save his covenant people. The Lord says: I will fight against those who fight against you

19. And I will make those who oppress you consume their own flesh; they will be intoxicated with their own

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

blood as if it were sweet wine; and all will know that I, the Lord, am your Savior and Redeemer, the Mighty One of Jacob.

### **2 Nephi Chapter 7**

1. Yes, the Lord asks: Have I abandoned you or cast you away for good? Where is the proof that your mother was divorced? To whom have I sent you away, or to which of my creditors have I sold you? Truly, to whom have I sold you? Look, its because of your sins that you have sold yourselves, and your mother is put away because of your wrongdoings.
2. So, when I came, there was no one there; when I called, no one answered. O house of Israel, is my power so limited that I cannot save, or do I lack the ability to rescue? Look, with just a word from me, I can dry up the sea, turn their rivers into deserts, and make the fish stink because the waters are gone, leading them to die from thirst.
3. I cover the skies with darkness and make them as a shroud of mourning.
4. The Lord God has given me the ability to speak wisely, so that I can offer you the right words at the right time, O house of Israel. When you are tired, He wakes me up each morning and opens my ears to listen like a student.
5. The Lord God has opened my ears, and I did not resist or turn away.
6. I have offered my back to those who hit me, and my cheeks to those who pulled out my beard. I did not hide my face from shame and insults.
7. The Lord God will assist me, so I will not be ashamed. Therefore, I have made my resolve strong, knowing I will not be humiliated.
8. And the Lord is close, and He will defend me. Who will argue with me? Lets stand together. Who is my opponent? Let them approach, and I will confront them with my words.
9. For the Lord God will provide for me. And all those who accuse me will wear out like old clothes, and the moth will consume them.
10. Who among you fears the Lord and listens to His servant, yet walks in darkness without any light?

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

11. Look, all of you who start fires and surround yourselves with sparks, go ahead and walk in the light of your own fire and the sparks you have started. This is what you will receive from my hand you will lie down in grief.

### **2 Nephi Chapter 8**

1. Jacob continues reading from Isaiah: In the last days, the Lord will bring comfort to Zion and gather the people of Israel Those who are redeemed will come to Zion with great joy.
2. Listen to me, you who seek to live righteously. Remember the source from which you came, and consider the depths from which you were lifted.
3. Remember Abraham, your ancestor, and Sarah, who gave you birth; I called him when he was alone, and I blessed him.
4. The Lord will comfort Zion; He will restore all her ruined places; He will turn her wasteland into a paradise, and her desert into a garden like the Lords. Joy and happiness will be found there, along with gratitude and the sound of songs.
5. Listen to me, my people; pay attention to me, my nation; for I will bring forth a law, and my judgment will be a guiding light for the people.
6. My righteousness is near; my salvation has come, and my strength will judge the people. The islands will wait for me, and they will trust in my strength.
7. Lift up your eyes to the skies and look down at the earth below; for the skies will disappear like smoke, and the earth will wear out like clothing; the people living on earth will die like that. But my salvation will last forever, and my righteousness will never vanish.
8. Listen to me, you who know righteousness, the people in whose hearts I have written my law; do not be afraid of the insults from men, nor be disheartened by their mockery.
9. For the moth will consume them like fabric, and the worm will eat them like wool. But my righteousness will last forever, and my salvation will continue from generation to generation.
10. Wake up, wake up! Put on strength, O arm of the Lord; awaken as you did in ancient times. Aren't you the

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

one who defeated Rahab and wounded the sea monster?

11. Aren't you the one who dried up the sea, the mighty waters; who made a path through the depths of the sea for the redeemed to cross?

12. Therefore, those redeemed by the Lord will return and come to Zion with singing; everlasting joy and holiness will be upon them; they will find happiness and joy, and sorrow and mourning will disappear.

13. I am the one who comforts you. So, why should you be afraid of a mere mortal, who will die, or the human being, who is like grass?

14. And you forget the Lord your Maker, who stretched out the heavens and laid the foundations of the earth, and you live every day in fear of the oppressor, as if he is ready to destroy you? Where is the anger of your oppressor?

15. The captive exile is eager to be freed, to avoid dying in the pit and to ensure he does not run out of food.

16. But I am the Lord your God, whose waves roared; the Lord of Hosts is my name.

17. I have placed my words in your mouth and concealed you in the shadow of my hand, so that I may create the heavens and establish the earth, and say to Zion: Look, you are my people.

18. Awake, awake! Stand up, O Jerusalem, who has tasted the Lord's anger you have drunk from the cup of His wrath and have consumed the bitter dregs

19. And there is no one to guide her among all her children; nor anyone to reach out a hand to her from all the sons she has raised.

20. These two sons have approached you, who will feel sorrow for you your destruction and desolation, the famine and the sword who will comfort you?

21. Your children have fainted, except for these two; they lie at the head of every street; like a wild bull caught in a trap, they are filled with the Lord's anger, the rebuke of your God.

22. So now listen to this, you who are afflicted and drunk, but not with wine:

23. Thus says your Lord, the Lord who is your God, who advocates for His people; look, I have taken the cup of trembling out of your hands, the bitter dregs of my anger; you will no longer drink it.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

24. But I will hand it to those who hurt you; those who said to you: Bow down so we can walk over you and you have laid your body like ground and a road for them to cross.

25. Wake up, wake up! Put on your strength, O Zion; put on your splendid garments, O holy city of Jerusalem; for from now on, no uncircumcised or unclean person will enter you.

26. Shake off the dust; rise up, sit down, O Jerusalem; free yourself from the chains around your neck, O captive daughter of Zion.

## **2 Nephi Chapter 9**

1. Jacob talks about how the Jews will be brought together in all their promised lands The Atonement saves humans from the Fall The bodies of the dead will rise from the grave, and their spirits from hell and paradise They will face judgment The Atonement protects from death, hell, the devil, and everlasting suffering The righteous will be saved in God's kingdom Consequences for sins are explained The Holy One of Israel is the gatekeeper. About 559545 B.C.

2. Now, my dear brothers and sisters, I've shared these things so you can understand the promises the Lord made with the whole house of Israel

3. He has communicated with the Jews, through His holy prophets, from the very start and across generations, until the time comes when they will be brought back to the true church and family of God; when they will return to their promised lands and be established in all their inheritance.

4. I want you to understand these things so you can be joyful and always hold your heads high, because of the blessings the Lord God will give to your children.

5. I know many of you have sought to understand what the future holds; therefore, I know you realize that our physical bodies will wear out and die; however, we will still see God in our bodies.

6. Yes, I know you understand that He will reveal Himself to those in Jerusalem, from where we originated; it is necessary for Him to do this among them; it is right that the great Creator should become like us in the flesh and die for everyone, so that all might become subject to Him.

7. Just as death came upon all people to fulfill the kind plan of the great Creator, there must be the power of

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

resurrection, which comes to humans because of the Fall; and the Fall occurred because of sin; and because humans fell, they were cut off from God's presence.

8. Therefore, there must be an infinite atonement without such an atonement, this corruption could not become incorruptible. If it didn't, the first judgment on humanity would have lasted forever. If that were the case, our flesh would simply decay and return to the earth without rising again.

9. Oh, the wisdom of God, His mercy and grace! For if the flesh were never to rise again, our spirits would be captured by that fallen angel, who became the devil, never to rise again.

10. Our spirits would be made like him, and we would become devils, companions to a devil, excluded from the presence of our God and stuck with the father of lies, in misery like his own; yes, to that being who deceived our first parents, who transforms himself to look nearly like an angel of light, and incites people to secret plots of murder and all kinds of dark actions.

11. Oh, how great is the goodness of our God, who provides a way for us to escape this terrifying monster; yes, that monster, death and hell, which I call the death of the body and also the death of the spirit.

12. Because of God's plan for our deliverance, this death, which I have referred to as the physical, will give up its dead; this death is the grave.

13. And the spiritual death I mentioned will release its dead; this spiritual death is hell; therefore, death and hell must release their dead, hell must give back its captured spirits, and the grave must give back its captured bodies, and the bodies and spirits of people will be reunited; all through the power of the resurrection from the Holy One of Israel.

14. Oh, how great is our God's plan! For on the other side, the paradise of God must turn over the spirits of the righteous, and the grave must give back the bodies of the righteous; and spirit and body will be restored together, and everyone will become incorruptible and immortal, living as souls with perfect knowledge just like we have in the flesh, except that our knowledge will be perfected.

15. So we will have perfect awareness of all our guilt and our impurities and our nakedness; and the righteous will have perfect knowledge of their joy and their goodness, being clothed with purity and even with the robe



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

of righteousness.

16. And it will happen that when all people have transitioned from this first death to life, as they become immortal, they must stand before the judgment seat of the Holy One of Israel; and at that point comes the judgment, and then they must be judged according to God's holy judgment.

17. And surely, as the Lord lives, for the Lord God has declared it, and it is His eternal word that cannot be undone, the righteous will remain righteous, and those who are corrupted will remain corrupted; hence, those who are filthy are the devil and his angels, and they will go away into everlasting fire, created for them; and their torment will be like a lake of fire and brimstone, whose flames rise forever and ever without end.

18. Oh, the greatness and justice of our God! For He fulfills all that He says, and His words have come forth from His mouth, and His law must be upheld.

19. But, behold, the righteous, the saints of the Holy One of Israel, those who have believed in Him, who have endured the trials of the world and shunned its shame, they will inherit the kingdom of God, prepared for them since the world's foundation, and their joy will be complete forever.

20. Oh, the vast mercy of our God, the Holy One of Israel! For He rescues His saints from that dreadful monster, the devil, and from death, from hell, and from that endless lake of fire and brimstone of suffering.

21. Oh, how great the holiness of our God! For He knows all things, and there is nothing He does not know.

22. He comes into the world so that He might save everyone who listens to His call; for behold, He bears the pains of all people, yes, the suffering of every being, men, women, and children, who belong to humanity.

23. And He endures this so that resurrection can happen for all, so that everyone may stand before Him on that great judgment day.

24. He commands everyone to repent and be baptized in His name, having complete faith in the Holy One of Israel, or they cannot be saved in God's kingdom.

25. And if they refuse to repent, believe in His name, and be baptized in His name, and endure to the end, they will be condemned; for the Lord God, the Holy One of Israel, has declared it.

26. Therefore, He has given a law; and where there is no law, there is no punishment; where there is no

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

punishment, there is no condemnation; and where there is no condemnation, the mercies of the Holy One of Israel apply, because of the atonement; they are saved by His power.

27. The atonement satisfies the demands of His justice for all those who have not received the law, saving them from that dreadful monster, death and hell, the devil, and the endless lake of fire; and they are restored to the God who gave them life, the Holy One of Israel.

28. But woe to anyone who has received the law, yes, and has all of God's commandments like we do, yet breaks them and squanders the time of their probation; for their fate is terrifying!

29. Oh, the deceptive plan of the evil one! Oh, the uselessness, weaknesses, and foolishness of people! When they are educated, they think they are wise and do not listen to God's counsel; they disregard it, thinking they know better, so their wisdom is foolishness and brings them no benefit. And they will be lost.

30. But being educated is good as long as they heed God's counsel.

31. But woe to the wealthy, those rich in worldly things. Because they have wealth, they look down on the poor, persecute the humble, and focus on their treasures; consequently, their treasure becomes their god. And look, their treasure will perish along with them.

32. And woe to the deaf who refuse to listen; for they will perish.

33. Woe to the blind who refuse to see; for they will also perish.

34. Woe to the unclean-hearted, for the knowledge of their sins will strike them on the last day.

35. Woe to the liar, for he will be cast down to hell.

36. Woe to the murderer who kills intentionally, for he will die.

37. Woe to those who commit sexual immorality, for they will be cast down to hell.

38. Yes, woe to those who worship idols, for the worst of all devils rejoices in them.

39. And lastly, woe to all those who die in their sins; for they will return to God, see His face, and remain in their sins.

40. Oh, my dear brothers and sisters, remember the seriousness of sinning against that Holy God, and also the seriousness of giving in to the temptations of that crafty one. Remember, being focused on worldly desires

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

leads to death, while being spiritually focused leads to eternal life.

41. Oh, my dear brothers and sisters, pay attention to my words. Remember the importance of the Holy One of Israel. Do not say that I have spoken harshly to you; for if you do, you will reject the truth; for I have shared the words of your Creator. I know that the truth can seem harsh against all impurity; but the righteous do not fear them, for they love the truth and are not shaken.

42. So then, my dear brothers and sisters, come to the Lord, the Holy One. Remember that His ways are right. The path for man is narrow, but it lies straight ahead, and the keeper of the gate is the Holy One of Israel; He has no servants there; and there is no other way except through the gate; for He cannot be fooled, for the Lord God is His name.

43. And whoever knocks, to them He will open; and the wise, the educated, and the rich, who are puffed up because of their knowledge, wisdom, and material wealth, they are the ones He disdains; unless they throw away these things, humble themselves as fools before God, and come down in complete humility, He will not open the gate to them.

44. But the wisdom of the knowledgeable and the prudent will be hidden from them forever, the happiness prepared for the saints.

45. Oh, my dear brothers and sisters, remember my words. Behold, I take off my garments and shake them before you; I pray the God of my salvation to see me with His all-searching eye; so that you will know on the last day, when all people will be judged by their deeds, that the God of Israel bore witness that I shook off your sins from my soul, and that I stand radiant before Him, free from your blood.

46. Oh, my dear brothers and sisters, turn away from your sins; break off the chains of the one who seeks to bind you; come to that God who is the rock of your salvation.

47. Prepare your souls for that glorious day when justice will be served to the righteous, the day of judgment, so that you do not shrink back in dreadful fear; so that you do not remember your guilt in full clarity and feel compelled to say: Holy, holy are Your judgments, O Lord God Almighty; but I know my guilt; I broke Your law, and my sins are my own; and the devil has claimed me, and I have become prey to his awful misery.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

48. But tell me, my brethren, is it necessary for me to awaken you to the terrifying truth of these things? Would I distress your souls if your minds were pure? Would I be straightforward with you according to the simplicity of the truth if you were free from sin?

49. Look, if you were holy, I would talk to you about holiness; but since you are not holy, and you see me in the role of a teacher, it must be essential for me to teach you about the repercussions of sin.

50. Behold, my soul detests sin, and my heart rejoices in righteousness; and I will praise the holy name of my God.

51. Come, my brothers, everyone who is thirsty, come to the waters; and if you have no money, come buy and eat; yes, come buy wine and milk without money and at no cost.

52. So, do not spend your money on what is worthless, nor your efforts on what cannot satisfy. Listen carefully to me, and remember the words I have spoken; come to the Holy One of Israel, and feast on what cannot perish or be corrupted, and let your soul revel in richness.

53. Look, my beloved brothers, remember the words of your God; pray to Him continually during the day, and give thanks to His holy name at night. Let your hearts be filled with joy.

54. And see how great the promises of the Lord are, and how deeply He condescends to His children; and because of His greatness, grace, and mercy, He has promised us that our descendants will not be completely destroyed, according to the flesh, but He will protect them; and in future generations, they will become a righteous branch of the house of Israel.

55. And now, my brethren, I would say more to you; but tomorrow I will share the rest of my thoughts. Amen.

## **2 Nephi Chapter 10**

1. Jacob speaks to you again, my dear brothers, about this important branch I've mentioned.

2. Look, the promises we have received are meant for us physically; thus, I've seen that many of our children will suffer and even die because they don't believe. However, God will show mercy to many, and our children will be restored so they can truly know their Savior.

3. Therefore, as I mentioned earlier, it is necessary that Christ's angel revealed this name to me so I should come to

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

the Jews, who are among the most wicked in the world; and they will crucify Him because this is how it must happen with our God. No other nation on earth would do such a thing.

4. If great miracles were shown among other nations, they would repent and recognize Him as their God.

5. But because of corrupt practices and evil in Jerusalem, they will harden their hearts against Him, leading to His crucifixion.

6. Thus, due to their sins, terrible destruction, famine, plagues, and violence will come upon them; those who survive will be scattered among all nations.

7. But the Lord God says: When the time comes that they believe in me, acknowledging that I am Christ, I have promised their forefathers that they will be physically restored on earth to their rightful lands.

8. It will happen that they will be gathered back from their long exile, from far-off islands and every corner of the earth; and the Gentile nations will be significant in my eyes, says God, as they help bring them back to their lands.

9. Yes, the Gentile kings will be like nurturing fathers to them, and their queens will be like nurturing mothers; therefore, the Lords promises to the Gentiles are immense, for He has declared it, and who can argue against it?

10. But see, God has declared that this land will belong to you, and the Gentiles will find blessings here.

11. This land will be a place of freedom for the Gentiles, and there will be no kings ruling over them.

12. I will strengthen this land against all other nations.

13. And those who fight against Zion will face destruction, says God.

14. For anyone who raises a king against me will perish; I, the Lord, the king of heaven, will be their king, shining my light on them forever for those who listen to my words.

15. Therefore, for this reasonso that the promises I have made to humanity may be fulfilledI must intervene against the secret combinations of evil, murders, and wrongdoing.

16. So anyone who fights against Zion, whether Jew or Gentile, slave or free, male or female, will be destroyed; for they represent all that is wrong in the world; those who are not with me are against me, says our

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

God.

17. For I will keep my promises made to humanity, doing for them while they are still alive

18. So, my dear brothers, God says: I will allow your descendants to be harmed at the hands of the Gentiles; however, I will soften the hearts of the Gentiles so they can be like fathers to them; therefore, the Gentiles will be blessed and counted among the house of Israel.

19. I will dedicate this land to your descendants and those who are counted among them forever, as it is a special land, says God above all others. I want everyone living here to worship me, says God.

20. And now, my dear brothers, knowing that our merciful God has granted us such great understanding, lets remember Him, turn from our sins, and lift up our heads, for we have not been abandoned; even though we have been forced from our rightful home, we have been guided to a better place, with the sea as our pathway, and we are on an island.

21. But the Lords promises to those on the islands of the sea are great; the mention of islands indicates that there are more, and they too are inhabited by our kin.

22. For the Lord God has led away people from the house of Israel at different times, according to His will and desires. And now, the Lord remembers all who have been cut off, meaning He remembers us too.

23. So, lift your spirits and remember you have the freedom to make your own choicesto choose between everlasting suffering or eternal life.

24. Therefore, my dear brothers, align yourselves with Gods will, not with the will of evil and the desires of the flesh; and remember, once you are reconciled with God, it is only by His grace that you can be saved.

25. So may God bring you back to life through the power of resurrection, and save you from everlasting death through the atonement, allowing you to enter the eternal kingdom of God, so you can praise Him through divine grace. Amen.

## **2 Nephi Chapter 11**

1. Jacob saw his SaviorThe law of Moses serves as a symbol for Christ and shows that He will come. About 559545 B.C.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

2. At that time, Jacob spoke many additional things to my people; however, I have only recorded these specific things, as what I have written is enough for me.
3. Now I, Nephi, am going to write more of Isaiah's words because I take great joy in them. I will relate his words to my people and share them with all my children because he truly saw my Redeemer, just as I have seen Him.
4. My brother, Jacob, has also seen Him, just as I have; therefore, I will share their words with my children to prove to them that what I say is true. By the words of three witnesses, God has declared that He will confirm His word. Still, God provides more witnesses, affirming all His words.
5. Look, my soul finds joy in showing my people the truth of Christ's coming; this is the purpose of the law of Moses. Everything given by God since the beginning of the world to mankind points to Him.
6. My soul also rejoices in the promises that the Lord made to our ancestors; yes, my soul delights in His grace, justice, power, and mercy in the grand and everlasting plan to save us from death.
7. My soul takes joy in showing my people that if Christ does not come, all people will perish.
8. For if there is no Christ, there is no God; and if there is no God, then we do not exist, as creation could not have happened. But there is a God, and He is Christ, and He will come at the perfect time.
9. Now I will write some of Isaiah's words so that anyone among my people who reads these words may lift their hearts and rejoice for everyone. These are the words, and you can apply them to yourselves and to all people.

## **2 Nephi Chapter 12**

1. Isaiah, the son of Amoz, had a vision about Judah and Jerusalem.
2. In the last days, the Lord's temple will be established on a high mountain, rising above all the hills, and people from every nation will come to it.
3. Many will say, "Let's go up to the mountain of the Lord, to the house of the God of Jacob. He will teach us His ways, and we will follow His paths, because the law will come from Zion and the word of the Lord from Jerusalem."

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

4. He will judge among the nations and correct many peoples. They will turn their swords into plowshares and their spears into tools for pruning; nations will no longer go to war against each other, nor will they learn how to fight anymore.

5. O House of Jacob, let us walk in the light of the Lord; come, for you have all strayed, each going down their own evil paths.

6. Because of this, O Lord, you have abandoned your people, the house of Jacob, because they have become influenced by those from the east, listening to fortune-tellers like the Philistines, and indulging in the children of foreigners.

7. Their land is filled with silver and gold, and their treasures are never-ending; their land is also filled with horses, and there is no limit to their chariots.

8. Their land is full of idols; they worship what their own hands have made.

9. Neither the common person nor the powerful will humble themselves, so do not forgive them.

10. O wicked ones, hide in the rocks and bury yourselves in the dust, for the fear of the Lord and the splendor of His majesty will strike you.

11. On that day, the proud looks of man will be humbled, and the arrogance of mankind will be brought low, and only the Lord will be exalted.

12. The day of the Lord of Hosts is coming upon all nations, upon everyone; upon the proud and haughty, and everyone who is lifted up will be brought down.

13. The day of the Lord will fall upon all the tall cedars of Lebanon and all the mighty oaks of Bashan;

14. Upon all the high mountains, and the hills, and every exalted nation and people;

15. Upon every tall tower and fortified wall;

16. Upon all the ships at sea, and all the ships of Tarshish, and all attractive images.

17. The pride of man will be brought low, and the arrogance of men will be humbled; only the Lord will be exalted on that day.

18. He will completely destroy the idols.



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

19. They will hide in the crevices of the rocks and in caves in the earth, for the fear of the Lord will strike them and the glory of His majesty will terrify them when He rises to shake the earth dramatically.
20. On that day, a man will throw away his silver and gold idols, which he made to worship, to the moles and bats;
21. To hide in the cracks of the rocks and atop jagged cliffs, for the fear of the Lord will come upon them, and His glorious majesty will terrify them when He rises to shake the earth dramatically.
22. Stop trusting in man, whose life is just a breath; what is he worth?

### **2 Nephi Chapter 13**

1. The Lord, who commands the heavenly armies, will remove the support and resources that Jerusalem and Judah rely on, including their food and water.
2. He will take away the strong warriors, judges, prophets, wise individuals, and elders.
3. The leaders, respected men, advisors, skilled craftsmen, and persuasive speakers will also be taken away.
4. Instead, children will be appointed as rulers, and even infants will govern.
5. The people will mistreat each other and be cruel to their neighbors; children will act defiantly toward older adults, and those of low status will disrespect the honorable.
6. When someone tries to take charge of their brothers household by saying: "You have clothes; you should lead us and prevent our downfall"
7. On that day they will insist: "I cannot be a leader; my house has no food or clothes; do not make me a ruler over the people."
8. Jerusalem has been devastated and Judah has fallen because their words and actions have gone against the Lord, provoking His anger.
9. Their faces expose their guilt, revealing their sins as openly as those of Sodom, and they cannot conceal it. Woe to them, for they have brought harm upon themselves!
10. Tell the righteous that all is well for them; they will enjoy the results of their good actions.
11. Woe to the wicked, for they will be destroyed; the consequences of their actions will affect them!

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

12. My people suffer because children oppress them, and women lead them astray. O my people, those who guide you have made you stray and have corrupted your paths.

13. The Lord stands up to argue on behalf of His people and to render judgment.

14. The Lord will confront the elders and leaders among His people; you have taken advantage of the vineyard and exploited the poor in your homes.

15. What is the meaning of your actions? You crush my people and mistreat the needy, says the Lord God of Hosts.

16. Furthermore, the Lord says: Because the daughters of Zion are proud and walk around with their heads held high and flirtatious eyes, strutting and making noise with their feet

17. Therefore, the Lord will afflict the tops of their heads with sores, exposing their hidden flaws.

18. On that day the Lord will remove their elegant jewelry, their elaborate headdresses, and moon-shaped ornaments;

19. He will take away their chains, bracelets, and scarves;

20. Their hats, leg jewelry, headbands, tablets, and earrings;

21. Their rings and nose rings;

22. Their fancy clothing, capes, shawls, and hair curlers;

23. Their mirrors, fine linens, hoods, and veils.

24. Instead of a sweet fragrance, there will be a foul odor; instead of a lovely belt, there will be a torn cloth; instead of well-styled hair, there will be baldness; instead of a beautiful gown, there will be a rough sackcloth; instead of beauty, there will be burning.

25. Your men will fall in battle, and your warriors will perish in war.

26. Her city gates will mourn and cry out; she will become desolate and sit on the ground in sorrow.

## **2 Nephi Chapter 14**

1. In that future time, seven women will hold onto one man, saying: We will provide our own food and wear our own clothes; just let us be known by your name to remove our shame.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

2. During that day, the branch of the Lord will be beautiful and glorious; the bounty of the land will be excellent and appealing to those who have survived from Israel.
3. Those who remain in Zion and stay in Jerusalem will be called holy, everyone whose name is written among the living in Jerusalem
4. When the Lord has purified the daughters of Zion and cleansed Jerusalem from sin through the spirit of judgment and the spirit of refinement.
5. The Lord will create a protective cloud over every home on Mount Zion and over her gatherings, providing smoke by day and the brightness of a flaming fire by night; for all the glory of Zion will serve as a shelter.
6. There will be a place to provide shade during the day from the heat and a refuge, shielding from storms and rain.

## **2 Nephi Chapter 15**

1. I will sing a song to my beloved about his vineyard. My beloved has a vineyard on a very fruitful hill.
2. He fenced it in, cleared out the stones, planted it with the best vines, built a tower in the middle, and made a winepress; he expected it to produce grapes, but it gave wild grapes instead.
3. Now, residents of Jerusalem and people of Judah, I ask you to judge between me and my vineyard.
4. What more could I have done for my vineyard that I havent done? So when I expected it to produce grapes and it produced wild grapes instead, what went wrong?
5. Now listen; I will tell you what I will do to my vineyardI will remove its protective hedge so that it can be destroyed, and I will break down its wall so it can be trampled.
6. I will let it lie in waste; it wont be pruned or cultivated, and briars and thorns will grow up instead; I will also command the clouds not to rain on it.
7. The vineyard of the Lord of Hosts is the house of Israel, and the people of Judah are his delightful plants; he looked for justice, but only found oppression; he sought righteousness, but instead heard cries of distress.
8. Woe to those who pile house upon house, until theres no room left and they are alone in the land!
9. The Lord of Hosts has told me that many houses will be left desolate, and large and beautiful cities will

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

have no inhabitants.

10. Indeed, ten acres of vineyard will only produce a small amount of wine, and a measure of seed will yield very little.

11. Woe to those who get up early in the morning to drink strong alcohol and keep drinking late into the night until they are inflamed with wine!

12. Their feasts are filled with harps, lyres, tambourines, and wine, but they do not see what the Lord is doing or consider what he is capable of.

13. As a result, my people have gone into exile because they lack knowledge; their honorable men are starving, and the masses are parched with thirst.

14. Therefore, hell has expanded its grasp and opened its mouth endlessly; their glory, multitude, and joy will descend into it.

15. The common person will be brought low, the powerful humbled, and the proud will be brought down.

16. But the Lord of Hosts will be exalted in justice, and the Holy God will be honored in righteousness.

17. Then the lambs will graze as usual, and strangers will eat in the desolate areas where the fat cattle used to feed.

18. Woe to those who tether sin with ropes of emptiness, and draw iniquity as if it were a cartload;

19. Who say: Let him hurry and perform his work, so we can see it; let the will of the Holy One of Israel come quickly, so we can acknowledge it.

20. Woe to those who view evil as good, and good as evil; who turn darkness into light, and light into darkness; who see bitter as sweet, and sweet as bitter!

21. Woe to those who are wise in their own eyes, and prudent in their own estimation!

22. Woe to those who are mighty in drinking wine, and strong men who mix strong drinks;

23. Who justify the wicked for money, and take away the rights of the righteous!

24. Therefore, just as fire consumes stubble, and flames consume chaff, their roots will rot, and their blossoms will blow away like dust; because they have rejected the law of the Lord of Hosts, and disregarded the word of

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

the Holy One of Israel.

25. As a result, the Lord's anger has been stirred against his people; he has reached out his hand against them and struck them; the hills shook, and their bodies lay torn in the streets. Despite all this, his anger is not yet turned away, and his hand is still stretched out.

26. He will raise a banner for distant nations, and call them from the far ends of the earth; and they will come swiftly, with no one weary or stumbling along the way.

27. None will sleep or slumber; neither will their belts be loosened, nor the laces of their shoes be broken.

28. Their arrows will be sharp, and their bows will be drawn; their horses' hooves will be as hard as flint, and their wheels like a whirlwind, their roaring will be like that of a lion.

29. They will roar like young lions; they will roar and seize their prey, carrying it off without anyone being able to rescue it.

30. On that day, they will roar against them like the roaring of the sea; and if they look toward the land, they will see darkness and anguish, with the heavens darkened above.

## **2 Nephi Chapter 16**

1. In the year that King Uzziah died, I also saw the Lord sitting on a throne, high and exalted, and the hem of his robe filled the temple.

2. Standing above Him were angelic beings; each had six wings. With two wings, they covered their faces, with two they covered their feet, and with two they flew.

3. And one angel called to another, saying: Holy, holy, holy is the Lord of Hosts; the whole earth is filled with His glory.

4. The doorposts shook at the sound of their voices, and the whole place was filled with smoke.

5. Then I said: Oh no! I am lost; I am a person with unclean lips, and I live among a people with unclean lips; for my eyes have seen the King, the Lord of Hosts.

6. Then one of the angels flew to me, holding a burning coal that he had taken from the altar with tongs;

7. He touched it to my mouth and said: Look, this has touched your lips; your guilt is taken away, and your sin

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

is cleansed.

8. I also heard the voice of the Lord saying: Whom shall I send, and who will go for us? Then I responded: Here I am; send me.

9. And He said: Go and tell this people You will hear, but you wont understand; you will see, but you wont perceive.

10. Make this people's hearts dull, their ears heavy, and their eyes blind so that they dont see with their eyes, hear with their ears, or understand with their hearts, and turn back to be healed.

11. Then I asked: Lord, how long will this last? And He answered: Until the cities lie waste without inhabitants, and the houses are left empty, and the land is completely desolate;

12. And the Lord has removed people far away, for there will be a great forsaking in the land.

13. But still, a remnant will remain, and they will return, like an oak tree whose substance remains even when its leaves fall; so the holy offspring will be the strength of this remnant.

## **2 Nephi Chapter 17**

1. During the reign of Ahaz, who was the son of Jotham and grandson of Uzziah, the king of Judah, Rezin, the king of Syria, and Pekah, the son of Remaliah, the king of Israel, approached Jerusalem to attack it, but they couldnt succeed.

2. The house of David received word that Syria and Ephraim were allied against them. This alarmed Ahaz and his people, making them feel as shaken as trees swaying in the breeze.

3. Then the Lord spoke to Isaiah, saying: Go now to meet Ahaz with your son Shearjashub at the end of the waterway from the upper pool along the road to the laundress's field.

4. Tell him: Be careful, stay calm; dont be afraid or lose heart because of the two smoldering firebrands Rezins anger with Syria and the son of Remaliahs anger.

5. Syria, Ephraim, and the son of Remaliah have plotted against you, saying:

6. Lets attack Judah, cause trouble for it, and set up our own king there, specifically the son of Tabeal.

7. The Lord God says this: Their plans will not succeed and wont happen.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

8. The leader of Syria is Damascus, and Rezin is the leader of Damascus; within sixty-five years, Ephraim will be shattered and cease to exist as a people.
9. Ephraim's leader is Samaria, and Remaliah's son is the leader of Samaria. If you don't have faith, you surely won't be secure.
10. Then the Lord spoke again to Ahaz, saying:
11. Ask for a sign from the Lord your God; it can be deep below or high above.
12. But Ahaz replied: I won't ask for a sign, nor will I test the Lord.
13. And he said: Listen now, house of David; is it not enough for you to make men tired? Will you also tire out my God?
14. So the Lord himself will give you a sign. Look, a virgin will become pregnant and give birth to a son, and they will call him Immanuel.
15. He will eat butter and honey, so he will learn to reject evil and choose what is good.
16. Before the child knows how to reject evil and choose good, the land you dread will be abandoned by both its kings.
17. The Lord will bring upon you, your people, and your ancestors' house, times unlike any since Ephraim separated from Judah, the king of Assyria.
18. On that day, the Lord will whistle for the fly that is in the farthest part of Egypt and for the bee from the land of Assyria.
19. They will come and settle in the desolate valleys, the cracks in the rocks, and on all thorns and bushes.
20. On that day, the Lord will shave your head and feet with a hired razor from beyond the river, from the king of Assyria, and he will also remove your beard.
21. On that day, a man will raise a young cow and two sheep;
22. And from the abundant milk they produce, he will eat butter; everyone who survives in the land will eat butter and honey.
23. It will happen that on that day, every place where there were once a thousand vines worth a thousand

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

pieces of silver will become overgrown with briers and thorns.

24. People will come with bows and arrows because the whole land will turn into briers and thorns.

25. And in all the hills that are tilled with tools, there wont be the fear of briers and thorns; it will instead be for grazing cattle and for the trampling of sheep.

## **2 Nephi Chapter 18**

1. Christ will be a source of conflict and a challenge for manySeek the Lord instead of relying on fortune tellersLook to the law and the prophetic messages for guidanceThis aligns with Isaiah 8. About 559545 B.C.

2. Furthermore, the Lord told me: Take a large scroll and write on it clearly about Maher-shalal-hash-baz.

3. I also gathered reliable witnesses to record this, Uriah the priest and Zechariah, the son of Jeberechiah.

4. I approached the prophetess, and she became pregnant and gave birth to a son. The Lord instructed me to name him Maher-shalal-hash-baz.

5. For this child will not be able to say "My father" or "My mother" before the riches of Damascus and the loot of Samaria are taken away by the king of Assyria.

6. The Lord also spoke to me again, saying:

7. Since this people rejects the gentle waters of Shiloah, and instead celebrates Rezin and the son of Remaliah;

8. Now, behold, the Lord is bringing upon them powerful and numerous waters from the river, the king of Assyria and all his glory; he will overflow all his channels and banks.

9. He will move through Judah; he will overflow and go over, reaching up to the neck; and his wings will stretch out to cover your entire land, O Immanuel.

10. You people should unite, but you will be shattered; listen you from far-off places; prepare yourselves, but you will be shattered; prepare yourselves, but you will be shattered.

11. Make plans together, but they will come to nothing; speak your words, and they will not succeed, because God is with us.

12. For the Lord strongly communicated to me that I should not follow the way of this people, saying:

13. Do not say, A conspiracy, in response to what this people says is a conspiracy; do not fear what they fear,



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

nor be afraid.

14. Honor the Lord of Hosts as holy, and let him be your source of fear and dread.

15. He will be a safe place, but to both houses of Israel, he will be a source of conflict, a trap, and a snare for the people of Jerusalem.

16. Many will stumble and fall, be broken, trapped, and taken.

17. Confirm the testimony, and seal the law among my followers.

18. I will wait for the Lord, who is hiding his face from the house of Jacob, and I will seek him.

19. Look, I and the children the Lord has given me are like signs and wonders in Israel from the Lord of Hosts, who dwells in Mount Zion.

20. When they tell you: Consult those who have familiar spirits, and the wizards who mutterShouldnt a people seek their God rather than the living for advice from the dead?

21. Look to the law and the prophetic messages; if they do not speak according to this word, it is because they have no light in them.

22. They will struggle and feel hungry; and when they are hungry, they will become angry, and curse their king and their God, and look upward.

23. They will look to the earth and see distress, darkness, and despair, and will be driven into darkness.

## **2 Nephi Chapter 19**

1. Even so, the darkness will not be as severe as when he lightly troubled the land of Zebulun and the land of Naphtali, and later caused greater distress along the path of the Red Sea beyond the Jordan in Galilee of the nations.

2. The people who were living in darkness have seen a bright light; those living in a place overshadowed by death have had the light shine upon them.

3. You have increased the nation and brought more joy to the people; they rejoice before you as when there is a successful harvest, and like soldiers celebrating their victory after a battle.

4. For you have removed the burden from their shoulders and the rod that oppressed them.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

5. Every battle fought by warriors is filled with chaos and bloodstained clothing; but this will be different, filled with fire and light.
6. A child has been born for us, a son has been given to us; the authority will rest on his shoulders, and he will be called Wonderful, Counselor, Mighty God, Everlasting Father, Prince of Peace.
7. The growth of his authority and peace will have no end. He will sit on Davids throne, running his kingdom with fairness and justice from this time forward and forever. The passionate commitment of the Lord of Hosts will ensure this happens.
8. The Lord sent his message to Jacob, and it has reached Israel.
9. And everyone will know, including Ephraim and the people of Samaria, who speak with pride and stubborn hearts:
10. The bricks have fallen down, but we will rebuild with cut stones; the sycamores have been cut down, but we will replace them with cedar trees.
11. As a result, the Lord will raise up enemies against Rezin and unite those who oppose him.
12. The Syrians will be on one side and the Philistines on the other; they will consume Israel greedily. Despite all this, his anger remains unappeased, and his hand is still stretched out.
13. The people do not turn to him who strikes them, nor do they seek the Lord of Hosts.
14. So the Lord will remove from Israel both the head and the tail, the tall and the low in one day.
15. The leaders are the head; and the lying prophets are the tail.
16. The leaders lead this people astray; those who follow them will be destroyed.
17. So the Lord will take no pleasure in their young people, nor will he show compassion to their orphans and widows; because every one of them is hypocritical and wicked, and every mouth speaks foolishness. In spite of all this, his anger remains unappeased, and his hand is still stretched out.
18. For wickedness burns like fire; it will consume the briars and thorns, and it will catch fire in the thickets of the forests, rising like smoke.
19. By the wrath of the Lord of Hosts, the land will be darkened, and the people will become like fuel for the

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

fire; no one will spare their neighbor.

20. They will attack to the right and go hungry; they will eat to the left but still not be satisfied; every person will eat the flesh of their own arm

21. Manasseh against Ephraim, and Ephraim against Manasseh; together they will stand against Judah. Despite all this, his anger remains unappeased, and his hand is still stretched out.

### **2 Nephi Chapter 20**

1. Woe to those who make unjust laws and write burdensome regulations that they enforce;
2. To deprive the needy of justice and to deny the rights of the poor in my community, allowing widows to be exploited, and children without fathers to be taken advantage of!
3. What will you do when the time of reckoning arrives, and destruction comes from afar? Who will you turn to for help, and where will you go to protect your status?
4. Without Me, you will bow down under oppression, and you will fall among the slain. Even after all this, My anger remains, and My hand is still raised against you.
5. O Assyrian, you are the tool of My anger, and your leaders carry out My indignation.
6. I will send him against a deceitful nation, and I will charge him to plunder the people I am angry with, to conquer them as easily as walking through the mud in the streets.
7. However, he does not understand this; he does not consider that his heart's true intention is to destroy and eliminate many nations.
8. For he says: Are not my leaders all kings?
9. Is Calno not like Carchemish? Is Hamath not like Arpad? Is Samaria not like Damascus?
10. Just as I have established the nations that worship idols and whose images are greater than those of Jerusalem and Samaria;
11. Will I not do to Jerusalem and her idols what I have done to Samaria and her idols?
12. So it will happen that when the Lord has completed all His work on Mount Zion and Jerusalem, I will punish the pride of the Assyrian king and the arrogance of his lofty appearance.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

13. For he boasts: By my own strength and wisdom, I have accomplished these things; I am wise; I have changed the borders of nations, taken their treasures, and put down their inhabitants like a strong warrior;

14. And I have gathered the riches of the people just like collecting eggs left in a nest; I have gathered everything from the earth, and no one has even flapped a wing or spoken.

15. Can a tool boast against the person using it? Can a saw brag against the one who shakes it? Its as silly as a rod shaking itself in the hands of its user or a staff lifting itself as if it were not just a piece of wood!

16. Therefore, the Lord, the Lord of Hosts, will send among his fat and comfortable ones, emptiness; and He will ignite a fire beneath His glory like a raging flame.

17. And the light of Israel will be a fire, and His Holy One will be a flame, consuming thorns and thistles in just one day;

18. He will destroy the glory of His forest and the fruitful fields, both body and soul; it will be as if a standard-bearer has fainted.

19. The remaining trees in His forest will be so few that a child could count them.

20. On that day, the remnant of Israel and the survivors from the house of Jacob will no longer rely on the Assyrian who struck them, but they will trust in the Lord, the Holy One of Israel, genuinely.

21. The remnant will return, yes, even the remnant of Jacob, to the mighty God.

22. For even if your people Israel are as numerous as the sand on the seashore, only a remnant will return; the destruction declared will be overwhelmed by righteousness.

23. For the Lord God of Hosts will bring about a determined destruction across all the land.

24. Therefore, the Lord God of Hosts says: O My people who dwell in Zion, do not be afraid of the Assyrian; he will attack you with a rod and lift his staff against you, just like in Egypt.

25. For it wont be long until My anger subsides and My wrath is satisfied in their destruction.

26. And the Lord of Hosts will stir up a whip against him like the slaughter of Midian at the rock of Oreb; just as My rod was over the sea, so shall it be lifted again like in Egypt.

27. And on that day, his burden will be removed from your shoulder, and his yoke from your neck; the yoke

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

will be broken because of the power of the anointing.

28. He has come to Aiath, he has passed through Migron; at Michmash, he has put down his bags.

29. They have crossed over to the next region; they are spending the night at Geba; Ramath is afraid, and Gibeah of Saul is fleeing.

30. Lift up your voice, O daughter of Gallim; let it be heard all the way to Laish, O poor Anathoth.

31. Madmenah has been moved; the people of Gebim gather to escape.

32. Even now he remains at Nob; he shakes his hand towards the mountain of the daughter of Zion, the hill of Jerusalem.

33. Behold, the Lord, the Lord of Hosts will cut down trees with fear; the tall and mighty will be hewn down, and the proud will be humbled.

34. He will chop down the thick woods with iron tools, and Lebanon will fall at the hands of a mighty warrior.

## **2 Nephi Chapter 21**

1. A branch will grow from the lineage of Jesse, and a new shoot will emerge from its roots.

2. The Spirit of the Lord will be upon him, bringing wisdom and understanding, guidance and strength, knowledge and reverence for the Lord.

3. He will have quick understanding in respecting the Lord and won't judge by what he sees or hear what he hears.

4. He will judge the poor fairly and correct the humble with justice; he will speak powerfully, and with his words, he will defeat the wicked.

5. Righteousness will be his belt, and faithfulness will be his strength.

6. Wolves will live peacefully with lambs, leopards will rest with young goats, and calves, lions, and fattened animals will coexist, led by a small child.

7. Cows and bears will graze together, their young will lie down alongside each other, and lions will eat grass like cattle.

8. A nursing child will play near a snake's hole, and a toddler will touch the den of a venomous snake.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

9. They will not harm or destroy in all my holy mountain, for the earth will be filled with the knowledge of the Lord, just like the sea is full of water.

10. On that day, a root from Jesse will rise as a banner for the people; nations will seek it, and it will bring great peace.

11. On that day, the Lord will reach out his hand again to bring back the remnant of his people from various places, including Assyria, Egypt, Pathros, Cush, Elam, Shinar, Hamath, and islands across the sea.

12. He will raise a banner for the nations and gather the outcasts of Israel, bringing together the scattered people of Judah from every corner of the earth.

13. The jealousy between Ephraim and Judah will end; Ephraim will no longer resent Judah, and Judah will not trouble Ephraim.

14. They will unitedly fly against the Philistines to the west, plundering those in the east, and they will also overpower Edom and Moab; the children of Ammon will submit to them.

15. The Lord will completely destroy the language of the Egyptian sea; with his powerful wind, he will signal over the river, dividing it into seven streams, allowing people to cross on dry ground.

16. There will be a clear path for the remnant of his people left from Assyria, just as there was for Israel when they left the land of Egypt.

## **2 Nephi Chapter 22**

1. In the time of peace, everyone will honor the LordHe will be present among themSee Isaiah 12. About 559545 B.C.

2. On that day, you will say: O Lord, I will thank you; even though you were angry with me, your anger has calmed down, and you have comforted me.

3. Look, God is my savior; I will trust in Him and not be scared; for the Lord is my strength and my song; He has also become my salvation.

4. So, with happiness, you will gather water from the springs of salvation.

5. And on that day, you will say: Praise the Lord, call on His name, tell the people about His great works, and

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

mention that His name is supreme.

6. Sing to the Lord; for He has done wonderful things; this is known throughout the world.

7. Shout and rejoice, you people of Zion; for the Holy One of Israel is among you and is truly great.

### **2 Nephi Chapter 23**

1. The heavy burden concerning Babylon that Isaiah, the son of Amoz, saw.

2. Raise a banner on a tall mountain, shout out to them, wave your hand so they may enter the gates where the nobles are.

3. I have appointed my holy ones, and I have also summoned my powerful ones; my anger is not directed at those who celebrate my greatness.

4. The sound of many people can be heard in the mountains, like a huge crowd; a chaotic noise comes from the nations gathered together, as the Lord of Hosts gathers the armies for battle.

5. They are coming from a distant land, from the farthest reaches of the sky, yes, the Lord and his instruments of wrath, to bring destruction to the entire land.

6. Cry out, for the day of the Lord is approaching; it will come as a devastating event from the Almighty.

7. As a result, everyone will feel weak, and every person's heart will melt;

8. They will be filled with fear; anguish and misery will seize them; they will be bewildered by one another, and their faces will glow with fear.

9. Look, the day of the Lord is coming, cruel, filled with wrath and fierce anger, to make the land desolate; and he will eliminate the sinners from it.

10. Because the stars in the heavens and their constellations will not shine; the sun will be darkened when it rises, and the moon will not give its light.

11. I will punish the world for its wrongdoing and the wicked for their sins; I will bring an end to the arrogance of the proud and humble the terrible.

12. I will make people more valuable than fine gold; even a person will be worth more than the finest gold found in Ophir.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

13. So, I will shake the heavens, and the earth will be moved from its place, in the wrath of the Lord of Hosts, and on the day of his fierce anger.

14. It will be like a hunted deer or a sheep that no one rescues; everyone will retreat to their own people and flee to their own land.

15. Anyone who is proud will be killed; and anyone who is allied with the wicked will fall by the sword.

16. Their children will be smashed before their eyes; their homes will be looted, and their wives will be taken.

17. Look, I will raise up the Medes against them; they will not value silver or gold and wont take delight in it.

18. Their bows will crush young men; they will show no mercy to pregnant women; their eyes will not spare the children.

19. And Babylon, the pride of kingdoms and the beauty of the Chaldeans glory will be like when God destroyed Sodom and Gomorrah.

20. It will never be inhabited again, nor will it be settled from generation to generation; neither will an Arab pitch a tent there, nor will shepherds set up their sheepfolds there.

21. But wild animals will lie there; and their homes will be filled with howling creatures; owls will live there, and satyrs will dance there.

22. And the wild beasts of the islands will cry in their empty homes, and dragons will be in their lovely palaces; and her time will come quickly; her day will not be extended. For I will destroy her swiftly; indeed, I will be merciful to my people, but the wicked will perish.

## **2 Nephi Chapter 24**

1. The Lord will show kindness to Jacob and will choose Israel again, placing them back in their own land; people from other nations will join them and connect with the family of Jacob.

2. And the people will take them to their homeland; yes, from far away, even the ends of the earth; and they will return to their promised lands. The house of Israel will possess them, and the Lord's land will be given to servants and handmaids; they will take back those who had taken them captive, and they will govern over their oppressors.



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

3. On that day, the Lord will give you relief from your grief, fear, and harsh labor you were forced to endure.
4. On that day, you will raise this saying against the king of Babylon, asking: How has the one who oppressed us stopped, the golden city has fallen silent!
5. The Lord has broken the power of the wicked and the authority of rulers.
6. He who struck nations in anger, continually punishing them, is now being pursued, and no one is stopping it.
7. The entire earth is at peace and quiet; they break into song.
8. Indeed, the fir trees are happy because of you, as are the cedars of Lebanon, saying: Now that you have fallen, no one is coming to chop us down.
9. The realm of the dead below stirs to meet you when you arrive; it awakens the deceased for you, including all the powerful leaders of the earth; it raises up all the kings from their thrones.
10. All of them will speak to you, saying: Have you become weak like us? Have you become just like us?
11. Your pride has been brought down to the grave; the sound of your instruments is no longer heard; worms are beneath you, and they cover you.
12. How you have fallen from heaven, O Lucifer, morning star! You have been brought down to the ground, you who weakened nations!
13. For you said in your heart: I will rise to heaven, I will place my throne above the stars of God; I will sit on the mountain where the gods meet, in the northern regions;
14. I will rise above the heights of the clouds; I will be like the Most High.
15. Yet you will be brought down to the realm of the dead, to the depths of the pit.
16. Those who see you will stare at you closely and ponder, and they will say: Is this the man who made the earth tremble, who shook kingdoms?
17. And made the earth a wasteland, destroyed its cities, and did not free his captives?
18. All the kings of the nations, yes, all of them, lie in glory, each one in their own tomb.
19. But you have been thrown out of your grave like a rejected branch, and the bodies of those killed by the

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

sword will be thrust down to the stones of the pit, like a carcass trampled underfoot.

20. You will not be buried with them, as you have destroyed your own land and killed your people; the offspring of wrongdoers will never be honored.

21. Prepare to kill his children for the sins of their fathers, so that they do not rise up, nor inherit the land, nor fill the earth with cities.

22. For I will rise up against them, says the Lord of Hosts, and will remove from Babylon its name, survivors, and descendants, says the Lord.

23. I will make it a home for the bittern and ponds; I will sweep it clean with destruction, says the Lord of Hosts.

24. The Lord of Hosts has sworn, saying: Just as I have planned, it will happen; and what I have decided will stand

25. That I will bring the Assyrian into my land and make him suffer on my mountains; then his rule will be lifted from them, and his burden removed from their shoulders.

26. This is the plan for the entire earth; and this is the hand that is stretched out to all nations.

27. For the Lord of Hosts has made a plan, and who can stop it? His hand is stretched out, and who can turn it back?

28. In the year king Ahaz died, this burden was pronounced.

29. Do not rejoice, O Palestine, because the one who struck you is broken; for from the serpent's root will emerge a deadly creature, and its offspring will be a fiery flying serpent.

30. The firstborn of the poor will graze, and the needy will lie down in safety; I will destroy your root with famine, and he will kill your survivors.

31. Cry out, O gate; scream, O city; you, Palestine, will fall apart; for from the north smoke will rise, and no one will be on their own in their designated times.

32. What will the messengers of the nations say in response? That the Lord has established Zion, and the poor of His people will find safety in it.

## **2 Nephi Chapter 25**

1. I, Nephi, want to talk a bit about the things I have written that come from the words of Isaiah. Many of my people find Isaiah's words difficult to understand because they're unfamiliar with how the Jews prophesy.
2. I havent taught my people much about the ways of the Jews, since their actions were dark and their ways were wicked.
3. So, I write to my people and to anyone who might read this later, to help them understand God's judgments that come upon all nations, as He has said.
4. Listen, my people of Israel, and pay attention to my words; even if Isaiah's words aren't clear to you, they are clear to those who are inspired by prophecy. But I will share a prophecy of my own, in the straightforward way I have always done since I left Jerusalem with my father; my soul finds joy in simple words so my people can learn.
5. And yes, I take pleasure in Isaiah's words. I came from Jerusalem, I have seen what the Jews have seen, and I understand that they grasp the words of the prophets better than anyone else, unless others learn from them the way the Jews do.
6. However, I havent taught my children the same way the Jews do. I have lived in Jerusalem, so I know the surrounding areas; I have told my children about God's judgments on the Jews according to what Isaiah has said, but I dont write those judgments here.
7. For now, I will continue with my own prophecy, which I know to be true; and in times to come, when Isaiah's prophecies happen, people will know for certain when they do.
8. These prophecies are valuable to humanity, and if anyone thinks they aren't, I will specifically address them and focus my words on my own people because I know that these words will mean a lot to them in the last days; they will understand them then, and thats why Ive written them.
9. Just as one generation of Jews has faced destruction due to their wickedness, they have been destroyed from one generation to the next for the same reasons; none have perished without warning from the prophets.
10. They were warned about their destruction immediately after my father left Jerusalem, but they hardened

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

their hearts; as my prophecy declared, they were destroyed, except for those taken captive to Babylon.

11. I say this because of the spirit within me. Even though they have been taken captive, they will come back and reclaim Jerusalem; they will return to their land of inheritance.

12. However, they will experience wars and rumors of wars; when the day comes that God's only Son appears to them in person, they will reject Him because of their sins and stubborn hearts.

13. They will crucify Him, and after He is buried for three days, He will rise again, bringing healing; all who believe in His name will be saved in the kingdom of God. That's why I find joy in prophesying about Him; I have seen His day, and my heart praises His holy name.

14. After the Messiah rises from the dead and shows Himself to those who believe, Jerusalem will face destruction again. Woe to those who fight against God and His followers.

15. Thus, the Jews will be scattered among all nations, and Babylon will also be destroyed, leading to the Jews being dispersed by other nations.

16. After being scattered and punished by other nations for many generations until they believe in Christ, the Son of God, and His infinite atonement for all it will be when they truly believe in Christ and worship God with pure hearts and clean hands that they will no longer look for another Messiah.

17. Then, the Lord will once again reach out to restore His people from their fallen state, performing a remarkable work among people.

18. He will present His words to them, which will judge them at the last day, intended to convince them of the true Messiah whom they rejected, convincing them that they do not need to wait for another Messiah, since only one true Messiah who would be rejected by the Jews has been foretold by the prophets.

19. The prophets stated that the Messiah would come exactly 600 years after my father left Jerusalem; according to this prophecy and an angel of God, His name will be Jesus Christ, the Son of God.

20. Now, my friends, I have spoken clearly in a way that you cannot misunderstand. Just as the Lord God lives and led Israel out of Egypt, giving Moses power to heal those bitten by poisonous snakes if they looked at the raised serpent, I say to you, as these things are real and the Lord lives, there is no other name under heaven by

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

which people can be saved except for this Jesus Christ I've mentioned.

21. For this reason, the Lord God has promised me that these writings will be preserved and passed down through generations so that Joseph's line will not perish as long as the earth lasts.

22. These writings will continue through all time as long as the earth exists and will go according to God's will; the nations who have them will be judged based on the words written.

23. We work hard to write and urge our children and brothers to believe in Christ and to reconcile with God because we know we are saved by grace after all we can do.

24. Despite our belief in Christ, we follow the law of Moses and look forward with confidence to Christ until the law is fulfilled.

25. The purpose of the law was given for this reason; thus, the law is as good as dead to us, and we are alive in Christ because of our faith; we still observe the law out of obedience to the commandments.

26. We talk about Christ, we rejoice in Him, we preach about Him, we prophesy about Him, and we write our prophecies so that our children know where to look for forgiveness of their sins.

27. Therefore, we discuss the law so our children understand its deadness; knowing its deadness helps them look forward to the life found in Christ and understand the purpose of the law. After Christ fulfills the law, they shouldn't harden their hearts to Him when the law is no longer needed.

28. Now listen, my people, you are stubborn; I have spoken plainly so you cannot misunderstand. My words will serve as evidence against you, as they are enough to teach anyone the right path; the right path is to believe in Christ and not deny Him; denying Him means you also deny the prophets and the law.

29. So, I tell you that the right path is to believe in Christ and not deny Him; Christ is the Holy One of Israel; therefore, you must bow before Him and worship Him with all your strength, mind, and soul; if you do this, you will never be cast out.

30. As long as it is necessary, you must continue to observe the ordinances of God until the law given to Moses is fulfilled.

## **2 Nephi Chapter 26**

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

1. After Christ rises from the dead, he will reveal himself to you, my children, and my dear brothers; the words he will say to you will be the commandments you should follow.
2. I tell you that I have seen many generations pass away, and there will be many wars and disagreements among my people.
3. After the Messiah arrives, signs will be given to my people about his birth, death, and resurrection; that day will be terrible for the wicked, as they will be destroyed for rejecting the prophets and saints, as well as murdering them; therefore, the cries of the blood of the saints will rise to God from the ground against them.
4. So, all who are proud and do evil will be burned on the day that comes, says the Lord of Hosts, for they will be like dried stubble.
5. Those who kill the prophets and saints will be swallowed up by the earth, says the Lord of Hosts; mountains will cover them, and storms will carry them away, buildings will collapse on them, crushing them into dust.
6. They will face thunders, lightning, earthquakes, and many forms of destruction, for the fire of God's anger will be kindled against them, and they will be like stubble; that day will consume them, says the Lord of Hosts.
7. Oh, the sorrow and pain in my heart for the loss of my people! I, Nephi, have seen it, and it nearly overwhelms me before the Lords presence; yet I must call on my God: Your ways are just.
8. But behold, the righteous who listen to the prophets words and do not harm them, but steadfastly look to Christ for the signs given, despite all persecution they are the ones who will not be destroyed.
9. The Son of Righteousness will come to them; he will heal them, and they will find peace with him, until three generations have passed by, and many from the fourth generation will have lived righteously.
10. When these times have passed, a swift destruction will come upon my people; for despite the pains in my soul, I have seen it; therefore, I know it will happen; and they sell themselves for nothing; for the reward of their pride and foolishness will be their destruction; because they give in to the devil and choose darkness over light, they will end up in hell.
11. The Lords Spirit will not always contend with humanity. When the Spirit stops striving with people, swift

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

destruction comes, which grieves my soul.

12. As I spoke about convincing the Jews that Jesus is truly the Christ, it is also essential that the Gentiles be convinced that Jesus is the Christ, the Eternal God.

13. He reveals himself to all who believe in him, through the power of the Holy Ghost; indeed, to every nation, family, language, and people, working mighty miracles, signs, and wonders among mankind according to their faith.

14. But behold, I prophesy to you about the last days, concerning when the Lord God will reveal these things to humanity.

15. After my descendants and my brothers' descendants have fallen into disbelief and have been struck down by the Gentiles; yes, after the Lord God has surrounded them and laid siege against them, and raised fortifications against them; even after they have been brought low, such that they are not, the words of the righteous will still be written and the prayers of the faithful will be heard; those who have strayed in disbelief will not be forgotten.

16. The destroyed ones will speak to them from the ground, their voices will be faint from the dust, like one who has a familiar spirit; for the Lord God will give him the power to whisper concerning them, as if it were from the ground; their words will softly rise from the dust.

17. Thus says the Lord God: They will write down the events that will unfold among them, and they will be written and sealed in a book, which those who have fallen into disbelief will not have, for they seek to destroy the things of God.

18. Therefore, just as those who have been destroyed were swiftly lost, and the multitude of their fierce ones will be like chaff that disappears, yes, thus says the Lord God: It will happen suddenly, in an instant

19. And it will be that those who have strayed in disbelief will be struck down by the Gentiles.

20. The Gentiles are puffed up with pride and have stumbled because of their many errors, having built many churches; yet they cast aside the power and miracles of God, preaching their own wisdom and learning to gain wealth and exploit the poor.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

21. Many churches have been built that cause envy, strife, and malice.

22. There are also secret combinations, just like in ancient times, according to the devil's schemes, for he is the founder of all these things; yes, the originator of murder and dark deeds; he leads them along with a weak cord until he binds them in strong cords forever.

23. For behold, my dear brothers, I say to you that the Lord God does not work in darkness.

24. He does nothing unless it benefits the world; for he loves the world, so much that he gave his own life to draw all people to him. Therefore, he does not command anyone to refrain from his salvation.

25. Does he call out to anyone, saying: Stay away from me? I say to you, no; instead, he says: Come to me, all you ends of the earth, buying milk and honey without money or price.

26. Has he commanded anyone to leave the synagogues or houses of worship? I say to you, no.

27. Has he commanded anyone not to accept his salvation? I say to you, no; rather, he offers it freely to all people, and he commands his followers to persuade others to repent.

28. Has the Lord asked anyone not to enjoy his goodness? I say to you, no; all men have the same privileges, and none are excluded.

29. He commands that there should be no priestcrafts; for priestcrafts involve people preaching and promoting themselves as examples for the world, seeking gain and praise rather than Zion's welfare.

30. The Lord has forbidden this; hence, the Lord God has commanded that everyone should have charity, which is love. Without charity, they are nothing. If they had charity, they would not let the laborers in Zion go hungry.

31. The laborers in Zion will work for Zion; if they work only for money, they will not survive.

32. The Lord God has commanded that people must not murder, lie, steal, misuse the name of the Lord, feel envy, harbor malice, argue amongst each other, commit sexual immorality, or engage in any of these actions; for all who do these things will perish.

33. None of these wrongdoings come from the Lord; he does good among humanity; and he does nothing unless it is clear to the people; he invites everyone to come to him and receive his goodness; he excludes no



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

one who comes to him, regardless of race or status, and he remembers the outcasts; all are valued the same by God, both Jew and Gentile.

### **2 Nephi Chapter 27**

1. In the last days, especially during the times of the Gentiles, all nations, including the Gentiles and the Jews, will be overwhelmed by sin and various wicked actions.
2. When that time arrives, the Lord of Hosts will come to visit them with thunder, earthquakes, loud noises, storms, tempests, and consuming fires.
3. All nations that fight against Zion and cause her troubles will be like a dream encountered at night; it's similar to a hungry person who dreams of eating but wakes up empty, or a thirsty person dreaming of drinking but wakes up weak, still craving something. So shall be the fate of all nations that oppose Mount Zion.
4. So listen, all who practice wickedness, be astonished and confused, because you will cry out, and cry; you will feel like youre drunk, but it won't be from wine, and you will stagger but not from strong drinks.
5. For the Lord has caused a deep sleep to come upon you. You've closed your eyes and rejected the prophets; your leaders and seers have been obscured because of your wickedness.
6. The Lord God will reveal to you the words of a book, which will have the words of those who have been asleep.
7. This book will be sealed, and it will contain a revelation from God that spans the entire history of the world.
8. Because of the sealed contents, these words will not be revealed during the times of wickedness and sin. Therefore, the book will remain hidden from them.
9. However, the book will be given to a man, who will share the words of the bookwords from those who have slept in the dustwith another person.
10. But the sealed words will not be shared, and the book itself will not be given, as the book will remain sealed by the power of God, and the revelations contained will stay sealed until the right time determined by the Lord, as they will reveal everything from the beginning of the world to its end.
11. The day will come when the unsealed words of the book will be read from rooftops; they will be revealed

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

by the power of Christ, exposing everything that has ever existed among humanity and that will exist until the earth ends.

12. So, on that day when the book is given to the man I spoke of, the book will be hidden from the world, seen only by three witnesses chosen by God, in addition to the man it is given to; they will testify of the truth of the book and its contents.

13. No one else will view it, except for a few, according to Gods will, to bear testimony of His word to humanity; for God has said the voices of the faithful will speak as if from the dead.

14. Therefore, the Lord God will take steps to present the words of the book, establishing His word through as many witnesses as He sees fit; and woe to anyone who rejects Gods word!

15. But it will happen that the Lord God will instruct the man receiving the book: Take these unsealed words and give them to another person to show to the learned, saying: Please read this. The learned will respond: Bring me the book, and I will read it.

16. However, because of worldly concerns and a desire for profit, they will say this, not for the glory of God.

17. The man will answer: I cannot present the book because it is sealed.

18. Then the learned will say: I can't read it.

19. So, it will happen that the Lord God will again give the book and its words to someone uneducated, and the unlearned person will say: I don't know how to read.

20. Then the Lord God will respond: The learned will not read them because they have rejected them, but I can accomplish My own work; therefore, you will read the words that I will provide to you.

21. Do not touch the sealed things, for I will reveal them at the appropriate time; I will demonstrate to humanity that I can do My own work.

22. So, after you have read the words I commanded you to, and secured the witnesses I promised, you will seal the book again and hide it with me, so I can preserve the words you haven't read until I decide to reveal everything to humanity based on My wisdom.

23. For behold, I am God; I am a God of miracles; I will demonstrate to the world that I am the same

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

yesterday, today, and forever; and I only work among people according to their faith.

24. Again, it will come to pass that the Lord will speak to the one who will read the words delivered to him:

25. Because this people honors me with their words but keeps their hearts far from me, and they learn fear of me only through human teachings

26. Therefore, I will perform a marvelous act among this people, a wonderful display, for the wisdom of their wise and learned will be lost, and the understanding of their shrewd will be hidden.

27. Woe to those who try to hide their plans from the Lord! Their deeds are done in darkness, and they say: Who sees us, who knows us? They say: Surely, the changes they make will be viewed as the potter's clay. But behold, God of Hosts will show to men that He knows all their actions. Can the creation say to its creator, You didnt make me? Or can the crafted thing say to the one who made it, You have no knowledge?

28. But behold, says the Lord of Hosts: I will show humanity that it will not be long before Lebanon becomes a fruitful field, and that fruitful field will be viewed as a forest.

29. On that day, the deaf will hear the words of the book, and the blind will see out of their darkness and confusion.

30. The humble will also grow, their joy will be in the Lord, and the poor among people will rejoice in the Holy One of Israel.

31. For as surely as the Lord lives, they will see that the oppressor has been defeated, the scorner destroyed, and all those who seek iniquity cut off;

32. Those who make a man guilty for saying a word and trap him for reviving someone in the public square, and those who turn aside the righteous for no reason.

33. Therefore, thus says the Lord, who redeemed Abraham, concerning Jacob's house: Jacob will no longer be ashamed, and his face won't turn pale.

34. When he sees his children, the work of my hands, among him, they will honor my name, sanctify the Holy One of Jacob, and fear the God of Israel.

35. Those who went astray in spirit will gain understanding, and those who complained will learn doctrine.

## **2 Nephi Chapter 28**

1. In the last days, many false churches will be established, teaching empty and foolish beliefs. Apostasy will be widespread due to deceitful teachers, and the devil will stir up anger in people's hearts, promoting all types of false teachings.
2. Brothers, I have shared with you what the Spirit has guided me to say; therefore, I am confident these events will indeed happen.
3. What is written in this book will be very valuable to humanity, especially to our descendants, who are part of the remnant of Israel.
4. On that day, the churches built not for the Lord will argue among themselves, with each claiming to belong to the Lord, even though their foundations are not in Him.
5. They will fight with each other and their leaders will also argue, teaching their own ideas and rejecting the Holy Ghost, which inspires true speech.
6. They will deny God's power, the Holy One of Israel, telling people to listen to them instead, claiming there is no God today, since the Lord has done His work and given His authority to men.
7. Listen to my advice; if they claim a miracle is done by the Lord, don't believe them; because today, He is not performing miracles; His work is complete.
8. Indeed, many will say: Enjoy life, for tomorrow we die; and all will be fine for us.
9. There will also be many who say: Enjoy life, but also fear God. He will excuse small sins; lie a little, take advantage of others, cause your neighbor harm none of these matters. If we are guilty, God will punish us lightly, and eventually, we'll be saved in His kingdom.
10. Yes, many will promote such false and foolish beliefs, becoming arrogant and hiding their true intentions from the Lord, doing their work in secret.
11. And the blood of the faithful will call out from the ground against them.
12. Yes, they have strayed from the right path and have become corrupt.
13. Because of pride and deceptive teachers and teachings, their churches have become corrupt and full of

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

themselves, all due to their arrogance.

14. They exploit the poor for their luxurious buildings and attire; they persecute the humble and the poor in spirit because of their pride and arrogance.

15. They are stiff-necked and haughty; and because of their pride, evil deeds, and sins, they have gone astray, except for a few humble followers of Christ, who are still misled because they are taught human doctrines.

16. Oh, the wise, learned, and wealthy, who are filled with pride, those who preach false teachings and commit immoral acts, woe unto them, declares the Lord God Almighty, for they will be cast down to hell!

17. Woe to those who ignore justice for trivial things and mock what is good, saying it has no value! The day will come when the Lord will swiftly judge the people on earth; and when they are completely filled with sin, they will perish.

18. But if the people of the earth repent of their sins and wrongdoings, they shall be saved, says the Lord of Hosts.

19. But behold, that great and wicked church, the source of all evil, must be brought down, and its fall will be tremendous.

20. For the devils kingdom must be shaken, and those in it will be prompted to repent, or the devil will bind them with his everlasting chains and lead them into wrath and destruction.

21. For on that day, he will incite anger in people against goodness.

22. And others he will soothe, leading them into complacency, making them believe: All is well in Zion; yes, Zion is prospering, all is well and thus the devil deceives their souls and carefully leads them down to hell.

23. And behold, he will also deceive others, denying the existence of hell, claiming: I am not a devil, for there is no devil and so he whispers to them until he captures them in his terrible chains, from which there is no escape.

24. Yes, they are seized by death and hell; and they, along with all who have been taken with them, must stand before Gods throne and be judged for their actions, after which they will be sent to a place prepared for them a lake of fire and brimstone, filled with endless suffering.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

25. Therefore, woe to anyone who is complacent in Zion!

26. Woe to anyone who shouts: All is well!

27. Indeed, woe to anyone who follows human doctrines and denies God's power and the gift of the Holy Ghost!

28. Woe to anyone who says: We have received enough and need no more!

29. And ultimately, woe to all who tremble and are angry at the truth of God! For those on the solid foundation will receive the truth with joy; but those on shifting sand will tremble at the thought of falling.

30. Woe to anyone who claims: We have heard God's word, and we don't need any more, for we have enough!

31. For behold, the Lord God says: I will teach humanity line upon line, precept upon precept, a little here, a little there; and blessed are those who listen to my guidance and pay attention to my counsel, for they will gain wisdom; for to those who accept, I will give even more; but from those who say, We have enough, even what they have will be taken away.

32. Cursed is anyone who puts their trust in human beings, who relies on their own strength, or listens to human doctrines unless they are inspired by the power of the Holy Ghost.

33. Woe to the Gentiles, says the Lord of Hosts! For even though I reach out my hand to them daily, they will deny me; however, I will still show mercy to them, says the Lord God, if they repent and come to me; for my hand is stretched out all day long, declares the Lord of Hosts.

## **2 Nephi Chapter 29**

1. Many non-Jewish people will turn away from the Book of Mormon; they will claim that we don't need any more scripture; they will ignore that the Lord communicates with many nations; and He will judge the world based on the writings that will emerge. About 559-545 B.C.

2. However, notice that there will be many on that day when I undertake a wonderful work among them, so that I can fulfill the promises I made to humanity to reach out again a second time to save my people, who are from the house of Israel;

3. And also, that I might keep the promises I made to you, Nephi, and your father, that I would remember your

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

descendants; and that the teachings of your descendants will come from my mouth to them; and my words will be declared to the ends of the earth, as a guideline for my people, who are from the house of Israel;

4. And because my words will be proclaimed many Gentiles will exclaim: We have a Bible! We have a Bible, and there can't possibly be any more scripture.

5. But the Lord God says: Oh fools, yes they will have a Bible; and it will come forth from the Jews, my ancient covenant people. And what thanks do the Gentiles give to the Jews for the Bible they receive? Do they even consider the struggles, the hard work, and the sacrifices of the Jews, and their dedication to me, in bringing salvation to the Gentiles?

6. Oh Gentiles, have you remembered the Jews, my ancient covenant people? No; instead, you have cursed them, and hated them, and have not tried to help them. But watch out, for I will bring all these things back on your own heads; for I, the Lord, have not forgotten my people.

7. You foolish ones, who say: We have a Bible, and we need no more. Did you receive a Bible unless it was from the Jews?

8. Do you not realize there are more than one nation? Do you not know that I, the Lord your God, have created all people, and that I keep in mind those on the islands of the sea; and that I reign over the heavens and the earth; and I reveal my word to humanity, even to all the nations on the earth?

9. Why do you complain because you will receive more of my word? Do you not see that the testimony of two nations serves as evidence that I am God, and that I keep track of one nation just like another? Therefore, I speak the same message to one nation as I do to another. And when these two nations come together, their testimonies will also align.

10. I do this to show many that I am the same yesterday, today, and forever; and that I share my words as I see fit. And since I have shared one message, do not think that I cannot share another; for my work is not done yet; nor will it be until the end of time, and it will continue forever.

11. Therefore, just because you have a Bible, do not believe that it contains all my words; and do not think that I have not caused more to be written.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

12. For I command all people, whether in the east or the west, in the north or the south, and in the islands of the sea, that they write down the words I speak to them; for with the writings that will be created, I will judge the world, each individual according to their actions, based on what is recorded.

13. For truly, I will speak to the Jews and they will write it down; and I will also speak to the Nephites and they will document it; and I will speak to the other tribes of the house of Israel that I have scattered, and they will write it; and I will also communicate with all nations of the earth and they will write it.

14. It will come to pass that the Jews will have the writings of the Nephites, and the Nephites will possess the writings of the Jews; and the Nephites and the Jews will share the writings of the lost tribes of Israel; and the lost tribes will hold the words of the Nephites and the Jews.

15. And it will happen that my people, who are from the house of Israel, will return to their rightful lands; and my words will also be united as one. I will show those who oppose my word and my people, who are from the house of Israel, that I am God, and that I made a promise to Abraham to remember his descendants forever.

## **2 Nephi Chapter 30**

1. Look, my dear brothers, I want to share something important with you; I, Nephi, do not want you to think that you are more righteous than the Gentiles. Understand that if you do not keep God's commandments, you will all perish; and because of what has been said, don't think that all Gentiles will be completely destroyed.

2. I tell you that all Gentiles who repent will become part of the Lord's covenant people; however, those Jews who refuse to repent will be rejected. The Lord makes a covenant only with those who turn to Him and believe in His Son, Jesus, who is the Holy One of Israel.

3. Now, I want to prophesy more about the Jews and the Gentiles. After the book I mentioned is published and written for the Gentiles, then sealed again to the Lord, many will believe what is written in it, and they will share this message with the remaining descendants of our people.

4. Then, the remaining descendants will learn about us, how we left Jerusalem, and that they are related to the Jews.

5. The gospel of Jesus Christ will be preached to them; thus, they will be restored to the understanding of their



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

ancestors, as well as the knowledge of Jesus Christ that their ancestors had.

6. They will rejoice when they realize this is a blessing from God; their ignorance will start to disappear, and many generations will not pass without them being a pure and joyful people.

7. The scattered Jews will also begin to believe in Christ; they will start to gather together on the land, and all who believe in Christ will become a delightful people.

8. The Lord God will start His work among all nations, tribes, languages, and peoples to restore His people on earth.

9. With justice, the Lord God will judge the poor and fairly correct the humble. He will strike the earth with the power of His words; and with His breath, He will put an end to the wicked.

10. Soon, the Lord God will cause a significant separation among the people, destroying the wicked while saving His people, even if it means He must use fire against the wicked.

11. Righteousness will be like a belt around His waist, and faithfulness will be like a belt around His hips.

12. Then, the wolf will live peacefully with the lamb; the leopard will lie down with the young goat, and the calf, along with the young lion, will be together; and a little child will lead them.

13. The cow and the bear will graze together; their cubs will lie down side by side, and the lion will eat grass like an ox.

14. A nursing child will play near the snakes hole, and a toddler will put his hand on the nest of a poisonous snake.

15. They will not harm or destroy anyone on my holy mountain; for the earth will be full of the knowledge of the Lord, just as the sea is filled with water.

16. Therefore, the matters of all nations will be made known; indeed, everything will be revealed to humanity.

17. There is nothing hidden that will not be disclosed; nothing done in darkness will remain unexposed in the light; and nothing sealed on earth will stay sealed.

18. Thus, everything revealed to humanity will be made known at that time; and for a long while, Satan will not have power over the hearts of people anymore. Now, my beloved brothers, I conclude my statements.

## **2 Nephi Chapter 31**

1. Nephi concludes his prophetic messages to his dear brothers. He admits he can only write a few things that he knows will definitely happen, and he cannot include many of the words of his brother Jacob.
2. Thus, what I have written is enough for me, except for a few remarks I need to make about the teachings of Christ; therefore, I will speak to you clearly, following the straightforwardness of my prophecies.
3. I find joy in simplicity; this is how the Lord operates among people. The Lord illuminates understanding by communicating with people in ways they can grasp.
4. So, I want you to recall what I mentioned about the prophet whom the Lord revealed to me, the one who would baptize the Lamb of God, who will remove the sins of the world.
5. If the holy Lamb of God needed to be baptized with water to fulfill all righteousness, then how much more do we, being imperfect, need to be baptized, even with water!
6. Now, I would like to ask you, my dear brothers, how did the Lamb of God fulfill all righteousness by being baptized with water?
7. Don't you understand that he was holy? Even so, despite his holiness, he showed all people that, in his mortal form, he humbled himself before the Father and affirmed his intention to obey Him by keeping His commandments.
8. Therefore, after he was baptized with water, the Holy Ghost descended upon him in the likeness of a dove.
9. It also illustrates to people the narrowness of the path and the tightness of the gate through which they must enter, as he set the example for them.
10. He instructed people to follow him. Thus, my dear brothers, can we follow Jesus if we are not willing to observe the commandments of the Father?
11. The Father instructed: Repent, repent, and be baptized in the name of my Beloved Son.
12. Moreover, the voice of the Son spoke to me, saying: Whoever is baptized in my name, the Father will give the Holy Ghost to him, just like me; therefore, follow me and do the things you have seen me do.
13. So, my dear brothers, I know that if you follow the Son with sincere intent, being completely honest before

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

God, with genuine intentions, repenting of your sins, showing the Father that you are willing to take upon you the name of Christ through baptism by following your Lord and Savior into the water, as he commanded then you will receive the Holy Ghost; yes, then you will experience the baptism of fire and of the Holy Ghost; and then you will speak with the tongue of angels and shout praises to the Holy One of Israel.

14. However, my dear brothers, this was the voice of the Son speaking to me: After you have repented of your sins and declared to the Father that you are willing to keep my commandments through baptism of water, and after receiving the baptism of fire and the Holy Ghost, and are able to speak with a new tongue, even the tongue of angels, if after this you deny me, it would have been better for you not to have known me.

15. And I heard a voice from the Father say: Yes, the words of my Beloved are true and faithful. Those who endure to the end will be saved.

16. So now, my dear brothers, I know that unless someone endures to the end while following the example of the living God's Son, he cannot be saved.

17. Therefore, do what I have seen your Lord and Redeemer do; these things were shown to me so you could know the gate through which you should enter. The gate to enter is repentance and baptism with water; afterwards, a remission of your sins will come through fire and the Holy Ghost.

18. Then you are on this narrow path that leads to eternal life; yes, you have entered by the gate; you have followed the commandments of the Father and the Son; and you have received the Holy Ghost, which testifies of the Father and the Son, fulfilling the promise that if you enter in this way, you will receive.

19. Now, my dear brothers, after you have entered this narrow and straight path, I ask if that is all there is to do? Behold, I say to you, No; for you have not come this far except through the word of Christ with unwavering faith in him, completely relying on the merits of him who is powerful to save.

20. Therefore, you must continue forward with steadfastness in Christ, having a bright hope and love for God and everyone. So, if you persist, focusing on the word of Christ, and endure to the end, behold, the Father says: You will have eternal life.

21. And now, behold, my dear brothers, this is the pathway; there is no other way or name given under heaven

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

by which man can be saved in the kingdom of God. And now, behold, this is the teaching of Christ, the only true teaching of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghost, which is one God, forever. Amen.

### **2 Nephi Chapter 32**

1. And now, look, my dear friends, I think you are thinking deeply about what you should do after you have started your journey. But, why are you thinking these thoughts in your hearts?
2. Do you not remember that I told you that after you receive the Holy Ghost, you will be able to communicate like angels? And now, how can you communicate like angels unless it is through the Holy Ghost?
3. Angels communicate with the authority of the Holy Ghost; therefore, they express the words of Christ. So, I encourage you to immerse yourselves in the words of Christ; for these words will guide you on everything you need to do.
4. Therefore, after I have shared these thoughts, if you do not understand them, it may be because you are not asking or seeking; hence, you remain in the darkness instead of coming into the light.
5. For I say to you again, if you choose to start on this journey and receive the Holy Ghost, it will reveal to you all the things you should do.
6. This is the teaching of Christ, and no further teachings will be given until he appears to you in person. And when he does appear to you in person, you must follow the things he tells you.
7. And now, I, Nephi, cannot say anything more; the Spirit is preventing me from speaking, and I feel sad because of the disbelief, wickedness, ignorance, and stubbornness of people; for they do not seek knowledge, nor do they understand profound truths that are presented to them plainly, as clearly as possible.
8. And now, my dear friends, I see that you are still deep in thought, and it pains me that I must address this issue. If you would listen to the Spirit that teaches people to pray, you would realize that you must pray; for the evil spirit does not encourage a person to pray but instead convinces them not to.
9. But look, I tell you that you must pray continuously and not give up; that you should not do anything for the Lord unless you first pray to the Father in the name of Christ, asking him to bless your actions so that they benefit your soul.

## **2 Nephi Chapter 33**

1. Nephi's words are true; they confirm the existence of Christ. Those who trust in Christ will accept Nephi's words, which will serve as a testimony during judgment. About 559 B.C.
2. Now, I, Nephi, cannot write everything that was taught to my people; I am not as skilled in writing as I am in speaking; for when someone speaks with the power of the Holy Ghost, it reaches the hearts of people.
3. However, many people harden their hearts against the Holy Spirit, which leaves no room for it in them; as a result, they ignore many important things that are written and view them as worthless.
4. But I, Nephi, have recorded what I have written, and I consider it extremely valuable, especially for my people. I pray for them daily, and I often cry at night because of their struggles; I call upon God in faith, knowing that He will hear my prayers.
5. I believe that the Lord God will bless my prayers for the benefit of my people. The words I have written in weakness will grow strong for them; they encourage them to do good, connect them to their ancestors, and speak of Jesus, urging them to believe in Him and endure until the end, which is eternal life.
6. These words also strongly condemn sin, in the simplest terms; therefore, no one will be upset by what I have written unless they are influenced by the devil.
7. I take pride in being straightforward; I take pride in truth; I take pride in my Jesus, for He has saved my soul from hell.
8. I have love for my people and great faith in Christ that I will meet many pure souls at His judgment seat.
9. I have love for the Jews. I use the term Jew to refer to those from whom I descended.
10. I also have love for the Gentiles. But behold, I can hope for none of these unless they are reconciled to Christ, enter through the narrow gate, and follow the straight path that leads to life, continuing on this path until the end of their mortal lives.
11. And now, my dear brothers, as well as Jews, and all of you around the world, listen to these words and believe in Christ; and if you do not believe these words, believe in Christ. And if you believe in Christ, then you will believe these words, for they are the words of Christ, given to me; they teach everyone to do good.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

12. If these are not the words of Christ, then you must judge for yourselves. Christ will reveal to you, with power and great glory, that these are indeed His words on the last day; and you and I will stand face to face before Him, and you will know that I was commanded by Him to write these things despite my weaknesses.

13. I pray to the Father in Christ's name that many of us, if not all, may be saved in His kingdom on that great and final day.

14. Now, my beloved brothers, all those who are part of the house of Israel and all of you across the earth, I speak to you as someone shouting from the dust: Farewell until that great day comes.

15. And to those who will not accept the goodness of God, disregard the words of the Jews, my words, and the words that will come from the Lamb of God, I bid you a lasting farewell, for these words will condemn you on the last day.

16. For whatever I declare on earth will be held against you at the judgment; for this is what the Lord has commanded me, and I must comply. Amen.

## **Jacob**

### **Jacob Chapter 1**

1. The Book of Jacob the Brother of Nephi

2. These are the words he preached to his brothers. He silences someone trying to argue against the teachings of Christ. A brief recounting of the history of the Nephites follows.

3. Jacob and Joseph strive to convince people to believe in Christ and follow His commandments. Nephi passes away. Wickedness increases among the Nephites. About 544 B.C.

4. Fifty-five years had passed since Lehi left Jerusalem; thus, Nephi instructed me, Jacob, to write on these small plates, which contain these accounts.

5. He commanded me to write a few of the most valuable things on these plates; I should only lightly touch on the history of the Nephite people.

6. He explained that the history of his people should be recorded on other plates and that I should take care of

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

these plates and pass them down to my descendants for generations.

7. If there were sacred preachings, significant revelations, or prophecies, I was to record their main ideas on these plates, mentioning them as much as possible for the sake of Christ and our people.

8. Because of our faith and deep concern, it was shown to us what would happen to our people.

9. We received many revelations and experienced the spirit of prophecy; thus, we knew about Christ and His coming kingdom.

10. Because of this, we worked hard among our people to persuade them to come to Christ and experience God's goodness so they could find peace, lest they face God's wrath and be denied entry as the Israelites were in the wilderness.

11. Therefore, we wished for everyone to choose not to rebel against God, to avoid provoking His anger, but instead to believe in Christ, witness His death, endure His suffering, and bear the scorn of the world; so, I, Jacob, take on the task given to me by my brother Nephi.

12. As Nephi aged and realized his death was near, he appointed a man to be king and ruler over his people following the tradition of kings.

13. The people loved Nephi greatly because he had been a strong protector for them, using the sword of Laban in their defense, and working tirelessly for their well-being

14. Consequently, the people wanted to remember his name. Those who succeeded him as king were referred to by the people as second Nephi, third Nephi, and so on, based on the lines of kings; thus, they were called according to what the people chose, regardless of their actual names.

15. Then Nephi passed away.

16. The people who were not Lamanites were Nephites; however, they were also known as Jacobites, Josephites, Zoramites, Lamanites, Lemuelites, and Ishmaelites.

17. But from now on, I, Jacob, will not use these names to categorize them; I will call those who seek to harm the Nephites "Lamanites," and those who are supportive of Nephi will simply be known as Nephites, or the people of Nephi, according to the royal line.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

18. Now it happened that during the reign of the second king, the Nephites grew stubborn and began to engage in wicked behaviors, similar to those of David and his son Solomon, like wanting many wives and concubines.

19. Indeed, they started to seek after gold and silver and became somewhat prideful.

20. Therefore, I, Jacob, spoke these words to them as I taught them in the temple, having first received my instructions from the Lord.

21. For I, Jacob, and my brother Joseph were appointed as priests and teachers of this people by Nephi.

22. We took our responsibilities seriously before the Lord, understanding that if we didnt teach them the word of God diligently, we would be accountable for their sins; therefore, through our efforts, we aimed to ensure that their blood would not be on our hands; otherwise, we would not be found clean on the final day.

### **Jacob Chapter 2**

1. The message that Jacob, the brother of Nephi, delivered to the people of Nephi after Nephi had passed away:

2. Now, dear brothers, I, Jacob, feel a deep sense of responsibility to God to fulfill my duties with seriousness, and to cleanse myself of your sins. Today, I have come to the temple to share God's message with you.

3. You know that I have been committed to my calling, but today I am weighed down with even greater concern and anxiety for your spiritual well-being than ever before.

4. Look, to this point, you have followed the Lords teachings that I have shared with you.

5. But listen to me; I need you to understand that with the help of the all-powerful Creator of heaven and earth, I can see that you are starting to fall into sin, which is very detestable to me, and even more so to God.

6. Truly, it pains my soul and fills me with shame before my Creator that I must speak to you about the wickedness in your hearts.

7. It also saddens me that I must boldly address these issues in front of your wives and children, many of whom are sensitive, pure, and precious in Gods eyes, which pleases Him.

8. I believe they have come here to hear uplifting words from God, words that heal the broken-hearted.

9. Therefore, I feel burdened that I must, due to a strict command from God, point out your wrongdoings,



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

which may further wound those already hurt, and for those who are not hurt, instead of enjoying the comforting words of God, they have their souls pierced and minds troubled.

10. Despite how difficult this is, I must follow Gods commands and speak about your sins and evils in front of the pure-hearted and broken-hearted, under the watchful eye of Almighty God.

11. Thus, I will speak the truth plainly as dictated by God. For when I asked the Lord, He instructed me to go to the temple tomorrow and declare the message He would give me to this people.

12. Now, listen carefully, my brothers, as I share this with you: many of you have begun to pursue gold, silver, and various precious metals, which this landblessed to you and your descendantshas in abundance.

13. God has favored you greatly, allowing you to gain many riches. Yet, some of you possess more than others and have become prideful, looking down on your brothers because of your expensive clothing and mistreating them, thinking you are superior.

14. Now, do you think God approves of this behavior? I tell you, He does not. Instead, He condemns you, and if you continue down this path, His judgments will soon come upon you.

15. Oh, how I wish He would show you how He can strike you down with just a glance!

16. Oh, I wish He would free you from this wickedness and evil. Oh, if only you would heed His commands and let the pride within you not ruin your souls!

17. Think of your brothers as equals, and share your wealth freely, so that they may also prosper.

18. But before you chase after riches, seek the kingdom of God first.

19. And once you place your hope in Christ, you will gain wealth if you seek it with the intent to do goodsuch as clothing the needy, feeding the hungry, freeing the captive, and helping the sick and troubled.

20. Now, my brothers, Ive spoken to you about pride; what do you have to say about your actions if you have harmed and persecuted your neighbor out of pride for what God has granted you?

21. Do you not think such behavior is detestable to the Creator of all? Everyone is equally precious in His view. All people come from dust, and He created them for the same purpose: to follow His commands and glorify Him forever.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

22. Now, I will conclude my thoughts on pride. If it werent for the need to address a more serious issue, my heart would be filled with joy for you.

23. However, Gods message weighs heavily on me because of your more serious sins. For the Lord has said: This people has begun to grow more wicked; they do not understand the scriptures, as they try to justify their immoral actions by referencing the lives of David and Solomon.

24. Indeed, David and Solomon had many wives and concubines, which the Lord found detestable.

25. Therefore, the Lord has led you out of the land of Jerusalem by His power, so I could raise up a righteous branch from the descendants of Joseph.

26. Thus, I, the Lord God, will not allow this people to emulate those of old.

27. So, my brothers, hear me and pay attention to the Lords words: No man among you should have more than one wifeno concubines shall he possess;

28. For I, the Lord God, take pleasure in the purity of women. Immorality is abominable to me, declares the Lord of Hosts.

29. Therefore, this people must follow my commandments, says the Lord of Hosts, or the land will suffer because of them.

30. For if I choose, says the Lord of Hosts, to raise a righteous generation, I will command my people; otherwise, they will ignore these commands.

31. I have witnessed the pain and heard the cries of the daughters of my people in Jerusalem and all the lands because of the wicked actions of their husbands.

32. And I will not allow the cries of the virtuous daughters whom I have brought from Jerusalem to rise up against the men of my people, says the Lord of Hosts.

33. They shall not take captive the daughters of my people because of their tenderness, unless I send upon them a severe curse leading to their destruction; they shall not commit immorality like those of old, says the Lord of Hosts.

34. Now, my brothers, you know these commandments were given to our father, Lehi; therefore, you have

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

long known them. You have brought great condemnation upon yourselves for doing what you should not have.

35. You have committed greater sins than the Lamanites, our brothers. You have broken the hearts of your gentle wives and lost your childrens trust due to your poor example; the grief of their hearts ascends to God against you. Because of the strictness of Gods word against you, many hearts have been broken, pierced by deep wounds.

### **Jacob Chapter 3**

1. I want to address those of you who are pure in heart. Focus your thoughts on God with determination, and pray to Him with great faith. He will comfort you during your struggles, advocate for you, and bring justice upon those who want to harm you.

2. All of you who are pure in heart, lift your heads and embrace the encouraging word of God; enjoy His love, for if you stay strong in your minds, you can experience this forever.

3. But woe to you who are not pure in heart and who are filthy in Gods eyes today; unless you repent, the land will suffer for your actions. The Lamanites, who are not as corrupt as you, are also cursed, yet they will be the ones who will drive you to destruction.

4. The time is coming quickly when, unless you change your ways, they will inherit the land that belongs to you, and the Lord God will lead away the righteous from among you.

5. Look, the Lamanites, your brothers whom you disdain because of their perceived impurities and the curses upon them, are actually more righteous than you. They have not forgotten the commandment from the Lord given to our forefather that they should have only one wife, should not have concubines, and should not engage in sexual immorality.

6. And they faithfully follow this commandment; therefore, because they are obedient, the Lord God will not destroy them but will show them mercy, and one day they will be a blessed people.

7. See how their husbands cherish their wives, and their wives love their husbands; they care for their children. Their disbelief and animosity towards you come from the wrongdoings of their ancestors. So how can you think you are better than they are in the eyes of your great Creator?

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

8. Oh, my friends, I worry that unless you repent of your sins, their skin may appear whiter than yours when you stand with them before Gods throne.

9. So, I give you this commandment, which is Gods word: do not speak against them because of the darkness of their skin, nor despise them for their perceived evil; instead, remember your own wrongdoings and recognize that their situation is a result of their ancestors' actions.

10. Therefore, remember your children and how much you have hurt them by your example. Also, recognize that your own impurities may lead them to ruin, and their sins will fall upon you when the final day comes.

11. Oh, my friends, listen to my words; wake up your spirits; shake off the slumber of spiritual death, and free yourselves from the agony of hell so that you do not become instruments for the devil, destined for that lake of fire and sulfur, which signifies the second death.

12. Now, I, Jacob, shared many more teachings with the Nephites, urging them to avoid fornication, immorality, and all forms of sin, detailing the terrible consequences of such actions.

13. There are countless events involving this ever-growing group of people that cannot be recorded on these plates; however, many of their actions are documented on larger plates, including their wars, disputes, and the reigns of their kings.

14. These plates are known as the plates of Jacob, created by Nephis hand. And I conclude my speaking with these words.

### **Jacob Chapter 4**

1. All the prophets honored God the Father by recognizing ChristAbrahams sacrifice of Isaac was a symbol of God and His Only Begotten SonPeople should make peace with God through Christ's AtonementThe Jews will turn away from the cornerstone, about 544421 B.C.

2. Look, I, Jacob, have spoken a lot to my people with my words, (and I can only write a little because its difficult to engrave them onto metal plates) and we understand that what we write on these plates must remain;

3. But anything else we write, except on these plates, will disappear and be lost; yet we can engrave a few words on plates to provide our children, and also our dear brothers, with some knowledge about us or their

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

ancestors

4. We take joy in this effort; we work hard to engrave these words onto the plates, hoping that our dear brothers and children will accept them with gratitude and look upon them to learn with happiness, not sadness or contempt, about their first parents.

5. We write these things so they may understand that we knew about Christ, and we hoped for His glory many centuries before He came; and not just we ourselves hoped for His glory, but all the holy prophets before us did as well.

6. Look, they believed in Christ and honored the Father in His name, and we do the same. This is why we observe the law of Moses; it guides our souls toward Him; and for this reason, it is regarded as righteous for us, just as it was for Abraham in the wilderness when he obediently offered his son Isaac, symbolizing God and His Only Begotten Son.

7. This is why we study the prophets, receive many revelations, and have the spirit of prophecy; and with all these witnesses, we gain hope, and our faith becomes strong enough that we can truly command in the name of Jesus, and even the trees obey us, along with the mountains and the waves of the sea.

8. Still, the Lord shows us our weaknesses so we know that it is through His grace and His immense kindness to us that we have the power to do these things.

9. Look, the Lords works are great and amazing. How unfathomable are His mysteries, and its impossible for man to fully understand His ways. No one can know His ways unless He reveals them; therefore, my brothers, dont disregard the revelations of God.

10. For look, by the power of His word, man was placed on the earth, which was created by His word. So if God can simply speak and the world exists, or speak and create man, why would He not be able to command the earth and its creations as He wishes?

11. Therefore, my brothers, do not try to advise the Lord; instead, take guidance from Him. For you know well that He counsels with wisdom, justice, and great mercy over all His creations.

12. So, dear brothers, reconcile yourselves to Him through the Atonement of Christ, His Only Begotten Son,

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

so you may gain resurrection through His power and be presented before God as the first fruits of Christ, having faith in Him and a good hope of glory before He reveals Himself in the flesh.

13. Now, beloved, do not be surprised that I share these things; why not discuss Christs Atonement and gain a complete understanding of Him, just as we can learn about resurrection and the world to come?

14. Listen, my brothers, if someone prophesies, they should do so clearly so people can understand; for the Spirit conveys truth and doesnt lie. It speaks of things as they truly are and will be; thus, these truths are revealed to us plainly for the salvation of our souls. But we are not the only witnesses to these truths; God spoke them to the prophets of old as well.

15. But behold, the Jews were stubborn people; they rejected clear messages, killed the prophets, and sought after things they couldnt comprehend. Because of their blindness, which came from looking too far and missing the point, they must inevitably fall; for God has removed clarity from them, giving them many things they cannot grasp because that is what they wanted. And since they desired this understanding, God allowed it, so they may stumble.

16. And now I, Jacob, feel inspired to prophesy; I sense from the Spirit within me that through the Jewish stumbling, they will reject the rock on which they could build a secure foundation.

17. But look, according to the scriptures, this rock will become the great, final, and only assured foundation upon which the Jews can build.

18. And now, dear ones, how can they possibly build upon this foundation after having rejected it, so it can become the cornerstone for them?

19. Listen, my beloved brothers, I will reveal this mystery to you; as long as I do not lose my resolve in the Spirit or become overly anxious for you.

### **Jacob Chapter 5**

1. Look, my brothers, do you not remember reading the words of the prophet Zenos, which he said to the house of Israel, saying:

2. Listen, O house of Israel, and pay attention to my words as a prophet of the Lord.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

3. The Lord says, I will compare you, O house of Israel, to a cultivated olive tree, which a man took care of in his vineyard; it grew, aged, and started to rot.
4. The master of the vineyard saw that his olive tree was decaying; he said: I will prune it, dig around it, and nourish it so that perhaps it may produce new, tender branches and not die.
5. So he pruned it, dug around it, and nourished it as he had said.
6. After many days, it began to sprout some young and tender branches, but the main part of the tree started to die.
7. The master of the vineyard saw this, and he said to his servant: I am saddened that I might lose this tree; go and gather branches from a wild olive tree and bring them to me; we will cut off the main branches that are withering and throw them into the fire to burn.
8. And the Lord of the vineyard said, I will take many of these young and tender branches and graft them wherever I choose; it does not matter if the root of this tree dies, for I can preserve its fruit for myself; therefore, I will graft these young and tender branches wherever I want.
9. Take the branches from the wild olive tree and graft them in its place; those branches I have cut off will be thrown into the fire and burned so they do not clutter my vineyard.
10. And the servant of the Lord of the vineyard did as the Lord commanded, and grafted the wild olive branches in.
11. The Lord of the vineyard had it dug around, pruned, and nourished, saying to his servant: I am saddened to think that I might lose this tree; therefore, I have done this so that perhaps I might preserve its roots and keep them for myself.
12. So, go and watch over the tree, and nourish it according to my instructions.
13. I will place these where I will, and it does not matter to you; I do this to preserve the natural branches of the tree; also, I want to store up its fruit for the season, as it saddens me to think I might lose this tree and its fruit.
14. It came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard went away and hid the natural branches of the tame olive tree

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

in the lowest parts of the vineyard, some in one place and some in another, according to his will.

15. A long time passed, and the Lord of the vineyard said to his servant: Come, let us go down into the vineyard, so we may work in it.

16. So they went down into the vineyard to work. The servant said to the master: Look here; look at the tree.

17. The Lord of the vineyard looked and saw the tree where the wild olive branches had been grafted; it had sprouted and begun to bear fruit. He saw that it was good, and the fruit was like the natural fruit.

18. He said to the servant: Look, the wild branches have absorbed the moisture from its roots, causing the roots to provide much strength; because of this strength, the wild branches are now producing tame fruit. If we had not grafted these branches, the tree would have perished. Now, I will store up much fruit that this tree has produced; I will keep this fruit for the season for myself.

19. The Lord of the vineyard said to his servant: Come, let us go to the lowest part of the vineyard and see if the natural branches have also produced a lot of fruit, so I can store some for the season for myself.

20. They went to where the master had hidden the natural branches of the tree, and he said to the servant: Look at these; see this one has produced much fruit, and it is good. He said to the servant: Take some of this fruit and store it for the season, for I have tended it for a long time, and it has produced much fruit.

21. The servant said to his master: How did you come to plant this tree or branch here? This is the poorest spot in all of your vineyard.

22. The Lord of the vineyard said to him: Do not advise me; I knew it was poor ground; that's why I said to you, I have taken care of it all this time, and you see that it has produced a lot of fruit.

23. Then the Lord of the vineyard said to his servant: Look here; I have also planted another branch of the tree; and you know that this ground is poorer than the first. But look at the tree. I have cared for it for a long time, and it has produced much fruit; gather it and store it for the season, that I might keep it for myself.

24. And the Lord of the vineyard said again to his servant: Look here, I have planted another branch as well; notice that I have taken care of it, and it has also produced fruit.

25. He said to the servant: Look here and see the last branch. I have planted this in good soil; I have tended it



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

for a long time, and only part of the tree produced tame fruit while the other part has produced wild fruit; look, I have nurtured this tree just like the others.

26. The Lord of the vineyard then said to the servant: Cut off the branches that do not produce good fruit, and throw them into the fire.

27. But the servant replied: Let us prune it, dig around it, and nourish it a little longer; perhaps it will yield good fruit for you so that you can keep it for the season.

28. And so the Lord of the vineyard and his servant took care of all the fruit in the vineyard.

29. A long time passed, and the Lord of the vineyard said to his servant: Come, let us go down into the vineyard again to work. The time is near, and the end will soon come; therefore, I must store up fruit for the season for myself.

30. They went down into the vineyard and came to the tree whose natural branches had been cut off, and the wild branches had been grafted in; and all sorts of fruit cluttered the tree.

31. The Lord of the vineyard tasted the fruit, sampling each type. He said: We've tended this tree for a long time, and I have gathered plenty of fruit for myself for the season.

32. However, this time it has produced much fruit, but none of it is good. There are all kinds of bad fruit, and it is of no benefit to me despite all our efforts; I am saddened that I might lose this tree.

33. The Lord of the vineyard said to the servant: What should we do about the tree so that I can once again preserve good fruit for myself?

34. The servant replied: Because you grafted in branches from the wild olive tree, they have strengthened the roots, enabling them to survive; thus, you see they are still good.

35. Then the Lord of the vineyard said to his servant: The tree is of no use to me, and neither are the roots as long as it produces evil fruit.

36. However, I know that the roots are good, and I have preserved them for my own purpose; due to their great strength, they have brought forth good fruit from the wild branches.

37. But the wild branches have grown and overrun the roots; because they have overpowered the roots, they

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

are producing much evil fruit; this excess of bad fruit shows that it is beginning to perish; it will soon be ripe for burning, unless we take action to preserve it.

38. Then the Lord of the vineyard said to his servant: Let us go down to the lowest part of the vineyard and see if the natural branches have also produced bad fruit.

39. So they went down into the lowest part of the vineyard and discovered that the fruit of the natural branches had also become corrupt; yes, the first, the second, and the last had all become corrupted.

40. The wild fruit of the last branch had overcome the part of the tree that bore good fruit, causing that branch to wilt and die.

41. The Lord of the vineyard wept and said to the servant: What more could I have done for my vineyard?

42. I knew that all the fruit of the vineyard, except for these, had gone bad. And now these that once bore good fruit have also gone corrupt; now all the trees in my vineyard are worthless, except to be cut down and burned.

43. And behold, this last tree, whose branch has withered, I planted in a good location; yes, it was the place I valued most in all my vineyard.

44. You saw that I also cut down whatever cluttered that spot so that I could plant this tree in its place.

45. You saw that part of it produced good fruit while another part provided wild fruit; and since I did not throw away its branches and burn them, they have overrun the good branch until it has withered away.

46. And now, despite all the care we've given to my vineyard, its trees have become corrupted; they produce no good fruit, and these are the ones I wanted to preserve, to have collected fruit against the season for myself. But now they have become like the wild olive tree and are worthless, only fit to be cut down and burned; it pains me to think I might lose them.

47. But what more could I have done in my vineyard? Have I held back in my care? No, I have taken care of it, dug around it, pruned it, fertilized it; I have reached out for nearly the entirety of the day, and the end is near. It hurts me to think that I have to cut down all the trees of my vineyard and burn them. Who has corrupted my vineyard?

48. The servant said to his master: Is it not because of the tall branches in your vineyard have they not

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

overwhelmed the good roots? Because the branches overpowered the roots, behold, they grew faster than the roots could provide, taking strength for themselves. I ask, is not this the reason your vineyard has gone corrupt?

49. Then the Lord of the vineyard said to the servant: Let us go and cut down the trees of the vineyard and burn them, for they clutter my vineyard, for I have done everything I could. What more could I have done for my vineyard?

50. But the servant replied: Give it a little more time.

51. And the Lord said: Yes, I will give it a little more time, for it saddens me that I should lose the trees of my vineyard.

52. Therefore, let us take the branches from those trees that I planted in the lowest parts of my vineyard and graft them into the tree they came from; and let us take off the most bitter branches from the tree and graft in the natural branches of the tree instead.

53. I will do this so that the tree does not perish, so perhaps I can preserve the roots for my own purpose.

54. The roots of the natural branches of the tree, which I planted where I wanted, are still alive; therefore, to preserve them for my purpose, I will take some branches from this tree and graft them in. Yes, I will graft in the branches of their mother tree so that I can also preserve the roots for myself, so that when they are strong enough, perhaps they will produce good fruit for me, and I may find glory in the fruit of my vineyard.

55. It came to pass that they took from the natural tree that had turned wild and grafted it into the natural trees, which also had become wild.

56. And they also took from the natural trees that had become wild and grafted them into their mother tree.

57. The Lord of the vineyard said to the servant: Do not remove the wild branches from the trees, except for the most bitter; and in those you shall graft as I instructed.

58. We will nourish the trees in the vineyard again, we will trim their branches; and we will remove the ripened branches that must perish and cast them into the fire.

59. I do this so that the roots may gain strength from the good branches; and because of the branch changes,

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

the good may overcome the bad.

60. Since I have preserved the natural branches and their roots, and I have grafted the natural branches back into their mother tree and preserved the roots of their mother tree, perhaps the trees of my vineyard might once more bear good fruit; and I may find joy again in the fruit of my vineyard, and perhaps I may rejoice abundantly for having preserved the roots and branches of the first fruit

61. So, go and call the servants so we may work diligently in the vineyard, that we may prepare the way for me to bring forth the natural fruit again, which is good and the most precious fruit above all others.

62. Let us now labor hard this last time, for the end is near, and this is the last time I shall prune my vineyard.

63. Graft in the branches; start with the last so that they can be first, and the first can be last; dig around all the trees, both the old and young, the first and the last; and so on, to ensure they are nourished again for the final time.

64. So, dig around them, prune them, and fertilize them one more time for the last time, for the end is near. If the last grafts grow, and produce the natural fruit, prepare the way for them so they may thrive.

65. As they begin to grow, you shall remove the branches that produce bitter fruit, depending on the strength and size of the good; do not take away the bad all at once, lest the roots become too strong for the graft and the graft perish, and I lose those trees from my vineyard.

66. For I grieve at the thought of losing the trees of my vineyard; therefore, you will remove the bad branches as the good grow so that the roots and tops will be equal in strength, until the good overcomes the bad, and the bad can be cut down and burned, not cluttering my vineyard; thus I will cleanse my vineyard of the bad.

67. I will graft the branches of the natural tree back into the natural tree;

68. The branches of the natural tree will be grafted into the natural branches of the tree, reuniting them to together to produce natural fruit, and they will become one.

69. And the bad will be cast away, even from all the land of my vineyard; for only this once will I prune my vineyard.

70. It came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard sent his servant; and the servant went and did as the Lord

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

commanded, bringing other servants, though they were few.

71. The Lord of the vineyard said to them: Go and labor in the vineyard with all your strength. For this is the last time I will care for my vineyard; for the end is near, and the time of harvest is quickly approaching; and if you labor with me with all your might, you will rejoice in the fruit I will store for myself against the time that is soon to come.

72. The servants went and worked hard, and the Lord of the vineyard labored alongside them; they obeyed all the commandments of the Lord of the vineyard.

73. Soon, natural fruit began to appear in the vineyard again; the natural branches grew and thrived greatly; the wild branches were being cut off and discarded; and they kept the roots and tops balanced according to their strength.

74. Thus they worked diligently, following the Lord of the vineyards commands, until all the bad had been removed from the vineyard, and the Lord had ensured the trees had produced the natural fruit again; they became like one body, the fruits were equal, and the Lord of the vineyard had preserved for himself the natural fruit, which was most precious to him from the beginning.

75. When the Lord of the vineyard saw that his fruit was good, and that his vineyard was no longer corrupted, he called his servants and said: For this last time we have cared for my vineyard; you see that I have done as I wished, and I have preserved the natural fruit, that it is good, just as it was in the beginning. Blessed are you; for because you have been diligent in working with me in my vineyard, and have kept my commandments, and have returned to me the natural fruit, my vineyard is no longer corrupted, and the bad is removed; behold, you shall rejoice with me because of the fruit of my vineyard.

76. For a long time I will store up the fruit of my vineyard for myself against the season that is quickly coming; and for the last time I have cared for my vineyard, pruned it, dug around it, and fertilized it; therefore, I will store the fruit for myself for a long time, according to what I have said.

77. When the time comes for evil fruit to enter my vineyard again, I will gather the good and the bad; I will preserve the good for myself and cast away the bad to its own place. Then the season and the end will come,

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

and I will cause my vineyard to be burned with fire.

### **Jacob Chapter 6**

1. The Lord will bring back Israel in the last daysThe world will be destroyed by firePeople must follow Christ to escape the lake of fire and sulfur. About 544421 B.C.
2. And now, listen, my brothers, as I mentioned that I would share a prophecy, here it is: that the things spoken by the prophet Zenos about the house of Israel, which he compared to a cultivated olive tree, will definitely happen.
3. And the day when He will raise His hand again for the second time to save His people will be the very last time that the Lords servants will go out with His power to care for and prune His vineyard; and after that, the end will come quickly.
4. How fortunate are those who have worked hard in His vineyard; how unfortunate are those who will be cast out into their own place! And the world will be consumed by fire.
5. How loving is our God towards us; He remembers the house of Israel, both roots and branches; He extends His hands to them all day long; yet, they are stubborn and rebellious; but those who do not harden their hearts will be saved in the kingdom of God.
6. Therefore, my dear brothers, I urgently ask you to repent and come with sincere hearts, and stick close to God as He does to you. And while His mercy is reaching out to you during the daylight, do not harden your hearts.
7. Yes, today, if you hear His voice, do not harden your hearts; for why would you choose to die?
8. For look, after you have been nourished by the good word of God throughout the day, will you still produce bad fruit, so that you must be cut down and thrown into the fire?
9. Look, will you ignore these words? Will you reject the words of the prophets; will you dismiss everything that has been said about Christ, after so many have testified about Him; deny the good message of Christ, the power of God, and the gift of the Holy Spirit, suppress the Holy Spirit, and mock the great plan of salvation that has been prepared for you?

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

10. Do you not understand that if you choose to do these things, the power of redemption and resurrection found in Christ will lead you to stand in shame and terrible guilt before Gods judgment?

11. And based on the power of justice, as justice cannot be overlooked, you must be cast into that lake of fire and sulfur, whose flames cannot be put out, and whose smoke rises forever and ever; that lake of fire and sulfur is endless suffering.

12. Oh then, my dear brothers, repent, and enter through the narrow gate, and stay on the narrow path until you achieve eternal life.

13. Oh, be wise; what more can I say?

14. Finally, I say goodbye, until we meet before the righteous judgment of God, which judgment terrifies the wicked with fear and dread. Amen.

### **Jacob Chapter 7**

1. After some time had passed, a man named Sherem came among the people of Nephi.

2. He started preaching to the people, claiming that there would be no Christ. He taught many flattering things to the people in order to undermine the teachings of Christ.

3. He worked hard to lead the people's hearts away from their faith, successfully leading many away. Knowing that I, Jacob, believed in Christ who would come, he sought many chances to speak with me.

4. Sherem was very educated and knew the people's language perfectly, allowing him to use flattery and persuasive speech, influenced by the power of the devil.

5. He hoped to weaken my faith, despite all the revelations and experiences I had regarding these matters. I had truly seen angels who had helped me, and I had heard the Lord speak to me directly at different times, so I remained firm in my beliefs.

6. Then he approached me and spoke, saying: Brother Jacob, I have been looking for a chance to talk to you because Ive heard that you travel around preaching what you call the gospel, or the doctrine of Christ.

7. And you have convinced many people to stray from the true path of God and ignore the law of Moses, which is the correct way. You turn the law of Moses into the worship of a being that you say will come many

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

hundreds of years from now. Now, I, Sherem, tell you that this is blasphemy; because no one knows such things. No one can predict the future. And this is how Sherem argued against me.

8. But then, the Lord filled me with His Spirit, and I was able to refute everything he said.

9. So I asked him: Do you deny the Christ who will come? He replied: If there were a Christ, I would not deny him; but I know there is no Christ, nor has there ever been or will be.

10. I asked him: Do you believe in the scriptures? He answered, Yes.

11. I said: Then you must not understand them; because they truly testify about Christ. None of the prophets have written about anything that doesn't relate to this Christ.

12. And that's not all I have received revelation and insights; I know through the power of the Holy Spirit that without an atonement, all of mankind is doomed.

13. He then challenged me: Show me a sign through the power of the Holy Spirit that you claim to know so much about.

14. I said to him: Why should I put God to the test to show you a sign of something you already know is true? Even so, you would reject it because you are influenced by the devil. Nevertheless, let it not be my will but if God chooses to strike you down, let that serve as a sign to you of His power in heaven and on earth, and also that Christ will come. May Your will be done, O Lord.

15. When I, Jacob, had spoken these words, the power of the Lord came upon him, and he fell to the ground. For several days, he remained weakened.

16. He then instructed the people to gather the next day, saying that he would die and wanted to speak to them before he passed away.

17. The next day, the crowd assembled, and he spoke plainly to them, rejecting the teachings he had spread and confessing the truth about Christ, the power of the Holy Spirit, and the ministry of angels.

18. He made it clear to them that he had been misled by the devil's influence. He spoke about hell, eternity, and eternal punishment.

19. He said: I fear I may have committed the unforgivable sin because I have lied to God; I denied Christ



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

while claiming to believe in the scriptures, which truly testify of Him. Now I am greatly afraid of the consequences for my actions, but I confess my wrongdoing to God.

20. After saying these words, he could say nothing more and died.

21. When the crowd saw him speak this way as he was passing away, they were extremely astonished, and the power of God came upon them, causing many to fall to the ground.

22. This pleased me, Jacob, because I had asked my Father in heaven for this, and He had heard my prayer.

23. Then, peace and the love of God returned to the people; they began to study the scriptures again and no longer listened to the words of this wicked man.

24. Many efforts were made to bring the Lamanites back to the truth; however, all proved fruitless because they thrived on violence and maintained a deep-seated hatred towards us, their own brethren. They continually tried to destroy us through force.

25. Therefore, the Nephite people armed themselves and prepared to defend against them, trusting in God as their foundation, and thus, they became victors over their enemies.

26. As I, Jacob, started to grow old and knowing that the records of our people were kept on other plates, I conclude this record. I assert that I have written according to the best of my knowledge, reflecting on how quickly time has passed, and how our lives slipped away like a dream. We have been a lonely and serious people, cast out from Jerusalem, born into hardship, rejected by our own brethren which led to warfare and disputes; hence, we mourned throughout our days.

27. I, Jacob, recognized that I would soon die; therefore, I said to my son Enos: Take these plates. I shared with him the commands of my brother Nephi, and he agreed to obey these commands. I finish my writing on these plates, which has been brief, and I wish the reader farewell, hoping many of my brothers will read my words. Farewell, my brethren.

## **Enos**

### **Enos Chapter 1**

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

1. Enos, knowing that my father was a good man who taught me the Lord's ways, is something I am grateful for.
2. I will share the struggle I had with God until I was forgiven for my sins.
3. I went out to hunt animals in the forest, and the teachings from my father about eternal life and the joy of being with the faithful filled my heart.
4. I felt a deep yearning, so I knelt down before God and earnestly prayed for my own salvation, crying out to Him all day long; even at night, my voice reached up to the heavens.
5. Then a voice came to me, saying: Enos, your sins are forgiven, and you will be blessed.
6. I understood that God could not deceive me, and my guilt was completely removed.
7. I asked: Lord, how did this happen?
8. He responded: It is because of your faith in Christ, whom you have not seen yet. Many years will pass before He comes in the flesh, so go on; your faith has healed you.
9. After hearing these words, I felt a strong desire for the well-being of my people, the Nephites, so I poured my entire soul out to God for them.
10. While I was earnestly praying, the Lord spoke to me again and said: I will visit your people based on their efforts to keep my commandments. I have given them this land, which is holy; I will not curse it unless it becomes iniquitous. I will visit your people as I promised, and their wrongdoing will cause them sorrow.
11. After hearing this, my faith in the Lord strengthened, and I prayed hard for my brethren, the Lamanites.
12. Eventually, after dedicating myself in prayer and effort, the Lord told me: I will grant your request because of your faith.
13. And this was my request: If my people, the Nephites, should turn to sin and be destroyed while the Lamanites remain, I asked that God would keep a record of my people, the Nephites, so it could be brought to the Lamanites one day, possibly leading them to salvation.
14. Because at that time, our efforts to bring them back to the true faith seemed hopeless. They were fiercely determined to destroy our records and us, along with all our traditions.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

15. Knowing that God could protect our records, I continually cried out to Him, as He had promised that anything asked in faith in the name of Christ would be given.

16. I believed and requested that God preserve our records, and He assured me that He would bring them to the Lamanites in His own time.

17. I felt sure it would happen according to the promise He made, and my soul found peace.

18. The Lord told me: Your ancestors also asked me for this; it will happen according to their faith, which is just like yours.

19. So I began to move among the Nephites, prophesying about future events and sharing what I had learned and seen.

20. I can testify that the Nephites earnestly tried to help the Lamanites return to faith in God, but our efforts were in vain. Their hatred was strong, and they had become wild, aggressive, and bloodthirsty, engaged in idolatry and immorality, living off wild animals, camping out in the wilderness, wearing simple clothing, and focusing on hunting. Many of them ate only raw meat and constantly sought to destroy us.

21. In contrast, the Nephites cultivated the land, grew various grains and fruits, tended herds and flocks, and raised all kinds of cattle, goats, and horses.

22. There were many prophets among us, but the people were stubborn and hard to lead.

23. The messages we preached were always severe, warning of wars, conflicts, destruction, and repeatedly reminding them of death, eternity, and Gods power, trying to keep them aware of the Lord. I believe that only such strong and clear warnings could prevent their rapid descent into destruction. And I write about them in this way.

24. In my lifetime, I witnessed many battles between the Nephites and the Lamanites.

25. As I grew older, I realized that it had been one hundred seventy-nine years since our father Lehi left Jerusalem.

26. I understood that I would soon die. I was inspired by God to preach and share the truth about Christ. I have declared this throughout my life and found joy in it more than anything worldly.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

27. Now I am about to rest with my Redeemer because I know that with Him, I will find peace. I look forward to the day when my mortal body will become immortal, and I will stand before Him, seeing His face with joy. He will say to me: Come, you are blessed; a place has been prepared for you among my Fathers many homes. Amen.

### **Jarom**

#### **Jarom Chapter 1**

1. Now behold, I, Jarom, write a few words because my father Enos commanded me to keep track of our family history.
2. Since these records are small and meant to benefit our brothers the Lamanites, I will only write a little, and I wont include my prophecies or revelations. What more could I say than what my fathers have already said? They have already shared the plan of salvation, and that is enough for me.
3. Look, it is important that a lot be done among this people because their hearts are hard, their ears are deaf, their minds are blinded, and they are stubborn; yet, God is very merciful to them and hasnt completely destroyed them from the land.
4. There are many among us who receive revelations, as not all of them are stubborn. Those who are not stiff-necked and have faith share a connection with the Holy Spirit, who reveals things to people based on their faith.
5. Now, after two hundred years had passed, the Nephites had become strong in the land. They made sure to keep the law of Moses and honor the Sabbath day. They did not disrespect God or speak against Him, and the laws of the land were very strict.
6. The people were spread across much of the land, and the Lamanites were even more numerous than the Nephites; they had a love for violence and enjoyed drinking the blood of animals.
7. Many times the Lamanites came to fight us, the Nephites. But our kings and leaders were strong in their faith in the Lord; they taught the people about the ways of the Lord. Because of this, we were able to resist the

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

Lamanites and push them out of our lands, and we started to fortify our cities and any place that belonged to us.

8. We multiplied greatly and spread out over the land, becoming very wealthy in gold, silver, precious items, fine woodwork, buildings, equipment, as well as iron, copper, brass, and steel, making all kinds of tools for farming and weapons for war, including sharp arrows, quivers, darts, javelins, and everything needed for battle.

9. Being well-prepared, the Lamanites were unsuccessful against us. The Lord's word to our ancestors was proven true: if we keep His commandments, we will prosper in the land.

10. The prophets of the Lord warned the Nephites that if they didnt keep the commandments and turned to sin, they would be destroyed from the land.

11. Thus, the prophets, priests, and teachers worked hard, patiently urging the people to be diligent; they taught the law of Moses and its purpose and encouraged them to look forward to the coming Messiah and have faith in Him as if He were already here. This is how they taught them.

12. By doing this, they helped prevent the people's destruction, as they inspired their hearts with the word and continually motivated them to repent.

13. After two hundred thirty-eight years had passed, filled with wars, disputes, and conflicts for much of that time.

14. I, Jarom, will not write more because the plates are small. But you, my brothers, can refer to the other Nephite records; there, the details of our wars are engraved, based on what the kings wrote or ordered to be written.

15. I pass these plates to my son Omni, so they can be preserved according to my fathers commands.

**Omni**

### **Omni Chapter 1**

1. I, Omni, was instructed by my father, Jarom, to write something on these plates to keep track of our family

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

history.

2. During my time, I fought hard with the sword to protect my people, the Nephites, from their enemies, the Lamanites. However, I admit that I am a bad person and haven't followed God's commandments as I should have.

3. After two hundred seventy-six years, we experienced both peace and many bloody wars. In total, two hundred eighty-two years went by, and I kept these records as my fathers commanded, then passed them to my son Amaron. This is the end of my record.

4. Now, I, Amaron, will write down a few things in my father's book.

5. After three hundred twenty years, most of the wicked Nephites were destroyed.

6. The Lord didnt allow this to happen without a reason, for He had led them out of Jerusalem and protected them from their enemies. He fulfilled His warning to our ancestors, saying that if they disobeyed Him, they would not thrive in the land.

7. So, the Lord judged them harshly; however, He spared the righteous to save them from destruction and delivered them from their foes.

8. I then handed the records to my brother Chemish.

9. Now, I, Chemish, will write down a few things in the same book as my brother; I saw his last writing, which was done by his own hand, the same day he gave them to me. This is how we maintain the records, following our fathers' commands. I conclude my record.

10. I, Abinadom, am the son of Chemish. I witnessed a lot of wars and conflicts between my people, the Nephites, and the Lamanites. With my own sword, I defended my people and killed many Lamanites.

11. The records of our people are inscribed on plates kept by the kings through the generations, and I know of no new revelations or prophecies that haven't been written down, so what is enough has been recorded. This is the end of my record.

12. I am Amaleki, the son of Abinadom. I will share some information about Mosiah, who became king of Zarahemla. He was warned by the Lord to escape from the land of Nephi, and many who listened to God's call

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

also left with him into the wilderness.

13. They followed God's instructions and left the land for the wilderness, guided by teachings and prophecies. They were continually reminded by God's word and were led safely through the wilderness until they arrived in Zarahemla.

14. There, they encountered a group of people known as the people of Zarahemla. There was much joy among the people of Zarahemla when they realized that Mosiah arrived with the brass plates containing the records of the Jews.

15. Mosiah discovered that the people of Zarahemla had come from Jerusalem during the captivity of Zedekiah, the king of Judah.

16. They traveled through the wilderness and were guided by the Lord to cross great waters to the land where Mosiah found them, and they had lived there ever since.

17. By the time Mosiah found them, they had grown very numerous. However, they had experienced many wars and conflicts and had often been killed in battle. Their language had become mixed up, and they had brought no records with them. They did not even believe in their Creator, making it difficult for Mosiah and his people to understand them.

18. But Mosiah made sure they learned his language. After they learned it, Zarahemla shared a genealogy of his ancestors from memory, which was written down but not in these plates.

19. The people of Zarahemla and Mosiah joined together, and Mosiah was made their king.

20. During Mosiah's reign, a notable stone with engravings was brought to him, which he interpreted through God's gift and power.

21. The engravings told the story of a man named Coriantumr and the deaths of his people. Coriantumr was discovered by the people of Zarahemla and lived with them for nine months.

22. The engravings also spoke briefly about his ancestors, whose first parents came from a tower when the Lord confused the languages of the people, and God's judgment came upon them. Their remains lay scattered in the northern land.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

23. I, Amaleki, was born during Mosiah's reign and have lived to see his death; now his son Benjamin reigns in his place.

24. In Benjamin's time, I have seen major wars and much bloodshed between the Nephites and the Lamanites. Yet, the Nephites gained significant victories over them, to the point that King Benjamin pushed them out of Zarahemla.

25. As I grew old and had no children, I knew King Benjamin was a just man. Therefore, I will give these plates to him, urging all to turn to God, the Holy One of Israel, and have faith in prophecies, revelations, ministering angels, the gift of tongues, language interpretation, and all things good, for truly, all good comes from the Lord, while evil comes from the devil.

26. Now, dear brothers, I invite you to come to Christ, the Holy One of Israel, and accept His salvation and redemptive power. Yes, turn to Him and offer your entire selves as a sacrifice to Him, continue fasting and praying, and hold out until the end; as surely as the Lord lives, you will be saved.

27. Now, I would like to mention a group of people who went into the wilderness seeking to return to the land of Nephi, as many wanted to reclaim their inheritance.

28. So they went into the wilderness. Their leader was a strong and stubborn man, which led to conflict among them; out of the entire group, only fifty survived and returned to Zarahemla.

29. They also took others with them who returned to the wilderness.

30. I, Amaleki, had a brother who went with them, and I have not heard of them since. I am nearing my death, and the plates are now full. This is the end of my words.

## **Words of Mormon**

### **Words of Mormon Chapter 1**

1. The Words of Mormon

2. I, Mormon, am about to hand over the record I've been working on to my son Moroni, and I've seen nearly all that has led to the destruction of my people, the Nephites.



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

3. It has been many hundreds of years since Christ came when I give these records to my son; I believe he will see the complete destruction of our people. But I pray that he might live on to write something about them and about Christ so that maybe one day it can be of use to them.

4. Now, I want to share some thoughts on what I've written; after I condensed the records from the plates of Nephi down to the time of King Benjamin, mentioned by Amaleki, I looked through the records I had, and I came across these plates, which include a brief account of the prophets from Jacob to the reign of King Benjamin, plus many teachings from Nephi.

5. I found the messages on these plates to be encouraging, especially the prophecies about Christ's coming, which my ancestors believed were mostly fulfilled; I know that all prophecies concerning us up to now have come true, and those that are still to come will surely happen.

6. So, I decided to use these things to complete my record, drawing from the plates of Nephi, as I cannot capture even a tiny fraction of my people's stories.

7. However, I will take these plates with prophecies and revelations and include them with the rest of my record because they are special to me; I trust they will be valued by my fellow believers.

8. I do this for a good reason; this is what feels right to me through the inspiration of the Lord's Spirit within me. I don't know everything, but the Lord knows all that is to come, so I act according to His will.

9. I pray that my people can once again recognize God, specifically the salvation offered by Christ, and that they can become a joyful people once more.

10. Now, I, Mormon, will finish my record, which I take from the plates of Nephi, and I will do it based on the knowledge and understanding God has given me.

11. After Amaleki handed over these plates to King Benjamin, he added them to the other records passed down from kings through the generations until the time of King Benjamin.

12. These records were then handed down through generations until they reached me. I, Mormon, pray to God that they will be preserved from now on. I believe they will be preserved because they contain important revelations that will be used to judge my people and others at the final judgment, according to God's word.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

13. Now, about King Benjamin there were some conflicts among his people.

14. The armies of the Lamanites also came down from the land of Nephi to fight against his people. But King Benjamin rallied his armies and faced them, fighting valiantly with Laban's sword.

15. With the Lord's strength, they fought bravely against their enemies, claiming the lives of many thousands of Lamanites. They continued to battle until they had pushed the Lamanites out of all their rightful lands.

16. After the rise of false Christs, who were silenced and punished for their actions;

17. And after false prophets and teachers arose among the people, all punished for their deceit; following a time of great fighting and disagreements that led many to the Lamanites, King Benjamin, aided by the holy prophets among his people

18. King Benjamin was a righteous leader, and he ruled his people justly; many righteous men spoke the word of God with power and authority, often speaking bluntly due to the stubbornness of the people

19. So, with their help, King Benjamin worked tirelessly with all his energy and soul, alongside the prophets, to restore peace in the land.

## **Mosiah**

### **Mosiah Chapter 1**

1. There was no fighting left in the land of Zarahemla among King Benjamin's people, and King Benjamin enjoyed peace for the rest of his life.

2. He had three sons and named them Mosiah, Helorum, and Helaman. He ensured they learned the language of their ancestors so they could be wise and understand the prophecies spoken by their forefathers, which had been given to them by God.

3. He also taught them about the records engraved on the brass plates, saying: "My sons, remember that if these plates didn't exist, which hold these records and commandments, we would remain in ignorance, even now, not knowing God's mysteries."

4. It wouldn't have been possible for our father, Lehi, to remember everything and teach us without these

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

plates. Since he learned the Egyptian language, he could read what was written and pass it on to us and our children, fulfilling Gods commandments through generations up till now.

5. I tell you, my sons, if these preserved records werent available to us by the hand of God, so we could read and comprehend His mysteries and keep His commandments before us, even our ancestors would have fallen into disbelief, and we would be like our brothers, the Lamanites, who know nothing of these truths and doubt them due to incorrect traditions passed down.

6. Oh, my sons, I want you to know that what I've said is true, and the records are also true. And look at the plates of Nephi, which contain our fathers' records and teachings from when they left Jerusalem until now; they are trustworthy, and we know this because we have them in front of us.

7. Now, my sons, remember to study these records diligently, so you can gain wisdom from them; and keep God's commandments, so you may be blessed in the land as God promised our forefathers.

8. King Benjamin taught many more things to his sons that are not recorded in this book.

9. After teaching his sons, King Benjamin aged and realized he would soon pass away. So, he decided it was important to hand over the kingdom to one of his sons.

10. He called Mosiah before him and said: "My son, I want you to announce to all the people in the land of Zarahemla and the people of Mosiah who live here that they should gather together. Tomorrow I will publicly declare that you are a king and leader over the people that the Lord our God has given us."

11. Additionally, I will give this people a name so they stand out from all others that the Lord God has brought from Jerusalem. I do this because they have been faithful in keeping the Lord's commandments.

12. I will give them a name that will never be erased unless they turn away from God.

13. Yes, I tell you that if this favored people of the Lord turn away and become wicked, the Lord will let them become weak like their brethren; He will no longer protect them with His unmatched power as He has protected our ancestors.

14. I say this because if He had not saved our ancestors, they would have fallen to the Lamanites and suffered from their animosity.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

15. After King Benjamin finished speaking to his son, he entrusted him with the kingdom's affairs.

16. He also placed him in charge of the records engraved on the brass plates, the plates of Nephi, the sword of Laban, and the ball or director that guided our ancestors through the wilderness, which the Lord prepared to lead them according to how closely they followed His guidance.

17. Therefore, when they were unfaithful, they did not succeed or advance in their journey. Instead, they were turned back and faced God's anger, resulting in famine and severe hardships to remind them of their responsibilities.

18. Now, Mosiah followed his father's command and announced to everyone in the land of Zarahemla to gather at the temple to hear the words his father would share with them.

### **Mosiah Chapter 2**

1. King Benjamin speaks to his peopleHe recalls how fair and spiritual his reign has beenHe advises them to serve GodThose who rebel against God will experience great suffering.

2. After Mosiah did what his father asked him and announced it across the land, the people gathered together to go to the temple to hear King Benjamin speak to them.

3. There were so many people that they couldnt even count them; they had grown greatly in the land.

4. They also brought the firstborn of their flocks to offer as sacrifices and burnt offerings as instructed by the law of Moses;

5. And to express gratitude to the Lord their God, who had brought them out of Jerusalem, saved them from their enemies, appointed righteous teachers, and established a just king who established peace in Zarahemla, teaching them to follow God's commandments so they could rejoice and feel love for God and others.

6. When they arrived at the temple, they set up their tents all around it, each family, including their wives, sons, daughters, and grandchildren, keeping their families separate from each other.

7. They positioned their tents with the doors facing the temple, so they could stay inside and listen to King Benjamin.

8. The crowd was so large that King Benjamin couldnt address everyone inside the temple, so he had a tower

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

built to ensure his people could hear him.

9. He began speaking from the tower, but many could not hear him because of the crowd. So, he had his words written down and distributed to those who could not hear him directly.

10. These are the words he spoke and had recorded: My friends, all of you who have gathered here today to listen to what I will say; I didnt call you here just to waste time, but to truly pay attention, open your ears to hear, open your hearts to understand, and open your minds so that the mysteries of God can be revealed to you.

11. I didnt call you here to make you fear me or to think that I am more than just a mortal man.

12. I am like you, facing all sorts of physical and mental weaknesses; yet, I have been chosen by you, consecrated by my father, and allowed by God to rule over you, and I have been protected by His extraordinary power, intending to serve you with all my strength.

13. I tell you that as I have served you all my days, I have not sought gold, silver, or any riches from you;

14. Nor have I allowed you to be imprisoned, or for any of you to enslave each other, or to commit murder, theft, or adultery; I have not permitted any wickedness and have taught you to keep Gods commandments so you could avoid harm

15. Even I, myself, have worked with my hands to serve you and to prevent you from heavy taxation, ensuring that no burdens fell upon you and you are all witnesses to these things today.

16. Yet, my friends, I do not mention these things to boast, nor do I wish to accuse you; I tell you this so that you know I can stand guilt-free before God today.

17. Understand this: I tell you that because I say I have dedicated my life to serving you, I don't want to boast; my service is ultimately to God.

18. I share this with you so that you may gain wisdom and understand that when you serve others, you are really serving God.

19. You have called me your king; if I, your king, work to serve you, shouldnt you also work to serve one another?

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

20. And if I, your king, who has given my time to serve you and has also served God, deserve your thanks, how much more should you thank your Heavenly King!

21. I tell you, my friends, that if you were to give all the thanks and praise that you could possibly muster to the God who created and preserved you, who gives you joy, and allows you to live peacefully together

22. I say, if you serve the God who created you and supports you daily, allowing you to live and act freely, and sustains you moment by moment, even if you served Him with all your soul, you would still be unprofitable servants.

23. And all that He asks of you is to keep His commandments; He has promised that if you follow His commandments, you will prosper in the land; He never goes back on His word; thus, if you keep His commandments, He blesses you and helps you succeed.

24. First, He created you and gave you life, for which you owe Him.

25. Second, He requires you to follow His commandments; if you do, He will immediately bless you; therefore, He has compensated you. You are still in debt to Him, now and forever; how can you have anything to boast about?

26. Now I ask you, can you claim anything about yourselves? I answer: No, you cannot even consider yourselves more significant than the dust of the earth, from which you were made; yet, it belongs to the one who created you.

27. And I, whom you call your king, am no better than you; I too am made of dust. You see that I am old and about to return to the earth.

28. So, as I mentioned that I have served you with a clear conscience before God, I have gathered you today to be found blameless, so that your blood does not come upon me when I will be judged by God concerning you.

29. I say to you that I have gathered you so I can free myself from any responsibility for your sins at this time when I am about to pass away; I want to leave in peace, so my spirit can join in praising a just God.

30. Furthermore, I have gathered you to let you know I can no longer be your teacher or your king;

31. Because I tremble with weakness while trying to speak to you; but the Lord supports me and has allowed

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

me to speak, commanding me to inform you today that my son Mosiah is now your king and ruler.

32. Now, my friends, I wish for you to continue as you have been. As you have kept my commandments and those of my father, prospered, and been protected from your enemies, so if you keep the commands of my son, or those from God that he brings, you will also prosper, and your enemies will have no sway over you.

33. But, O my people, be careful that conflicts do not arise among you, and that you do not follow the evil spirit, as my father Mosiah warned.

34. For there is woe for anyone who chooses to obey that spirit; if they continue in their sins and die in them, they bring damnation upon themselves, receiving everlasting punishment for breaking Gods law against their own understanding.

35. I say to you that there are none among you, except for little children who have not yet learned, who do not know that you are eternally indebted to your Heavenly Father, to give Him everything you have and are; you have also been taught about the records that contain the prophecies from the holy prophets, even from when our father Lehi left Jerusalem;

36. And of all that has been spoken by our ancestors up until now. They spoke what the Lord commanded them, and therefore, their words are just and true.

37. Now, I tell you, my friends, that after you have learned all these things, if you choose to go against what has been taught and distance yourselves from the Spirit of the Lord, denying it a place in you to guide you in wisdom so you can be blessed and prospered

38. I say to you, anyone who does this is openly rebelling against God; they choose to obey the evil spirit and become an enemy to all that is good; thus, the Lord has no place in them, for He does not dwell in unholy temples.

39. Therefore, if that person does not repent and dies as an enemy to God, divine justice awakens their soul to a vivid awareness of their guilt, causing them to shrink away from the Lord's presence, filled with guilt, pain, and suffering like a fire that never goes out.

40. And now I say to you that mercy does not apply to that person; thus, their final outcome is to endure

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

continual torment.

41. O, all of you old and young, and you little children who can understand my words, I have spoken plainly so you can grasp my message; I urge you to remember the terrible situation of those who have fallen into sin.

42. Moreover, I want you to think about the blessed and joyful state of those who keep God's commandments. They are blessed in both temporal and spiritual matters; if they remain faithful to the end, they will be received into heaven, living with God in eternal happiness. O remember, remember that these things are true; for the Lord God has declared it.

### **Mosiah Chapter 3**

1. And once again, my friends, I want to redirect your focus because I have more to share with you; pay attention, as I have important messages about what is yet to come.

2. These messages have been revealed to me by a heavenly messenger from God. He instructed me to wake up, and when I did, I saw him standing right in front of me.

3. He said to me: Wake up and listen to the words I'm about to share; I'm here to bring you remarkable news that will bring great happiness.

4. God has heard your prayers and acknowledged your righteousness. He has sent me to share this news with you so that you may rejoice and share this joy with your people too.

5. For the time is approaching, and it will soon come, when the Lord Almighty, who has always existed and will always exist, will come down from heaven and live among humans in a physical body. He will perform great miracles, like healing the sick, raising the dead, helping the lame to walk, giving sight to the blind, enabling the deaf to hear, and curing all kinds of illnesses.

6. He will expel evil spirits that live in the hearts of people.

7. And truly, he will endure temptations and suffer physical pain, hunger, thirst, and exhaustion, even more than any human can bear, except in death; for his sorrow will be so immense that blood will ooze from every pore because of the wickedness and sins of his people.

8. He will be called Jesus Christ, the Son of God, the Creator of all things, and his mother will be named



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

Mary.

9. He will come to his own people so that salvation can be granted to humanity through faith in his name; yet, despite all this, people will see him merely as a man, accuse him of being possessed, whip him, and crucify him.

10. He will rise again on the third day; and he will stand to judge the world, ensuring that all these events happen so that a fair judgment can be made upon mankind.

11. For indeed, his blood will atone for the sins of people who have died without knowing God's will, or who have sinned out of ignorance.

12. But cursed is the one who knowingly rebels against God! For such people can only find salvation through repentance and faith in the Lord Jesus Christ.

13. The Lord has sent his holy prophets to all people, to share these truths with every race and language so that whoever believes in the coming of Christ may be forgiven of their sins and find immense joy, as if he had already come to them.

14. Yet, God saw that his people were stubborn, so he gave them a law, specifically the law of Moses.

15. He showed them many signs and wonders, as well as types and symbols that pointed to his coming; holy prophets spoke about his coming too. Despite this, they hardened their hearts and failed to understand that the law of Moses means nothing without the atonement of his blood.

16. Even if it were possible for young children to commit sins, they could not be saved; but I assure you, they are blessed; because though they fall as all do by nature, the blood of Christ covers their sins.

17. Moreover, I say that there is no other name, way, or means through which salvation can come to humanity, except in and through the name of Christ, the Almighty.

18. For behold, he judges fairly; an infant who dies in their infancy will not perish; but those who bring harm upon their souls do so unless they humble themselves, become like little children, and believe that salvation has always been, is now, and will always be available through the atoning blood of Christ, the Almighty.

19. The natural man is an enemy to God, and has been since Adams fall, and will remain so forever unless he

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

listens to the Holy Spirit, sheds his natural tendencies, and becomes a saint through Christ's atonement, becoming like a childsubmissive, gentle, humble, patient, loving, and willing to endure whatever the Lord decides to impose on him, just as a child obeys his father.

20. Furthermore, I tell you that a time will come when the knowledge of a Savior will spread to every nation, tribe, language, and people.

21. And when that time comes, no one will be found innocent before God except for little children; only through repentance and faith in the name of the Almighty God.

22. Even now, after you have taught your people what the Lord your God has commanded you, they will still not be found blameless before God, only according to the messages I have shared with you.

23. Now I have delivered the words that the Lord God commanded me to speak.

24. And thus the Lord declares: These words will serve as a bright testimony against this people on judgment day, when each person will be judged according to their actions, whether good or bad.

25. If their actions are evil, they will experience a dreadful realization of their guilt and sins, causing them to flee from the Lords presence into a state of perpetual misery and torment, from which there is no return; thus, they will have condemned their own souls.

26. Therefore, they will have drunk from the cup of Gods wrath, which justice could not refuse them, just as it could not prevent Adam from falling due to his choice to eat the forbidden fruit; thus, mercy will forever have no claim on them.

27. Their torment will be like a lake of fire and sulfur, whose flames cannot be extinguished, and whose smoke will rise forever and ever. This is what the Lord commanded me to share. Amen.

## **Mosiah Chapter 4**

1. King Benjamin continues his speechSalvation comes through the AtonementTrust in God to be savedKeep your sins forgiven through faithfulnessHelp those in needDo everything wisely and in order.

2. After King Benjamin finished speaking the words given to him by the angel of the Lord, he looked around at the crowd, and noticed they had fallen to the ground in fear of the Lord.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

3. They saw themselves in their true state, feeling lower than dust. They all cried out together: Please have mercy on us and use Christs atoning sacrifice so we can be forgiven for our sins and have our hearts cleansed; we believe in Jesus Christ, the Son of God, who created everything in heaven and earth; he will come down to live among people.

4. After they said these things, the Spirit of the Lord came upon them, filling them with joy because they had received forgiveness for their sins and peace of mind due to their deep faith in Jesus Christ, who was to come, as King Benjamin had taught them.

5. Then King Benjamin spoke again, saying: My friends and family, I want you to pay attention so you can understand the rest of my message.

6. If understanding God's goodness has made you realize how insignificant you are and how fallen you are

7. I say to you, if you have come to know God's goodness and unmatched power, wisdom, patience, and willingness to endure for the sake of humankind; and also, the atonement prepared since the beginning of time, so that salvation could come to those who trust in the Lord, keep his commandments diligently, and maintain their faith until the end of their lives

8. I say that this is the person who will receive salvation through the atonement prepared for all people from the beginning, for everyone who ever lived since Adam's fall or who will live until the end of time.

9. This is how salvation comes. There is no other way to be saved except what I have shared with you, nor conditions for salvation aside from what I have taught you.

10. Believe in God; believe that he is real and that he created everything in heaven and earth; believe that he possesses all wisdom and power, both in heaven and on earth; believe that people cannot understand all that the Lord understands.

11. Also, believe that you must repent of your sins and abandon them, humble yourselves before God; sincerely ask him to forgive you; and now, if you believe these things, make sure you do them.

12. And again I say to you, just as I have before, that as you come to know God's glory, or if you have experienced his goodness and tasted his love, and received forgiveness for your sins, which brings immense

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

joy to your souls, I want you to always remember the greatness of God, your own insignificance, and his goodness and patience towards you, who are unworthy, and humble yourselves deeply, praying to the Lord daily, and standing firm in faith about what is to come, which was promised by the angel.

13. And I say to you, if you do this, you will always be joyful and filled with God's love, retaining forgiveness for your sins; you will grow in the knowledge of the glory of the one who created you, and in what is just and true.

14. You will not want to harm each other but to live in peace and give each person what they deserve.

15. You will not let your children go hungry or without clothes; you will not allow them to break God's laws, fight among themselves, or serve the devil, who is sins master, and an enemy to all that is good.

16. Instead, you will teach them to live truthfully and respectfully; you will teach them to love and serve one another.

17. Also, you yourselves will help those who are in need; you will share what you have with those who need it; and you will not allow beggars to approach you in vain and leave to suffer.

18. You might think: That person has caused their own problems; so I wont help them, I wont provide for their needs, because their suffering is deserved

19. But I say to you, whoever thinks this has great reason to repent; if they dont, they will perish forever and have no claim to Gods kingdom.

20. For arent we all beggars? Don't we all rely on the same Being, God, for everything we have, for food, clothing, gold, silver, and all kinds of riches?

21. And even now, you have been calling on his name, asking for forgiveness for your sins. Has he let you ask in vain? No; he has poured his Spirit upon you, filled your hearts with joy, and left you speechless because of the overwhelming joy you feel.

22. Now, if God who created you, whom you depend on for your lives and all that you have, gives you what you ask for that is right, in faith, believing that you will receive it, then you should share what you have with one another.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

23. If you judge the person asking for your help and condemn them, how much more severe will your own condemnation be for holding back what belongs to God what does not belong to you but to God, to whom your life also belongs; and yet you do not ask for anything, nor repent for what you have done.

24. I say to you, woe to that person, for their possessions will perish with them; and these words I address to those who are wealthy in this world.

25. And again, I say to the poor, those who lack but have enough to get by from day to day; I mean all of you who refuse to help the beggar, because you say you have not; I would wish that you express in your hearts: I do not give because I do not have, but if I did, I would give.

26. If you think this in your hearts, you are guilt-free; otherwise, you are condemned, and your condemnation is fitting because you covet what you have not received.

27. Now, for the sake of what I have shared with you so that you can keep receiving forgiveness for your sins every day, and live guiltlessly before God I encourage you to give to the poor, everyone according to their means, such as feeding the hungry, clothing the naked, visiting the sick, and providing relief for them in both spiritual and temporal ways.

28. And make sure all of this is done wisely and in order; for it is not required that someone acts beyond their capacity. Additionally, they should be diligent to win the reward; therefore, everything should be done in an orderly manner.

29. And remember that anyone who borrows from their neighbor should return what they borrowed as agreed, or else they will sin, and possibly cause their neighbor to sin as well.

30. Finally, I cannot mention all the ways you might sin, as there are so many that I can't even count them.

31. But this much I can say: if you do not take care to watch your thoughts, words, and actions, and obey God's commandments, and continue in faith about what you have heard concerning the coming of our Lord until the end of your lives, you will perish. And now, remember, O man, and do not perish.

## **Mosiah Chapter 5**

1. King Benjamin addressed his people and wanted to know if they believed what he had just taught them.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

2. In response, they all shouted in unison that they did believe everything he had said, and they felt sure of its truth because of the Spirit of the Lord, which had brought a significant change in their hearts, making them want to do good instead of evil all the time.
3. They also shared that, through God's great kindness and the experiences of His Spirit, they had gained deep insights about what lies ahead, and if needed, they could prophesy about all things.
4. Their faith in what their king had shared with them filled them with immense joy, and they celebrated this profound knowledge they had gained.
5. They willingly promised to God that they would follow His will and obey His commandments for the rest of their lives, aiming to avoid the eternal suffering mentioned by the angel and not to experience God's anger.
6. Now, these words were what King Benjamin had hoped to hear from them; he told them that their response reflected what he desired, and their commitment was a good one.
7. Because of this promise they've made, they shall be called children of Christ, His sons and daughters, as He has spiritually given them new life today; since they say their hearts have changed through their faith in His name, they are now His offspring.
8. As a result of this, they are made free, and there is no other way to gain freedom. There is no other name by which salvation comes; therefore, all of you who have made a promise with God, I urge you to take on the name of Christ and remain obedient until the end of your days.
9. Whoever does this will be found on God's right side because they will know the name they are called by: they will be known as followers of Christ.
10. Alternatively, those who do not accept the name of Christ will be identified by a different name, which means they will end up on God's left side.
11. Also, remember that this is the name I promised to give you, a name that should never be erased unless you stray; be careful not to transgress so that this name doesn't fade from your hearts.
12. I encourage you to keep the name always in your hearts, so you won't be found on God's left side, but rather hear and recognize the voice that will call you, along with the name that He will use for you.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

13. For how can someone know the master whom they havent served, or who seems like a stranger to them, far from the desires and intentions in their heart?

14. Furthermore, would a man take someone else's donkey and keep it? I say no; he wouldn't even let it graze with his animals, but would drive it away instead. The same will happen if you don't know the name by which you are called.

15. Therefore, I urge you to be steadfast and unwavering, always excelling in good deeds, so that Christ, the Almighty Lord, can recognize you as His, and you may be ushered into heaven for eternal salvation and everlasting life, through the wisdom, power, justice, and mercy of the Creator of everything, both in heaven and on earth, who is God over all. Amen.

### **Mosiah Chapter 6**

1. After finishing his speech to the people, King Benjamin decided it was important to gather the names of everyone who had promised to keep God's commandments.

2. Except for little children, every single person had made that promise and chosen to follow the name of Christ.

3. Once King Benjamin completed these tasks, he dedicated his son Mosiah to lead the people as king. He gave Mosiah clear instructions about the kingdom and assigned priests to teach the people. This was so they could learn God's commandments and remember the promises they had made. After that, he sent the crowd home to their families.

4. Mosiah started to rule in place of his father. He began his reign at thirty years old, making it a total of about four hundred seventy-six years since Lehi left Jerusalem.

5. King Benjamin lived for three more years before he passed away.

6. During his reign, King Mosiah followed the ways of the Lord, obeyed His laws and commands, and kept all the instructions given to him.

7. King Mosiah encouraged his people to farm the land. He also worked the land himself so that he wouldnt be a burden on them, following the example set by his father. For three years, there was no fighting among his

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

people.

### **Mosiah Chapter 7**

1. After king Mosiah experienced three years of continuous peace, he wanted to find out about the people who had gone to live in the land of Lehi-Nephi, as his people hadn't heard from them since they left the land of Zarahemla, and this made them restless.
2. So, king Mosiah decided that sixteen strong men could journey to Lehi-Nephi to learn about their fellow Israelites.
3. The next day, they set off, accompanied by Ammon, a strong and mighty man from the lineage of Zarahemla, who was also their leader.
4. They didn't know which path to take through the wilderness to reach Lehi-Nephi, so they wandered for many days. In fact, they were lost for forty days.
5. After wandering for forty days, they arrived at a hill north of Shilom, where they decided to set up camp.
6. Ammon selected three of his brothers: Amaleki, Helem, and Hemand. They went down into the land of Nephi.
7. There, they encountered the king of the Nephites and Shilom, who was accompanied by his guards. The guards captured them, bound them, and imprisoned them.
8. After two days in prison, they were brought before the king again, their chains removed, and they were allowed, or rather instructed, to answer his questions.
9. He introduced himself, saying: I am Limhi, the son of Noah, who is the son of Zeniff, and I came from Zarahemla to inherit this land, which is the land of my ancestors. I was made king by the people's choice.
10. Now, I want to know why you were so daring as to approach the city walls when I was with my guards outside the gate?
11. I allowed you to live so I could ask you something; otherwise, my guards would have killed you. Speak freely.
12. When Ammon realized he could speak, he bowed before the king, then rose and said: O king, I thank God that I am still alive and allowed to speak; I will try to speak boldly.



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

13. I'm sure if you had known who I was, you wouldn't have let me wear these chains. I am Ammon, a descendant of Zarahemla, and I've come to ask about our siblings whom Zeniff led away from that place.

14. After Limhi listened to Ammon's words, he was very happy and said: Now I know for sure that my friends in Zarahemla are still alive. I will celebrate, and tomorrow I will let my people rejoice too.

15. For we are in bondage to the Lamanites, enduring heavy taxes that are hard to bear. But now, our friends will rescue us from this bondage, and we will serve them as slaves; it is better to be slaves to the Nephites than to pay taxes to the king of the Lamanites.

16. So, king Limhi ordered his guards not to bind Ammon or his brothers anymore, and he told them to go to the hill north of Shilom and bring their people into the city to eat, drink, and rest from their difficult journey; they had suffered greatly, facing hunger, thirst, and exhaustion.

17. The next day, king Limhi sent a message to all his people, gathering them at the temple to hear him speak.

18. Once they gathered, he addressed them, saying: O my people, hold your heads up and take comfort; the time is near when we will no longer be under our enemies' control, despite our many struggles that seemed pointless; yet, I hope there's still a fight left in us.

19. So, lift your heads, rejoice, and trust in God—the same God who was the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, the God who freed the Israelites from Egypt, who led them through the Red Sea on dry ground, and provided them with manna to survive in the wilderness; He has done many great things for them.

20. Also, that same God led our ancestors out of Jerusalem and has protected His people up to this moment. But it is because of our sins and wrongdoings that we have been brought into bondage.

21. Today you all witness that Zeniff, eager to possess his ancestors' land, was deceived by the cunning of King Laman, who made a treaty with Zeniff and took over part of the land, including Lehi-Nephi and Shilom, along with the surroundings.

22. All this was done solely to bring this people under his control or into servitude. Right now, we pay tribute to the Lamanite king, giving him half of our corn, barley, and all our crops, as well as half of our livestock's increase; the king takes half of everything we own or our lives.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

23. Isn't this hard to bear? Isn't our suffering real? Look at how much we have to mourn.

24. Yes, we have many reasons to grieve, for many of our brothers have been killed, their blood shed pointlessly, all because of wickedness.

25. If this people had not turned away from God, He wouldn't have allowed such evil to come upon them. But they didn't listen to His words; there were arguments among them, leading to bloodshed.

26. They even killed a prophet of the Lord, a chosen servant of God, who warned them of their sins and foretold many things to come, even the coming of Christ.

27. Because he told them that Christ is the God and Father of all, saying that He would take on human form, which was the same image in which man was created; in other words, he said that man was made to resemble God, and that God would come down among humans, taking on flesh and blood, walking the Earth

28. Now, because of this message, they put him to death, and they did many other things that brought God's wrath upon them. So, is it surprising they are in bondage and suffer great afflictions?

29. The Lord has said: I will not help my people when they sin; instead, I will block their paths so they cannot succeed; their actions will trip them up.

30. He also said: If my people choose wickedness, they will harvest destruction as a result; this destruction is poisonous.

31. He further declares: If my people choose to do wrong, they will face immediate devastation.

32. Now, it is clear that the Lord's promise has come true, and you are suffering and in distress.

33. But if you turn back to the Lord with your whole heart, trust in Him, and serve Him diligently, He will, according to His will, rescue you from bondage.

## **Mosiah Chapter 8**

1. After King Limhi finished speaking to his people, sharing many important things with them, he told them everything about their relatives who were living in the land of Zarahemla.

2. He called Ammon to stand before the crowd and recount all the events that had occurred to their people since Zeniff left the land, up until Ammon himself arrived.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

3. He also recounted the last teachings of King Benjamin, explaining them clearly to King Limhi's people so they could understand what was said.
4. Once Ammon finished, King Limhi dismissed the crowd, allowing everyone to return to their own homes.
5. King Limhi ordered that the records containing the history of his people since they left Zarahemla be brought to Ammon for him to read.
6. As soon as Ammon read the record, the king asked him if he could interpret languages, to which Ammon replied that he could not.
7. The king expressed his sadness over his people's suffering and explained that he had sent out a group of forty-three men into the wilderness to find Zarahemla, hoping to ask their brethren to rescue them from bondage.
8. The group got lost in the wilderness for many days but stayed determined. They didn't find Zarahemla, but returned instead from traveling through a land filled with water and came across a place covered in bones of both men and animals, as well as ruins of various buildings, where they found a people as numerous as the Israelites.
9. To prove the truth of their journey, they brought back twenty-four plates made of pure gold filled with engravings.
10. They also brought large breastplates made of brass and copper, which were in perfect condition.
11. Additionally, they brought swords; however, their hilts had decayed and the blades were rusted. No one in the land could interpret the language or engravings on the plates. So, I asked you: Can you translate?
12. I ask you again: Do you know anyone who can translate? I really want these records to be interpreted in our language, as they might reveal information about a remnant of the people who were destroyed, from whom these records originated; or, perhaps, they will help us understand the very people who were lost, and I want to know why they were destroyed.
13. Ammon replied that he could definitely tell the king about a man who could translate the records because he possesses a means to look and translate all ancient records; this ability is a gift from God. These tools are

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

called interpreters, and only those commanded to use them should look, or else they might face dire consequences. Anyone ordered to look into them is known as a seer.

14. The king of the people in Zarahemla is the one who has this command and this divine gift from God.

15. The king noted that a seer is greater than a prophet.

16. Ammon explained that a seer is also a revelator and a prophet, and no one can have a greater gift unless they possess the power of God, which is unique to Him, though people may receive significant power from God.

17. A seer can know past and future events, revealing all things, making secret matters known, bringing hidden things to light, and explaining things that otherwise would remain unknown.

18. God has provided a way for man to perform great miracles through faith; thus, he becomes a great help to his fellow beings.

19. After Ammon finished speaking, the king was filled with joy and thanked God, saying that these plates must hold great mysteries, and the interpreters were certainly meant to help explain these mysteries to humanity.

20. Oh, how amazing are the works of the Lord, and how patient He is with His people! It is truly sad how blind and unreachable the understanding of mankind is, for they do not seek wisdom nor desire her guidance!

21. Indeed, they are like a wild flock that flees from the shepherd, scattering and being driven away, only to be consumed by the wild beasts of the forest.

## **Mosiah Chapter 9**

1. The Record of Zeniff This recounts the story of his people, starting from the time they left Zarahemla until they were rescued from the Lamanites.

2. It includes chapters through 22.

3. I, Zeniff, learned the language of the Nephites and knew about Nephi, the land of our ancestors' first inheritance. I was sent as a spy among the Lamanites to gather intelligence on their forces so our army could attack and defeat them. However, when I saw what was good among them, I wanted to save them from

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

destruction.

4. As a result, I argued with my fellow soldiers in the wilderness, wanting our leader to make peace with them. But he was harsh and bloodthirsty and ordered my death. I was saved only after much violence erupted, as fathers fought against each other and brothers turned against brothers, leading to the death of many in our army. Those of us who survived returned to Zarahemla to tell our families what had happened.

5. Despite this, I was eager to reclaim our ancestral land, so I gathered those who wanted to go with me and set out again into the wilderness. Unfortunately, we suffered from hunger and severe hardships because we were slow to remember the Lord our God.

6. Nevertheless, after wandering for many days, we set up our tents at the location where our brethren had been killed, close to our ancestral land.

7. I then went back into the city with four men to meet with the king, wanting to know his intentions and whether we could peacefully settle the land.

8. I approached the king, and he agreed to let us have the land of Lehi-Nephi and Shilom.

9. He also ordered his people to leave the land, and my people moved in to take possession of it.

10. We started constructing buildings and repairing the city walls of both Lehi-Nephi and Shilom.

11. We began to farm the land, planting all kinds of seedscorn, wheat, barley, and various fruitsand we started to grow and prosper.

12. King Laman secretly planned to enslave my people, which is why he allowed us to take over the land.

13. After we settled for twelve years, King Laman became worried that my people might become strong and unshackled, making it difficult for him to control us.

14. His people were lazy and idol-worshippers, wanting to enslave us so they could enjoy the fruits of our labor and the bounty of our livestock.

15. Consequently, King Laman incited his people against us, leading to wars and conflicts in the land.

16. In the thirteenth year of my reign in Nephi, while my people were tending to their flocks and farming, a large group of Lamanites attacked them, killing many and stealing their livestock and crops.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

17. Those who escaped ran to the city of Nephi and called on me for help.

18. I armed them with bows, arrows, swords, and other weapons we could create, and then I led my people into battle against the Lamanites.

19. By the strength of the Lord, we went into battle; we cried out to the Lord to save us from our enemies, reminding ourselves of the deliverance of our forefathers.

20. God heard our cries and answered our prayers; we went forth with His strength and were able to defeat the Lamanites, killing three thousand and forty-three of them in a single day and night until we drove them from our land.

21. I personally helped bury our dead, and sadly, two hundred and seventy-nine of our own people had been killed.

### **Mosiah Chapter 10**

1. We resumed building our kingdom and began to peacefully settle the land again. I arranged for weapons of every kind to be made so that my people would be prepared if the Lamanites came to attack us again.

2. I set guards around the land to ensure the Lamanites couldn't sneak up on us and harm us; this way, I protected my people and livestock from falling into the hands of our enemies.

3. We enjoyed the land of our ancestors for many years, specifically for twenty-two years.

4. I made sure the men worked the ground, growing all kinds of grains and fruits.

5. I had the women spin and weave different types of fine linen and clothing so we could cover ourselves; because of this, we thrived in the land, enjoying consistent peace for twenty-two years.

6. Then king Laman died, and his son took over the throne. He began to incite his people to rebel against us, so they started preparing for battle against my people.

7. I sent spies throughout the land of Shemlon to find out about their preparations so that I could protect my people from being attacked and destroyed.

8. They approached from the north of the land of Shilom with a large army, armed with bows, arrows, swords, daggers, stones, and slings; their heads were shaved, and they wore only leather belts around their waists.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

9. I arranged for the women and children of my people to hide in the wilderness; I also gathered all the older men and young men who could fight to prepare for battle against the Lamanites, organizing them by age.

10. We went to battle against the Lamanites; even in my old age, I joined them in the fight. We approached the battle in the strength of the Lord.

11. The Lamanites had no knowledge of the Lord or His strength, so they relied solely on their own might. But they were still a physically strong people.

12. They were savage, ruthless, and bloodthirsty, deeply believing the traditions passed down from their ancestors which said they were expelled from Jerusalem due to their ancestors' sins, that their brothers wronged them in the wilderness, and that they were also mistreated during their journey across the sea;

13. And they felt they were wronged in their first land of inheritance after crossing the sea, all because Nephi followed the Lord's commandments more closely than they did so the Lord favored Nephi, listened to his prayers, and led their journey through the wilderness.

14. Nephi's brothers became angry with him because they didn't understand the Lord's ways; they were also angry at him on the water because they had hardened their hearts against the Lord.

15. Once they reached the promised land, they were angry with him for taking control away from them, and they wanted to kill him.

16. They were angry again when he went into the wilderness as commanded by the Lord, taking the brass plates, claiming he had stolen from them.

17. This led them to teach their children to despise Nephi's descendants, encouraging them to kill, rob, and plunder them, fostering an everlasting hatred towards the descendants of Nephi.

18. King Laman, using his cunning and deceitful promises, tricked me into bringing my people into this land, where they could destroy us; we have endured suffering here for many years.

19. Now, I, Zeniff, after sharing all of this about the Lamanites with my people, encouraged them to fight bravely, placing their trust in the Lord; thus, we faced them head-on in battle.

20. We managed to drive them out of our land again; we defeated them in a massive slaughter, so many that

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

we couldnt even count them.

21. Afterward, we returned to our own land, and my people went back to taking care of their flocks and farming.

22. As I am now old, I passed the kingdom to one of my sons; therefore, I will say no more. May the Lord bless my people. Amen.

### **Mosiah Chapter 11**

1. Zeniff gave the kingdom to his son Noah, and Noah started to rule instead of his father; he did not follow his father's good example.

2. Noah ignored God's commandments and followed his own desires, having many wives and concubines. He led his people into sin and made them do terrible things, including sexual immorality and all sorts of wicked behavior.

3. He imposed a tax that took one-fifth of everything his people owned, including their gold, silver, copper, brass, iron, livestock, and grain.

4. Noah kept all this for himself, his wives, and concubines, as well as for his priests and their families; he completely changed how the kingdom was run.

5. He removed all the priests his father had appointed and replaced them with new priests who were proud and arrogant.

6. As a result, these new priests lived in laziness, idol worship, and immorality, sustained by the heavy taxes that King Noah imposed on his people; they worked hard to support this wrongdoing.

7. The people became idol worshippers because they were misled by the flattering and empty words of the king and his priests, who spoke nicely to them.

8. King Noah built many grand buildings and decorated them with fine woodwork and precious materials like gold, silver, iron, brass, copper, and other valuable items.

9. He also constructed a large palace and a throne in the middle, made from fine wood and adorned with gold and silver.



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

10. He ordered his workers to create beautiful decorations inside the temple, using fine timber, copper, and brass.

11. He made sure the seats for the high priests were the most ornate, decorating them with pure gold, and built a railing in front so they could rest while they deceived the people with false and worthless words.

12. Noah built a tall tower next to the temple, which was so high he could stand on top and see the lands of Shilom and Shemlon, inhabited by the Lamanites, and he could look over all the surrounding areas.

13. He directed the construction of many buildings in the land of Shilom, including a great tower on the hill north of it, a spot where Nephis children gathered when they escaped, using the wealth he gained from taxing his people.

14. Noah became focused on his riches and spent his time indulging himself with his wives and concubines, as did his priests with prostitutes.

15. He planted vineyards and built wineries, producing plenty of wine, leading both him and his people to become heavy drinkers.

16. The Lamanites started to attack his people in small groups, killing them in their fields and while they cared for their flocks.

17. King Noah sent guards to protect the land, but too few of them were sent; the Lamanites attacked, killing many and stealing their livestock, leading to widespread destruction and hatred against his people.

18. Noah then sent his armies against the Lamanites, and they managed to push them back for a while, returning pleased with their spoils.

19. After this success, the people became prideful, boasting about their strength, believing that a small group could defeat thousands of Lamanites; they celebrated violence and the spilling of their brothers' blood, all due to their king and priests' wickedness.

20. Among them was a man named Abinadi, who began to prophesy, declaring what the Lord had commanded him: He proclaimed woe to the people for their abominations and evils, warning that if they did not repent, God's anger would visit them.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

21. He warned that if they did not turn back to the Lord, they would be handed over to their enemies and subjected to bondage and suffering.
22. They would come to know that the Lord is their God, a jealous God who punishes His people for their wrongs.
23. If they did not repent and turn to the Lord, they would face bondage with no rescuer but the Almighty God.
24. When they call out to God, He will not respond quickly; He will allow them to be struck down by their enemies.
25. If they do not repent earnestly and plead desperately to God, their prayers will go unheard, and they will not be saved from their troubles, as the Lord has commanded.
26. When Abinadi delivered these words, the people became angry and sought to kill him, but God saved him from their hands.
27. When King Noah heard what Abinadi had said to the people, he grew furious and questioned who Abinadi was to judge him or his people, or who the Lord was to impose such afflictions.
28. He commanded to bring Abinadi before him so he could kill him, claiming Abinadi was inciting anger and division among his people, and so he intended to execute him.
29. The people became blind to the truth, hardening their hearts against Abinadi's words, while King Noah also turned his heart against God's message and refused to repent of his sins.

## **Mosiah Chapter 12**

1. After two years, Abinadi came to them disguised so they didn't recognize him. He began to speak, saying that the Lord had commanded him to tell the people He was angry with them because they had closed their hearts to His words and had not repented of their wrongdoings. As a result, God would come to punish them harshly for their sins and wickedness.
2. Truly, woe to this generation! The Lord told me to raise my hand and declare that because of their sins, this generation would become slaves and would be beaten, driven away by others, and killed, with their bodies

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

being consumed by scavengers.

3. The life of King Noah will be valued nothing more than a piece of clothing tossed in a hot fire because he will realize that I am the Lord.

4. I will strike this people with severe hardship, including hunger and disease, and they will cry out in misery all day long.

5. Yes, I will put heavy burdens on them, and they will be treated like stubborn animals.

6. I will send hail upon them, which will harm them, and they will be struck by fierce winds; insects will torment their land and eat their crops.

7. They will suffer from serious disease all of this will happen because of their sins and wicked actions.

8. And unless they repent, I will completely wipe them from the earth; however, they will leave behind records, which I will preserve for other nations that come to occupy the land; I will do this so that other nations can see the wickedness of this people. Abinadi prophesied many things against them.

9. Then, they became very angry with him. They captured him and brought him bound before the king, saying, "Look, we have brought a man who has predicted disaster for your people, claiming that God will destroy them."

10. "He also predicts disaster for your life, saying it will be like clothing in a furnace of fire."

11. "Again, he says you will be like a dried stalk in a field, trampled by animals."

12. "Moreover, he says you will be like thistle blossoms, which are easily blown away by the wind when they mature. He pretends that the Lord has spoken to him. He claims all this will happen to you unless you repent due to your sins."

13. "Now, King, what great evil have you done, or what serious sins have your people committed, that would cause us to be judged by God or condemned by this man?"

14. "King, we are innocent, and you, King, have not sinned; therefore, this man has falsely accused you, and his prophecies are meaningless."

15. "Look, we are strong; we will not be enslaved or captured by our enemies. You have prospered in the land,

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

and you will continue to prosper."

16. "Here is the man; we hand him over to you; do whatever you think is best."

17. King Noah ordered that Abinadi be thrown into prison and called the priests together to decide what to do with him.

18. They asked the king to bring Abinadi to them so they could question him, and the king instructed that he be brought.

19. They started questioning him to catch him in a mistake, but he answered confidently and challenged all their questions, leaving them astonished because he astutely countered everything they asked.

20. Then one of them asked: "What do the words written by our forefathers mean, which say:

21. How beautiful are the feet of those who bring good news on the mountains, who proclaim peace, who bring good news of happiness, who proclaim salvation, who declare to Zion, Your God reigns!?

22. Your watchmen will lift up their voices; together, they will sing for joy, for they will see eye to eye when the Lord brings back Zion.

23. Shout for joy, O desolate places of Jerusalem, for the Lord has comforted His people, He has redeemed Jerusalem.

24. The Lord has revealed His holy arm in the sight of all nations, and all ends of the earth will see the salvation of our God?"

25. Then Abinadi replied, "You say you are priests and claim to teach this people and understand prophecy, yet you want me to explain what these words mean?"

26. "Woe to you for twisting the ways of the Lord! If you truly understood these things, you would have taught them properly. Instead, you have distorted the Lord's paths."

27. "You have not made an effort to understand; therefore, you are foolish. So, what are you teaching this people?"

28. They replied, "We teach the law of Moses."

29. Abinadi responded, "If you teach the law of Moses, why do you not practice it? Why do you focus on

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

wealth? Why do you commit sexual sins and lead this people into sin, giving God reason to command me to prophesy against you, even with a severe warning?"

30. "Don't you realize I'm telling the truth? Yes, deep down, you know I am right; you should tremble before God."

31. "You will be punished for your sins, for you have claimed to teach the law of Moses. And what do you really know about the law of Moses? Does salvation come through the law of Moses? What do you say?"

32. They answered that salvation did indeed come through the law of Moses.

33. But Abinadi said, "I know that if you obey God's commandments, you will be saved; yes, if you keep the commandments that the Lord gave to Moses on Mount Sinai, saying:

34. 'I am the Lord your God who brought you out of Egypt, out of slavery.

35. You shall have no other gods before Me.

36. You shall not make for yourself a graven image or any likeness of anything in heaven above, or on the earth below.'

37. Now, Abinadi asked them, "Have you done all of this? I tell you, no, you have not. Have you taught this people to do all these things? I say to you, no, you have not."

## **Mosiah Chapter 13**

1. When the king heard these words, he told his priests to get rid of this man and kill him, saying he was crazy and they had nothing to do with him.

2. They moved to grab Abinadi, but he stood firm and said to them:

3. "Do not touch me, because God will punish you if you do; I am here to deliver the message the Lord sent me, and I haven't told you what you wanted me to say, so God will not allow me to be killed right now."

4. "I must fulfill the commandments God has given me, and because I've spoken the truth, you're angry. You think I'm crazy because I've shared God's word."

5. After Abinadi spoke, the people of king Noah did not dare to touch him, because the Spirit of the Lord was upon him, and his face shone brightly, like Moses did when he spoke with the Lord on Mount Sinai.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

6. He spoke powerfully and with authority from God, continuing his message:
7. "You see that you cannot kill me, so I will complete my message. I can tell my words are hurting you because I am revealing the truth about your wrongdoings."
8. "Yes, my words fill you with wonder, anger, and amazement."
9. "I will complete my message; after that, I don't care where I go, as long as I am saved."
10. "But I want you to understand that what you do with me afterward will be a sign of greater things to come."
11. "Now I will read the rest of God's commandments, because I see they are not in your hearts; you have spent most of your lives teaching wrongdoing."
12. "Remember, I told you: Do not make any carved images or likenesses of anything in heaven, on earth, or in the waters below."
13. "And do not bow down or serve them, because I, the Lord your God, am a jealous God, punishing the sins of the fathers on their children to the third and fourth generation of those who hate me;"
14. "But I show mercy to thousands of those who love me and keep my commandments."
15. "Do not misuse the name of the Lord your God, because He will not consider anyone innocent who misuses His name."
16. "Remember the Sabbath day, and keep it holy."
17. "You shall work for six days and do all your tasks,"
18. "But on the seventh day, the Sabbath of the Lord your God, you should not workneither you, nor your son, nor your daughter, nor your servants, nor your animals, nor any foreigners living in your town;"
19. "Because in six days the Lord made the heavens, earth, sea, and everything in them; so He blessed the Sabbath and made it holy."
20. "Honor your father and mother so that you may live long in the land the Lord your God is giving you."
21. "Do not kill."
22. "Do not commit adultery. Do not steal."

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

23. "Do not give false testimony against your neighbor."

24. "Do not desire your neighbor's house, nor his wife, servants, ox, donkey, or anything that belongs to your neighbor."

25. After Abinadi finished saying these things, he asked them: "Have you taught this people to observe and follow these commandments?"

26. "I tell you, no; because if you had, the Lord wouldnt have sent me to predict doom for this people."

27. "You claim that salvation comes through the law of Moses, but I tell you it's important to follow that law for now; however, a time will come when it wont be necessary to follow it anymore."

28. "Furthermore, I say to you, salvation does not come from the law alone; if it werent for God's atonement for His people's sins, they would surely perish despite the law of Moses."

29. "I tell you that it was necessary for the Israelites to have a strict law because they were stubborn, quick to do wrong, and slow to remember the Lord their God;"

30. "Therefore, a strict law was given to them, a law of actions and rituals that they needed to follow each day to remind them of God and their responsibilities to Him."

31. "But I tell you that all these are symbols of what is yet to come."

32. "Now, did they truly understand the law? I say no, they did not, due to their hardened hearts; they did not understand that no one can be saved except through Gods redemption."

33. "Did not Moses prophesy about the coming of the Messiah and that God would redeem His people? Yes, and all the prophets since the beginning of the world have spoken about these things."

34. "Have they not said that God Himself would come down among men, take human form, and act with great power on the earth?"

35. "Yes, and have they not also said that He would bring about the resurrection of the dead, and that He would be oppressed and suffer?"

## **Mosiah Chapter 14**

1. Yes, even Isaiah asked: Who has believed what we said, and who has seen the power of the Lord revealed?

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

2. He will grow up in front of God like a delicate plant, and like a root coming up from dry soil; he wont look impressive or attractive; when we see him, there won't be anything about him that would make us want to follow him.
3. He is despised and turned away from by people; he is a man filled with sadness and familiar with suffering; we hid our faces from him, and he was rejected by us.
4. Surely he has taken on our grief and carried our sadness; still, we thought he was being punished by God and was suffering for his own mistakes.
5. But he was hurt because of our wrongdoings; he was beaten for our sins; the punishment that brought us peace was on him, and by his wounds we are healed.
6. We have all wandered off like sheep; each of us has gone our own way, but the Lord has placed on him the sins of all of us.
7. He was mistreated and suffered, but he did not speak out; he was led like a lamb to be slaughtered, and like a sheep that stays quiet when it is being sheared, he did not open his mouth.
8. He was taken away from prison and judgment; who can speak of his descendants? He was cut off from the land of the living; for the sins of my people, he was punished.
9. He was buried among the wicked and was given a grave with the rich; though he had done no wrong and had never lied.
10. Yet, it was God's will to crush him; he made him suffer; when you offer his life as a sin offering, he will see his descendants, he will have a long life, and it will be successful in God's hands.
11. He will see the results of his suffering and be satisfied; through his knowledge, my righteous servant will make many people right with God, for he will take their sins upon himself.
12. So I will give him a share among the mighty, and he will share the rewards with the strong; because he has poured out his life unto death; he was counted among lawbreakers; he carried the sins of many and pleaded for the guilty.

## **Mosiah Chapter 15**



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

1. Abinadi explained to them: I want you to understand that God himself will come down to be among people and will save his people.
2. Since he lives in human form, he will be known as the Son of God, and because he has aligned his human nature with the will of the Father, he is both the Father and the Son
3. The Father because he was conceived by God's power, and the Son because he took on human flesh; this is how he becomes the Father and the Son
4. They are one God, indeed, the Eternal Father of heaven and earth.
5. Thus, the human nature submits to the divine Spirit, meaning the Son submits to the Father, forming one God, who experiences temptation but does not give in, allowing himself to be mocked, beaten, rejected, and denied by his people.
6. After performing many miraculous deeds among people, he will be led to his death. Just as the prophet Isaiah said, like a sheep going to the shearers, he will remain silent.
7. Indeed, he will be led, crucified, and killed, with his flesh subjected even to death, as the will of the Son is fully aligned with the will of the Father.
8. In this way, God breaks the power of death, gaining victory over it; he gives the Son the ability to plead for humanity
9. Having ascended to heaven, overflowing with mercy and compassion for people; he stands between them and justice, having conquered death and taken on their sins and wrongdoings, redeeming them and fulfilling the demands of justice.
10. Now, I ask you, who will speak of his lineage? Truly, I tell you, when his soul is offered as a sacrifice for sin, he will see his descendants. So what do you say? And who will be his descendants?
11. Listen carefully: whoever has heard the words of the prophets, including all the holy prophets who foretold the coming of the Lord those who have listened to their words, believed that the Lord would save his people, and looked forward to the day when their sins would be forgiven these are his descendants, or they are the inheritors of God's kingdom.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

12. These are the ones whose sins he has carried; they are the ones for whom he died to free them from their wrongdoings. And now, can we not call them his descendants?

13. Yes, and what about the prophets, every single one who has spoken the truth without falling into sin, all the holy prophets from the beginning of time? I tell you, they are his descendants.

14. These are the individuals who have proclaimed peace, who have brought good news, who have announced salvation; and said to Zion: Your God reigns!

15. Oh, how beautiful are the feet of those who bring this good news on the mountains!

16. Once again, how beautiful are the feet of those who continue to bring peace on the mountains!

17. And again, how beautiful are the feet of those who will in the future bring peace, from now and forever!

18. And behold, this is not the end. For oh, how beautiful are the feet of him who brings good news, the one who is the source of peace, even the Lord, who has saved his people; yes, he who has granted salvation to them;

19. For if it were not for the redemption he has prepared for his people since the beginning of the world, I tell you, all humanity would be lost.

20. But behold, the power of death will be broken, and the Son reigns and has authority over the dead; therefore, he will bring about the resurrection.

21. A resurrection will take place, the first resurrection; yes, the resurrection of all who have lived, are living, and will live, all the way to the resurrection of Christ for that is how he will be known.

22. And now, the resurrection includes all the prophets and everyone who has believed in their messages, or kept the commandments of God; they will rise in the first resurrection; thus, they are part of the first resurrection.

23. They are raised to be with God, who has redeemed them; and so, they achieve eternal life through Christ, who has freed them from death.

24. These are those who participate in the first resurrection; and they are those who died before Christ came, without having had salvation proclaimed to them. Thus, the Lord restores them; they will share in the first

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

resurrection, or have eternal life through redemption by the Lord.

25. And little children also receive eternal life.

26. But behold, be filled with reverence and fear before God, for you should indeed fear; for the Lord does not save those who rebel against him and die in their sins; those who have perished in sin since the world began, deliberately rebelling against God, knowing his commandments but refusing to follow them; these are the ones with no part in the first resurrection.

27. So, shouldnt you fear? For salvation does not reach such people; the Lord has not redeemed them; indeed, the Lord cannot redeem them because he cannot deny himself; he cannot disregard justice when it demands its due.

28. Now I tell you that the day will come when the salvation of the Lord will be proclaimed to every nation, family, tongue, and people.

29. Yes, Lord, your watchmen will raise their voices; together they will sing; for they will see eye to eye when the Lord restores Zion.

30. Rejoice and sing, you desolate places of Jerusalem; for the Lord has comforted his people; he has redeemed Jerusalem.

31. The Lord has shown his holy strength to all the nations; and all the ends of the earth will witness the salvation of our God.

## **Mosiah Chapter 16**

1. God saves people from their lost and fallen conditionthose who are worldly will remain as if there is no way to be savedChrist guarantees either endless life or endless punishment.

2. After Abinadi spoke these words, he raised his hand and said: There will come a time when everyone will see the salvation of the Lord; every nation, tribe, language, and people will understand each other and will admit before God that his judgments are fair.

3. Then the wicked will be cast out, and they will have reasons to cry, mourn, and grind their teeth in anger; this is because they ignored the call of the Lord, so the Lord does not save them.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

4. For they are worldly and influenced by evil, and the devil controls them; yes, even that ancient serpent who deceived our first parents, leading to their downfall; which caused all humanity to become worldly, sensual, and evil, distinguishing between good and evil, and becoming subject to the devil.

5. Thus, everyone was lost; and truly, they would have been forever lost if God had not saved his people from their lost and fallen condition.

6. But remember, those who stubbornly cling to their worldly nature and continue to sin and rebel against God stay in their fallen state, and the devil has complete control over them. Therefore, they are as if no redemption exists; they are against God, and the devil stands against God as well.

7. Now, if Christ had not come into the world, speaking of future events as if they were already happening, there would have been no way for redemption.

8. And if Christ had not risen from the dead, breaking the chains of death so that the grave could not claim victory and death would not have any sting, there would have been no resurrection.

9. But there is a resurrection; therefore, the grave cannot claim victory, and the sting of death is overcome through Christ.

10. He is the light and the life of the world; indeed, an everlasting light that can never be dimmed; and also a life that is eternal, meaning there can be no more death.

11. Even this mortal being will receive immortality, and this corruptible body will take on incorruption, and they will stand before God to be judged based on their actions, whether good or evil

12. If they are good, they will be resurrected to eternal life and happiness; and if they are evil, they will face the resurrection of eternal punishment, being handed over to the devil, who has dominated them, which is punishment

13. Having followed their own worldly desires and wishes; having never called on the Lord while mercy was available to them; for mercy was indeed available, and they refused it; even after being warned about their wrongdoings, they chose not to change; and although they were told to repent, they refused to do so.

14. And now, shouldn't you be afraid and turn away from your sins, remembering that only through Christ can

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

you be saved?

15. Therefore, if you teach the law of Moses, also explain that it is just a representation of what will come

16. Teach them that redemption comes through Christ the Lord, who is the Eternal Father himself. Amen.

### **Mosiah Chapter 17**

1. Abinadi speaks the truth as he faces death by fire, warning his killers about their fate. This occurs around 148 B.C.

2. When Abinadi finished speaking, the king ordered that the priests take him and execute him.

3. Among the priests was a man named Alma, a descendant of Nephi. He was young and he believed what Abinadi had said because he recognized the wrongdoing Abinadi had denounced. So, he pleaded with the king not to be angry with Abinadi and to let him go peacefully.

4. However, the king became even angrier and ordered that Alma be thrown out, sending his servants to kill him.

5. Alma escaped and hid from them, remaining hidden for many days, during which he wrote down everything Abinadi had said.

6. Eventually, the king had Abinadi captured again, surrounding him with guards. They bound him and took him to prison.

7. After three days and discussions with his priests, the king had Abinadi brought back to him.

8. The king confronted him, saying, "Abinadi, we have found a reason to execute you."

9. "You have claimed that God will come down to the people, and because of this, you will die unless you retract all the negative things you have said about me and my people."

10. Abinadi replied, "I refuse to take back the truth I've spoken about your people. I know my words are true, and I've willingly allowed myself to be taken by you."

11. "Yes, I will endure until my death, and I will not retract my words; they will stand as evidence against you. If you kill me, you will spill innocent blood, which will also testify against you on the last day."

12. King Noah was going to let him go because he was afraid of Abinadi's words and the potential

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

consequences from God.

13. But the priests spoke out against Abinadi, accusing him of insulting the king. This made the king even angrier, leading him to hand Abinadi over to be killed.

14. They took him, bound him, and brutally beat him until he was nearly dead.

15. As the flames began to burn him, he called out:

16. "Just as you have treated me, your descendants will make many suffer the same way I am suffering, including burning to death, because they will believe in the salvation offered by the Lord their God."

17. "You will also suffer all kinds of diseases due to your sins."

18. "Indeed, you will be attacked from all sides, driven around like a frightened flock by wild beasts."

19. "On that day, your enemies will hunt you down, and you will face the same fiery death that I am facing."

20. "This is how God will take revenge on those who harm His people. O God, accept my soul."

21. After delivering these words, Abinadi collapsed, dying by fire; he was executed because he remained true to God's commandments, confirming the truth of his words with his death.

## **Mosiah Chapter 18**

1. Alma, who had escaped from King Noah's followers, felt deep remorse for his sins and started to move quietly among the people, sharing the teachings of Abinadi.

2. He spoke about future events, the resurrection of the dead, and how the people would be saved through Christ's suffering, death, resurrection, and ascension into heaven.

3. He taught everyone willing to listen, doing so secretly to avoid the king's attention, and many people believed in his message.

4. Those who believed him traveled to a place called Mormon, named by the king, which was on the edge of a wilderness that occasionally had wild animals.

5. In Mormon, there was a spring of clear water, and Alma would go there, hiding among some small trees during the day to avoid being found by the king's men.

6. Many people who believed Alma came to that place to hear him speak.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

7. After many days, a large group gathered at the waters of Mormon to listen to Alma. Everyone who believed his words came together to hear him teach about repentance, redemption, and faith in the Lord.
8. He said to them: Look, here are the waters of Mormon (thats how the place got its name). Now that you want to join God's community and be called His people, and are ready to help carry each others burdens to lighten the load;
9. You are also prepared to grieve with those who grieve, comfort those who need help, and stand as witnesses of God at all times, in all situations, and in any place, even to the point of death, so that you may be redeemed by God and counted among those who rise in the first resurrection, and receive everlasting life
10. Now I ask you, if this truly reflects your wishes, whats stopping you from being baptized in the Lords name, to affirm before Him that youre making a covenant to serve Him and obey His commandments, so that He may bless you with His Spirit in abundance?
11. When the people heard this, they joyfully clapped their hands and said: This is what we desire.
12. Then Alma took Helam, who was one of the first to step forward, and they stood in the water. Alma cried out, asking the Lord to pour out His Spirit on him, so he could perform this work with a pure heart.
13. After saying this, the Spirit of the Lord came upon him, and he proclaimed: Helam, I baptize you, having authority from Almighty God, as evidence that you have entered into a covenant to serve Him until your mortal body dies; may the Lords Spirit be given to you; and may He grant you eternal life through Christ, whom He prepared from the beginning of the world.
14. After Alma spoke these words, both he and Helam went under the water and then emerged joyfully, filled with the Spirit.
15. Then Alma took another person and baptized him as he had done the first time, but he didnt immerse himself again.
16. He continued to baptize everyone else who came to the waters of Mormon, and there were about 204 souls who were baptized, receiving the grace of God.
17. From that moment on, they were known as the Church of God or the Church of Christ. It became apparent

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

that everyone baptized with Gods authority was added to His church.

18. Alma, who had the authority from God, ordained priestsone for every fifty of the membersto preach and teach about the kingdom of God.

19. He instructed them to teach only the things he had taught and those spoken by the holy prophets.

20. He specifically told them to preach about repentance and faith in the Lord, who had redeemed His people.

21. He commanded them to avoid conflicts with one another and to have a shared focus, with one faith and baptism, keeping their hearts united in love for each other.

22. In this way, he directed their preaching. And so they became the children of God.

23. He also instructed them to keep the Sabbath day holy and to give thanks to the Lord every day.

24. Additionally, he commanded that the priests he ordained should work with their own hands to support themselves.

25. There was a designated day each week for them to gather for teaching and to worship the Lord, and as often as possible, to come together.

26. The priests were not to rely on the people for their livelihood; instead, they were to seek the grace of God through their work so that they could grow spiritually and have the knowledge to teach with divine authority.

27. Alma also instructed the church members to share their resources according to their means; if someone had a lot, they should give more; those with less should give only what they could, and those in need should receive help.

28. This sharing was done voluntarily and with good intentions toward God, and assistance was provided to the priests in need as well as to anyone who was poor or without clothing.

29. Alma said this to them because God had commanded it, and they lived righteously, helping each other both physically and spiritually according to their needs and desires.

30. All of this took place in Mormon, by the waters in the nearby forest; this place, the waters of Mormon, and the forest were beautiful to those who came to know their Redeemer there; they were indeed blessed, for they will sing His praises forever.



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

31. These actions were carried out away from the king's awareness.

32. However, the king noticed some activity among the people and sent his servants to monitor them. So, on the day they gathered to hear the king's word, they were found by the king's men.

33. The king accused Alma of inciting the people to rebel against him, so he dispatched his army to destroy them.

34. When Alma and the followers of the Lord learned about the king's army approaching, they quickly packed their tents and families and fled into the wilderness.

35. They numbered about 450 people.

### **Mosiah Chapter 19**

1. The king's army came back after searching for the Lord's people, but they found nothing.

2. The king's forces were small now, leading to divisions among the remaining people.

3. Some of them started expressing anger towards the king, which led to serious arguments among them.

4. There was a man named Gideon who was strong and opposed to the king, so he took out his sword and vowed in his anger to kill the king.

5. Gideon fought with the king, and when the king noticed he was losing, he fled to a tower close to the temple.

6. Gideon chased him and was about to climb the tower to kill the king, but the king looked around and saw that the Lamanites had entered their land.

7. In great distress, the king cried out, begging Gideon to spare him, saying the Lamanites were going to destroy them all.

8. The king was mainly worried about his own life rather than his people, but Gideon chose to spare him.

9. The king ordered everyone to flee from the Lamanites, leading them into the wilderness along with their women and children.

10. The Lamanites chased after them, caught up with them, and began to kill them.

11. Then the king commanded that all the men abandon their wives and children to escape the Lamanites.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

12. Many men refused to leave their families and would rather stay and die with them. The others left their wives and children.

13. Those who stayed with their families asked their beautiful daughters to plead with the Lamanites for mercy.

14. The Lamanites felt sympathy for them, taken by the beauty of their women.

15. So the Lamanites spared their lives, took them captive, and brought them back to the land of Nephi, allowing them to keep their land if they handed over King Noah and half of all their possessions, including gold and silver, pledging to pay tribute every year to the Lamanite king.

16. One of the captured was a prince named Limhi, the son of the king.

17. Limhi didn't want his father to be killed, but he also knew of his father's wrongdoings and considered himself just.

18. Gideon secretly sent men into the wilderness to find the king and those with him. They met everyone except the king and his priests.

19. They had promised to return to Nephi, seeking revenge if their families were harmed, even if it meant their own deaths.

20. The king told them they shouldn't go back; they got angry with him and decided he should face a painful death by fire.

21. They also intended to kill the priests but they escaped deeper into the wilderness.

22. As they planned to return to Nephi, they encountered Gideon's men, who informed them of what had happened to their families and that the Lamanites had allowed them to keep their land by paying tribute.

23. The people told Gideon's men that they had killed the king, while his priests had fled even further away.

24. After finishing their ceremony, they returned to Nephi happily, relieved that their families were safe, and reported back to Gideon about the king's fate.

25. The king of the Lamanites made a promise to them that his people would not attack them.

26. Limhi, being the king's son, was named king by the people and pledged to the Lamanite king that his

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

people would pay tribute, half of everything they owned.

27. Limhi then started to build up his kingdom and promote peace among his people.

28. The Lamanite king placed guards around the land to ensure Limhi's people stayed and did not escape into the wilderness, using the tribute to pay the guards.

29. King Limhi enjoyed peace in his kingdom for two years without any threats from the Lamanites.

### **Mosiah Chapter 20**

1. There was a place in Shemlon where the Lamanite girls gathered to sing, dance, and have fun.

2. One day, a few of them came together to sing and dance.

3. The priests of King Noah were too ashamed to go back to the city of Nephi and feared that the people would kill them, so they couldn't return to their wives and children.

4. As they stayed in the wilderness, they spotted the Lamanite daughters and hid to watch them.

5. When only a few of them had gathered to dance, the priests came out of hiding, captured them, and took them into the wilderness; they carried away twenty-four daughters of the Lamanites.

6. When the Lamanites realized their daughters were missing, they were furious and blamed the people of Limhi.

7. As a result, they sent their armies; even the king led them as they went to the land of Nephi to destroy Limhi's people.

8. Limhi saw their preparations for war from a tower, so he gathered his people and waited for the Lamanites in the fields and forests.

9. When the Lamanites arrived, the people of Limhi attacked them from their hiding spots and began to kill them.

10. The battle became very fierce, as they fought bravely for their lives.

11. Despite being outnumbered, the people of Limhi drove the Lamanites back, fighting fiercely for their lives, wives, and children.

12. In the chaos, they found the Lamanite king among the dead; he was wounded but still alive, abandoned by

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

his fleeing people.

13. They took him and tended to his wounds, bringing him before Limhi, saying: Here is the Lamanite king, injured and left for dead, and we have brought him to you; let us kill him.

14. But Limhi told them: Do not kill him, but bring him to me so I can see him. They brought him, and Limhi asked him: Why have you come to wage war against my people? My people have kept the promise I made to you; why have you broken the promise you made to us?

15. The king replied: I broke the promise because your people took my daughters; out of anger, I led my people to fight against you.

16. Limhi was unaware of this, so he said: I will investigate among my people and hold anyone responsible accountable. He ordered a search to find out who did it.

17. When Gideon, the king's captain, heard this, he said to Limhi: Please do not search your people or blame them for this.

18. Do you not remember the priests of your father, whom your people tried to destroy? They are in the wilderness, and they are the ones who stole the Lamanite daughters.

19. Now, please inform the king of this, so he can tell his people to calm down; we are already facing a threat, and we are few in number.

20. They are coming with a large army, and unless the king makes peace with them, we will be doomed.

21. Are not the words of Abinadi being fulfilled against us because we ignored the Lord's words and continued in our wrongdoing?

22. Let us make peace with the king and fulfill our promise to him; it's better to be in bondage than to lose our lives, so let's stop the bloodshed.

23. Limhi then explained everything about his father and the priests who had run away, saying they were responsible for taking the daughters.

24. The king then calmed down and told his people: Let's go meet them without weapons; I promise you, my people will not harm yours.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

25. They followed the king and went to meet the Lamanites unarmed. When they met the Lamanites, the king bowed down and pleaded for Limhi's people.

26. Seeing the unarmed people of Limhi, the Lamanites felt compassion and were calmed down, returning with their king to their land in peace.

### **Mosiah Chapter 21**

1. Limhi and his people returned to the city of Nephi, and they began to live peacefully in the land again.

2. After a while, the Lamanites became angry with the Nephites again and started to come into the borders of the land.

3. They didnt dare to kill them because of the promise their king made to Limhi; instead, they hit them on the face, took control over them, piled heavy burdens on their backs, and drove them around like animals

4. All of this happened to fulfill the word of the Lord.

5. The Nephites faced great suffering, with no way to escape the Lamanites, who had surrounded them completely.

6. The people started to complain to the king about their suffering, expressing a strong desire to fight back. They troubled the king with their complaints, so he allowed them to go to battle.

7. They gathered together, put on their armor, and marched against the Lamanites to reclaim their land.

8. However, the Lamanites defeated them, pushed them back, and killed many of them.

9. There was great sorrow among Limhis people, with widows mourning for their husbands, children grieving for their fathers, and brothers weeping for their siblings.

10. Many widows cried out daily, filled with fear of the Lamanites.

11. Their constant cries angered the remaining people of Limhi against the Lamanites, prompting them to battle again, but they were pushed back again, suffering heavy losses.

12. They went out to fight a third time and suffered similarly; those who survived returned to the city of Nephi.

13. They humbled themselves completely, submitting to bondage, allowing themselves to be mistreated and

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

burdened as their enemies wished.

14. They showed deep humility and cried out to God for help all day long, asking Him to save them from their struggles.

15. The Lord was slow to respond to their pleas due to their wrongdoings; however, He did hear their cries and started to soften the hearts of the Lamanites so they eased some of the burdens, even though He didnt free them from their captivity.

16. Gradually, they began to prosper again in the land, raising crops, livestock, and no longer going hungry.

17. There were many more women than men, so King Limhi commanded that every man should support the widows and their children to prevent them from starving; they complied, knowing how many had died.

18. The people of Limhi stayed together as much as possible, securing their grain and livestock.

19. The king did not trust himself outside the city walls without his guards, fearing he might fall into the hands of the Lamanites.

20. He ordered his people to watch the surrounding land to capture the priests that had escaped into the wilderness, who had taken the daughters of the Lamanites and caused great destruction.

21. They were eager to capture these priests for punishment because they had sneaked into Nephi at night and stolen their grain and valuables; they set a trap for them.

22. As it happened, there was no further conflict between the Lamanites and Limhis people until Ammon and his brothers arrived.

23. The king happened to be outside the city gates with his guards when he saw Ammon and his brothers, mistakenly thinking they were priests of Noah, and ordered them to be captured and imprisoned. If they had been those priests, he would have had them killed.

24. But when he realized they were his brothers from the land of Zarahemla, he was overwhelmingly happy.

25. Before Ammon arrived, King Limhi had sent a few men to look for Zarahemla, but they couldnt find it and got lost in the wilderness.

26. Still, they discovered a land filled with dry bones, a land that had inhabitants in the past but was now

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

deserted; thinking it was Zarahemla, they returned to Nephi shortly before Ammon arrived.

27. They brought back a record from the people whose bones they found, written on metal plates.

28. When Limhi learned from Ammon that King Mosiah could interpret such inscriptions, he was filled with joy; Ammon was also glad.

29. But Ammon and his brothers were sad because so many of their own people had died.

30. They mourned for the many sins King Noah and his priests had led the people to commit against God, for Abinadis death, and for the departure of Alma and his followers, who had formed a church through Gods power and faith in Abinadi's words.

31. They lamented for Almas group, as they didnt know where they had gone. They would have gladly joined them because they had made a promise to God to serve Him and keep His commandments.

32. Since Ammon's arrival, King Limhi and many of his people had also promised God to serve Him and obey His commandments.

33. King Limhi and many of his people wanted to be baptized, but there was no one in the land with the authority from God to do so. Ammon felt unworthy to perform the baptism.

34. As a result, they did not form a church at that time, waiting for the Lord's guidance. They aspired to be like Alma and his brothers who had fled into the wilderness.

35. They wanted to be baptized as a sign of their commitment to serve God wholeheartedly; however, they delayed, and their baptismal account will be told later.

36. Now, all of their focus was on how to free themselves from the Lamanites and their bondage.

## **Mosiah Chapter 22**

1. Ammon and King Limhi began discussing with the people how to free themselves from captivity, so they gathered everyone together to hear their opinions on the situation.

2. They realized they had no way to escape from bondage except to take their women, children, flocks, herds, and tents, and flee into the wilderness; the Lamanites were too many, making it impossible for Limhis people to fight them with weapons.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

3. Gideon then stepped forward and addressed the king, saying that he had often been listened to by the king during their conflicts with the Lamanites.
4. He continued, asking the king to consider his words one more time, expressing his desire to serve and help free the people from captivity.
5. The king allowed Gideon to speak, and Gideon told him:
6. Look at the back passage through the rear wall of the city. The Lamanites and their guards are drunk at night, so lets send a message to gather our flocks and herds and drive them into the wilderness under cover of darkness.
7. I will follow your orders and deliver the final offering of wine to the Lamanites, and they will become intoxicated; then we can sneak through a hidden route past their camp while they're asleep.
8. This way, we can escape with our women, children, flocks, and herds into the wilderness and travel around the land of Shilom.
9. King Limhi listened to Gideon's plan.
10. King Limhi instructed his people to round up their flocks and sent the offering of wine to the Lamanites, along with extra wine as a gift; the Lamanites drank freely of what he provided.
11. That night, the people of King Limhi quietly left for the wilderness with their flocks and herds, journeying around the land of Shilom and heading towards Zarahemla, guided by Ammon and his brothers.
12. They took all their gold, silver, and valuable items they could carry, along with their supplies, as they continued their journey.
13. After many days in the wilderness, they reached the land of Zarahemla and united with the people of Mosiah, becoming his subjects.
14. Mosiah welcomed them joyfully and accepted their records, as well as the records the people of Limhi had discovered.
15. When the Lamanites realized that the people of Limhi had escaped during the night, they sent an army into the wilderness to track them down.



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

16. After two days of pursuit, they lost the trail and could no longer follow them, getting lost in the wilderness.

### **Mosiah Chapter 23**

1. A story about Alma and the people of God, who were forced to flee into the wilderness by the followers of King Noah.

2. This covers chapters 23 and 24.

3. Alma decides not to be a king. He serves as high priest. God corrects His people, and the Lamanites take over the land of Helam. Amulon, leader of King Noah's wicked priests, rules under the authority of the Lamanite king. This occurs around 1451 B.C.

4. Alma, having been warned by the Lord that King Noah's armies were coming for them, shared this with his people, so they gathered their livestock, collected their grain, and left for the wilderness before King Noah's armies could catch them.

5. The Lord gave them strength so that King Noah's people couldn't catch them to harm them.

6. They traveled for eight days into the wilderness.

7. They arrived at a beautiful and pleasant land, a place with pure water.

8. They set up their tents, started farming the land, and began to construct buildings; indeed, they worked hard and were very diligent.

9. The people wanted Alma to be their king because he was loved by them.

10. But he told them: Look, it's not wise for us to have a king; for the Lord says: You shouldn't value one person over another, nor should anyone think they are better than others; so I say to you, it's not wise for you to have a king.

11. However, if it were possible to always have righteous people as your kings, it would be good for you to have a king.

12. But remember King Noah's wrongdoing and the wickedness of his priests; I too was trapped and did many things that were repulsive to the Lord, which I greatly regret.

13. Yet, after enduring much hardship, the Lord heard my cries and answered my prayers, making me a tool in

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

His hands to bring many of you to understand His truth.

14. Still, I do not take pride in this, for I am unworthy to boast about myself.

15. Now I say to you, you have suffered under King Noah and been enslaved by him and his priests, leading you into sin; thus, you were bound by wickedness.

16. And now, as you have been freed by Gods power from these bonds; yes, even from the hold of King Noah and his people, and also from the chains of sin, I hope you will stand firmly in the freedom you have received and not trust anyone to be a king over you.

17. Also, trust no one to be your teacher or minister unless he is a man of God, who walks in His ways and follows His commandments.

18. Alma taught his people to love their neighbors as themselves and to avoid fighting among themselves.

19. At this time, Alma was their high priest, being the founder of their church.

20. And it happened that no one was allowed to preach or teach unless they received authority from him from God. So he ordained all their priests and teachers; only just men were ordained.

21. Therefore, they watched over their people and nourished them with righteous teachings.

22. It came to pass that they began to flourish greatly in the land, which they named Helam.

23. They thrived and multiplied in the land of Helam; they built a city called the city of Helam.

24. Yet, the Lord thought it necessary to discipline His people; yes, He tests their patience and their faith.

25. Nevertheless, whoever puts their trust in Him will be uplifted in the end. Yes, that was the case for this people.

26. For I will show you that they were subjected to bondage, and only the Lord their God, the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob could save them.

27. And it came to pass that He did rescue them, and displayed His mighty power before them, and they rejoiced greatly.

28. For while they were in the land of Helam, yes, in the city of Helam, while they were working the land around them, an army of Lamanites appeared at the borders.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

29. The brothers of Alma ran from their fields and gathered in the city of Helam, feeling very afraid when they saw the Lamanites.

30. But Alma went out and stood among them, encouraging them not to be afraid but to remember the Lord their God who would deliver them.

31. So they calmed their fears and began to cry out to the Lord asking Him to soften the hearts of the Lamanites so they would spare them, their wives, and their children.

32. And it happened that the Lord did soften the hearts of the Lamanites. Alma and his brothers went forth and surrendered themselves, and the Lamanites took control of the land of Helam.

33. Now the Lamanite armies, which had been pursuing King Limhis people, had gotten lost in the wilderness for many days.

34. And they found the priests of King Noah in a place they called Amulon; they began to occupy the land of Amulon and started farming there.

35. The leader of those priests was named Amulon.

36. And it came to pass that Amulon pleaded with the Lamanites; he also sent their wives, the daughters of the Lamanites, to beg them to spare their husbands.

37. The Lamanites felt compassion for Amulon and his brethren and did not destroy them because of their wives.

38. So, Amulon and his brothers joined the Lamanites, and they were traveling in the wilderness searching for the land of Nephi when they stumbled upon the land of Helam, which was occupied by Alma and his brethren.

39. Then, the Lamanites promised Alma and his brothers that if they showed them the way to the land of Nephi, they would grant them their lives and freedom.

40. But after Alma led them to the land of Nephi, the Lamanites did not keep their promise; instead, they set guards around the land of Helam, over Alma and his brothers.

41. The rest of them went to the land of Nephi; some returned to Helam and brought back the wives and children of the guards who had been left there.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

42. And the king of the Lamanites allowed Amulon to be a king and leader over his people in the land of Helam; however, he could do nothing against the wishes of the Lamanite king.

### **Mosiah Chapter 24**

1. Amulon gained the favor of the Lamanite king; consequently, the king appointed him and his brothers to teach the people in the lands of Shemlon, Shilom, and Amulon.
2. The Lamanites had taken control of all these areas, so the king had put rulers in charge of them.
3. The Lamanite king was named Laman, after his father, and he ruled over a large population.
4. He appointed teachers from Amulon's group in each of the lands occupied by his people, leading to the Nephi language being taught among the Lamanite people.
5. They were friendly with each other, but they did not know God, nor did Amulon's group teach them about Him, the law of Moses, or the words of Abinadi.
6. Instead, they taught them to keep records and to write messages to one another.
7. As a result, the Lamanites started to become wealthy, began to trade among themselves, and grew clever and wise in worldly matters, becoming very shrewd and engaging in all kinds of wickedness and theft, except against their own kind.
8. Eventually, Amulon started to exert control over Alma and his group, persecuting them and inciting their children against Alma's children.
9. Amulon was angry with Alma, knowing he had been one of the king's priests and had believed Abinadi's words, which led to his expulsion by the king. Even though Amulon was under Laman's authority, he imposed demands on them and appointed overseers.
10. Their suffering became so great that they cried out fervently to God.
11. In response, Amulon ordered them to stop their cries and placed guards over them to ensure no one called on God, with the penalty of death for anyone who did.
12. Alma and his followers did not openly raise their voices in prayer but sincerely poured out their hearts to God, who was aware of their innermost thoughts.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

13. Then, the Lord spoke to them during their suffering, saying: Lift your heads and feel comforted, for I know the promise you made to me; I will make a promise with my people and free them from captivity.

14. I will also lighten the burdens on you to the point where you will not even feel them while you are in bondage; I will do this so that you can bear witness for me later and know for sure that I, the Lord God, do care for my people in their trials.

15. Soon after, the burdens on Alma and his brethren were made light; the Lord gave them the strength to carry their loads easily, and they accepted the Lord's will patiently and joyfully.

16. Their strong faith and patience resulted in the Lord speaking to them again, saying: Take heart, for tomorrow I will free you from bondage.

17. He told Alma: You will lead this people, and I will be with you to set them free.

18. That night, Alma and his group gathered their livestock and grain, working throughout the night to bring everything together.

19. In the morning, the Lord caused a deep sleep to fall over the Lamanites, including all their taskmasters.

20. Alma and his people left for the wilderness; after traveling all day, they set up camp in a valley, naming it Alma after their leader.

21. In the valley of Alma, they expressed their gratitude to God for His mercy, for relieving their burdens, and for freeing them from slavery, as no one else could rescue them but the Lord.

22. They praised God, with all the men, women, and children who could speak raising their voices in thanks.

23. Then the Lord instructed Alma: Hurry and take your people out of this land, for the Lamanites have awakened and are pursuing you; leave now, and I will stop them in this valley so they cannot follow.

24. So they left the valley and continued their journey into the wilderness.

25. After twelve days of traveling in the wilderness, they finally reached the land of Zarahemla, where King Mosiah welcomed them joyfully.

## **Mosiah Chapter 25**

1. King Mosiah called all the people together.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

2. At that time, there were fewer descendants of Nephi than there were people from Zarahemla, who were descendants of Mulek and those who traveled with him into the wilderness.
3. There were also fewer people from Nephi and Zarahemla than there were Lamanites; in fact, they were not even half as numerous.
4. All the people of Nephi gathered together, as did all the people of Zarahemla, forming two groups.
5. Then Mosiah read the records of Zeniff to his people, which detailed everything from when they left Zarahemla until they returned.
6. He also read the story of Alma and his brethren and all the hardships they faced from the time they left Zarahemla until they returned.
7. Once Mosiah finished reading the records, the people who stayed in the land were filled with wonder and amazement.
8. They were unsure what to think; when they saw those who had been freed from bondage, they felt overwhelming joy.
9. But when they remembered their brothers who were killed by the Lamanites, they felt deep sorrow and shed many tears.
10. However, reflecting on God's goodness and His power in saving Alma and his brethren from the Lamanites made them lift their voices in gratitude to God.
11. As they considered their Lamanite brothers, who were trapped in sin, they felt pain and worry for their souls.
12. Some children of Amulon and his brethren, who married the daughters of the Lamanites, were unhappy with their fathers' actions; they no longer wanted to be called by their fathers' names. So, they named themselves Nephi to be identified with the Nephites.
13. All the people of Zarahemla were considered Nephites because the kingdom was only given to descendants of Nephi.
14. After Mosiah finished talking and reading to the people, he wanted Alma to speak as well.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

15. Alma preached to the assembled crowds, moving from one group to another, urging people to repent and have faith in the Lord.

16. He encouraged Limhi's people, who had been freed from bondage, to remember that it was the Lord who liberated them.

17. After Alma taught them many principles and finished speaking, King Limhi wanted to be baptized, and the rest of his people wanted to be baptized too.

18. So, Alma went into the water and baptized them in the same way he had baptized his brethren in the waters of Mormon; everyone who was baptized became part of the church of God because they believed Almas words.

19. King Mosiah allowed Alma to create churches throughout Zarahemla and gave him the authority to ordain priests and teachers for each church.

20. This was necessary because there were so many people that they couldnt all be taught by one person, nor could they all fit in one assembly.

21. So, they formed different groups, called churches, each with its own priests and teachers, and every priest preached the same word as it was given to him by Alma.

22. Thus, even though there were many churches, they were all united as one church, the church of God, preaching only repentance and faith in God.

23. At this time, there were seven churches in Zarahemla. Anyone who wanted to embrace the name of Christ or God joined the churches of God.

24. They became known as the people of God. The Lord blessed them, pouring out His Spirit upon them, and they thrived in the land.

## **Mosiah Chapter 26**

1. Many young people did not understand what King Benjamin had taught because they were too young when he spoke, and they did not believe the teachings of their ancestors.

2. They did not accept the messages about the resurrection or the future coming of Christ.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

3. Their lack of belief prevented them from understanding Gods word, and their hearts became stubborn.
4. They refused to be baptized and would not join the church. They remained separate in their beliefs and continued to live sinful lives because they did not reach out to the Lord.
5. During the reign of King Mosiah, they were fewer than the faithful followers of God; however, because of conflicts among the church members, their number grew.
6. They deceived many church members with flattering words, leading them into various sins; thus, it became necessary for the church to warn those who sinned.
7. They were brought before the priests by the teachers, and the priests took them to Alma, the high priest.
8. King Mosiah had given Alma leadership over the church.
9. At that time, Alma was unaware of the specifics of their situation, but there were many witnesses against them; the people testified in great detail about their wrongdoings.
10. Such a situation had not occurred in the church before, causing Alma to feel troubled, and he decided to take the matter to the king.
11. Alma said to the king, "Look, we have brought many before you who have been accused by their fellow members. They have engaged in various sins and do not feel remorse; we present them to you for your judgment."
12. However, King Mosiah replied, "I will not judge them; I leave their judgment in your hands."
13. Alma's spirit was once again troubled, and he sought guidance from the Lord, fearing that he might act wrongly in Gods sight.
14. After pouring out his soul to God, he received a voice from the Lord saying:
15. "Blessed are you, Alma, and blessed are those who were baptized in the waters of Mormon. You are blessed because of your great faith in the words of my servant Abinadi.
16. And blessed are they for their strong belief in the teachings you have given them.
17. You are blessed because you have established a church among this people, and they will be my people.
18. Yes, blessed is this people who is willing to carry my name; they will be called by my name, and they



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

belong to me.

19. And since you have asked about the wrongdoer, you are blessed.

20. You are my servant, and I promise you eternal life; you will serve me and go forth in my name, gathering my followers.

21. Anyone who hears my voice will be my follower; you will welcome them into the church, and I will also accept them.

22. This is my church; everyone who is baptized will do so as a sign of repentance. Those you receive into the church will believe in my name, and I will freely forgive them.

23. I take upon myself the sins of the world; I created the world, and I grant a place at my right hand to those who believe until the end.

24. They are called in my name, and if they know me, they will come forth and find a place eternally at my side.

25. When the second trumpet sounds, those who never knew me will come forth and stand before me.

26. Then they will realize I am the Lord their God, their Redeemer; however, they chose not to accept redemption.

27. I will tell them I never knew them, and they will depart into everlasting fire prepared for the devil and his angels.

28. Therefore, I say to you, those who ignore my voice should not be accepted into my church, for I will not recognize them at the last day.

29. So, go; those who sin against me should be judged according to their wrongdoing, and if they confess their sins sincerely, you shall forgive them, and I will forgive them too.

30. Yes, I will forgive my people their trespasses whenever they truly repent.

31. You must also forgive one another for your faults; truly, if someone does not forgive their neighbors wrongs while claiming to repent, they bring condemnation upon themselves.

32. Now I say to you, go; those who refuse to repent of their sins will not be counted among my people from

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

now on.

33. When Alma heard these words, he wrote them down to have the guidelines for judging the church members according to God's commandments.

34. Then Alma judged those accused of wrongdoing as instructed by the Lord.

35. Everyone who repented and confessed their sins was numbered among the church members;

36. But those who refused to confess and repent were not counted among the church members, and their names were removed from the rolls.

37. Alma managed all church affairs, leading to peace and prosperity among the church members, who walked carefully before God, welcoming and baptizing many.

38. All of these efforts were carried out by Alma and his fellow leaders, who were diligent in teaching God's word, enduring many hardships, and facing persecution from those outside the faith.

39. They admonished their fellow members, who were also reminded of their sins by God's word, being commanded to pray without ceasing and to give thanks in all situations.

### **Mosiah Chapter 27**

1. Mosiah prohibits persecution and promotes equality  
Alma the Younger and the four sons of Mosiah aim to destroy the Church  
An angel appears and commands them to stop their wicked ways  
Alma is rendered speechless  
Everyone must be reborn to achieve salvation  
Alma and the sons of Mosiah share the joyful message. About 10092 B.C.

2. At that time, the persecutions against the church by those who didn't believe became so severe that the church members began to grumble and bring their concerns to their leaders, specifically to Alma. Alma then took the issue to their king, Mosiah, who discussed it with his priests.

3. King Mosiah then announced across the land that no one could harass members of the church of God.

4. He made a strict rule in all the churches that there would be no persecution among them, ensuring equality for all individuals;

5. They were told to avoid pride and arrogance that might disrupt their peace, and to treat their neighbors as

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

they would want to be treated, working with their own hands to support themselves.

6. Yes, all their priests and teachers were also to work with their own hands for their livings, except when they were sick or in extreme need; by doing these things, they experienced the grace of God.

7. Peace began to return to the land, and the population grew, spreading across the earth in all directions north, south, east, and west, building large cities and villages everywhere.

8. The Lord accompanied them and blessed them, leading them to become a large and prosperous community.

9. However, the sons of Mosiah were among the unbelievers, and one of Alma's sons, also named Alma, was included; yet, he turned out to be very wicked and indulged in idol worship. He was a man of many words and spoke flattering things to the people, leading many to follow his sinful behavior.

10. He became a significant obstacle to the church's success drawing people away and causing much conflict, giving the enemy of God a chance to gain power over them.

11. While he was secretly trying to destroy the church of God, associated with the sons of Mosiah in leading the Lord's people astray, against God's commandments and the king's wishes

12. As I mentioned, while they were rebelling against God, the angel of the Lord appeared to them; it felt as if he descended from a cloud and spoke with a thunderous voice, which shook the ground they stood on;

13. So overwhelming was their shock that they fell to the ground, not understanding what he said to them.

14. Yet, he called out again, saying: Alma, get up and stand up, why are you persecuting the church of God? The Lord says: This is my church, and I will secure it; nothing will destroy it except the sins of my people.

15. Again, the angel said: Look, the Lord has heard the prayers of his people and also the prayers of His servant Alma, your father; he prayed sincerely for you to come to know the truth; this is why I have come to show you the power and authority of God, so that the prayers of His servants can be answered according to their faith.

16. Now, can you challenge the power of God? Look, doesn't my voice shake the earth? Can you not see me standing before you? I am sent from God.

17. Now I tell you: Go, and remember the captivity of your ancestors in the land of Helam and in the land of

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

Nephi; remember the great things God did for them; they were enslaved, and He set them free. Now I say to you, Alma, go away and no longer seek to destroy the church, so that their prayers can be answered, even if it means you might be cast off yourself.

18. These were the last words the angel spoke to Alma before he left.

19. And then Alma and his companions fell to the ground again, for their surprise was immense; they had seen an angel of the Lord with their own eyes and heard a voice like thunder shaking the earth; they realized that only the power of God could create such a tremor.

20. Alma's astonishment was so profound that he lost the ability to speak and found himself too weak to move; his friends had to carry him until they placed him before his father.

21. They explained to his father everything that had happened, and he rejoiced, knowing it was the power of God.

22. He gathered a crowd so everyone could witness what the Lord had done for his son and those with him.

23. He had the priests come together, and they began to fast and pray to the Lord their God, asking Him to restore Alma's ability to speak and strengthen him, so that the people might see and know of God's goodness and glory.

24. After two days and nights of fasting and prayer, Alma's strength returned, and he stood up, encouraging them to be hopeful:

25. He said, I have repented of my sins and have been saved by the Lord; truly, I am born of the Spirit.

26. The Lord told me: Do not be surprised that all mankind, men and women, from every nation, lineage, language, and people, must be reborn; yes, reborn of God, changing from their sinful and fallen state to a state of righteousness, redeemed by God, becoming His sons and daughters;

27. Thus, they become new beings; and unless they do this, they cannot inherit the kingdom of God.

28. I tell you, if this does not happen, they will be cast off; and I know this because I nearly faced that fate.

29. Yet, after enduring much suffering and repenting almost to the point of death, the Lord in His mercy saved me from eternal torment, and I am reborn of God.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

30. My soul has been freed from bitterness and the chains of sin. I was in the darkest pit; now I see the incredible light of God. My soul was filled with endless pain; now I am rescued, and I no longer suffer.

31. I turned against my Redeemer and denied the truths given by our ancestors; but now, those who await His coming know He remembers every creature He created, and He will make Himself known to all.

32. Yes, every knee will bow, and every tongue will confess before Him. Even on the last day, when all people stand to be judged by Him, they will acknowledge Him as God; and those who lived without God will admit that the judgment of endless punishment is just, trembling and quaking at His all-seeing gaze.

33. At this point, Alma began teaching the people, along with those who were with him when the angel appeared, traveling across the land, sharing the things they had seen and heard, and preaching the word of God amidst much trial, facing severe opposition from the unbelievers who beat them.

34. Despite all this, they provided great comfort to the church, strengthening their faith, and patiently encouraging them to keep the commandments of God.

35. Four of them were the sons of Mosiah; their names were Ammon, Aaron, Omner, and Himnithese were the sons of Mosiah.

36. They traveled throughout all the land of Zarahemla and among all the people under King Mosiah, diligently working to mend the wrongs they had done to the church, admitting their sins, sharing everything they had experienced, and explaining the prophecies and scriptures to anyone who wanted to listen.

37. Thus, they served as instruments of God to bring many to know the truth, to know their Redeemer.

38. How blessed they are! For they brought peace, shared good news, and declared to the people that the Lord reigns.

## **Mosiah Chapter 28**

1. After the sons of Mosiah accomplished their tasks, they took a small group with them and went back to their father, the king. They asked him if he would allow them to go to the land of Nephi to share the teachings they had received and spread God's word to their brethren, the Lamanites.

2. They hoped to help the Lamanites come to know the Lord their God and persuade them to see the

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

wrongdoings of their ancestors. They wanted to heal the Lamanites' hatred towards the Nephites and bring them joy in their relationship with God, fostering friendship and ending conflicts in the land that God had given them.

3. They were eager for salvation to be proclaimed to everyone since they couldn't stand the thought of anyone suffering eternally; even the idea of any soul facing endless torment made them feel anxious and fearful.

4. The Spirit of the Lord moved them, as they were once very wicked. Yet, in His boundless mercy, the Lord chose to spare them. Still, they experienced great pain because of their sins, suffering and fearing they might be cast away forever.

5. Eventually, they pleaded with their father for many days to let them go to the land of Nephi.

6. King Mosiah sought guidance from the Lord to find out if he should permit his sons to preach to the Lamanites.

7. The Lord told Mosiah to let them go, promising that many would believe their words and gain eternal life, assuring him that He would protect his sons from the Lamanites.

8. Mosiah then granted their request, allowing them to go and carry out their mission.

9. They set out into the wilderness to preach the word among the Lamanites, and I will recount their journey later.

10. King Mosiah had no one to pass the kingdom to, as none of his sons wanted the throne.

11. So, he took the records engraved on the brass plates, the plates of Nephi, and all the items he had preserved according to Gods commandments, including the records on the gold plates found by the people of Limhi, which were handed to him by Limhi.

12. He did this because his people were greatly eager to know about those who had been destroyed.

13. Continuing, he translated them using the two seer stones attached to the ends of a bow.

14. These stones were prepared from the start and passed down through generations for the purpose of translating languages.

15. They have been safeguarded by God so that everyone who possesses the land can be made aware of their

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

peoples sins and unholy acts.

16. Anyone who has these stones is referred to as a seer, similar to ancient times.

17. After Mosiah completed the translation, it described the people who had been destroyed, from their demise back to the construction of the great tower, when God confused the language of the people and they were scattered across the earth, even tracing back to the creation of Adam.

18. This account caused Mosiah's people to grieve deeply; they were filled with sorrow, yet it also provided them much knowledge that brought them joy.

19. This account will be recorded later, as it is important for all people to be aware of what is documented in it.

20. As I mentioned, after King Mosiah completed these tasks, he entrusted the brass plates and everything he had kept to Alma, the son of Alma. He gave him all the records and the interpreters, instructing him to preserve them and maintain a record of the people, passing it down from generation to generation, just as it had been done since Lehi left Jerusalem.

### **Mosiah Chapter 29**

1. Mosiah decided to ask all the people what they wanted regarding their king.

2. The people responded, saying they wanted Aaron, Mosiah's son, to be their king and leader.

3. However, Aaron was away in the land of Nephi, so Mosiah couldnt make him king, and Aaron didnt want to be king. None of Mosiah's other sons were willing to take the throne either.

4. So, King Mosiah sent out another message to the people, and this is what he wrote:

5. Listen, my people, I care for you and want you to think carefully about the choice youre making, because you want a king.

6. I need to tell you that the rightful heir to the throne has turned away and does not want to be king.

7. If someone else is appointed in his place, I worry that it could lead to arguments among you. Who knows, my son, who rightfully should be king, might get angry and take some of you with him, leading to wars and causing much bloodshed, which would go against the ways of the Lord and harm many souls.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

8. So, lets be smart and think about this because we cannot destroy my son, nor should we harm anyone else if someone new is chosen.

9. If my son goes back to his prideful ways, he may want the kingdom again, causing sin for both him and the people.

10. Lets look ahead wisely and do what brings peace to everyone.

11. So, I will stay your king for the rest of my life; however, lets choose judges to govern fairly based on our laws, and well set up how to manage our affairs, appointing wise judges who will follow Gods commandments.

12. Its better for God to judge a person than for people to judge them, because Gods judgments are always fair, while human judgments can be flawed.

13. If you could have honest men as your kings who would uphold Gods laws and judge righteously, like my father Benjamin did, then it would be wise to have kings.

14. I have worked hard to teach you Gods commandments and to promote peace in our community, so there are no wars, stealing, plundering, or murder.

15. I have punished those who committed crimes following the laws given to us by our ancestors.

16. Since not everyone is just, it's not wise to have kings ruling over you.

17. Look at how much evil a wicked king can create and the destruction it causes!

18. Remember King Noah and the terrible things he did, and how his people also behaved; great destruction came upon them because of their wrongdoings, leading them into bondage.

19. If it werent for their wise Creator stepping in because they truly repented, they would still be suffering in bondage today.

20. But He delivered them because they humbled themselves and cried out to Him for help; this is how the Lord shows His mercy to those who trust Him.

21. Its important to know that you cant remove a wicked king without a lot of fighting and bloodshed.

22. He has his supporters who engage in wrongdoing, and he surrounds himself with guards, tearing down the



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

good laws from previous righteous rulers while ignoring Gods commandments.

23. He makes his own unjust laws, which he forces his people to obey, threatening destruction for those who dont follow him, causing war against those who rebel, and leading righteousness astray.

24. So, I say its not wise to allow such evil to happen among you.

25. Therefore, choose judges by the voice of the people, so that you can be judged based on the good laws passed down from our ancestors.

26. Its rare for the majority to want something wrong; usually, it's a small group that wants whats not right. So, let the people's voice guide you in decision-making.

27. If the people choose wrongdoing, then Gods judgment will fall upon you, bringing serious destruction just like it has done in the past.

28. If you have judges who dont judge fairly according to the law, you can appeal to a higher judge.

29. If those higher judges are also unjust, gather a few lower judges to evaluate the higher ones based on what the people want.

30. I urge you to follow these instructions respectfully and remember to have no king, so if any wrongs are done, only the individuals who committed them will be held responsible.

31. The sins of the people have often stemmed from their kings, and so those kings are responsible for the wrongdoings.

32. I want this injustice to end in our land, especially among my people; I desire that we live in freedom where everyone enjoys equal rights, as long as the Lord allows us to stay here.

33. King Mosiah wrote many more things to them, sharing the struggles a righteous king faces and all the complaints people express to their leaders, explaining that these issues should not exist; instead, everyone should share in the burden.

34. He also highlighted the problems caused by having an unrighteous ruler; the wrongdoing, arguments, wars, murders, thefts, sexual immorality, and all forms of wickedness which don't align with Gods commandments.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

35. After Mosiah sent his message, the people recognized the truth in his words.
36. Consequently, they gave up their wish for a king and became eager for each person to have an equal opportunity; everyone agreed to take responsibility for their own actions.
37. Then they gathered across the land to vote on who their judges should be, to govern according to the laws given to them, and they were very happy about the freedom they were granted.
38. They grew to love Mosiah deeply, respecting him more than anyone else, not seeing him as a greedy tyrant but as someone who brought peace and freedom instead of seeking wealth or delighting in violence; he had ensured that his people were freed from all forms of bondage, and as a result, they held him in very high regard.
39. They then appointed judges to rule over them according to the law, and they did this throughout the entire region.
40. Alma was chosen as the first chief judge and high priest, given this responsibility by his father, who entrusted him with the church's matters.
41. Following this, Alma lived righteously, followed God's commandments, and made fair judgments; peace reigned throughout the land.
42. Thus began the era of judges in Zarahemla amongst the Nephites, with Alma serving as the first chief judge.
43. Eventually, Alma's father passed away at the age of eighty-two after fulfilling Gods commandments.
44. Mosiah also died after ruling for thirty-three years, at the age of sixty-three; this marked a total of five hundred and nine years since Lehi left Jerusalem.
45. This ended the kings' rule over the Nephite people and closed the chapter on Almas life, who was the founder of their church.

## **Alma**

### **Alma Chapter 1**

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

1. The Book of Alma, the Son of Alma

2. This is the story of Alma, the son of Alma, who was the first and main judge of the Nephite people, and also the high priest of the Church. It tells about the time when judges ruled, along with the wars and conflicts among the people. It also describes a war between the Nephites and the Lamanites, based on the record of Alma, the first and main judge.

3. Nehor teaches misleading beliefs, sets up a church, promotes priestcraft, and kills Gideon. Nehor is punished for his actions. Priestcraft and persecution spread among the people. The priests take care of themselves, the community looks after the poor, and the Church thrives. About 918 B.C.

4. At the beginning of the judges' rule over the Nephites, after king Mosiah had passed away, having fought valiantly and lived righteously before God, leaving no one to take his place; still, he had created laws that the people accepted, so they were required to follow those laws.

5. During Alma's first year as judge, a strong man was brought to him for judgment.

6. This man traveled among the people, preaching what he claimed was the word of God, opposing the church; insisting that every priest and teacher should be popular and should not work with their hands, but should be supported by the people.

7. He also proclaimed that all people would be saved in the end, that they should not fear but lift their heads and rejoice, for God had created and redeemed all mankind, and ultimately everyone would have eternal life.

8. He preached these ideas so effectively that many believed in him, enough to start giving him money.

9. He became prideful and wore expensive clothing, and even started a church that mirrored his teachings.

10. As he was on his way to preach to his followers, he encountered Gideon, a teacher from the church of God, and argued fiercely with him in an attempt to sway the church members; but Gideon stood firm, advising him with the words of God.

11. Gideon was the one God used to help free the people of Limhi from captivity.

12. Angered by Gideon's resistance, Nehor attacked him with a sword, and because Gideon was older and unable to defend himself, he was killed.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

13. The church members captured Nehor and brought him to Alma for judgment based on his crimes.

14. When he stood before Alma, he defended himself boldly.

15. Alma responded: This is the first time that priestcraft has appeared among our people. You are guilty of priestcraft and attempted to enforce it with violence; if priestcraft spreads among us, it will lead to our total ruin.

16. You have taken the life of a righteous man, someone who has done great good for our people; if we were to spare you, we would face his blood's vengeance.

17. Therefore, you are sentenced to death, as per the law established by our last king, Mosiah, which the people have accepted; thus, they must follow this law.

18. They took him, a man named Nehor, to the top of the hill Manti, where he confessed between heaven and earth that what he had taught was against God's word; there he met a shameful death.

19. However, this did not stop the spread of priestcraft throughout the land, as many were attracted to the false glamor of the world and began preaching lies for the sake of wealth and status.

20. Still, they did not dare to lie openly for fear of the law, as lying brought punishment; so instead, they pretended to preach what they claimed to believe, and the law had no power over anyone for their beliefs.

21. They also feared theft due to legal consequences, so they refrained from stealing, robbing, or killingmurderers faced the death penalty.

22. But those outside the church began to attack those who belonged to the church and called themselves followers of Christ.

23. They oppressed and insulted the believers due to their humility, as the believers did not see themselves as better and shared God's word freely without charging.

24. There was also a strict law in the church that no member could harass those outside the church, and there should be no infighting among each other.

25. Nonetheless, some members became proud and argued fiercely with their opponents, even to the point of fighting each other.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

26. In Alma's second year in office, this caused great distress for the church and brought many trials.

27. Many hearts became hardened, and their names were removed from among Gods people; many left the church.

28. This was a significant test for those who remained faithful; yet, they remained steadfast, unwavering in following God's commandments, patiently enduring the persecution directed at them.

29. When the priests stopped their work to share Gods word, the people also paused their tasks to listen, and after receiving the word, they returned to their work. The priests did not consider themselves superior to their listeners; they were all equals, working hard according to their abilities.

30. They shared their resources generously, helping the poor, needy, sick, and afflicted, without wearing extravagant clothes, though they remained tidy and presentable.

31. Thus, they managed the church's activities, and they experienced lasting peace despite ongoing persecution.

32. Because of their unity, the church became notably wealthy, having plenty of everything they needed: large groups of livestock, grain, gold, silver, valuable items, fine silk, high-quality linen, and all sorts of good, practical fabrics.

33. In their prosperity, they did not turn away anyone who was naked, hungry, thirsty, sick, or lacking nourishment; they did not covet wealth and were generous to everyone, regardless of their status, be they young or old, free or enslaved, male or femaleinside or outside the church.

34. In this way, they thrived and grew much richer than those outside their church.

35. Those outside the church indulged in sorcery, idolatry, laziness, endless chatter, envy, and conflict; they wore expensive clothes, were prideful, and participated in all kinds of wickedness like persecution, lying, stealing, committing adultery, and murder; nevertheless, the law was enforced on anyone who broke it whenever possible.

36. By enforcing the law upon them, everyone faced consequences for their actions; they became quieter and were less likely to act wickedly if their deeds became known, resulting in significant peace among the Nephite

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

people until the fifth year of the judges' reign.

### **Alma Chapter 2**

1. In the beginning of the fifth year of their rule, a disagreement arose among the people because of a man named Amlici. He was very clever and knew much about worldly wisdom, similar to the man who killed Gideon and was punished by law.
2. Amlici used his cunning to gather a large following, making them quite powerful as they tried to make him their king.
3. This alarmed those in the church and others who weren't swayed by Amlici's arguments, as they understood that their laws required such leadership to be decided by the people's voice.
4. If Amlici managed to win the people's support, he, being an immoral man, would take away their rights and privileges related to the church since he aimed to destroy God's church.
5. So the people gathered from all over the land, forming groups based on their opinions for or against Amlici, and engaged in fierce debates with each other.
6. They then joined together to vote on the issue, and the results were presented to the judges.
7. The voice of the people was against Amlici, and he was not made king.
8. This news brought great joy to those who opposed him, but Amlici inspired anger among his supporters toward those who disagreed with him.
9. Eventually, they gathered together and declared Amlici as their king.
10. Once crowned, Amlici commanded his followers to take up arms against their fellow Nephites in order to assert his control over them.
11. The followers of Amlici were known as Amlicites, while those who remained loyal were called Nephites or people of God.
12. The Nephites recognized the threat posed by the Amlicites and took precautions, arming themselves with swords, curved swords, bows and arrows, stones, slings, and all sorts of weapons.
13. They prepared to confront the Amlicites as they approached. Leaders of various ranks were appointed

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

based on their numbers.

14. Amlici also equipped his followers with a variety of weapons and designated rulers and leaders to guide them in battle against their fellow Nephites.

15. The Amlicites launched their attack on the hill Amnihu, located east of the river Sidon, which flowed near Zarahemla.

16. Alma, the chief judge and governor of the Nephites, led his people along with their captains and chief captains into battle against the Amlicites.

17. They began to defeat the Amlicites on the hill east of Sidon. The Amlicites fought fiercely, causing some Nephites to fall in battle.

18. Despite this, the Lord strengthened the Nephites, enabling them to fight back and inflict great casualties on the Amlicites, who began to flee.

19. The Nephites pursued the Amlicites all day, killing many of them until they had slain a total of twelve thousand five hundred thirty-two Amlicites, while the Nephites lost six thousand five hundred sixty-two.

20. When Alma could no longer chase the Amlicites, he ordered his people to set up their tents in the valley of Gideon, named after Gideon, who was killed by Nehor.

21. In the valley, the Nephites camped for the night.

22. Alma sent spies to track the remaining Amlicites to learn their intentions and protect his people from future attacks.

23. Those he sent to watch the Amlicite camp were Zeram, Amnor, Manti, and Limher; they went out with their men to keep an eye on the Amlicites.

24. The next day they returned quickly to the Nephite camp, shocked and frightened, saying:

25. "We followed the Amlicite camp and were amazed to see a large group of Lamanites in the land of Minon, above Zarahemla. The Amlicites have teamed up with them.

26. They are attacking our people in that area and pushing them back with their livestock, wives, and children toward our city. If we don't hurry, they will take our city and kill our fathers, wives, and children."

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

27. The Nephites quickly took down their tents and left the valley of Gideon, moving toward their city, Zarahemla.

28. As they crossed the river Sidon, the Lamanites and Amlicites, being numerous like grains of sand, came upon them to destroy them.

29. Even so, the Nephites found strength from the Lord because they had prayed passionately for help, and the Lord heard their pleas. He empowered them, causing the Lamanites and Amlicites to fall before them.

30. Alma fought Amlici one-on-one, and they battled fiercely against each other.

31. Being a man of God and full of faith, Alma cried out, asking the Lord for mercy and to spare his life so he could help save his people.

32. After saying this, Alma continued to fight Amlici and was given strength, allowing him to slay Amlici with his sword.

33. He also fought the king of the Lamanites, who retreated from Alma and sent his guards to fight him instead.

34. Alma, along with his guards, engaged in battle with the Lamanite king's guards, defeating and repelling them.

35. Thus, he cleared the area on the west bank of the river Sidon, throwing the bodies of the slain Lamanites into the water so that his people could cross and confront the Lamanites and Amlicites on the west side.

36. When all the Nephites had crossed the river Sidon, the Lamanites and Amlicites began to flee from them, even though their numbers were overwhelming.

37. They ran toward the wilderness to the west and north, beyond the boundaries of the land, while the Nephites pursued them fiercely and killed many.

38. They encountered them everywhere and fought them until they were scattered in the west and north, eventually reaching the wilderness known as Hermounts, a region filled with wild, ferocious animals.

39. As a result, many were left to die in the wilderness from their wounds and were eaten by the beasts and vultures. Their bones have since been found and gathered on the earth.



## **Alma Chapter 3**

1. The Nephites who survived the battle, after burying their dead who were countless and could not be tallied returned to their homes, wives, and children after completing the burials.
2. Many women and children had died by the sword, along with numerous flocks and herds; their fields of grain were also destroyed because they had been trampled by the armies.
3. Now, many of the slain Lamanites and Amlicites along the river Sidon were thrown into its waters; their bones lay in the depths of the sea, and there were many of them.
4. The Amlicites were marked differently from the Nephites; they painted red on their foreheads like the Lamanites, but they did not shave their heads like the Lamanites did.
5. The Lamanites had shaved heads and wore minimal clothing, just skin around their waists, along with their armor, bows, arrows, stones, and slings.
6. The Lamanites had dark skin, a mark passed down from their ancestors, a curse due to their wrongdoing and rebellion against their brothers, Nephi, Jacob, Joseph, and Sam, who were righteous individuals.
7. Their brothers sought to destroy them, and as a result, they were cursed; God put a mark on Laman, Lemuel, the sons of Ishmael, and Ishmaelite women.
8. This marking was to keep their descendants separate from their brothers, allowing God to protect His people, preventing them from mixing with incorrect beliefs that would lead to their downfall.
9. Anyone who mingled their descendants with the Lamanites also brought the same curse upon their future generations.
10. Thus, anyone who allowed themselves to be led by the Lamanites was identified with them and marked accordingly.
11. Anyone who refused to accept Lamanite traditions believing instead in the records brought from Jerusalem and the correct teachings of their ancestors who followed God's commandments was called a Nephite, or people of Nephi, from then on.
12. These Nephites maintained true records about themselves and the Lamanites.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

13. Now, let's return to the Amlicites; they too had a mark on themselves, having chosen to mark themselves with red on their foreheads.

14. This fulfills God's word, for He told Nephi that He would place a mark on the Lamanites to keep them and their descendants separate from Nephi and his descendants, unless they repented and sought His mercy.

15. Again, He said that anyone who mixed their descendants with Nephi's brothers would be marked and cursed.

16. And again, He declared that anyone who fought against Nephi and his descendants would also be marked.

17. He stated again that anyone who left Nephi's group would no longer be called his descendants; though He would bless Nephi and those who would still be recognized as his descendants forever. These were the promises God made to Nephi and his lineage.

18. The Amlicites did not realize they were fulfilling God's words when they began marking their foreheads; they were openly rebelling against Him, which made it fitting for them to receive the curse.

19. I want you to understand that they brought this curse upon themselves; every cursed individual ultimately brings their own condemnation.

20. Not long after the battle in Zarahemla between the Lamanites and Amlicites, another Lamanite army attacked the Nephites in the same location as the first encounter with the Amlicites.

21. An army was sent to drive the Lamanites out of their territory.

22. Alma, who was wounded, did not personally lead the charge against the Lamanites this time.

23. Instead, he sent a large army to confront them; they killed many Lamanites and pushed the rest out of their territory.

24. Afterwards, they returned and worked to establish peace in the land, no longer troubled by enemies for some time.

25. All these events, including the wars and conflicts, began and ended in the fifth year of the judges' reign.

26. In that year, thousands upon thousands of souls moved on to the next world to receive their rewards based on their deeds, whether good or bad, leading to eternal happiness or misery, depending on which spirit they

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

chose to follow, be it good or bad.

27. Every individual receives rewards from the one they choose to obey; this aligns with the spirit of prophecy, and thus it should be recognized as truth. This concludes the record of the fifth year of the judges' reign.

### **Alma Chapter 4**

1. In the sixth year of the judges' rule over the Nephites, there were no arguments or wars in Zarahemla.
2. However, the people were suffering greatly due to the loss of their friends, and they had also lost their animals and their fields of grain, which the Lamanites had trampled and destroyed.
3. Their suffering was so intense that everyone had a reason to grieve; they believed these troubles were God's judgment on them for their wrongdoing and sins, which made them remember their responsibilities.
4. They started to strengthen the church; many were baptized in the waters of Sidon and joined God's church, with Alma, who had been made high priest by his father, performing the baptisms.
5. By the seventh year of the judges' reign, around three thousand five hundred people had joined the church and were baptized. This brought an end to the seventh year, during which there was peace.
6. In the eighth year of the judges' reign, the church members became arrogant because of their wealth: fine silks, high-quality linen, many flocks and herds, and a lot of gold and silver—all acquired through their hard work. They became proud and started wearing very expensive clothing.
7. This pride caused great distress for Alma and many others he had appointed to teach and lead the church; many were deeply saddened by the wickedness they observed among their people.
8. They watched in heartbreak as church members became proud and focused on wealth and worldly things, leading to scorn among each other and the persecution of those who didn't share their beliefs.
9. Thus, during the eighth year of the judges' reign, significant arguments began within the church, including envy, conflict, malice, and arrogance, surpassing even those outside the church.
10. The conclusion of the eighth year saw the church's growing wickedness become a serious obstacle for outsiders, causing the church to fall behind in its purpose.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

11. At the start of the ninth year, Alma witnessed the church's wickedness, noting how it was guiding nonbelievers further into wrongdoing, leading towards destruction.

12. He saw great inequality, with some people puffed up with pride, looking down on others, ignoring the needs of the poor, hungry, thirsty, sick, and suffering.

13. This disparity caused much sorrow among the people, while some were humble, helping those in need, sharing their resources, feeding the hungry, and enduring hardships for the sake of Christ, whom they believed would come.

14. They looked forward to that day, keeping their sins forgiven and filled with joy due to the hope of resurrection through Jesus power over death.

15. Seeing the afflictions of the faithful followers of God and the persecutions they faced from others, as well as the inequalities present, Alma became extremely sad; however, the Spirit of the Lord remained with him.

16. He chose a wise elder from the church and empowered him, following the people's voice, to create and enforce laws appropriate to the people's wrongdoings.

17. This man, named Nephihah, was made chief judge and took his place to govern and judge the people.

18. Alma did not give him the position of high priest; he kept that role for himself but turned over the judgment seat to Nephihah.

19. He did this so he could personally go among his people to preach God's word, remind them of their duties, and use scripture to challenge the pride and deceitfulness that was growing amongst them, believing that only by directly confronting them with heartfelt testimony could he bring them back.

20. Thus, at the beginning of the ninth year of the judges' reign over the Nephites, Alma handed over the judgment seat to Nephihah and focused entirely on being high priest, committed to preaching the word according to revelation and prophecy.

## **Alma Chapter 5**

1. The message that Alma, the High Priest following God's holy order, shared with the people in their towns and villages across the land.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

2. To attain salvation, people must turn away from their sins and follow Gods commandments, experience a spiritual rebirth, purify themselves through the sacrifice of Christ, be humble, set aside pride and jealousy, and perform good deedsThe Good Shepherd calls His followersThose who do wicked things belong to the devilAlma testifies about the truth he teaches and urges people to repentThe names of the righteous will be included in the book of life.

3. So Alma started to share God's message with the people, starting in the land of Zarahemla and then throughout the entire region.

4. Here are the words he spoke to the church in Zarahemla, as recorded by himself:

5. I, Alma, was appointed by my father, Alma, to be a high priest of Gods church, having received divine authority to do this. I tell you that he started a church in the area of Nephi, specifically in the land known as Mormon, and he baptized his friends in the waters of Mormon.

6. God, in His mercy and power, saved them from king Noah's people.

7. Then they were made captive by the Lamanites while in the wilderness; I tell you they were imprisoned, but the Lord freed them again through His word, and we settled in this land, where we began to spread Gods church.

8. Now I ask you, my friends in this church, do you remember your ancestors' captivity? Yes, and do you recall God's mercy and patience towards them? Moreover, do you remember how He saved their souls from hell?

9. He changed their hearts; He awakened them from a deep slumber, and they turned to God. They were lost in darkness, yet their souls were brightened by the eternal gospel; they were surrounded by death and hell, facing certain destruction.

10. And now I ask you, my friends, were they destroyed? I say to you, No, they were not.

11. Again I ask, were the bonds of death broken, and were the chains of hell that surrounded them removed? Yes, they were freed, their spirits soared, and they sang of redeeming love. I tell you that they are saved.

12. Now I ask you, under what conditions were they saved? What hope did they have for salvation? What

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

caused them to be freed from death and hell?

13. Listen, I can tell you didn't my father Alma believe the words spoken by prophet Abinadi? And wasn't he a true prophet of God? Did he not speak God's words, and did my father not believe them?

14. Because of his faith, a profound change took place in his heart. I assure you that this is true.

15. He preached to your ancestors, and they also experienced a great change in their hearts; they humbled themselves and trusted the true and living God. They remained faithful until the end, so they were saved.

16. Now I ask you, my church family, have you been spiritually reborn? Do you reflect God's image in your face? Have you felt this powerful change in your hearts?

17. Do you have faith in the Savior who created you? Do you look forward with hope, envisioning your mortal body raised to immortality, and this corruption transformed into incorruption, to stand before God and be judged for your actions in this life?

18. I ask you, can you imagine hearing the Lord's voice on that day, saying: Come to me, you blessed ones, for your deeds have been righteous on the earth?

19. Or do you think you can lie to the Lord then, saying, Lord, our actions have been good on the earth, and He will save you?

20. Can you picture yourselves standing before God, troubled and regretful, fully aware of your sins, remembering all your wrongdoings, and realizing you've defied God's commandments?

21. Can you look up to God that day with a pure heart and clean hands? Can you look up, having God's image reflected in your face?

22. Can you truly think you'll be saved after submitting yourselves to the devil?

23. You will know then that you cannot be saved; no one can be saved unless their garments are made white, purified from all sins, through the blood of Him who was prophesied to come and redeem His people from their sins.

24. Now I ask you, my friends, how will any of you feel if you stand before God stained with blood and filth? What will these sins reveal about you?

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

25. Wont they confirm that you are murderers, guilty of all kinds of wickedness?
26. Do you believe someone like that can sit in Gods kingdom alongside Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, and all the holy prophets, whose garments are clean and pure?
27. I tell you, No; unless you make God a liar from the beginning, or think He is lying, you cannot believe such a person can belong in heaven. Instead, they will be cast out; they are children of the devils kingdom.
28. Now I say to you, my friends, if you have experienced a change of heart and if you feel the joy of redeeming love, can you still feel that way now?
29. Have you lived your lives blameless before God? Could you say, if you were to die today, that you were humble enough? That your garments have been purified through the blood of Christ, who comes to redeem His people from their sins?
30. Are you free from pride? I tell you, if you are not, then you are not prepared to meet God. You need to prepare quickly; for the kingdom of heaven is drawing near, and such a person does not have eternal life.
31. Are you among those who are not free from envy? I tell you, you are not ready; and I hope you prepare quickly, for the time is close, and you dont know when it will come; such a one cannot be found guiltless.
32. Again, is there anyone who mocks his brother or persecutes him?
33. Woe to that person, for he is not prepared, and the time is come that he must repent or he cannot be saved!
34. Woe also to all you who do evil; repent, repent, for the Lord God has declared it!
35. Look, He offers an invitation to everyone, for His mercy reaches out to them, saying: Repent, and I will accept you.
36. Yes, He says: Come to me, and you will partake of the tree of life; you will freely eat and drink of the bread and waters of life;
37. Yes, come to me and do good works, and you will not be destroyed and cast into the fire
38. For look, the time is near that anyone who does not produce good fruit, or who does not perform righteous deeds, has cause to weep and mourn.
39. O you who do evil; you who are caught up in the empty things of this world; you who claim to know

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

righteousness yet wander off, like sheep without a shepherd, even though a shepherd has called for you and continues to call for you, but you refuse to listen to His voice!

40. I tell you, the good shepherd is calling you; indeed, he calls you by His name, which is Christ; if you refuse to listen to the good shepherd's voice, the name by which you are called, you are not His sheep.

41. And now if you are not the sheep of the good shepherd, whose flock are you? I tell you that the devil is your shepherd, and you are part of his fold; who can deny this? I say to you, whoever denies this is a liar and a child of the devil.

42. For I tell you that all that is good comes from God, and all evil comes from the devil.

43. Therefore, if someone produces good works, he listens to the good shepherd's voice and follows Him; but whoever produces evil works becomes a child of the devil, as he listens to his voice and follows him.

44. Whoever does this must receive his reward; thus, for his reward, he receives death concerning righteousness because he is dead to all good deeds.

45. Now, my friends, I want you to listen to me because I speak with all my heart; indeed, I have spoken clearly so you cannot err or have spoken according to God's commandments.

46. I am called to speak like this, under God's holy order, which is in Christ Jesus; yes, I am commanded to stand and testify to this people about what our ancestors have said regarding what is to come.

47. This is not all. Do you think I don't know these things myself? I tell you that I do know, and I know they are true. How do you think I know for sure?

48. I tell you they are revealed to me through the Holy Spirit of God. I have fasted and prayed for many days to know these things for myself. And now I know for myself that they are true; for the Lord God has shown them to me through His Holy Spirit; and this is the spirit of revelation that is with me.

49. Additionally, I tell you that it has been revealed to me that what our fathers spoke is true, likewise according to the spirit of prophecy within me, which is also by the revelation of God's Spirit.

50. I assure you that I know for myself that whatever I tell you about what's to come is true; and I tell you, I know that Jesus Christ will come, yes, the Son, the Only Begotten of the Father, full of grace, mercy, and



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

truth. And it is He who will take away the sins of the world, yes, the sins of every man who faithfully believes in His name.

51. And now I say to you that this is the duty assigned to me, yes, to preach to my beloved brothers and sisters, and to everyone living in the land; yes, to preach to all, old and young, both free and enslaved; yes, I say to you, the elderly, the middle-aged, and the young people; yes, to urge them to repent and be spiritually reborn.

52. Yes, thus says the Spirit: Repent, all you ends of the earth, for the kingdom of heaven is near; yes, the Son of God is coming in His glory, might, majesty, strength, and dominion. Yes, my dear friends, I tell you that the Spirit says: Behold the glory of the King of all the earth; soon the King of heaven will shine forth among all humanity.

53. And the Spirit also tells me, yes, cries out to me with a mighty voice, saying: Go forth and tell these people Repent, for unless you repent, you have no chance to inherit the kingdom of heaven.

54. Again, I tell you, the Spirit says: Behold, the axe is laid at the base of the tree; therefore every tree that does not bear good fruit will be cut down and thrown into the fire, a fire that cannot be quenched. Remember, the Holy One has declared it.

55. Now, my beloved friends, I ask you, can you withstand these words; can you ignore these messages and trampling on the Holy One? Will you continue in pride, thinking highly of yourselves? Will you persist in wearing fancy clothes and focusing on material things in this world?

56. Will you keep pretending you are better than others? Will you continue to persecute your brothers and sisters who humbly follow Gods will, those who have been brought into this church by the Holy Spirit, and who do good works fitting for repentance

57. And will you keep turning your back on the poor and needy, withholding help from them?

58. Finally, all you who continue in your wickedness, I tell you that these are the ones who will be cut down and cast into the fire unless they quickly repent.

59. Now I tell you, all of you who desire to follow the good shepherd's voice, separate yourselves from the

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

wicked and do not touch their unclean things; their names will be erased, ensuring the wicked do not mix with the righteous, fulfilling Gods word, which says: The names of the wicked shall not be mingled with the names of my people;

60. For the names of the righteous will be written in the book of life, and to them, I will grant a place at my right hand. Now, my friends, what do you say against this? I tell you, if you speak against it, it doesnt matter because God's word must be fulfilled.

61. For what shepherd among you, with many sheep, does not watch over them to prevent wolves from entering and devouring his flock? If a wolf enters, does he not drive it out? Yes, and if possible, he will destroy it.

62. Now I tell you that the good shepherd is calling you; if you heed His voice, He will bring you into His fold, and you will be His sheep; He commands you to allow no harmful wolves among you so that you will not be destroyed.

63. And now I, Alma, command you in the words of the one who has commanded me to follow the teachings Ive given you.

64. I speak with authority to those of you in the church; for those who are not part of the church, I invite you: Come and be baptized in repentance so you can also partake of the tree of life.

### **Alma Chapter 6**

1. After Alma finished speaking to the members of the church in Zarahemla, he appointed priests and leaders by placing his hands on them, following Gods instructions, to lead and oversee the church.

2. Anyone who did not belong to the church but repented of their sins was baptized as a sign of their change and was welcomed into the church.

3. However, those who were members of the church but refused to repent of their wrongdoings and did not humble themselves before God specifically, those who were proud were cast out, and their names were removed, so they would not be counted among the righteous.

4. In this way, they began to organize the church in the city of Zarahemla.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

5. I want you to know that the message from God was available to everyone, and no one was excluded from the opportunity to gather and hear Gods word.
6. Still, God commanded His followers to meet frequently, and to fast and pray earnestly for the well-being of those who did not know Him.
7. After establishing these guidelines, Alma left the church in Zarahemla and went east across the river Sidon to the valley of Gideon, where a city had been built, named Gideon, after a man who was killed by Nehor.
8. Alma then went to teach the message of God to the church established in the valley of Gideon, following the truth revealed by his ancestors and the inspiration of prophecy within him, as well as the testimony of Jesus Christ, the Son of God, who would come to save His people from their sins, and by the divine authority he had received. And this is how it is recorded. Amen.

### **Alma Chapter 7**

1. The teachings of Alma that he shared with the people in Gideon, based on his own account.
2. This includes chapter 7.
3. Jesus will be born to MaryHe will overcome death and carry the sins of His peopleThose who repent, are baptized, and follow the commandments will have eternal lifeSin cannot enter the kingdom of GodHumility, faith, hope, and charity are necessary. Around 83 B.C.
4. My dear friends, since I have been allowed to come to you, I will speak to you in my own words; this is the first time I am talking directly to you since I have mostly been busy with the judgment seat and couldnt visit you.
5. I wouldnt be here now if the judgment seat hadnt been given to someone else, allowing me to come; the Lord has shown me mercy by allowing me to visit you.
6. I come with great hopes and a strong desire to find that you have humbled yourselves before God and have been continuously seeking His grace, and that you are blameless in His sight, unlike our brothers in Zarahemla who were in a terrible situation.
7. But I am grateful to God for allowing me to know that they have returned to His righteousness.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

8. I have faith, based on the Spirit of God that is within me, that I will find joy in you as well; however, I don't wish for my joy to come from the sorrows and hardships that I felt for our brothers in Zarahemla, since my joy regarding them was preceded by much suffering.

9. But I trust that you are not in the same disbelief as your brothers; I trust you are not consumed by pride; I trust you have not set your hearts on riches or worldly things; I trust you do not worship idols, but rather the true and living God, and that you look forward to the forgiveness of your sins with everlasting faith.

10. For I tell you there are many future events to come; but one thing matters more than all others soon the Redeemer will live and come among His people.

11. I do not say that He will come to us while living in His mortal body; for the Spirit has not revealed this to me. I do not know this for certain, but I do know that God has the power to fulfill His promises.

12. Yet, the Spirit has told me to cry out to you Repent, prepare for the Lord, and walk in His straight paths; for the kingdom of heaven is close, and the Son of God is about to come to the earth.

13. He will be born to Mary, in Jerusalem, which is our ancestral land; she is a virgin, a precious and chosen vessel, who will conceive by the power of the Holy Ghost and will bear the Son of God.

14. He will face pain, suffering, and temptations of every kind, fulfilling the prophecy that states He will take upon Himself the pains and sicknesses of His people.

15. He will take on death to free His people from its grasp; He will bear their weaknesses, so He can have compassion for them and understand their struggles.

16. The Spirit knows everything; nonetheless, the Son of God suffers in the flesh to take on the sins of His people and erase their wrongdoings through His power; and this is my witness.

17. I urge you to repent and be born again; for the Spirit says that unless you are born again, you cannot enter the kingdom of heaven; so come and be baptized as a sign of your repentance, to be cleansed from your sins, and to have faith in the Lamb of God, who takes away the sins of the world and can save you from all wrongdoing.

18. Yes, I invite you to come without fear, and to put aside every sin that binds you and leads you to

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

destruction; show God that you are willing to repent of your sins and enter into a promise to keep His commandments, confirming it to Him today by being baptized.

19. Whoever does this and keeps God's commandments afterwards will remember my words: he will have eternal life, as confirmed by the Holy Spirit within me.

20. Now, my dear friends, do you believe these things? I know you do, and I know because of the Spirit's witness within me. Because of your strong faith in these matters, my joy is great.

21. As I mentioned before, I've desired you not to be in the troubled state of your brothers, and I am happy to see that my desires have been fulfilled.

22. I can see that you are on the right paths; I can see you are walking the way that leads to God's kingdom; yes, you are making His paths straight.

23. I see that it has been made clear to you by His word that He cannot walk in crooked paths; He does not change what He says; He remains straight and true; therefore, His ways are eternally consistent.

24. He does not dwell in unholy places; nothing unclean can enter into the kingdom of God; thus, I tell you that in the last days, the unclean will remain in their unclean state.

25. I have shared these words with you to awaken your sense of duty to God, so you may walk blamelessly before Him and follow the holy path for which you have been accepted.

26. I want you to be humble, submissive, gentle, easy to approach; full of patience and enduring hardships; self-disciplined in everything; diligent in consistently keeping Gods commandments; asking for what you need, both spiritually and in daily matters; and always giving thanks to God for whatever He provides.

27. Ensure you have faith, hope, and charity, and with that, you will continually do good works.

28. May the Lord bless you and keep your lives pure, so that in the end, you may join Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, and holy prophets from the beginning of the world, with your purity being as theirs in the kingdom of heaven forever.

29. Now, my dear friends, I have spoken these things according to the Spirit within me; my soul rejoices greatly because of your attentiveness to my words.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

30. Now, may Gods peace be upon you, your homes, lands, flocks, herds, and everything you have, including your women and children, based on your faith and good actions, from this day onward forever. Thus, I have spoken. Amen.

### **Alma Chapter 8**

1. Alma returned from Gideon after teaching the people many important lessons that couldnt all be written down. He organized the church there like he had done in Zarahemla, and then he went back home to Zarahemla to rest from his work.
2. This marked the end of the ninth year of the judges' reign over the people of Nephi.
3. At the start of the tenth year of the judges' reign, Alma left and traveled to Melek, located west of the Sidon River, near the edge of the wilderness.
4. He began to teach the people in Melek according to Gods sacred order, which he had been called to uphold; he spread his teachings throughout the entire land of Melek.
5. People came to him from all around the borders of the wilderness area, and they were baptized all over the land.
6. After finishing his work in Melek, he left and journeyed three days north, eventually reaching a city called Ammonihah.
7. In Nephi, it was normal for people to name their lands, cities, and villages after the first person who settled there, and this was the case for Ammonihah.
8. When Alma arrived in Ammonihah, he started preaching Gods word to the people.
9. However, Satan had a strong influence over the hearts of the people in Ammonihah, so they refused to listen to what Alma had to say.
10. Despite this, Alma worked hard in prayer, seeking God's spirit to be poured out upon the people and hoping to baptize them for their repentance.
11. Nevertheless, the people hardened their hearts, telling him: "We know who you are; youre Alma, the high priest over the church youve set up in many places. We are not a part of your church, and we dont believe in

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

your silly traditions."

12. They continued: "Since we are not part of your church, you have no authority over us. Youve handed over the judgment-seat to Nephiah, so you are not our chief judge."

13. After saying this, they rejected all he said, insulted him, spat on him, and forced him out of their city. Alma then left to head towards another city called Aaron.

14. As he traveled there, weighed down by sorrow and facing much suffering because of the wickedness in Ammonihah, an angel of the Lord appeared to him.

15. The angel said: "You are blessed, Alma; lift up your head and be glad, because you have plenty of reasons to rejoice. You have been faithful in keeping Gods commandments since you received your first message from Him. I was the one who delivered that message to you."

16. Furthermore, the angel commanded him to return to Ammonihah and preach to the people again, warning them that unless they repent, God will destroy them.

17. The angel said: "Right now, they are working to take away the freedom of your people, which goes against the laws and commandments God has given them."

18. After hearing the message from the angel, Alma quickly returned to Ammonihah, entering the city through a different route, from the south side.

19. As he entered the city, he was hungry and asked a man, "Will you give some food to a humble servant of God?"

20. The man replied: "I am a Nephite, and I know you are a holy prophet of God because an angel said in a vision that you would receive help. Come to my house, and I will feed you; I believe you will be a blessing to me and my family."

21. The man welcomed Alma into his home; his name was Amulek. He offered him bread and meat to eat.

22. Alma ate the bread and felt satisfied. He blessed Amulek and his household and thanked God.

23. After finishing his meal, Alma said to Amulek: "I am Alma, the high priest over Gods church across the land."

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

24. He continued: "I have been called to preach Gods word to this people, guided by the spirit of revelation and prophecy. When I came here, they rejected me and kicked me out, and I was ready to leave this land for good."

25. "But I have been commanded to return and prophesy to them, calling them out for their wrongdoings."

26. "And now, Amulek, because you have taken care of me and welcomed me in, you are blessed; I was hungry because I hadn't eaten for many days."

27. Alma stayed with Amulek for many days before he began to preach to the people.

28. Meanwhile, the people continued to become more deeply entrenched in their sins.

29. God's word came to Alma, telling him: "Go, and also instruct my servant Amulek to go prophesy to this people, saying Repent! For the Lord says, if you do not repent, I will come down in my anger; my anger will not be held back."

30. So Alma and Amulek went forth among the people to share Gods message with them, and they were filled with the Holy Ghost.

31. They were given such power that no prison could hold them, nor could anyone kill them; however, they did not use their power until they were imprisoned. This was so the Lord could demonstrate His power through them.

32. Then they went out and began to preach and prophesy to the people, guided by the spirit and authority God had given them.

## **Alma Chapter 9**

1. These are the words of Alma and Amulek that were spoken to the people in the land of Ammonihah. They were imprisoned but miraculously freed by God's power, as recorded by Alma.

2. This account includes chapters up to 14.

3. Alma tells the people of Ammonihah to turn away from their sins. The Lord will show mercy to the Lamanites in the last days. If the Nephites reject the light, they will face destruction from the Lamanites. The Son of God will soon come to save those who repent, are baptized, and have faith in Him. About 82 B.C.



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

4. Once again, I, Alma, was instructed by God to take Amulek and go preach to the people of Ammonihah. As I started to speak to them, they began to argue with me, asking:

5. Who are you? Do you think we should trust the words of just one man, even if he claims the world is going to end?

6. They didn't understand what they were saying because they didn't realize that the world would indeed come to an end.

7. They also insisted, "We won't believe you if you claim this great city will be destroyed in a single day."

8. They didn't understand God's ability to perform amazing acts, as they were stubborn and resistant.

9. They questioned, "Who is God? Why would He only send one man to tell us about such great and marvelous events?"

10. They tried to grab me, but they couldn't. I stood firm and confidently declared to them:

11. Look, you wicked and corrupt generation, how have you ignored the teachings of your ancestors? You have quickly forgotten God's commandments.

12. Don't you remember how our father, Lehi, was brought out of Jerusalem by God's hand? Don't you remember how they were guided through the wilderness?

13. Have you forgotten how many times He saved our ancestors from their enemies and protected them from destruction, even from their own family?

14. If it weren't for His unmatched power, mercy, and patience, we would have been wiped off the earth a long time ago, maybe even ending up in a state of endless suffering.

15. Listen, I'm telling you that God commands you to repent; if you don't, you won't inherit His kingdom. But that's not all. He commands you to repent, or He will completely destroy you from the earth; yes, He will visit you in His anger, and He won't hold back.

16. Do you not remember what He told Lehi: If you keep My commandments, you will prosper in the land? And again, if you don't keep My commandments, you will be cut off from My presence.

17. I want you to recall that since the Lamanites haven't followed God's commandments, they have been cut

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

off from Him. We see the truth of God's word in this they have been separated from Him since their wrongdoing began.

18. However, I tell you, it will be easier for them on judgment day than for you, if you continue in your sins. It will also be easier for them in this life than for you, unless you repent.

19. Many blessings are promised to the Lamanites; their ancestors traditions have kept them in ignorance. Therefore, the Lord will have mercy on them and allow them to exist in the land longer.

20. They will eventually come to believe in His word and recognize that their ancestors' traditions are wrong; many of them will be saved because the Lord will show mercy to anyone who calls on His name.

21. But I say to you, if you continue in your sins, your time in this land will come to an end; the Lamanites will be sent against you; if you do not repent, they will come unexpectedly, bringing complete destruction, driven by God's fierce anger.

22. God will not allow you to continue living in your sins and destroy His people. I tell you, He would prefer that the Lamanites destroy all the Nephites, if it means they would fall into sin and wrongdoing after receiving so much knowledge from the Lord;

23. Yes, after being such a favored people of the Lord; after being blessed above all other nations; after having all things revealed to them as per their desires and prayers regarding what has been, what is, and what is to come;

24. Having been visited by God's Spirit; having spoken with angels and heard from the Lord; having received the spirit of prophecy and revelation, along with many gifts, including speaking in tongues, preaching, receiving the Holy Ghost, and translation;

25. Yes, after being brought out of Jerusalem by the Lord; after being saved from famine and sickness, as well as all kinds of diseases; after growing strong in battle to avoid destruction; after being freed from bondage time after time, and being preserved until now; they have become prosperous and rich in many things

26. Now I say to you, if this people, who have received so many blessings from the Lord, were to act against the knowledge and guidance they have, it would be far worse for them than for the Lamanites.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

27. The Lords promises are for the Lamanites, but if you sin, they do not apply to you; for has the Lord not explicitly promised that if you rebel against Him, you will be utterly destroyed from the earth?

28. And now, to prevent your destruction, God has sent His angel to visit many of His people, telling them they must go out and boldly proclaim to this people, saying: Repent, for the kingdom of heaven is close!

29. And soon the Son of God will come in His glory; His glory will be that of the Only Begotten of the Father, filled with grace, justice, and truth, overflowing with patience, mercy, and long-suffering, ready to hear His people's cries and respond to their prayers.

30. Look, He comes to redeem those who will be baptized in repentance and have faith in His name.

31. So, prepare the way for the Lord, for the time is near when everyone will receive the consequences of their actions, depending on whether they have been righteous or evil. If they have been good, they will gain salvation through Jesus Christ; if they have been wicked, they will face destruction as per the devil's grasp.

32. Now behold, this is the angels voice, calling out to the people.

33. And now, dear brothers, you are my kin, deserving of love, and you should produce good works that show genuine repentance, realizing that your hearts have been hardened against Gods word, and that you are lost and fallen.

34. When I, Alma, said these things, the people became angry with me because I called them hard-hearted and stubborn.

35. They were also upset because I referred to them as lost and fallen, and they sought to seize me and throw me into prison.

36. But the Lord did not allow them to take me and imprison me at that moment.

37. Then, Amulek came forward and began to preach to them too. While not all of Amuleks words are recorded, a portion of his teachings can be found in this book.

## **Alma Chapter 10**

1. Now these are the words that Amulek preached to the people living in Ammonihah:

2. I am Amulek; my father was Giddonah, who was a son of Ishmael, a descendant of Aminadi, and it was

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

Aminadi who interpreted the writing on the temple wall that was written by God's hand.

3. Aminadi was a descendant of Nephi, the son of Lehi, who left Jerusalem, a descendant of Manasseh, the son of Joseph who was sold into Egypt by his brothers.

4. And look, I have a good reputation among everyone who knows me; indeed, I have many relatives and friends, and I have gained considerable wealth through my hard work.

5. Yet, despite all of this, I never really understood the ways of the Lord or his mysteries and incredible power. I thought I had not known much about these things; however, I was wrong, because I have seen a lot of his mysteries and his incredible power, especially in saving the lives of these people.

6. Still, I hardened my heart, because I had been called many times but did not listen; I knew about these things, but refused to understand them; as a result, I continued to rebel against God, in the wickedness of my heart, until the fourth day of the seventh month in the tenth year of the judges' reign.

7. While I was traveling to see a close relative, behold, an angel of the Lord appeared to me and said: Amulek, go back home, because you will feed a prophet of the Lord; yes, a holy man, chosen by God; because he has fasted many days for the sins of this people, and he is hungry, and you will invite him into your home and feed him, and he will bless you and your household; and the Lord's blessing will be upon you and your family.

8. And I obeyed the angel and returned home. While going there, I encountered the man the angel told me to welcome into my home and it was the same man who has been talking to you about the things of God.

9. And the angel told me that he is a holy man; therefore, I know he is holy because an angel of God said so.

10. Again, I know that what he has testified about is true; for I assure you, as the Lord lives, he has sent his angel to reveal these things to me; and this has happened while Alma was living in my house.

11. For indeed, he has blessed my home, he has blessed me, my wives, my children, my father, and my relatives; yes, he has blessed all my family, and the blessing of the Lord has been upon us according to what he said.

12. And now, after Amulek spoke these words, the people were amazed, seeing that more than one person testified about what they were accused of, and also about future events according to the spirit of prophecy

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

within them.

13. However, some among them wished to question them cunningly so they could trap them in their words, to find evidence against them, to send them to their judges to be judged according to the law, and to have them killed or imprisoned based on whatever crimes they could fabricate against them.

14. These men who sought to destroy them were lawyers, hired or appointed by the people to enforce the law during trials of crimes committed by the people in front of the judges.

15. These lawyers were educated in various arts and deceptions of the people; this was to ensure they were skilled in their profession.

16. And it came to pass that they began to question Amulek, hoping to catch him contradicting himself.

17. However, they did not realize that Amulek was aware of their schemes. As they questioned him, he sensed their thoughts, and he said to them: O you wicked and dishonest generation, you lawyers and hypocrites, you are laying the groundwork for the devil, creating traps and snares to catch God's holy ones.

18. You are trying to distort the paths of the righteous and bring God's wrath upon yourselves, leading to the total destruction of this people.

19. Yes, Mosiah, our last king, wisely said when he was about to hand over the kingdom, having no one to pass it to, that the people should govern themselveshe said that if the time came when the voice of the people chose sin, meaning if they fell into wrongdoing, they would be ready for destruction.

20. And now I tell you that the Lord is well aware of your wrongdoings; he calls out to this people, through his angels: Repent, repent, for heavens kingdom is near.

21. Yes, he proclaims through his angels that: I will come among my people, bringing fairness and justice.

22. And I tell you that without the prayers of the righteous who are in the land, you would quickly face complete destruction; but it would not be by a flood like in Noahs time, but by famine, disease, and war.

23. It is because of the prayers of the righteous that you are being spared; however, if you expel the righteous from among you, then the Lord will not hold back his hand; in his fierce anger, he will come against you, and you will face famine, disease, and war; the time is coming soon unless you repent.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

24. Now it happened that the people became angrier with Amulek, shouting: This man speaks against our just laws and the wise lawyers we have chosen.

25. But Amulek raised his hand and cried out even louder, saying: O you wicked and perverse generation, how has Satan taken such strong control over your hearts? Why do you surrender yourselves to him so he can blind your eyes, preventing you from understanding the truth of the words spoken to you?

26. Look, have I spoken against your law? You don't understand; you claim I have spoken against your law, but I haven't; I have only spoken in favor of your law, which condemns you.

27. Now I declare to you that the foundation of this people's destruction is starting to be laid by the unrighteousness of your lawyers and judges.

28. And when Amulek finished speaking, the people shouted against him, saying: Now we know this man is a child of the devil, because he has lied to us; he has spoken against our law. And now he says he has not spoken against it.

29. And again, he has insulted our lawyers and judges.

30. Then the lawyers decided to remember these things against him.

31. Among them was one named Zeezrom. He was the first to accuse Amulek and Alma, being one of the most skilled among them, often dealing with the people.

32. The goal of these lawyers was to profit; and they earned their gain through their work.

## **Alma Chapter 11**

1. The law of Mosiah stated that every judge should be paid for the time they worked judging others.

2. If someone owed money to another person and refused to pay, they could be taken to the judge. The judge would call for officers to ensure the person appeared before him, and would then make a determination based on the law and evidence presented. The debtor would be forced to pay what they owed, face punishment, or be cast out as a thief.

3. Judges were paid based on their time one gold sene for a day, or one silver sene, which holds the same value. This was established by the law.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

4. The Nephites had their own names for gold and silver coins based on their value, and they didnt measure wealth like the Jews in Jerusalem. They adapted their system according to what made sense for their people from one generation to the next, lasting until the judges were established by King Mosiah.
5. The small denominations included a gold senine, seon, shum, and limnah.
6. For silver, there were the senum, amnor, ezrom, and onti.
7. A silver senum was worth one gold senine, equivalent to a measure of barley or other types of grain.
8. A seon of gold was worth twice as much as a senine.
9. A shum of gold was worth twice a seon.
10. A limnah of gold was the highest value of them all.
11. An amnor of silver was worth two senums.
12. An ezrom of silver was worth four senums.
13. An onti was the most valuable of them all.
14. The smaller units were as follows:
15. A shiblon was half a senum, which would equal half a measure of barley.
16. A shiblum was half a shiblon.
17. A leah was half a shiblum.
18. These were the denominations according to their system.
19. An antion of gold was equivalent to three shiblons.
20. Their aim was to profit from their positions, so they incited the public to riots and disturbances to increase their workloads and earn more money from the cases they oversaw. Thus, they turned the people against Alma and Amulek.
21. Zeezrom questioned Amulek, asking if he could answer a few of his questions. Zeezrom was skilled in deceit and wanted to undermine goodness, and he urged Amulek to answer him.
22. Amulek replied, Yes, as long as it aligns with the Spirit of the Lord within me; I wont say anything against His Spirit. Zeezrom then offered Amulek six onties of silver if he would deny the existence of God.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

23. Amulek responded, Oh, child of hell, why are you tempting me? Dont you know that the righteous do not give in to such temptations?

24. Do you believe there is no God? I tell you, no; you know there is a God, but you love money more than Him.

25. And now, you have lied to God in front of me. You showed me the six onties, which you considered valuable, and wanted me to deny the living God just so you could find a reason to destroy me. Now, for this great evil, you will receive your punishment.

26. Zeezrom questioned, So you assert there is a true and living God?

27. Amulek confirmed, Yes, there is a true and living God.

28. Zeezrom asked, Is there more than one God?

29. Amulek answered, No.

30. Zeezrom pressed further, How do you know these things?

31. Amulek said, An angel has revealed them to me.

32. Then Zeezrom asked again, Who is the one who will come? Is it the Son of God?

33. Amulek replied, Yes.

34. Zeezrom continued, Will He save His people despite their sins? Amulek replied, I tell you, He will not, for He cannot go against His own word.

35. Zeezrom then told the people, Remember what he said; he claims theres only one God, yet he says the Son of God will come but wont save His people, as if he has the right to question God.

36. Amulek affirmed, Youve lied; you say I act like I have the authority to command God because I said He cannot save His people in their sins.

37. I repeat, He cannot save them in their sins; I cannot deny His word, which states that no unclean thing can inherit the kingdom of heaven. So how can you be saved unless you enter the kingdom of heaven? Therefore, you cannot be saved while remaining in your sins.

38. Zeezrom asked again, Is the Son of God the Eternal Father?



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

39. Amulek replied, Yes, He is the Eternal Father of heaven and earth and everything in them; He is the beginning and the end, the first and the last.

40. He will come into the world to redeem His people and bears the transgressions of those who believe in Him; they will receive eternal life, and salvation comes to no one else.

41. So, the wicked will remain as if no redemption was made except for the release from physical death; because the day will come when everyone will rise from the dead and stand before God, being judged based on their actions.

42. There is a death called temporal death; the death of Christ will release everyone from this temporal death, allowing them to be raised from it.

43. The spirit and body will be rejoined perfectly; every part will be restored to its original state, just like we are now; and we will stand before God, aware of everything we have done and remembering our wrongdoings.

44. Restoration will come for all, for the young and the old, the enslaved and the free, men and women, both the wicked and the righteous; not even a single hair on their heads will be lost; everything will be perfectly restored to how it was before, and they will present themselves before Christ, God the Father, and the Holy Spirit to be judged on their deeds, whether good or bad.

45. I have discussed the death of the mortal body and the resurrection of the mortal body. I tell you that this mortal body will be raised to an immortal body, meaning from death, transitioning from the first death to life, so they can die no more; their spirits will unite with their bodies, never to be separated; this transformation will make them spiritual and immortal, free from corruption.

46. When Amulek finished speaking, the people were once more astonished, and Zeezrom began to tremble. This concluded Amulek's words, which is all I have recorded.

## **Alma Chapter 12**

1. Alma sees that Amulek has silenced Zeezrom, who feels guilty because Amulek revealed his lies. Realizing his wrongdoing, Zeezrom begins to tremble. Alma speaks to him, supporting Amulek's words and explaining further, going beyond what Amulek had shared.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

2. The crowd listens closely to Almas words because there are many gathered.
3. Zeezrom, you have been exposed for your deceit and craftiness. You didnt just lie to people, but to God as well; He knows your every thought, and His Spirit makes them known to us.
4. Your plan was cunning, similar to the devils, trying to turn this people against us, to mock us and push us away.
5. This was a trap set by your enemy, who has used his power over you. I want everyone to understand that what Im saying to you applies to all.
6. I declare that this was a snare of the adversary, designed to ensnare this people, to make you all submit to him, trapping you with his chains, leading you to everlasting ruin through his power.
7. After hearing this, Zeezrom trembled even more, realizing the power of God. He understood that Alma and Amulek knew him well; he felt they could see his deepest thoughts because they had the gift of prophecy.
8. Curious, Zeezrom began to ask them questions to understand more about Gods kingdom. He asked Alma about Amuleks mention of resurrection, questioning what it means that everyone will rise from the deadboth the righteous and the wickedand face judgment for their actions.
9. Alma explained that many are able to understand Gods mysteries, but they are commanded not to share too much, only what God grants them based on how attentively people listen to Him.
10. Therefore, those who harden their hearts receive less understanding. On the other hand, those who remain open-hearted will gain deeper insights until they fully understand Gods mysteries.
11. Those who refuse to soften their hearts will receive limited knowledge about His mysteries and eventually fall under the devils influence, led to destruction. This is what is meant by being bound by the chains of hell.
12. Amulek has clearly explained death and what it means to leave this mortal life for immortality, facing Gods judgment based on our actions.
13. If our hearts are hardenedif we reject the Word to the point that its not found within usour situation will be terrible; we will be condemned.
14. Our words and actions will condemn us; no one will be found innocent. Our thoughts will also accuse us,

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

and in this dreadful state, we wont be able to face God. Instead, we would wish for the mountains to fall on us to hide us from His sight.

15. But this cannot happen; we must stand before Him in His glory, power, and majesty, and admit to our eternal disgrace that His judgments are fair, that He is righteous in everything He does, and that He is compassionate to all people. He has the power to save anyone who believes in Him and truly repents.

16. Be aware that there will come a death a second death, which is spiritual; this means that anyone who dies in sin, like a physical death, will also face a spiritual death, or death concerning righteousness.

17. This is when their suffering will feel like a never-ending fire; they will be bound to everlasting destruction as a result of Satans power over them.

18. Then, I tell you, they will seem as if no redemption ever occurred because they will not be saved according to Gods justice. They cannot escape since there will be no further corruption.

19. When Alma finished speaking, the people were left in shock.

20. But one of their leaders, named Antionah, approached him and asked: What does it mean to rise from the dead and change from a mortal to an immortal state, when the soul can never die?

21. He cited the scripture about God placing cherubim and a flaming sword at the entrance to Eden to prevent Adam and Eve from eating from the tree of life and living forever; this seems to indicate they had no chance to live eternally.

22. Alma replied, saying he was about to explain this. Adam fell because he ate the forbidden fruit as commanded by God; as a result, all humans became lost and fallen.

23. If Adam had eaten from the tree of life then, there would have been no death, which would make God a liar, as He had said: If you eat, you will surely die.

24. Death, which Amulek spoke of, is temporal death; however, there is a time given to man for repentance; thus, this life serves as a testing ground to prepare to meet God and for the eternal state after resurrection.

25. Without the plan of redemption that has been in place since the beginning, resurrection wouldnt exist; but there is this plan in place that will bring forth resurrection.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

26. If our first parents had eaten from the tree of life, they would have been forever miserable, having no chance to prepare; this would have ruined Gods plan and made His words meaningless.

27. However, this is not the case; men are destined to die, and after death, they face judgmentthe final judgment just mentioned.

28. After God decreed these things for humanity, He decided that people must understand what He had determined for them.

29. So, He sent angels to speak with them, allowing them to see His glory.

30. From that moment, they began to call upon His name; thus, God interacted with humanity and shared His plan of redemption, which was prepared from the start. He revealed this according to their faith, repentance, and righteous actions.

31. Therefore, He provided commandments to people after they had first disobeyed the initial commands, becoming like gods and gaining knowledge of good and evil, placing themselves in a position to choose to act, either to do good or evil.

32. Hence, God gave them commandments after revealing His plan of redemption, warning them not to do wrong, as the consequence would be spiritual deatha perpetual separation from righteousness; for on those who do wrong, God's plan of redemption holds no power, as justice cannot be nullified by His supreme goodness.

33. But God called upon humanity in the name of His Son (which is part of the redemptive plan), saying: If you repent and do not harden your hearts, I will show you mercy through my Only Begotten Son.

34. So, anyone who repents without hardening their heart will receive mercy through my Only Begotten Son, resulting in the forgiveness of their sins, and these individuals will find peace.

35. But anyone who hardens their heart and continues in wrongdoing will not be allowed to find that peace.

36. Now, my brothers, if you harden your hearts, you wont enter Gods rest; your sins provoke His anger so that He may unleash His wrath upon you as happened before, leading to your eternal destruction according to His words, resulting in a final death similar to the initial one.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

37. And now, my brothers, since we know these truths, let's repent and avoid hardening our hearts so we do not provoke God into bringing down His wrath upon us through His later commandments. Let's strive to enter the peace of God, which is prepared according to His promises.

### **Alma Chapter 13**

1. People are chosen as high priests due to their great faith and good actions. They are meant to teach the commandments. Through living righteously, they are purified and find peace with the Lord. Melchizedek was one of those high priests. Angels are spreading joyful news everywhere, announcing the actual arrival of Christ.

2. Again, my friends, I want you to think about the time when the Lord gave these commandments to His children. Remember, the Lord appointed priests according to His sacred order, which follows the order of His Son, to teach these important truths to the people.

3. These priests were appointed in a way that helped the people know how to look to His Son for salvation.

4. This is how they were appointed: chosen and prepared since the beginning of time, according to God's knowledge in advance. They were chosen because of their deep faith and good deeds. Initially, they were free to choose good or evil; since they chose good and showed great faith, they were called with a special calling, prepared with a form of redemption.

5. Thus, they were called to this sacred role because of their faith, while others rejected the Spirit of God because of their stubborn hearts and unseeing minds. If this had not been the case, they could have enjoyed the same blessings as their peers.

6. In essence, they started on equal footing with their peers; this sacred calling was prepared from the beginning of time for those who would not harden their hearts, all through the atonement of the Only Begotten Son, who was prepared in this way.

7. And so, being called to this sacred role and set apart for the high priesthood of God's holy order, they are to teach His commandments to mankind so that they, too, can find rest in Him.

8. This high priesthood follows the order of His Son, which has existed since the foundation of the world; it is

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

eternal, with no beginning or end, prepared for all time according to God's foresight.

9. Now, they were set apart in this way called to a holy role and established through a holy ordinance, taking on the high priesthood of the sacred order, which is eternal.

10. Thus, they become high priests forever after the order of the Son, the Only Begotten of the Father, who has no beginning or end, and who embodies grace, fairness, and truth. And that is the truth. Amen.

11. As I mentioned regarding this sacred order, many were appointed and became high priests of God because of their extraordinary faith, repentance, and righteousness, as they chose to repent and do good instead of perishing.

12. So, they were called to this sacred order, made holy, and their garments were cleaned through the blood of the Lamb.

13. After being purified by the Holy Spirit and having their garments made clean, standing pure and without blemish before God, they could not stand to look at sin except with disgust; and numerous, many individuals were made pure and found rest in the Lord, their God.

14. Now, my friends, I urge you to humble yourselves before God and produce evidence suitable for repentance, so that you can also find that rest.

15. Yes, humble yourselves like the people in Melchizedek's time, who was also a high priest following this same order, and who took on the high priesthood forever.

16. It was this same Melchizedek who received tithes from Abraham; indeed, our ancestor Abraham gave him one-tenth of everything he had.

17. These ordinances were given so that people could look forward to the Son of God, representing His order. This way, they might seek His forgiveness for their sins and find rest in the Lord.

18. Melchizedek was a king in Salem; his people had become strong in sin and wrongdoing; they had all gone astray, filled with all kinds of evil.

19. However, Melchizedek had great faith and received the high priesthood according to God's holy order. He preached repentance to his people, and behold, they repented. In his days, Melchizedek established peace in

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

the land, therefore he was known as the prince of peace, as he ruled in Salem under his father.

20. Now, there had been many before him and many after him, but none were greater; thus, they specifically mention him more than others.

21. I dont need to go into detail; what I have shared should be enough. Look, the scriptures are before you; if you twist them, it will lead to your own ruin.

22. Now, after Alma told them these things, he reached out his hand to them and proclaimed loudly: Now is the time to repent because the day of salvation is approaching.

23. Indeed, the voice of the Lord, through angels, is declaring this to all nations, sharing joyful news so that they may rejoice greatly. This good news is proclaimed among all His people, even to those scattered across the earth, and that is how it has reached us.

24. It has been clearly revealed to us, so we can understand without error because we are wanderers in a foreign land; thus, we are very fortunate to have this good news declared to us in all areas of our community.

25. For behold, angels are proclaiming it to many right now in our land; this is to prepare the hearts of humanity to receive His word when He comes in glory.

26. And now we are only waiting to hear the joyful announcement of His coming from the angels; for the time is coming, and we do not know how soon. I wish it could happen in my lifetime; however, whether it comes sooner or later, I will rejoice in it.

27. And it will be announced to righteous and holy men by angels at the time of His arrival, fulfilling the words of our ancestors about Him, which aligns with the spirit of prophecy that was in them.

28. Now, my friends, I sincerely wish, with deep concern even to the point of pain, that you would listen to my words, turn from your sins, and not delay your repentance;

29. Instead, I hope you would humble yourselves before the Lord, call upon His holy name, and keep watch and pray constantly, so you can resist temptations you can handle, being guided by the Holy Spirit, becoming humble, gentle, submissive, patient, loving, and enduring.

30. Have faith in the Lord; hold on to the hope of receiving eternal life; keep the love of God in your hearts so

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

that you may be lifted up at the end and find rest with Him.

31. May the Lord help you repent, so you don't invoke His anger upon yourselves, so you aren't trapped by the chains of hell and do not face the second death.

32. And Alma spoke many more things to the people that are not recorded in this book.

### **Alma Chapter 14**

1. After he finished speaking to the crowd, many of them believed his words, began to change their ways, and started looking into the scriptures.

2. However, most of them were eager to harm Alma and Amulek; they were furious with Alma for his clear and direct words to Zeezrom and accused Amulek of lying, as well as speaking against their laws, lawyers, and judges.

3. They became angry with Alma and Amulek because they clearly condemned the people's wickedness, and they plotted to get rid of them secretly.

4. But they didn't manage to keep it quiet; instead, they tied them up with strong ropes and brought them before the main judge of the land.

5. The people came forward to accuse them claiming that they spoke against the law, and against the judges and lawyers, and that they declared there was only one God who would send His Son among them but would not save them; and they made many other accusations against Alma and Amulek. This took place in front of the chief judge.

6. Zeezrom was amazed by what was being said, and he recognized the confusion he had caused among the people with his lies. Guilt began to weigh heavily on him, and he felt tormented by the realization of his wrongdoing.

7. In that moment, he cried out to the people, admitting his guilt and affirming that Alma and Amulek were innocent before God. From then on, he pleaded for their sake, but they insulted him, asking if he was possessed by a devil. They spat on him, expelled him from their midst, and did the same to anyone who believed in what Alma and Amulek had said, throwing stones at them.



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

8. They gathered their wives and children and anyone who believed or had been taught to believe in Gods word, and ordered them to be thrown into the fire. They even took the sacred records that contained their holy scriptures and threw those into the fire as well, intending to burn and destroy them.

9. Then they took Alma and Amulek to the place of execution so they could witness the burning of those who were consumed in the flames.

10. When Amulek saw the suffering of the women and children who were burning, it hurt him deeply; he said to Alma: How can we stand by and watch this terrible sight? Lets reach out with the power of God within us to save them from the fire.

11. But Alma replied: The Spirit is not allowing me to act; the Lord is taking them to Himself in glory. He allows this to happen to them according to the hardness of the people's hearts, so that His judgments against them will be justified, and the blood of the innocent will testify against them mightily at the last judgment.

12. Amulek then said to Alma: What if they decide to burn us too?

13. Alma answered: Whatever the Lord decides is fine. However, our mission is not complete yet, so they wont burn us.

14. After the bodies of those cast into the fire were consumed, along with the records, the chief judge stood before Alma and Amulek, who were still bound, and struck them on the cheek, asking if they would preach again that the people would be thrown into eternal punishment after what they had witnessed.

15. He said: You see that you were unable to save those cast into the fire; God hasnt saved them either because they held your faith. He struck them again and asked: What do you have to say for yourselves?

16. This judge was like Nehor, who had killed Gideon.

17. Alma and Amulek said nothing in response, so he struck them again and ordered that they be sent to prison.

18. After three days in prison, many lawyers, judges, priests, and teachers from Nehor's group came to see them, asking many questions, but they remained silent.

19. Then the judge confronted them, asking: Why dont you respond to what the people say? Dont you know I

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

can hand you over to the flames? He insisted that they speak; still, they said nothing.

20. The next day, they returned, and the judge struck them again. Many others also came and hit them, demanding: Will you judge the people again and condemn our law? If you have such great power, why can't you save yourselves?

21. They mocked Alma and Amulek in various ways, taunting them and expressing fear about their own damnation.

22. For many days, they continued to insult them and withheld food and water, leaving them to suffer in hunger and thirst. They also stripped them of their clothes, leaving them naked, as they were tightly bound and imprisoned.

23. After enduring this for many days, on the twelfth day of the tenth month in the tenth year of the judges reign over the Nephites, the chief judge of Ammonihah and many of his teachers and lawyers came to the prison where Alma and Amulek were still bound.

24. The chief judge confronted them again, struck them, and said: If you truly have God's power, free yourselves from these binds, and then we will believe that the Lord will destroy this people as you claim.

25. They all beat them while saying the same words, until the last person had spoken. At that moment, the power of God came upon Alma and Amulek, and they stood up on their feet.

26. Then Alma called out: How long must we endure these great sufferings, O Lord? Please give us strength according to our faith in Christ, even to the point of deliverance. They broke the cords that held them, and when the people saw this, fear overtook them, causing them to flee.

27. So great was their fear that they fell to the ground and couldn't reach the prison's exit; the ground shook violently, and the prison walls collapsed, killing the chief judge, the lawyers, priests, and teachers who had abused Alma and Amulek.

28. Alma and Amulek emerged from the prison unharmed, for the Lord had given them strength based on their faith in Christ. They walked out of the prison and were free from their bonds; the prison walls had fallen, and everyone inside, except for Alma and Amulek, perished. They then went straight into the city.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

29. When the crowd heard the loud noise, they rushed together in large numbers to find out what had happened. When they saw Alma and Amulek coming out of the ruins of the prison, they were filled with fear and ran away from them like a mother goat flees from two lions; thus, they fled from Alma and Amulek.

### **Alma Chapter 15**

1. Alma and Amulek were told to leave the city, so they went to the land of Sidom and found the people who had fled from Ammonihah. These people had been cast out and mistreated for believing in Alma's teachings.
2. They shared with the people everything that had happened to their families and themselves, along with their experiences of being saved.
3. At the same time, Zeezrom was very ill in Sidom due to a high fever caused by his troubled mind, which was filled with guilt for his wickedness. He feared that Alma and Amulek were dead because of his sins, and this filled him with torment.
4. When he learned that Alma and Amulek were in Sidom, he felt hopeful and quickly sent for them, asking them to come to him.
5. Alma and Amulek went right away to Zeezrom's house, where they found him on his sickbed, suffering from a fever and troubled by guilt. When Zeezrom saw them, he reached out and pleaded with them to heal him.
6. Alma asked Zeezrom if he believed in the healing power of Christ.
7. Zeezrom replied that he believed everything that Alma had taught him.
8. Alma then told him that if he believed in Christ's redemption, he could be healed.
9. Zeezrom confirmed that he believed in what Alma had said.
10. Alma then prayed to the Lord, asking for mercy and healing for Zeezrom, according to his faith in Christ.
11. After Alma prayed, Zeezrom stood up and began to walk, which amazed everyone around, and news of this miracle spread throughout Sidom.
12. Alma baptized Zeezrom in the name of the Lord, and from that moment on, Zeezrom began preaching to the people.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

13. Alma founded a church in Sidom and appointed priests and teachers to baptize anyone who wanted to be baptized.

14. Many people came from the surrounding areas and got baptized.

15. In contrast, the people in Ammonihah remained stubborn and unrepentant, attributing Alma and Amulek's power to the devil. They followed the teachings of Nehor and rejected repentance.

16. Alma and Amulek moved on, with Amulek having given up all his wealth and possessions in Ammonihah for the sake of God's word, having been shunned by his friends, family, and father.

17. After establishing the church in Sidom, Alma noticed the people starting to repent and humble themselves before God. They assembled regularly to worship at their sanctuaries, praying for deliverance from evil and death.

18. Seeing all these changes, Alma took Amulek to the land of Zarahemla, brought him to his home, and cared for him during his struggles, encouraging him in the Lord.

19. This concluded the tenth year of the judges' reign over the Nephite people.

### **Alma Chapter 16**

1. In the eleventh year of the judges' rule over the Nephite people, on the fifth day of the second month, there had been a lot of peace in the land of Zarahemla, with no wars or disputes for several years. However, on that day, a cry for war was heard throughout the land.

2. The armies of the Lamanites had approached from the wilderness and entered the borders of the land, reaching the city of Ammonihah, where they began killing the people and destroying the city.

3. Before the Nephites could gather enough soldiers to fight back, the Lamanites had already killed the people in Ammonihah and some in the surrounding area, taking others captive and leading them into the wilderness.

4. The Nephites were eager to rescue their captured friends from the wilderness.

5. The chief captain of the Nephite armies, Zoram (who had two sons named Lehi and Aha), went to Alma, the high priest of the church, after hearing about his prophetic abilities. They asked him where they should go in the wilderness to find their fellow citizens taken captive by the Lamanites.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

6. Alma sought guidance from the Lord regarding their request. He returned and told them that the Lamanites would cross the river Sidon in the southern wilderness, beyond the borders of the land of Manti. He instructed them to meet the Lamanites east of the river Sidon, where the Lord would help them rescue their captured brethren.

7. Zoram and his sons then crossed the river Sidon with their armies, continuing into the southern wilderness east of the river.

8. They encountered the Lamanite armies, who were scattered and forced back into the wilderness. They rescued their captured brethren; none were lost during this encounter. The rescued individuals were returned to their own lands.

9. Thus, the eleventh year of the judges concluded, with the Lamanites driven out and the city of Ammonihah completely destroyed, leaving every single Ammonihahite dead, despite their belief that their city could never be destroyed.

10. In just one day, it became desolate; the remains were devoured by dogs and wild animals from the wilderness.

11. Eventually, the bodies were piled up on the ground and covered with a light layer of earth. The smell of decay was so overwhelming that the people avoided the land of Ammonihah for many years, which was thereafter known as the Desolation of Nehors, named after the slain followers of Nehor, leaving the land empty.

12. The Lamanites did not attack the Nephites again until the fourteenth year of the judges' reign. For three years, the Nephite people lived in peace.

13. Alma and Amulek began preaching repentance to the people in their temples, sanctuaries, and synagogues, which were built in the Jewish tradition.

14. They shared Gods word with anyone willing to listen, showing no favoritism.

15. Alma, Amulek, and many others chosen for this task went throughout the land to preach, and the church became widely established among the Nephites.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

16. There were no disparities among them, as the Lord poured out His Spirit across the land, preparing people's hearts and minds to receive the teachings that would be given at His coming.

17. This preparation was so that they would not turn away from the word, nor remain skeptical and face destruction, but instead welcome the teachings with joy and become connected to the true source of life, entering into the rest provided by God.

18. The priests who traveled among the people preached against lying, deceit, envy, conflict, malice, insults, theft, robbery, violence, adultery, and all other forms of wickedness, insisting that these behaviors were wrong.

19. They spoke of things that would happen soon, including the coming of the Son of God, his suffering and death, and the resurrection of the dead.

20. Many people asked about where the Son of God would eventually come, and they were taught that He would appear to them after His resurrection; the people received this news with great happiness.

21. Now, after the church had been firmly established across the land, having triumphed over evil with the pure word of God being shared everywhere and blessings poured upon the people, the fourteenth year of the judges reign among the Nephites came to an end.

### **Alma Chapter 17**

1. A story about the sons of Mosiah, who gave up their royal rights for the message of God, and traveled to the land of Nephi to teach the Lamanites; detailing their hardships and how they were rescued based on Alma's records.

2. Including chapters up to 27.

3. The sons of Mosiah were filled with the spirit of prophecy and revelation. Each of them went their own way to share God's word with the Lamanites. Ammon traveled to the land of Ishmael and became a servant to King Lamoni. Ammon protected the king's sheep and defeated his enemies at the water of Sebus. Verses 13 are around 77 B.C.; verse 4 is around 91 B.C.; and verses 53-9 are around 91 B.C.

4. As Alma was traveling south from the land of Gideon toward the land of Manti, he was surprised to

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

encounter the sons of Mosiah on their way to Zarahemla.

5. These sons of Mosiah had been with Alma when the angel first came to him; so Alma was extremely happy to see his brothers, and what made him even happier was that they were still his brothers in faith; indeed, they had grown strong in their understanding of the truth because they were diligent in studying the scriptures to learn Gods word.

6. But theres more; they committed themselves to much prayer and fasting; as a result, they had the spirit of prophecy and revelation, and when they taught, they did so with Gods power and authority.

7. They had been sharing Gods word for fourteen years with the Lamanites, finding great success in leading many to the knowledge of the truth; by the power of their words, many were brought to Gods altar to call on His name and confess their sins.

8. These are the situations they encountered during their travels, as they faced many hardships; they suffered greatly, both physically and mentally, enduring hunger, thirst, exhaustion, and laboring hard in the spirit.

9. This summarizes their journeys: After parting from their father, Mosiah, in the first year of the judges; having declined the kingship their father wanted to give them, which was also the peoples desire;

10. Still, they left the land of Zarahemla, taking swords, spears, bows, arrows, and slings; they did this to provide food for themselves in the wilderness.

11. So they set out into the wilderness, with the group they had chosen, to go to the land of Nephi, to preach Gods word to the Lamanites.

12. They traveled many days in the wilderness, fasting and praying frequently that the Lord would give them part of His Spirit to accompany them, so they could be instruments in God's hands to help, if possible, their brothers, the Lamanites, understand the truth about the wrong beliefs rooted in their traditions.

13. Eventually, the Lord came to them with His Spirit, saying: Find comfort. And they were comforted.

14. The Lord also told them: Go among the Lamanites, your brothers, and spread my word; yet you need to be patient in enduring hardships so that you can provide a good example of me, and I will make you instruments in my hands for the salvation of many souls.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

15. The hearts of the sons of Mosiah, along with those with them, were filled with courage to go forth to the Lamanites and proclaim Gods word.

16. When they reached the borders of the Lamanite land, they separated from one another, trusting in the Lord that they would reunite at the end of their mission; they believed that the work they had taken on was significant.

17. And indeed, it was significant, as they had committed to share Gods word with a wild, stubborn, and fierce people; a people who enjoyed killing Nephites, and stealing from and plundering them; their hearts were set on wealth, on gold and silver, and precious stones; yet they sought to gain these riches through murder and theft, rather than by working for them.

18. Thus, they were a very lazy people, many of whom worshipped idols, and God's curse had come upon them due to their fathers' traditions; even so, the Lords promises were still offered to them if they would repent.

19. This was the reason the sons of Mosiah took on this mission, hoping to lead them to repentance; perhaps to bring them to understand the plan of redemption.

20. Therefore, they each went their separate ways to engage with them individually, empowered by the word and authority of God given to them.

21. Ammon, being in charge among them, blessed each of them according to their roles before departing; and thus, they began their journeys throughout the land.

22. Ammon went to the land of Ishmael, a place named after the sons of Ishmael, who also became Lamanites.

23. When Ammon entered the land of Ishmael, the Lamanites captured him and bound him, following their custom of capturing all Nephites they encountered and bringing them before the king; it was then up to the king to decide whether to kill them, keep them as prisoners, imprison them, or expel them from his land, based on his will.

24. So, Ammon was brought before the king of Ishmael, whose name was Lamoni, and he was a descendant of Ishmael.



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

25. The king asked Ammon if he wanted to live among the Lamanites or stay with his own people.

26. Ammon replied: Yes, I want to live among this people for a time; indeed, perhaps until the day I die.

27. When King Lamoni heard this, he was very pleased with Ammon and ordered that Ammon's bonds be removed; he offered Ammon one of his daughters as a wife.

28. But Ammon said: No, I will be your servant. Therefore, Ammon became a servant to King Lamoni, and it turned out that he was assigned alongside other servants to tend to Lamoni's flocks, as was customary for the Lamanites.

29. After he had been serving the king for three days, while he was with the Lamanite servants leading their flocks to the water, which was called the water of Sebus, where all the Lamanites brought their flocks to drink

30. As Ammon and the king's servants were bringing their flocks to this water, some Lamanites who had just watered their flocks scattered Ammon's and the king's flocks, causing them to flee in every direction.

31. The king's servants began to complain, saying: The king will surely kill us, just like he has our brothers, because our flocks have been scattered by the actions of these wicked men. They began to cry out in distress, saying: Look, our flocks are already scattered!

32. They were crying out in fear of being killed. When Ammon saw this, his heart filled with joy; for he thought, I will demonstrate my strength to these fellow servants by restoring the flocks to the king, hoping to gain their trust so they may believe my words.

33. These were the thoughts of Ammon as he witnessed the suffering of those he considered his brothers.

34. He encouraged them with his words, saying: My brothers, cheer up! Let's go search for the flocks, and we will gather them together and return them to the watering place; this way, we will save the flocks for the king, and he won't harm us.

35. So they followed Ammon to search for the flocks, rushing forward with great speed and successfully rounding up the king's sheep back to the water.

36. Those men again tried to scatter the flocks; but Ammon instructed his comrades: Surround the flocks so they don't escape; I will go and confront those who scatter our flocks.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

37. They obeyed Ammons instruction, and he stepped forward to confront those by the waters of Sebus; and there were many of them.

38. They did not fear Ammon, believing that one of their own could easily defeat him because they did not understand that the Lord had promised Mosiah He would protect his sons; they also knew nothing about the Lords power; thus, they took pleasure in attacking their brothers, which is why they tried to scatter the king's flocks.

39. But Ammon stood firm and began to throw stones at them with his sling; yes, he skillfully hurled stones among them, and he killed several of them, causing them to be astonished at his strength; yet they were furious about the deaths of their companions and were determined to kill him; therefore, when they found they could not hit him with stones, they charged him with clubs intending to kill him.

40. However, every man who tried to hit Ammon with a club was met with swift action from Ammon, who cut off their arms with his sword; he defended himself by deflecting their blows and cutting off their arms, which astonished them, causing them to run away from him; he made many of them flee by his strength.

41. Six of them fell from the stones, and he did not kill anyone except their leader with his sword; he cut off as many arms as he could that were raised against him, and they were not few.

42. After driving them away, he returned to water the flocks and took them back to the kings pasture, then went to see the king, carrying in the severed arms of those who had tried to kill him, as proof of their actions against him.

## **Alma Chapter 18**

1. King Lamoni asked his servants to step forward and share everything they witnessed about what had happened.

2. After they all shared what they had seen, and he learned about Ammons faithfulness in protecting his animals and his great power in fighting off those who tried to kill him, he was incredibly amazed and said: Surely, this is more than just a man. Isnt this the Great Spirit who punishes our people for their murders?

3. They replied to the king: We dont know if he is the Great Spirit or just a man; however, we do know this

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

much: he cannot be killed by your enemies, and he cant let them scatter your livestock when hes with us because of his skill and strength. So, we believe he is a friend to you, king. We dont think any man has that much power, as we know he cant be killed.

4. When the king heard these words, he said: Now I understand that it is the Great Spirit; he has come down to protect your lives so that I wont kill you like I did your brothers. This is the Great Spirit my ancestors talked about.

5. This was a belief that Lamoni had received from his father, that there is a Great Spirit. Even though they believed in a Great Spirit, they thought everything they did was right; still, Lamoni started to fear greatly, worried that he had done wrong by killing his servants.

6. He had killed many of them because their brothers had caused their flocks to scatter at the water source; and thus, because their animals had been scattered, they were slain.

7. The Lamanites often waited by the waters of Sebus to scatter the peoples flocks, aiming to drive many of them to their own land; this was a practice of raiding among them.

8. Then King Lamoni asked his servants: Where is this man with such great power?

9. They told him: Look, he is feeding your horses. The king had instructed his servants, before watering their animals, to prepare his horses and chariots to take him to the land of Nephi where a grand feast was planned by Lamonis father, who ruled over all the land.

10. When King Lamoni learned that Ammon was getting his horses and chariots ready, he was even more amazed at Ammons loyalty, saying: No servant has ever been so faithful as this man; he remembers all my orders and carries them out.

11. Now I definitely know that this is the Great Spirit, and I wish for him to come to me, but I am afraid to do so.

12. After Ammon had prepared the horses and chariots for the king and his servants, he approached the king and noticed that the kings face had changed; so he was going to leave his presence.

13. One of the kings servants spoke to him, saying: Rabbanah, which means powerful or great king,

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

considering their kings to be powerful; and he said: Rabbanah, the king wants you to stay.

14. So Ammon turned to the king and asked: What do you want me to do for you, O king? But the king didnt answer for about an hour because he didnt know what to say.

15. And then Ammon asked again: What do you want from me? Still, the king didnt reply.

16. As Ammon was filled with Gods Spirit, he sensed the kings thoughts. He said: Is it because you heard how I defended your servants and your flocks, killed seven of their attackers with a sling and sword, and cut off the arms of others to protect your livestock and servants; is that what amazes you?

17. I ask you, what is it that seems so astonishing to you? Look, I am just a man and your servant; so whatever you desire that is right, I will do it.

18. When the king heard these words, he marveled again, realizing that Ammon could read his thoughts, but despite this, King Lamoni spoke up and asked: Who are you? Are you that Great Spirit who knows everything?

19. Ammon responded: I am not.

20. The king then said: How do you know whats in my heart? You can speak confidently and explain these things to me; also tell me how you managed to kill and cut off my brothers arms who scattered my flocks

21. And if you tell me these things, I will give you whatever you want; and if needed, I would protect you with my armies; although I know you are more powerful than they are; still, I will grant you whatever you ask of me.

22. Ammon, being wise yet innocent, asked Lamoni: Will you listen to my words if I explain how I do these things? This is what I ask of you.

23. The king replied: Yes, I will believe all you say. And thus he was deceived.

24. Ammon began to speak to him boldly, asking: Do you believe there is a God?

25. The king replied: I dont understand what that means.

26. Then Ammon asked: Do you believe there is a Great Spirit?

27. He said: Yes.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

28. Ammon replied: This is God. He asked the king again: Do you believe that this Great Spirit, who is God, created everything in heaven and on earth?
29. The king said: Yes, I believe he created everything on the earth, but I dont know about the heavens.
30. Ammon explained: The heavens is where God lives along with all his holy angels.
31. The king then asked: Is it above the earth?
32. Ammon affirmed: Yes, he looks down upon all people and knows all their thoughts and intentions; for he created them all from the beginning.
33. The king said: I believe everything you have said. Are you sent from God?
34. Ammon said: I am a man; and in the beginning, man was made in the image of God, and I have been called by his Holy Spirit to teach these truths to the people, so they can understand what is just and true;
35. And a part of that Spirit lives in me, giving me knowledge and strength according to my faith and desires in God.
36. Once Ammon finished speaking, he started from the creation of the world and Adam, explaining everything about the fall of man, sharing the records and holy scriptures that had been told by the prophets down to the time when Lehi left Jerusalem.
37. He also recounted to the king and his servants all the journeys of their ancestors through the wilderness, including their struggles with hunger and thirst, and their hardships.
38. He mentioned the rebellions of Laman and Lemuel, and the sons of Ishmael, recounting all their rebellions, explaining the records and scriptures from the time Lehi departed Jerusalem to the present day.
39. But that was not all; he explained the plan of redemption prepared from the beginning, and he also informed them about the coming of Christ, sharing all the Lords works with them.
40. After he explained all these things to the king, the king believed everything he said.
41. He began to cry out to the Lord, saying: O Lord, have mercy; according to your great mercy towards the Nephites, show mercy to me and my people.
42. And as he finished saying this, he fell to the ground as if he were dead.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

43. His servants then took him and carried him to his wife, laying him on a bed; he lay as if dead for two days and two nights, while his wife, sons, and daughters mourned for him, weeping deeply over his loss in the way of the Lamanites.

### **Alma Chapter 19**

1. After two days and two nights, they were preparing to take his body and put it in a tomb they had made for burying the dead.
2. The queen, having heard about Ammon's reputation, sent for him to come to her.
3. Ammon obeyed her request and went to see the queen, wanting to know what she wanted him to do.
4. She told him that her husband's servants had informed her that he was a prophet of a holy God and that he had the power to perform many mighty things in God's name.
5. So, if this were true, she asked him to go see her husband, who had been lying in bed for two days and two nights; some said he was dead, but others insisted he was alive, and she believed he was still living.
6. Ammon was eager to help because he knew that King Lamoni was under God's influence; he sensed that the darkness of doubt was leaving his mind and the light of God's glory was filling him with joy; this light had pushed away the darkness, filling him with a wonderful happiness, and he felt that everlasting life was brightening his soul; he knew this change had taken over his very being.
7. The queen's request aligned with Ammon's desires, so he went to see the king as she had asked and realized that the king was indeed alive.
8. He told the queen that her husband was not dead, but was simply resting in God, and that he would awaken the next day, so there was no need to bury him.
9. Ammon then asked her if she believed this, and she replied that she hadn't seen any proof other than his word and the word of the servants; still, she believed it would happen just as he had said.
10. Ammon responded by telling her that she was blessed for her strong faith and that he hadn't seen such great faith among the Nephites.
11. From that moment until the next day, the queen kept watch by her husband's bedside.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

12. When the next day came, her husband rose, just as Ammon had predicted. As he stood up, he reached his hand out to the woman and said, "Blessed be the name of God, and you are blessed too."

13. He declared that he had seen his Redeemer and that he would come into the world, born of a woman, to save everyone who believes in his name. After saying this, he felt an overwhelming joy and fell back down, and the queen also collapsed, filled with the Spirit.

14. Ammon saw the Lord's Spirit being poured out in response to his prayers for the Lamanites, who had caused much sorrow to the Nephites due to their wrongdoing and traditions. Filled with gratitude and joy, he knelt down to pray and thank God, and together with the king and queen, they all fell to the ground.

15. When the king's servants witnessed the scene, they too cried out to God, gripped by fear, as they had previously testified to the king about Ammon's great power.

16. So they called on the Lord with all their strength until they too fell to the ground, except for one Lamanite woman named Abish, who had been a believer in the Lord for many years due to an incredible vision she had of her father.

17. Having been a secret believer, when she saw everyone, including the servants, the queen, the king, and Ammon, lying on the ground, she realized it was the power of God at work. Thinking that sharing this event would help people believe in God's power, she rushed from house to house to tell everyone what had happened.

18. As people gathered at the king's house, they were astonished to see the king, queen, and servants all lying on the ground as if dead, along with Ammon, who was a Nephite.

19. The crowd began to argue among themselves, with some claiming a great disaster had befallen them because the king let a Nephite stay in their land.

20. Others blamed the king, arguing that he had brought this trouble upon his household after he had killed the servants who had scattered his flocks by the waters of Sebus.

21. Those angry with Ammon for killing their companions at the waters of Sebus also criticized the king for his actions.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

22. One man, whose brother Ammon had killed, was furious and tried to attack Ammon with a sword, but as he raised it to strike, he suddenly fell down dead.

23. It was clear that Ammon could not be harmed, for the Lord had told his father, Mosiah, that he would protect him according to Mosiahs faith, and thus Mosiah had entrusted him to the Lord.

24. When the crowd saw the man who had tried to kill Ammon lying dead, they were all frightened and dared not touch him or anyone else who had fallen, marveling at the source of this great power and what it all meant.

25. Many started to claim that Ammon was a powerful spirit, and others thought he was sent by such a spirit;

26. But some argued that he was a monster sent by the Nephites to torment them.

27. Some believed that Ammon was sent to punish them for their wrongdoings and that it was the great spirit who protected the Nephites and helped them defeat many Lamanites.

28. This led to heated arguments among them, and while they debated, Abish, the servant who had gathered the crowd, saw the arguing and became very sad, even to tears.

29. She rushed over to the queen, took her hand, and hoped to help her stand; when she touched the queen's hand, she immediately rose and cried out loudly, glorifying Jesus and asking for mercy for the people.

30. After saying this, she joyfully clasped her hands and spoke many words that were hard to understand. Then she took King Lamoni's hand, and he too stood up.

31. Seeing the fighting among his people, he went to address them and teach them what he had learned from Ammon's words; those who listened were convinced and turned to the Lord.

32. However, there were many who refused to listen, so they simply walked away.

33. When Ammon got up, he ministered to them as did all of Lamoni's servants, telling the people the same thing that their hearts had changed, and they no longer wanted to do evil.

34. Many proclaimed that they had seen angels and spoken with them, sharing divine revelations and teachings.

35. As a result, many believed their words; those who believed were baptized, becoming a righteous community and establishing a church among themselves.



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

36. Thus, the Lord's work began among the Lamanites; the Lord's Spirit was poured out upon them, showing that his reach is extended to everyone who repents and believes in his name.

### **Alma Chapter 20**

1. After establishing a church in that land, King Lamoni wanted Ammon to accompany him to the land of Nephi to meet his father.
2. Then the Lord spoke to Ammon, warning him not to go to Nephi, as the king there would seek to kill him. Instead, he should go to Middoni, where Ammon's brother Aaron, along with Muloki and Ammah, were imprisoned.
3. When Ammon heard this, he told Lamoni that his brother and companions were in prison at Middoni and that he intended to rescue them.
4. Lamoni replied that he believed Ammon could achieve anything through the Lord's strength. However, he wanted to go with Ammon to Middoni, as the king there, named Antiomno, was his friend. Lamoni thought he could persuade this king to release Ammons brothers. He then asked Ammon how he knew his brothers were imprisoned.
5. Ammon responded that no one told him except God, who instructed him to go and free his brothers from prison in Middoni.
6. Upon hearing this, Lamoni commanded his servants to prepare horses and chariots for their journey.
7. Lamoni then told Ammon he would accompany him to Middoni, where he would appeal to the king to release Ammon's brothers from jail.
8. As Ammon and Lamoni traveled, they encountered Lamoni's father, the king over all the land.
9. Lamonis father asked him why he hadn't attended the feast he had prepared for his sons and people on that important day.
10. He also questioned why Lamoni was traveling with Ammon, whom he referred to as "one of the children of a liar."
11. Lamoni explained where he was going, as he was hesitant to upset his father.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

12. He also explained why he had delayed in his own kingdom and why he missed the feast.
13. After hearing this, Lamoni's father became angry and said: "Lamoni, you plan to rescue these Nephites, who are sons of a liar. Remember, he robbed our ancestors; now his children have come among us to deceive and rob us again."
14. The king commanded Lamoni to kill Ammon and ordered him to return with him to Ishmael.
15. But Lamoni responded: "I will not kill Ammon, nor will I return to Ishmael. I'm going to Middoni to release Ammon's brothers because I know they are righteous men and holy prophets of the true God."
16. When the king heard this, he became furious and drew his sword, intending to strike Lamoni down.
17. Ammon then stepped forward and said: "You shall not kill your son; however, it's better for him to die than for you to act in anger, for he has repented of his sins. If you fall in your rage, your soul could be lost."
18. He continued, saying: "It is wise for you to hold back; if you kill your son, an innocent man, his blood will cry out to God for vengeance against you, and you might lose your soul."
19. After Ammon said this, the king replied he realized that killing his son would mean shedding innocent blood, and he acknowledged that he was the one trying to destroy Ammon.
20. Then the king reached out his hand to kill Ammon. However, Ammon defended himself and struck the king's arm, rendering it useless.
21. Seeing that Ammon could overpower him, the king began to plead for his life.
22. Ammon raised his sword and told him: "I will strike you down unless you agree to set my brothers free from prison."
23. Fearing for his life, the king responded: "If you spare me, I will grant you whatever you ask for, even half of my kingdom."
24. When Ammon realized he had gained leverage over the king, he said: "If you agree to let my brothers out of prison, allow Lamoni to keep his kingdom, and don't be upset with him, then I will spare you. Otherwise, I will strike you down."
25. Upon hearing this, the king felt relieved because he had been granted a second chance at life.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

26. When the king noticed that Ammon didn't want to harm him and saw the deep love he had for his son Lamoni, he was incredibly astonished and said: "Since all you want is for me to free your brothers and allow Lamoni to keep his kingdom, I will grant this request from now on; I will no longer govern him."

27. He also agreed that Ammon's brothers could be released from prison and promised that both Ammon and his brothers could come to his kingdom, as he looked forward to seeing them. The king was greatly surprised by the words spoken by both Ammon and Lamoni, and he was eager to hear more.

28. Ammon and Lamoni then continued on their way to Middoni, and Lamoni found favor with the king of that land, resulting in Ammon's brothers being brought out of prison.

29. When Ammon reunited with them, he was deeply saddened to see they were naked and had suffered greatly from being bound with strong cords. They had endured hunger, thirst, and various hardships, yet they remained patient throughout their trials.

30. Unfortunately, they had fallen into the hands of a cruel and stubborn people who refused to listen to their words. They had been driven from place to place, mistreated, and ultimately imprisoned in Middoni, where they were held for many days before being freed by Lamoni and Ammon.

## **Alma Chapter 21**

1. A story about the preaching of Aaron, Muloki, and their companions to the Lamanites.

2. Including chapters through 25.

3. Aaron teaches the Amalekites about Christ and His sacrifice  
Aaron and his companions are imprisoned in Middoni  
After being freed, they preach in the synagogues and convert many  
Lamoni allows the people in the land of Ishmael to practice their religion freely. Around 907 B.C.

4. When Ammon and his companions went away from the edge of the Lamanite territory, Aaron traveled to a place the Lamanites called Jerusalem, named after the land where their ancestors were born; it was located near the borders of Mormon.

5. The Lamanites, the Amalekites, and the people of Amulon built a large city named Jerusalem.

6. The Lamanites were already very stubborn, but the Amalekites and the Amulonites were even more so; this

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

made the Lamanites harden their hearts and grow stronger in their wickedness and wrongdoing.

7. Aaron reached the city of Jerusalem and began preaching to the Amalekites. He spoke to them in their synagogues, as they had built them following the Nehor tradition; many Amalekites and Amulonites followed this same way.

8. As Aaron entered one of the synagogues to preach, an Amalekite stood up and challenged him, saying: What are you preaching about? Have you seen an angel? Why dont angels come to us? Arent our people just as good as yours?

9. You also say that if we dont repent, we will perish. How do you know what were thinking and feeling? How can you say we need to repent? How do you know were not a righteous people? Look, weve built places of worship, and we gather together to praise God. We believe God will save everyone.

10. Aaron replied: Do you believe that the Son of God will come to save people from their sins?

11. The man responded: We dont believe you know anything about that. We think these are silly traditions. We dont believe you know about the future, nor that your ancestors or ours really understood what they spoke about regarding whats to come.

12. Aaron began to explain the scriptures about the coming of Christ, the resurrection of the dead, and that no one can be redeemed from their sins without Christs death, suffering, and sacrifice.

13. As he explained these things, the people became angry and mocked him; they refused to listen to his words.

14. So, when Aaron saw they wouldnt listen, he left their synagogue and went to a village called Ani-Anti, where he found Muloki preaching to the people, along with Ammah and his companions. They argued with many about what they were teaching.

15. They recognized that the people were hardening their hearts, so they left and went to the land of Middoni. They preached to many, but few accepted their message.

16. Despite this, Aaron and some of his companions were captured and thrown into prison, while the others fled into the surrounding areas.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

17. Those who were imprisoned endured many hardships until Lamoni and Ammon rescued them, providing them with food and clothing.
18. After their first release from prison, they went out to preach again, having suffered greatly.
19. They traveled wherever the Spirit guided them, spreading God's word in every Amalekite synagogue or at any Lamanite gathering that welcomed them.
20. Eventually, the Lord began to bless them, leading many people to understand the truth; they convinced many of their sins and challenged the incorrect traditions of their ancestors.
21. Ammon and Lamoni returned from Middoni to the land of Ishmael, which was their homeland.
22. King Lamoni insisted that Ammon should not serve him or be his servant.
23. Instead, he ordered synagogues to be built in the land of Ishmael and gathered his people to worship together.
24. He was joyful about them and taught them many things. He also informed them that they were his subjects but were free people, liberated from the oppression of his father; his father had allowed him to rule over the people in Ishmael and nearby.
25. He assured them they could freely worship the Lord their God as they wished, in any place under King Lamoni's rule.
26. Ammon preached to King Lamoni's people and taught them everything related to righteousness. He encouraged them every day with dedication, and they listened to his words, becoming eager to follow God's commandments.

## **Alma Chapter 22**

1. As Ammon continued to teach the people of Lamoni, let's switch back to Aaron and his brothers. After leaving the land of Middoni, Aaron was guided by the Spirit to the land of Nephi, specifically to the king's house, who ruled over all the land except for the land of Ishmael; this king was Lamoni's father.
2. When Aaron entered the king's palace with his brothers, he bowed and addressed the king, saying: "King, we are the brothers of Ammon, whom you set free from prison."

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

3. Aaron continued: "If you will spare our lives, we will serve you." The king replied: "Get up; I will let you live, and I will not make you my servants. Instead, I want you to serve me, because your brother Ammon's generous words have troubled my mind. I want to know why he hasn't come back from Middoni with you."

4. Aaron explained to the king: "The Spirit of the Lord has sent him another way; he has gone to the land of Ishmael to teach the people of Lamoni."

5. Then the king asked: "What do you mean by the Spirit of the Lord? This troubles me deeply."

6. He also asked: "What did Ammon mean when he said that if we repent, we will be saved, but if not, we will be lost on the last day?"

7. Aaron responded: "Do you believe that there is a God?" The king replied, "I know the Amalekites talk about a God, and I allowed them to build places to worship him. If you say there is a God, then I will believe."

8. When Aaron heard this, he was filled with joy and said: "As surely as you live, O king, there is a God."

9. The king then asked: "Is God that Great Spirit who brought our ancestors out of Jerusalem?"

10. Aaron confirmed: "Yes, he is that Great Spirit, and he created everything in heaven and on earth. Do you believe this?"

11. The king replied: "Yes, I believe the Great Spirit created all things. Please tell me more, and I will believe your words."

12. Seeing the king's willingness to believe, Aaron began telling him the creation story, explaining how God made man in His own image, gave him commandments, and how man fell due to disobedience.

13. Aaron taught the king from the creation of Adam, explaining the fall of mankind, their sinful state, and God's plan of redemption through Christ, established before the world began, for everyone who believes in Him.

14. He emphasized that since man had fallen, we cannot earn anything on our own; it is through Christ's suffering and death that our sins can be forgiven through faith and repentance, and that He conquers death, ensuring that the grave cannot defeat us. Aaron shared all these truths with the king.

15. After hearing this, the king asked: "What must I do to have this eternal life you speak of? How can I be

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

born of God, rid myself of this wicked spirit, and receive His Spirit so that I may be filled with joy and not be rejected on the last day? Ill give up everything I have, even my kingdom, to know this joy."

16. Aaron replied: "If you truly desire this, you must kneel before God, repent of all your sins, and call on His name in faith, believing that you will receive. Then you will find the hope you seek."

17. After Aaron spoke these words, the king knelt before the Lord, even lying flat on the ground, crying out in desperation:

18. "O God, Aaron has told me there is a God; if you are God, please reveal yourself to me. I will give up all my sins to know you, so that I may be raised from the dead and saved in the end." After saying this, the king fell to the ground as if he were dead.

19. His servants hurried to tell the queen what had happened to the king. When she entered and saw him lying there as if dead, and Aaron and his brothers standing nearby, she became angry with them and ordered her servants to kill them.

20. However, the servants recognized the cause of the king's condition and were afraid to harm Aaron and his brothers. They pleaded with the queen, saying: "Why do you want to kill these men when one of them is more powerful than us? We would be overpowered by them."

21. Seeing her servants fear, the queen also became very worried that some harm might come to her. She instructed her servants to gather the people so they could kill Aaron and his brothers.

22. Fearing that a crowd might cause a disturbance, Aaron, aware of the people's hard hearts, took action. He lifted the king from the ground and said: "Stand." The king arose, renewed in strength.

23. This miracle was witnessed by the queen and many servants, and when they saw it, they were astonished and filled with fear. The king then began to serve and minister to them, and as a result, all his household came to believe in the Lord.

24. A crowd gathered due to the queen's orders, and murmurs began against Aaron and his brethren.

25. But the king stepped forward and preached to the people, calming their anger towards Aaron and his companions.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

26. Seeing that the crowd was settled, the king ordered Aaron and his brothers to stand in front of everyone and share their message.

27. The king then sent a proclamation throughout his entire land, to all his people across all regions, including those by the sea on the east and west, and the narrow wilderness strip separating the land of Zarahemla.

28. Most of the idle Lamanites lived in the wilderness and were nomadic; they scattered across the wilderness in the land of Nephi and around the borders of the seashore, where their ancestors first settled.

29. Many Lamanites also lived on the east by the sea, which the Nephites had pushed them to. Thus, the Nephites found themselves nearly surrounded by Lamanites; however, they occupied all the northern areas of the land bordering the wilderness, at the head of the river Sidon, from the east to the west.

30. This northern territory was called Desolation, extending into a land that had once been inhabited and destroyed, discovered by the people of Zarahemla, marking the spot of their initial landing.

31. They moved further into the southern wilderness. Consequently, the land to the north was termed Desolation, while the southern land was referred to as Bountiful, which contained various wild animals, some having migrated from the land to the north.

32. For the Nephites, the distance from Bountiful to the land of Desolation was a day and a half's journey, and the lands of Nephi and Zarahemla were almost entirely encircled by water, with only a small neck of land connecting the north and the south.

33. The Nephites occupied the land of Bountiful from the east to the west sea. They, in their wisdom, with their soldiers and defenses, restricted the Lamanites to the south, preventing them from expanding into the northern territories.

34. As a result, the Lamanites were confined to the land of Nephi and the surrounding wilderness. This strategy was wise for the Nephites, who saw the Lamanites as adversaries, ensuring that their own territory remained secure.

35. And now, having shared this, I will return to the account of Ammon, Aaron, Omner, Himni, and their companions.



## **Alma Chapter 23**

1. The king of the Lamanites announced to all his people that they should not harm Ammon, Aaron, Omner, Himni, or any of their fellow preachers of Gods word, no matter where they were in the land.
2. He issued a decree stating that they should not bind, imprison, spit on, hit, or remove these preachers from their places of worship; they were not to stone them, and they should be allowed free access to their homes, temples, and sacred places.
3. This way, they could go out and preach as they wished, because the king and his whole family had turned to the Lord. He wanted his people to hear the word of God without any barriers, so they could realize the sinful traditions of their ancestors, understand that they were all brothers, and recognize that they should not kill, steal, commit adultery, or engage in any kind of wrongdoing.
4. After the king made this announcement, Aaron and his companions traveled from city to city and from one place of worship to another, setting up churches and appointing priests and teachers throughout the land among the Lamanites to share the word of God; they began to achieve great success.
5. Many thousands came to know the Lord, believing in the traditions of the Nephites; they were taught about the records and prophecies that had been passed down to their time.
6. Just as surely as the Lord lives, those who believed and were enlightened by the teachings of Ammon and his companionsthrough divine revelation, prophecy, and the miracles of Godnever turned away. Among those Lamanites who accepted their teachings and were converted, none ever fell back into disbelief.
7. They became a righteous group, laying down their weapons of rebellion and choosing not to fight against God or their brothers anymore.
8. These are the people who converted to the Lord:
9. The Lamanites living in the land of Ishmael;
10. Also the Lamanites in the land of Middoni;
11. The Lamanites in the city of Nephi;
12. And the Lamanites in the land of Shilom, and in the land of Shemlon, as well as those in the cities of

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

Lemuel and Shimnilom.

13. These are the cities of the Lamanites that turned to the Lord, and they laid down all their weapons of war; all of them were Lamanites.

14. The Amalekites did not convert, except for one, and none of the Amulonites did either; instead, they hardened their hearts and led many Lamanites in the area to do the same, affecting all their towns and cities.

15. Thus, we have identified all the cities of the Lamanites that repented, came to understand the truth, and became converted.

16. When this happened, the king and those who had converted wanted to have a name that set them apart from their fellow Lamanites; therefore, the king consulted with Aaron and many of their priests about what name they should take.

17. They decided to call themselves Anti-Nephi-Lehies, and from that point on, they were no longer called Lamanites.

18. They began to be a very hardworking people; they developed friendly relations with the Nephites, so they reached out to them, and Gods curse no longer troubled them.

### **Alma Chapter 24**

1. The Amalekites, Amulonites, and Lamanites living in various regions, including Amulon, Helam, and Jerusalem, who had not converted and did not follow the name of Anti-Nephi-Lehi, were incited to anger by the Amalekites and Amulonites against their own people.

2. Their anger against their brethren grew very intense, leading them to rebel against their king, insisting he could no longer rule them; as a result, they armed themselves against the Anti-Nephi-Lehis.

3. The king passed down the throne to his son, naming him Anti-Nephi-Lehi.

4. The king died in the same year the Lamanites began preparing to attack the people of God.

5. When Ammon, his brothers, and their companions saw the Lamanites getting ready to destroy their brethren, they traveled to the land of Midian, where Ammon met up with all his brothers; from there, they went to the land of Ishmael to discuss with Lamoni and his brother Anti-Nephi-Lehi how to defend themselves

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

against the Lamanites.

6. However, none of the people who had turned to the Lord were willing to take up arms against their brethren; in fact, they wouldn't even prepare for war, and their king told them not to.

7. He then addressed the people about the situation, expressing gratitude to God for sending their brethren, the Nephites, to teach them and show them the error of their forefathers' ways.

8. He thanked God for giving them a part of His Spirit to soften their hearts, allowing them to connect with the Nephites.

9. He also expressed gratitude for the understanding they gained through this connection, realizing their sins and the many wrongful acts they had committed.

10. He continued, thanking God that they had the opportunity to repent and that He had forgiven their numerous sins and crimes, removing their guilt through the grace of His Son.

11. Now, dear brethren, since all we could do was repent for our terrible sins and seek God's forgiveness, it was an immense task to truly turn our hearts back to Him.

12. Since God has cleansed us and our swords are no longer stained, let us not further tarnish them with the blood of our brethren.

13. Instead, I say we should keep our swords unstained; for if we stain them again, they cannot be made bright again by the blood of Jesus, which brings us atonement.

14. God has shown us mercy and revealed these truths for our salvation; He wants us and our children to know about His plan, so He sends His angels to guide us.

15. O how merciful God is! Now that our stains are removed and our swords shine, let us store them away to keep them bright as evidence before Him on Judgment Day, showing we have not shed our brethren's blood since receiving His word and being made clean.

16. If our brethren come to destroy us, we will bury our swords deep in the earth, keeping them bright as proof that we have never used them; if they destroy us, we shall go to our God and be saved.

17. Once the king finished speaking, all the people gathered together, took their swords and any weapons

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

meant for killing, and buried them deep in the ground.

18. They did this as a testimony to God and to others, vowing never to use weapons again to kill; they would rather give their lives than harm their brethren, and instead of remaining idle, they would work hard with their hands.

19. From this, we see that when the Lamanites turned to the truth, they were steadfast and willing to die rather than sin; thus, they buried their weapons of war to maintain peace.

20. Meanwhile, the Lamanites prepared for war and marched to Nephi to kill the king, replace him, and exterminate the Anti-Nephi-Lehi people.

21. When the people noticed the Lamanites approaching, they went out to meet them, humbling themselves and calling upon God; they were in this position when the Lamanites attacked, striking them down with swords.

22. Without facing any resistance, they killed a thousand and five of them; we know these slain are blessed, as they have returned to dwell with God.

23. Seeing that their brethren would not flee, nor turn away, but lay down and die while praising God, the Lamanites were moved to spare them.

24. Many Lamanites felt sorrow for their brethren who fell and regretted their actions.

25. They discarded their weapons of war, refusing to take them up again due to their remorse for the killings they committed, and they came down as their brethren did, relying on the mercy of those whose hands were raised to kill them.

26. On that day, the people of God were joined by more than the number who had been slain, who were righteous and therefore surely saved.

27. Not one wicked person was killed among them; over a thousand emerged into the knowledge of the truth, showing how the Lord can work in various ways for the salvation of His people.

28. The vast majority of those Lamanites killing their brethren were Amalekites and Amulonites, mostly aligned with the order of Nehor.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

29. Among those who joined Gods people, there were none from the Amalekites, Amulonites, or the order of Nehor; they were the actual descendants of Laman and Lemuel.

30. Thus, we can clearly see that once a people have been enlightened by the Spirit of God and gained significant understanding of righteousness, if they fall away into sin, they can become even more hardened, making their state worse than if they had never known the truth at all.

### **Alma Chapter 25**

1. Lamanite aggressions spreadThe descendants of the priests of Noah perish as Abinadi predictedMany Lamanites convert and join the people of Anti-Nephi-LehiThey believe in Christ and keep the law of Moses. About 9077 B.C.

2. And so, at that time, the Lamanites were even angrier because they had killed some of their own; they vowed revenge on the Nephites and didnt make any further attempts to attack the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi then.

3. Instead, they moved their armies into the outskirts of Zarahemla and attacked the people living in Ammonihah, destroying them.

4. After that, they had many battles with the Nephites, in which they were driven back and killed.

5. Most of the Lamanites who died were the descendants of Amulon and his brothers, the priests of Noah, who were killed by the Nephites.

6. Those who survived fled to the eastern wilderness and took control over the Lamanites, leading to many Lamanites dying by fire because of their beliefs.

7. After enduring significant loss and suffering, many began to recall the teachings that Aaron and his brothers had shared with them; they started to doubt the traditions passed down from their fathers and began to have faith in the Lord, recognizing the Nephites' great strength and thus many were converted in the wilderness.

8. The leaders who were left from Amulons family ordered the deaths of everyone who believed in these new teachings.

9. This killing made many of their fellow Lamanites very angry, leading to quarrels in the wilderness; they

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

began hunting down the descendants of Amulon and killed them as they fled into the eastern wilderness.

10. Even now, they are still pursued by the Lamanites. Thus were the words of Abinadi fulfilled, which he spoke about the descendants of the priests that led to his own death by fire.

11. He told them: What you do to me is a symbol of things to come.

12. Now Abinadi was the first to die by fire for his faith in God; this means that many would die in the same way he did.

13. He told the priests of Noah that their descendants would lead to many deaths like his, and that they would be scattered and killed like sheep without a shepherd that are hunted by wild animals; and now it has happened, for they were driven by the Lamanites, hunted, and attacked.

14. When the Lamanites realized they couldnt defeat the Nephites, they returned to their own land; many came to live in the land of Ishmael and the land of Nephi, joining the people of God, which were the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi.

15. They also buried their weapons of war, just like their brethren had, and began to live righteously; they followed the ways of the Lord and upheld his commandments and statutes.

16. Yes, they kept the law of Moses because it was still necessary at that point, as it had not yet been fully completed. But even with the law of Moses, they looked forward to Christs coming, believing that the law of Moses was a representation of His arrival, and understanding they needed to continue performing its ordinances until He was revealed.

17. They did not think that salvation came through the law of Moses; instead, the law of Moses helped to strengthen their faith in Christ. Thus, they held onto hope through faith for eternal salvation, relying on the spirit of prophecy that spoke of future events.

18. And behold, Ammon, Aaron, Omner, Himni, and their brothers were extremely joyful for their success among the Lamanites, seeing that the Lord had answered their prayers and fulfilled His promises to them in every way.

## **Alma Chapter 26**

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

1. Ammon rejoices in the LordThose who are faithful are strengthened and given knowledge by HimWith faith, people can inspire many to repentGod has all power and knows everything.
2. Now, these are Ammon's words to his brothers, which are as follows: My brothers, look! I want to express how many reasons we have to be happy; when we left the land of Zarahemla, could we have imagined that God would bestow such wonderful blessings upon us?
3. So now I ask, what blessings has He given us? Can you tell me?
4. Ill tell you; our brothers the Lamanites were lost in deep darkness, but look how many have come to see the incredible light of God! This is the blessing we have receivedto be instruments in Gods hands to accomplish this great work.
5. See, thousands of them rejoice and have been welcomed into Gods fold.
6. The harvest was ready, and you are blessed because you worked hard and reaped throughout the day, look at the number of crops you gathered! They will be stored where they wont go to waste.
7. Indeed, they wont be destroyed by the storms at the end; they wont be tossed around by fierce winds; when the storm comes, they will be gathered safely so the storm cannot reach them, and they wont be driven away by the enemys winds.
8. But behold, they are in the hands of the Lord of the harvest, and He will raise them up at the end.
9. Praise the name of our God; lets sing His praises and give thanks to His holy name, for He always does what is right.
10. If we had not come out of Zarahemla, our dear friends, who love us so much, would still be filled with hatred towards us, and they would not know God.
11. After Ammon said this, his brother Aaron reprimanded him, saying: Ammon, I worry that your joy is making you boastful.
12. But Ammon responded: I'm not boasting about my strength or wisdom; rather, I am completely filled with joy, and my heart is overflowing, and I will take joy in my God.
13. I know that I am nothing; in terms of my strength, Im weak; so I will not boast of myself, but I will boast

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

about my God because through His strength, I can do anything; indeed, we have performed many great miracles in this land, for which we will praise His name forever.

14. Look at how many thousands of our brothers He has freed from the suffering of hell; they now sing of His redeeming love thanks to the power of His word within us, so don't we have every reason to rejoice?

15. Yes, we have reason to praise Him forever, for He is the Most High God and has freed our brothers from the grip of hell.

16. They were surrounded by everlasting darkness and destruction; but now He has brought them into His everlasting light, into eternal salvation; they are surrounded by the unmatched abundance of His love; and we have been instruments in His hands to accomplish this great and wonderful task.

17. So let us rejoice and take pride in the Lord; yes, we will be joyful because our happiness is complete; we will forever praise our God. Who could possibly honor the Lord too much? Who could speak too highly of His great power, mercy, and patience towards people? I tell you, I cannot even express a fraction of what I feel.

18. Who could have imagined that our God would be so merciful as to save us from our terrible and sinful state?

19. Look, we went out angry, with great threats to destroy His church.

20. So why didn't He just let us face terrible destruction? Why didn't He allow His justice to punish us and condemn us to eternal despair?

21. Oh, my soul, it makes me shudder just thinking about it. But behold, He did not enforce His justice on us; rather, in His vast mercy, He brought us across that eternal divide of death and misery, to save our souls.

22. Now look, my brothers, which human being knows these things? I tell you, none know them except the penitent.

23. Yes, the one who repents and has faith, doing good works and praying constantly these will understand the mysteries of God; and they will be given the ability to reveal things that have never been revealed, and they will be able to help thousands of souls repent just like we have helped our brothers.

24. Do you remember, my brothers, when we told our brethren in Zarahemla that we were going to the land of



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

Nephi to preach to the Lamanites, and they laughed at us?

25. They said: Do you think you can bring the Lamanites to understand the truth? Do you think you can convince them that the traditions of their fathers are wrong, when they are such a stubborn people whose hearts delight in bloodshed, who have lived in wickedness since the beginning? My brothers, you remember their words.

26. They also said: Lets take up arms against them to rid the land of their wickedness, lest they overwhelm us and destroy us.

27. But look, my dear brothers, we entered the wilderness not with the intent to destroy our brothers, but with the hope that we might save at least some of their souls.

28. When our spirits were low and we were about to turn back, the Lord comforted us and said: Go among your brothers, the Lamanites, and endure your hardships patiently, and I will grant you success.

29. Now look, we have come and mingled with them; we have been patient through suffering, enduring every hardship; yes, we have traveled from house to house, relying not just on the kindness of the world, but on the goodness of God.

30. We have entered their homes and taught them, as well as in their streets; yes, we have taught them on their hills; we have also entered their temples and synagogues to teach them; we have been cast out, mocked, spat upon, and hit on the cheeks; we have been stoned and bound with strong ropes, thrown in prison; yet through the power and wisdom of God, we have been set free.

31. We have endured all kinds of hardships, all of this perhaps to save just one soul; we thought our joy would be complete if we could save some.

32. Now look, we can see the results of our efforts; are they few? I tell you, no, they are many; and we can testify to their genuineness because of their love for their brothers and for us.

33. For they would rather give up their lives than harm their enemies; they have buried their weapons deep in the ground out of love for their brethren.

34. Now tell me, has there been such great love anywhere? I say no, there hasnt even among the Nephites.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

35. For they would fight against their brothers rather than allow themselves to be killed. But look at how many of these have laid down their lives; and we know they have gone to their God because of their love for Him and their hatred of sin.

36. Now dont we have reasons to rejoice? Yes, I tell you, no one has had as great a reason to rejoice as we do since the beginning of the world; indeed, my joy leads me to boast in my God; for He has all power, all wisdom, and all understanding; He knows everything and is a merciful Being, bringing salvation to those who repent and believe in His name.

37. If this is boasting, then I will boast; for this is my life, my light, my joy, my salvation, and my escape from everlasting woe. Blessed be the name of my God, who has looked after these people, a branch of the tree of Israel, lost in a strange land; yes, I say, blessed be the name of my God, who has remembered us, wanderers in a foreign land.

38. Now my brothers, we see that God cares for every people, wherever they are; He knows His people, and His compassion reaches everywhere. This is my joy and my deep gratitude; yes, I will give thanks to my God forever. Amen.

### **Alma Chapter 27**

1. When the Lamanites who had fought against the Nephites realized that all their efforts to destroy them were futile, they returned to the land of Nephi.

2. The Amalekites, upset over their losses, became very angry. Unable to take revenge on the Nephites, they began to incite the people against the Anti-Nephi-Lehies and sought to harm them again.

3. The Anti-Nephi-Lehi people chose not to defend themselves and willingly accepted death at the hands of their enemies.

4. When Ammon and his brothers witnessed the destruction of the people they loved, who had shown them deep affection in returnviewing them as divine messengers sent to save them from destructionthey were filled with compassion. They approached the king and said:

5. Let's gather the Lord's people and flee to Zarahemla to escape our enemies and avoid being destroyed.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

6. But the king responded: The Nephites will kill us because of all the murders and sins we have committed against them.

7. Ammon replied: I will seek guidance from the Lord. If He tells us to go to our brethren, will you go?

8. The king answered: Yes, if the Lord instructs us to go, we will become their servants until we make amends for our wrongdoings.

9. But Ammon said: According to the law established by my father, there can be no slaves among our people. So, let's go and trust in the mercy of our brethren.

10. The king said: Seek the Lord's guidance, and if He tells us to go, we will go; otherwise, we will perish here.

11. Ammon then prayed to the Lord, who instructed him:

12. Lead this people out of this land to avoid destruction; for Satan has a strong influence over the Amalekites, who are inciting the Lamanites to kill their brethren. Therefore, get out of this land; blessed are this people because I will protect them.

13. Ammon returned and shared all the Lord's words with the king.

14. They gathered all the Lord's people, along with their livestock, leaving their homeland and heading into the wilderness that separated Nephi from Zarahemla, approaching the borders of the land.

15. Ammon told them: I and my brothers will go to Zarahemla, and you will stay here until we return; we will test whether our brethren will allow you into their land.

16. As Ammon entered Zarahemla, he and his brothers encountered Alma at the location mentioned, resulting in a joyful reunion.

17. Ammon was overwhelmed with joy, feeling so happy that it exhausted his strength and made him fall to the ground.

18. Wasn't this immense joy? This kind of joy is only felt by those who sincerely repent and genuinely seek happiness.

19. Alma's joy at seeing his brothers was very great, and so was the joy of Aaron, Omner, and Himni;

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

however, their joy did not overpower them.

20. Alma took his brothers to his home in Zarahemla and shared everything that had happened to them in the land of Nephi, among the Lamanites, with the chief judge.

21. The chief judge then proclaimed throughout the land, asking the people's opinion on allowing their brethren, the Anti-Nephi-Lehies, to join them.

22. The people responded: We will give the land of Jershon, located east by the sea, near Bountiful in the south, to our brethren for their inheritance.

23. We will position our armies between Jershon and Nephi to protect our brethren there; we do this because they fear taking up arms against their brethren to avoid committing sins. They fear this greatly because of their deep repentance regarding their many murders and wickedness.

24. We will offer our help in this way to our brethren for them to inherit the land of Jershon, in exchange for a portion of their resources to help maintain our armies.

25. When Ammon heard this, he returned to the Anti-Nephi-Lehi people, accompanied by Alma, to their camp in the wilderness and shared all this information with them. Alma also spoke of his conversion and his experience with Ammon, Aaron, and the others.

26. This news filled them with great joy. They then went down to the land of Jershon and claimed it as theirs; they were known as the people of Ammon by the Nephites, and that name stuck with them from then on.

27. They lived among the Nephites and were part of the church of God. They stood out for their zeal towards God and humanity, being completely honest and upright in all their dealings, and they remained firm in their faith in Christ until the end.

28. They viewed the idea of killing their brethren with disgust and refused to fight against them. They did not fear death, as they held onto hope in Christ and the resurrection; for them, death was overcome by Christ's victory over it.

29. Thus, they were willing to endure the most severe and painful death at the hands of their brethren, rather than resort to violence against them.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

30. This is how they became a passionate and beloved people, highly favored by the Lord.

### **Alma Chapter 28**

1. After the people of Ammon settled in the land of Jershon, and a church was also formed there, the Nephite armies surrounded the land of Jershon, as well as the borders around Zarahemla; however, the Lamanite armies followed their brothers into the wilderness.

2. As a result, a huge battle took place; it was unprecedented among all the people in the land since Lehi left Jerusalem, and tens of thousands of Lamanites were killed and scattered.

3. There was also a significant loss of life among the Nephites; however, the Lamanites were pushed back and dispersed, allowing the Nephites to return to their land.

4. During this time, there was widespread mourning and sorrow felt throughout the entire land among the Nephite people

5. The cries of widows grieving for their husbands, fathers lamenting their sons, daughters mourning for their brothers, and brothers weeping for their fathers; thus the sounds of mourning echoed throughout, as they grieved for their slain family members.

6. Certainly, this was a sorrowful day; a time of solemnity and much fasting and prayer.

7. Thus concludes the fifteenth year of the reign of the judges over the Nephite people;

8. This is the account of Ammon and his brothers, detailing their journeys in the land of Nephi, their struggles and suffering, their sorrows and trials, and their unimaginable joy, along with the safety and welcome of their brothers in the land of Jershon. May the Lord, the Redeemer of all, bless their souls forever.

9. This narrates the wars and disputes among the Nephites, and also the battles between the Nephites and Lamanites; and now the fifteenth year of the judges' reign has come to an end.

10. From the first year to the fifteenth, many thousands of lives have been lost; it has resulted in a terribly bloody scene.

11. The bodies of many thousands lie in the ground, while the bodies of many others decay in piles on the surface of the earth; many thousands are grieving for their loved ones, fearing, thanks to the promises of the

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

Lord, that those lost are condemned to eternal misery.

12. While many thousands grieve for their family members, they also rejoice and find hope, knowing, according to the Lord's promises, that their loved ones are raised to dwell at God's side, in a state of endless happiness.

13. Thus, we observe how great the disparity among people is due to sin and wrongdoing, and the power of the devil, who uses devious schemes to trap men's hearts.

14. This illustrates the urgent call for people to work in the Lord's vineyards; we see reasons for both sorrow and joy because of death and devastation among humanity, and joy because of the light of Christ that brings life.

### **Alma Chapter 29**

1. If only I were an angel and could fulfill my heart's desire, to go out and proclaim with the trumpet of God, using a voice that could shake the earth, and call everyone to repent!

2. Yes, I would shout to every person, like a great thunderclap, urging them to repent and understand the plan of redemption, so they could turn to our God and bring an end to the sorrow experienced across the earth.

3. But I realize that I am just a man and I sin in my desires, because I should be satisfied with what the Lord has given me.

4. I shouldn't disturb the firm decisions of a fair God with my wishes, as I know He gives to people according to their desires, whether that leads to death or life; indeed, He sets unchangeable laws for everyone based on their intentions, whether it leads to salvation or destruction.

5. I know that good and evil have been presented to all people; those who don't understand the difference are innocent, but those who do will receive according to their wishes, whether they desire goodness or wickedness, life or death, joy or guilt.

6. Now that I understand these things, why should I want anything more than to fulfill the role I've been assigned?

7. Why should I wish to be an angel so I could speak to everyone everywhere?

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

8. The Lord allows each nation, in their own language and culture, to spread His word, imparting wisdom as He sees fit; thus, we understand that the Lord guides with wisdom, ensuring what is fair and true.

9. I know what the Lord has commanded me, and I take pride in it. My pride isn't in myself, but in what the Lord has instructed me; yes, my joy lies in being a tool in God's hands to help bring someone to repentance.

10. When I see so many of my fellow believers genuinely penitent and turning to the Lord, my heart fills with joy; I then remember everything the Lord has done for me, especially how He has listened to my prayers, and I recall His merciful support extended to me.

11. I also reflect on my ancestors captivity; I know for sure that the Lord freed them from bondage, which led to the establishment of His church; the Lord God, the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, delivered them from their slavery.

12. I have always remembered my ancestors' captivity, and that same God who rescued them from the Egyptians also liberated them from bondage.

13. This same God established His church among them; He has called me with a sacred calling to share His word with this people, and He has granted me much success, which fills my heart with joy.

14. My joy isn't solely from my own achievements; I feel even greater happiness in the success of my fellow laborers who have traveled to the land of Nephi.

15. Look at how hard they have worked and the great results they have produced; their reward will be immense!

16. When I think about the success of my brothers, my soul feels uplifted, almost to the point of leaving my body due to the overwhelming joy.

17. Now, may God grant that my brothers get to sit in His kingdom; and may all those who benefit from their work also find a place there, so they can praise Him forever. And may God make this true according to my words, just as I have said. Amen.

## **Alma Chapter 30**

1. Korihor, the false prophet, mocks Christ, the Atonement, and the spirit of prophecy. He teaches that God

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

does not exist, that there is no fall of man, there are no consequences for sin, and there is no Christ. Alma bears witness that Christ will come and that everything indicates there is a God. Korihor asks for a sign and is made unable to speak. The devil had appeared to Korihor as an angel and taught him what to say. Korihor is defeated and dies. About 7674 B.C.

2. Now it happened that once the Ammonites had settled in the land of Jershon, and after the Lamanites had been driven out and their dead buried by the people

3. Their dead were not counted because there were so many; neither were the Nephite dead counted but after burying their dead, and after days of fasting, mourning, and praying, (and it was in the sixteenth year of the judges' reign over the people of Nephi) peace started to reign throughout the land.

4. Indeed, the people followed the Lord's commandments; they were dedicated to keeping God's laws, in accordance with the law of Moses, since they had been taught to keep the law until it was fulfilled.

5. Thus, there was no disturbance during the entire sixteenth year of the judges' reign over the people of Nephi.

6. It also happened that at the start of the seventeenth year of the judges' reign, peace continued.

7. But toward the end of the seventeenth year, a man came to the land of Zarahemla, and he was an Anti-Christ because he began to preach against the prophecies given by the prophets about Christ's coming.

8. There was no law preventing a person from believing what they wanted; for making a law that put people at a disadvantage was strictly against God's commands.

9. For the scriptures say: Choose today whom you will serve.

10. If someone wanted to serve God, they had that right; or rather, if they believed in God, they could serve Him; but if they didn't believe, there was no law punishing them.

11. However, if someone committed murder, they were punished with death; if someone robbed, they faced punishment; if someone stole, they were punished; if someone committed adultery, they were also punished; yes, for all these wrongdoings, there were consequences.

12. For there was a law that people were judged based on their crimes. Still, there was no law against a



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

person's beliefs; therefore, a person was punished only for the offenses they committed, giving everyone equal treatment.

13. This Anti-Christ, named Korihor, (who was beyond the laws reach) began to preach that there would be no Christ. He preached like this:

14. Oh, you who are burdened by foolish and empty hope, why do you tie yourselves to such nonsense? Why do you seek a Christ? No one can know anything that's to come.

15. Look, these things you call prophecies, which you claim were given by holy prophets, are merely silly traditions passed down from your ancestors.

16. How do you know they are true? You can't know things you can't see; therefore you can't know that a Christ will come.

17. You say you see your sins being forgiven. But look, that is just a sign of a disturbed mind; the craziness of your thoughts comes from your parents' traditions that make you believe in falsehoods.

18. He said many more things, claiming that there could be no atonement for human sins, and that everyone experiences life based on their own actions; therefore, each person prospers based on their intelligence, and every person succeeds based on their strength; whatever a person does is not a crime.

19. Thus, he preached to them, leading many away and encouraging them in their wickedness, yes, leading both men and women to commit sexual immorality telling them that once a person dies, that is the end of it all.

20. This man also went to the land of Jershon to preach to the Ammonites, who had once been Lamanites.

21. But they were wiser than many Nephites; they captured him and took him to Ammon, who was a high priest over them.

22. He then made sure Korihor was expelled from the land. Korihor moved on to the land of Gideon and started preaching there too; however, he found little success, as he was captured and brought before the high priest and the chief judge of the land.

23. The high priest asked him: Why do you go around twisting the teachings of the Lord? Why do you tell this people that there is no Christ, disrupting their joy? Why do you speak against all the prophecies of the holy

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

prophets?

24. The high priest's name was Giddonah. Korihor replied: Because I don't teach the silly traditions of your ancestors, and I don't encourage this people to bind themselves to the foolish rituals set by ancient priests, who seek power and authority over them and keep them in ignorance, preventing them from standing up for themselves.

25. You claim this people is free. I say they are in bondage. You claim that those ancient prophecies are true. I say you don't really know if they are true.

26. You say that this people is guilty and fallen because of a parent's wrongdoing. I say that a child cannot be blamed for the actions of their parents.

27. You also say that Christ will come. But I say you don't know if Christ will come. And you say that He will be killed for the sins of the world

28. And in this way, you mislead this people, following the silly traditions of your ancestors and your own desires; you keep them down like they are enslaved just to satisfy yourselves with their hard work, making them afraid to look up with confidence and enjoy their rights.

29. Yes, they are afraid to use what is rightfully theirs for fear of offending their priests, who manipulate them according to their desires, leading them to believe through their traditions, dreams, whims, visions, and pretended mysteries, that they might offend some unseen being they call Goda being who has never been seen or known and never will be.

30. When the high priest and the chief judge saw how stubborn Korihor was, and that he would even insult God, they chose not to respond to him; instead, they ordered him bound and handed him over to the officers to be taken to the land of Zarahemla, so that he could stand before Alma and the chief judge who governed all the land.

31. When he was brought before Alma and the chief judge, he continued in the same way he had in the land of Gideon; yes, he started to insult again.

32. He stood before Alma with grandiose words, criticizing the priests and teachers for misleading the people

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

with the ridiculous traditions of their ancestors, just to take advantage of them.

33. Alma said to him: You know that we do not take advantage of this peoples labor; for I have worked with my own hands for my living since the very beginning of the judges' reign, despite my many travels to share Gods word with the people.

34. And despite my numerous efforts within the church, I have never received even a small payment for my work; none of my fellow workers have either, except when serving in the judgment seat, and then we only received according to the law for our time.

35. So if we dont receive anything for our efforts in the church, then why do we work there except to share the truth, so we can rejoice in the joy of our people?

36. Then why do you say that we preach to the people for personal gain, when you know we receive nothing? Do you really believe we are deceiving this people, who find joy in their hearts?

37. Korihor answered him, Yes.

38. Then Alma asked him: Do you believe there is a God?

39. He replied, No.

40. Alma said: Will you again deny that there is a God and deny Christ? I tell you, I know there is a God and that Christ will come.

41. Now what proof do you have that there is no God or that Christ will not come? I tell you, you have no proof, except for your own words.

42. But I have all things as proof that these things are true; and you have all things as evidence that they are true; will you deny them? Do you believe these things are true?

43. I know you believe, but you are influenced by a lying spirit, having shut out the Spirit of God so it cannot dwell in you; thus, the devil has power over you, and he leads you around, creating schemes to destroy Gods children.

44. Korihor then said to Alma: If you will show me a sign so I can be convinced there is a God, yes, show me that He has power, and then I will accept your words as true.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

45. But Alma replied: You have seen enough signs; will you test your God? Will you demand a sign after you have the testimony of all your brethren and all the holy prophets? The scriptures are before you; everything indicates there is a God; even the earth and all that is on it, and its movement, and the planets moving in their paths testify that there is a Supreme Creator.

46. Yet you continue to lead this people away, convincing them there is no God? Will you still deny all these witnesses? He answered: Yes, I will deny, unless you show me a sign.

47. Alma then said: I am saddened by the stubbornness of your heart, that you continue to resist the truth, putting your soul at risk of destruction.

48. But it would be better for your soul to be lost than for you to lead many souls to destruction with your lies and flattering words; if you deny again, God will strike you so you will be unable to speak, and you will no longer be able to deceive this people.

49. Korihor responded: I dont deny that a God exists, but I dont believe in a God; and I also say that you do not know there is a God; unless you show me a sign, I will not believe.

50. Alma said to him: Heres your sign: you will become unable to speak, just as I have said; according to the word of God, you shall be struck dumb, and you will not be able to speak again.

51. When Alma finished saying this, Korihor became unable to speak, exactly as Alma had declared.

52. When the chief judge saw this, he reached out and wrote to Korihor, asking: Are you convinced of Gods power? Who did you expect Alma to show a sign to? Do you want him to harm others to prove it? Look, he has given you a sign; will you still argue?

53. Korihor reached out his hand and wrote, saying: I know I am dumb, for I cannot speak; and I know that only by the power of God could this happen to me; yes, and I always knew there was a God.

54. But the devil has deceived me; he appeared to me as an angel and told me: Go and lead this people astray, for they have all gone after an unknown God. He said to me: There is no God; yes, and he taught me what to say. I taught his words because they appealed to the earthly mind; I taught them until I truly believed they were true; and because of this, I resisted the truth, ultimately bringing this great curse upon myself.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

55. After he said this, he begged Alma to pray to God to remove the curse from him.

56. But Alma said to him: If this curse is removed, you will again lead this people astray; therefore it will be as the Lord decides.

57. Eventually, the curse was not removed from Korihor; he was cast out and went from house to house begging for food.

58. The news of what had happened to Korihor quickly spread throughout the land; yes, the chief judge sent out a proclamation to all the people, warning those who had believed Korihors words to repent quickly, or they would face the same consequences.

59. They were all convinced of Korihors wickedness; therefore they turned back to the Lord, putting an end to the wrongdoing associated with Korihor. Korihor went from house to house, begging for food.

60. As he wandered among the people, among a group who had separated themselves from the Nephites and called themselves Zoramites, led by a man named Zoramwhile among them, he was attacked and trampled to death.

61. Thus we see the end of one who distorts the ways of the Lord; and we see that the devil will not support his followers in the end but will quickly drag them down to destruction.

### **Alma Chapter 31**

1. After the end of the story of Korihor, Alma learned that the Zoramites were straying from the ways of the Lord, and that their leader Zoram was leading them to worship worthless idols. This troubled Alma deeply because he was saddened by the wrongdoing of the people.

2. It caused Alma great sorrow to know that there was wrongdoing among his people; thus, he felt especially sad about how the Zoramites had separated themselves from the Nephites.

3. The Zoramites had come together in a land they called Antionum, located east of Zarahemla, near the seashore, which was south of Jershon, an area bordering a wilderness populated by the Lamanites.

4. The Nephites feared that the Zoramites might start communicating with the Lamanites, which could cause significant problems for them.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

5. Alma knew that preaching the word was effective at encouraging good behavior among people it had a stronger impact on their minds than weapons or anything else. So he decided it was important to try using the word of God.
6. He took Ammon, Aaron, and Omner with him; he left Himni in the church at Zarahemla. Along with the three, he also brought Amulek and Zeezrom from Melek, as well as two of his sons.
7. He did not take his eldest son, Helaman, but he did take Shiblon and Corianton, and these were the ones who went with him to preach to the Zoramites.
8. The Zoramites were separated from the Nephites, so they had already heard the teachings of God.
9. However, they had strayed into serious mistakes, as they refused to follow God's commandments and the laws given through Moses.
10. They also ignored the importance of regularly praying and seeking Gods guidance to avoid temptation.
11. In short, they had corrupted the ways of the Lord in many ways, which is why Alma and his companions went to preach to them.
12. When they arrived in the land, they were amazed to find that the Zoramites had built synagogues where they gathered once a week, which they called the Lord's Day, to worship in a manner that Alma and his companions had never witnessed before.
13. They had constructed a platform in the center of their synagogue that was raised above the ground, allowing only one person at a time to stand on it.
14. Therefore, anyone wanting to worship had to step onto this platform, raise their hands toward heaven, and loudly proclaim:
15. Holy, holy God; we believe you are God, and that you are holy, and that you were a spirit, are a spirit, and will always be a spirit.
16. Holy God, we believe you have set us apart from our brothers; we don't accept the traditions passed down to them by their foolish ancestors; instead, we believe you have chosen us as your holy children, and you have revealed to us that there will be no Christ.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

17. You are unchanging, and you have chosen us for salvation while everyone else is destined for damnation; for this we thank you, God; we also thank you for keeping us from following the foolish traditions of our brothers that lead them to believe in Christ, pulling their hearts away from you, our God.

18. Once again, we express our gratitude that we are a chosen and holy people. Amen.

19. After Alma and his companions heard these prayers, they were completely astonished.

20. Every individual among them repeated the exact same prayers.

21. They referred to this platform as Rameumptom, which means the holy stand.

22. From this stand, every person offered the same prayer to God, thanking Him for selecting them and for steering them away from the traditions of their brothers, ensuring their hearts didn't stray toward beliefs they didn't understand.

23. After everyone thanked God in this way, they returned home, not mentioning God again until they gathered once more at the holy stand to offer thanks in their usual way.

24. When Alma saw this, he felt deep sorrow; he realized they were wicked and corrupt people, focused on wealth and material possessions.

25. He also noticed their pride and arrogance.

26. He lifted his voice to God, crying out: O Lord, how long will you allow your servants to live among such terrible wickedness among humanity?

27. Look, O God, they call on you, yet their hearts are consumed by pride. They pray to you while exalting themselves with the empty things of this world.

28. Behold, O my God, their expensive clothing, fancy hairstyles, jewelry, and precious items; their hearts are set on them, and still they call out to you, saying We thank you, O God, for we are chosen people, while others will be lost.

29. Moreover, they claim you have informed them that there will be no Christ.

30. O Lord God, how long will you tolerate such evil and disbelief among them? Please grant me the strength to endure my weaknesses. I am weak, and witnessing this wickedness pains my soul.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

31. O Lord, my heart is filled with sorrow; please comfort my soul in Christ. O Lord, give me strength to patiently endure the trials that will come to me because of the sins of this people.
32. O Lord, comfort my soul, and grant us success, including Ammon, Aaron, Omner, Amulek, Zeezrom, and my two sons please provide comfort for all of us, O Lord. Yes, comfort their souls in Christ.
33. Please give them strength so they can endure the trials coming their way due to these people's sins.
34. O Lord, grant us success in bringing them back to you in Christ.
35. Look, O Lord, their souls are precious, and many are our brothers; therefore, grant us power and wisdom to bring these, our brothers, back to you.
36. After Alma said this, he laid his hands on all his companions. As he did so, they were filled with the Holy Spirit.
37. Afterward, they separated from one another, not worrying about what they would eat or drink, or what they would wear.
38. The Lord provided for them so they did not hunger or thirst; he also gave them strength to withstand all trials, allowing them to find joy in Christ. This happened because Alma prayed earnestly and believed.

## **Alma Chapter 32**

1. They went out and started telling people about God, preaching in their synagogues, homes, and even on the streets.
2. After working hard among the people, they began to see progress, especially with the poor; they had been rejected from the synagogues because their clothes were shabby.
3. Because of that, they weren't allowed to worship in the synagogues and were considered worthless by others; as a result, they were materially poor and also felt downtrodden in spirit.
4. While Alma was teaching the people on the hill Onidah, a large group came to him, which included those who were suffering and felt poor in spirit due to their lack of worldly goods.
5. One of them, who was leading the group, approached Alma and asked: "What should we do? Everyone looks down on us because we're poor, especially the priests; they've kicked us out of the synagogues we



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

worked hard to build ourselves. Now we have nowhere to worship God; what can we do?"

6. When Alma heard this, he turned to the man with joy because he could see that their hardships had truly made them humble and ready to listen to the teachings.

7. So he didnt address the rest of the crowd, but reached out to those who were genuinely repentant and said to them:

8. "I see that you are humble in heart; if thats the case, you are blessed.

9. Your brother asked what to do, since we are rejected from our synagogues and cannot worship God.

10. Do you think you can only worship God in your synagogues?

11. And do you think you only need to worship God once a week?

12. I tell you, being cast out of your synagogues is good for you, as it teaches you humility and wisdom; you need to learn wisdom, and your experiences of rejection due to your poverty have made you humble.

13. Because you have been forced to be humble, you are blessed; sometimes when a person is forced to be humble, they seek repentance, and anyone who does repent will find mercy. Whoever finds mercy and perseveres to the end will be saved.

14. As I said, it is a blessing to be made humble; dont you think those who truly choose to be humble because of the teachings are even more blessed?

15. Yes, the person who humbles themselves willingly, repents of their sins, and perseveres will be more blessed than those who are only humble because of their poverty.

16. So, blessed are those who choose to be humble rather than being forced to be; blessed is anyone who believes in Gods word and is baptized without being stubborn or waiting for proof before they believe.

17. Some say, "If you show us a sign from heaven, we will know for sure and then we will believe."

18. But I ask you, is that faith? I say no, because if a person already knows something, they have no need for faith.

19. And how much worse is it for someone who knows God's will and ignores it than for someone who only believes based on lack of evidence and then sins?

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

20. Now you must consider this. I tell you, it is the same both ways, and every person will be judged based on their actions.

21. And as I mentioned about faith, faith is not knowing everything perfectly; so if you have faith, you hope for things that are not seen but are true.

22. And remember, God is merciful to everyone who believes in his name; he first wants you to believe in his word.

23. He shares his word through angels with everyone, including men, women, and sometimes even children, which can leave the wise and learned confused.

24. Now, my dear friends, since you want to know what to do because you're struggling and feeling cast out, I don't mean to judge you harshly.

25. I'm not saying that you all were forced into humility; I truly believe that some of you would choose to humble yourselves no matter the situation.

26. As I mentioned that faith is not perfect knowledge, the same applies to my words. You won't have perfect certainty about them right away, just as faith isn't perfect knowledge.

27. But if you awaken your mind and put my words to the test, and even if all you can do is wish to believe, let that wish develop into a belief strong enough to allow my words to take root in you.

28. Now, let's think of the word as a seed. If you let a good seed be planted in your heart and don't reject it with skepticism, it will start to grow inside you. When you notice this growth, you will realize that it might be a good seed or a good word because it opens your soul, enlightens your mind, and tastes sweet to you.

29. Wouldn't this boost your faith? I say yes, but it might not lead to perfect knowledge.

30. As the seed grows and sprouts, you will have to admit that the seed is good; because it grows and flourishes. Will this strengthen your faith? Yes, it will, as you will know that this is indeed a good seed since it sprouts and grows.

31. Are you sure this seed is good? I say yes, because every seed produces after its own kind.

32. So, if a seed grows, it's a good one, but if it doesn't grow, then it isn't good and is discarded.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

33. Now, if you have tried planting the seed and it has started to swell, sprout, and grow, you must recognize that it is a good seed.

34. Is your knowledge perfect now? Yes, in this matter your understanding is complete, and your faith may feel inactive; and that's because you know, since the word has filled your soul and enlightened your mind.

35. So, is this a real experience? Yes, it is light, and anything that is light is good because it helps you understand what is good. After experiencing this light, is your knowledge perfect?

36. I say no; you mustn't abandon your faith, for you have just exercised faith to plant the seed to test if it is good.

37. As the tree begins to grow, you will say: "Let's take care of it, so it roots well, grows strong, and produces fruit for us." If you nurture it well, it will take root and grow to bear fruit.

38. But if you neglect the tree and don't care for it, it will not take root; and when the sun comes out, it will wither away because it has no roots, and you will pull it up and discard it.

39. This isn't because the seed was bad or the fruit wouldn't be good; it's because you've neglected to nurture it, so you miss out on the fruit.

40. Thus, if you won't nourish the word, looking forward with faith to its fruit, you can never enjoy the fruit from the tree of life.

41. However, if you nurture the word and take care of it as it grows, with faith and patience while hoping for the fruit, it will take root; and it will become a tree that leads to everlasting life.

42. Because of your diligence, faith, and patience while nourishing it, eventually you will enjoy its precious fruit—sweeter than anything else, purer than anything else—and you will feast on it until you have no hunger or thirst.

43. Then, my friends, you will reap the rewards of your faith, diligence, patience, and endurance as you wait for the tree to bear its fruit for you.

## **Alma Chapter 33**

1. Zenos taught that people should pray and worship anywhere, and that God's judgments are softened because

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

of the SonZenock taught that mercy comes through the SonMoses lifted up a representation of the Son of God in the wilderness. About 74 B.C.

2. After Alma said these things, they reached out to him, wanting to know if they should believe in one God to gain the blessings he had mentioned, or how they should plant the seed or the word he spoke of, which he said must be planted in their hearts; or how they should start to exercise their faith.

3. Alma replied: You have said that you can't worship your God because you've been kicked out of your synagogues. But I tell you, if you think you can't worship God, you are mistaken, and you should study the scriptures; if you think they taught you this, you dont truly understand them.

4. Do you remember what Zenos, the ancient prophet, said about prayer or worship?

5. He said: You are merciful, O God, because you heard my prayer, even when I was in the wilderness; yes, you were merciful when I prayed for my enemies, and you turned them towards me.

6. Yes, O God, you were merciful to me when I cried out to you in my field; when I cried out in my prayer, you heard me.

7. And again, O God, when I returned to my house, you heard me in my prayer.

8. And when I went to my room, O Lord, and prayed to you, you heard me.

9. Yes, you are merciful to your children when they cry out to you, to be heard by you and not by people, and you will listen to them.

10. Yes, O God, you have been merciful to me and have listened to my cries among your congregations.

11. Yes, and you have also heard me when I was cast out and despised by my enemies; yes, you heard my pleas, and were angry with my enemies, taking swift action against them.

12. You heard me because of my suffering and my sincerity; and your mercy towards me comes through your Son, so I will cry to you in all my hardships, for my joy is in you; you have turned your judgments away from me because of your Son.

13. Now Alma asked them: Do you believe the scriptures that were written by the prophets of old?

14. Look, if you do, then you have to believe what Zenos said; for he said: You have turned away your

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

judgments because of your Son.

15. Now, my brothers, I ask if you have read the scriptures? If you have, how can you not believe in the Son of God?

16. For it isn't just written that Zenos spoke of these things; Zenock also spoke of them

17. For he said: You are angry, O Lord, with this people because they refuse to understand the mercy you have given them because of your Son.

18. And now, my brothers, you can see that a second prophet of old has testified of the Son of God, and because the people didn't understand his words, they stoned him to death.

19. But wait, there's more; these are not the only ones who have spoken about the Son of God.

20. Look, Moses also spoke of him; yes, and a sign was lifted up in the wilderness so that anyone who looked at it might live. Many did look and lived.

21. But few understood the significance of these things due to the hardness of their hearts. Many were so stubborn that they wouldn't look, and therefore they perished. They didn't look because they didn't believe it would heal them.

22. O my brothers, if you could be healed just by looking, would you not look immediately, or would you rather harden your hearts with doubt and be lazy, refusing to look, and end up dying?

23. If that's the case, woe will come upon you; but if not, then look around you and start to believe in the Son of God, that he will come to save his people, and that he will suffer and die to atone for their sins; and that he will rise again from the dead, bringing about the resurrection, so that all people will stand before him to be judged on the last day according to their deeds.

24. And now, my brothers, I urge you to plant this word in your hearts, and as it begins to grow, nourish it with your faith. And it will grow into a tree of everlasting life within you. May God help you bear your burdens lightened by the joy of his Son. And all this is possible if you choose to do so. Amen.

## **Alma Chapter 34**

1. After Alma spoke these words to them, he sat down on the ground, and Amulek stood up to teach them,

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

saying:

2. My friends, I believe it is impossible for you to be unaware of what has been said about the coming of Christ, who is taught to be the Son of God; I know these teachings were shared with you abundantly before you disagreed and left us.

3. And as you have asked my dear brother to tell you what you should do because of your troubles; he has shared some things to help you prepare your minds; and he has urged you to have faith and be patient

4. Yes, so much faith that you would plant the word in your hearts to test its goodness.

5. And we can see that the main question in your minds is whether the word is in the Son of God, or if there will be no Christ.

6. And you have noticed that my brother has shown you many times that the word is in Christ for your salvation.

7. My brother has referenced the words of Zenos, saying that redemption comes through the Son of God, and also the words of Zenock; he even appealed to Moses to prove that these things are true.

8. And now, I will testify to you personally that these things are true. I know that Christ will come among mankind, to take on the sins of his people, and he will atone for the sins of the world; for this is what the Lord God has said.

9. It is essential that an atonement is made; according to the great plan of God, there must be an atonement, or else all humanity will be lost; yes, all are hardened; all are fallen and lost, having to perish unless it is through the necessary atonement.

10. It is essential that there should be a great and final sacrifice; not a sacrifice of a person, nor of any beast or bird; it cannot be a human sacrifice; but it must be something infinite and eternal.

11. No man can give his own blood to atone for someone else's sins. If someone commits murder, does our just law not require the murderer to lose his life? I say to you, no.

12. The law demands the life of the murderer; therefore, nothing less than an infinite atonement can be sufficient for the sins of the world.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

13. Thus, it is essential for there to be a great and final sacrifice, which will put an end to bloodshed; then the law of Moses will be fulfilled; yes, it will be completely fulfilled, down to every last letter, and none will be removed.

14. And behold, this is the entire purpose of the law, every detail pointing to that great final sacrifice; and that great final sacrifice will be the Son of God, yes, infinite and eternal.

15. And through him, salvation will be given to all who believe in his name; this is the goal of the final sacrifice, to bring about mercy that outweighs justice, and to provide a way for people to have faith that leads to repentance.

16. Thus, mercy meets the demands of justice and surrounds believers with safety, while those who do not have faith to repent are exposed to the full weight of justice; therefore, only those who have faith to repent will receive the great and eternal plan of redemption.

17. So may God help you, my brothers, that you may start to practice your faith toward repentance, calling upon his holy name for mercy;

18. Yes, cry out to him for mercy; for he is powerful to save.

19. Yes, humble yourselves, and continue to pray to him.

20. Cry out to him in your fields, over all your flocks.

21. Cry out to him in your homes, for all your family members, morning, noon, and evening.

22. Yes, call upon him against your enemies.

23. Yes, call upon him against the devil, who opposes all righteousness.

24. Cry out to him for your crops, so you may have success.

25. Cry out for the flocks, that they may grow.

26. But this is not all; you must pour out your souls in your private spaces and your secret places, and in your solitude.

27. Yes, and when you are not crying out to the Lord, let your hearts remain full, continually praying for your well-being and that of those around you.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

28. Now, my dear brothers, do not think this is all; for after you have done all these things, if you neglect the needy, and the naked, and do not visit the sick and suffering, and share what you have with those in need I say to you, if you neglect any of these things, then your prayers are pointless and do not benefit you, and you are like hypocrites denying the faith.

29. So, if you do not remember to be charitable, you are like worthless material that the refiners discard, and it is trampled underfoot by men.

30. Now, my brothers, I wish that after you have received so many witnesses, seeing that the holy scriptures testify of these things, you come forward and demonstrate fruits of repentance.

31. Yes, I want you to come forward and not harden your hearts any longer; for now is the time and the day of your salvation; and if you will repent and not harden your hearts, immediately the great plan of redemption will unfold for you.

32. For indeed, this life is the time for people to prepare to meet God; yes, consider that today is the day to carry out our responsibilities.

33. And now, as I previously mentioned, since you have had so many witnesses, I urge you not to put off your repentance until the end; for after this life, which is given to prepare for eternity, if we do not make the most of our time here, we will enter into a night of darkness where no work can be done.

34. You cannot claim when you face that terrible moment, "I will repent, I will return to my God." No, you cannot say this; for that same spirit which possesses you as you leave this life will have the power to possess you in the next.

35. For behold, if you have delayed your repentance even until death, you have become subject to the spirit of the devil, and he claims you as his own; therefore, the Spirit of the Lord has left you and has no place in you, and the devil has complete power over you; and this is the ultimate state of the wicked.

36. I know this because the Lord has said he does not dwell in unholy places, but in the hearts of the righteous does he reside; yes, he also said that the righteous will dwell in his kingdom, never to leave; but their garments will be made clean through the blood of the Lamb.



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

37. And now, my dear brothers, I ask that you remember these things and work out your salvation with reverence before God, and no longer deny the coming of Christ;

38. That you no longer oppose the Holy Ghost, but receive it, and take upon yourselves the name of Christ; that you humble yourselves down to dust, and worship God wherever you are, in spirit and in truth; and that you live with daily gratitude for the many mercies and blessings he gives you.

39. Yes, I also urge you, my brothers, that you remain vigilant in prayer continually, that you may not be led away by the devil's temptations, that he may not overpower you, and that you do not become his subjects on the final day; for he rewards you with nothing good.

40. And now, my dear brothers, I would encourage you to be patient and to endure all kinds of hardships; do not speak ill of those who reject you because of your severe poverty, lest you become sinners like them;

41. But instead, have patience and bear these hardships, with firm hope that one day you will find rest from all your troubles.

### **Alma Chapter 35**

1. After Amulek finished speaking, they left the crowd and went to the land of Jershon.

2. The other brothers, after preaching to the Zoramites, also came to the land of Jershon.

3. Then the more influential Zoramites got together to discuss the teachings they had heard, and they became angry because the teachings threatened their way of life; so they refused to listen to them.

4. They sent out messengers to gather all the people and discussed the teachings that had been shared.

5. The leaders, priests, and teachers kept their true feelings hidden from the people; instead, they quietly learned what everyone was thinking.

6. After discovering the people's feelings, those who supported Alma's message were expelled from the land; there were many of them, and they also moved to Jershon.

7. Alma and his companions then helped those who had been expelled.

8. The Zoramites were furious with the Ammonites living in Jershon, and their wicked leader sent a message to the Ammonites asking them to remove anyone from their land who had come from Zoram.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

9. He threatened them with many harsh words. However, the Ammonites were not afraid and did not cast them out; instead, they welcomed all the poor Zoramites who came to them, provided for their needs, clothed them, and gave them land to live on.

10. This made the Zoramites even angrier with the Ammonites, and they began to form alliances with the Lamanites to incite them against the Ammonites as well.

11. Consequently, the Zoramites and the Lamanites started preparing for war against the Ammonites and the Nephites.

12. This marked the end of the seventeenth year of the judges' rule over the Nephite people.

13. The Ammonites left Jershon and moved to the land of Melek, making room for Nephite armies to fight against the Lamanites and Zoramites; this initiated a conflict between the Lamanites and Nephites in the eighteenth year of the judges' reign, which will be detailed later.

14. Alma, Ammon, their companions, and the two sons of Alma returned to Zarahemla after helping many Zoramites repent; those who repented were driven from their land but received land in Jershon as their inheritance, and they took up arms to protect themselves, their families, and their land.

15. Alma was troubled by the wickedness of his people, the wars, the violence, and the disputes among them; he had been sent to preach in every city and saw that the people's hearts were hardening, and they were becoming offended by the strict teachings; this made him very sad.

16. So, he gathered his sons together to give each of them specific guidance on matters of righteousness, and we have a record of the instructions he provided to them.

### **Alma Chapter 36**

1. The teachings of Alma to his son Helaman.

2. This includes chapters 37.

3. Alma shares with Helaman about his transformation after encountering an angelHe endured the suffering of a lost soul; he called upon Jesus, and was then spiritually renewedHis heart overflowed with joyHe witnessed groups of angels praising GodMany believers have experienced what he has experienced. Around 74 B.C.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

4. My son, pay attention to what I say; I promise you that if you follow Gods commandments, you will thrive in the land.
5. I hope you will remember our ancestors' slavery, as I have; they were trapped, and only the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob could save them, and He truly rescued them in their struggles.
6. And now, O my son Helaman, you are young, so I earnestly urge you to listen to my words and learn from me; for I know that anyone who trusts in God will be supported through their trials, struggles, and suffering, and will be upheld in the end.
7. And I don't want you to think I know this on my ownnot about the physical, but about the spiritual, not from worldly knowledge but from God.
8. Look, I tell you, if I hadnt been spiritually reborn, I wouldnt know these things; but God revealed them to me through His holy angel, not because of any merit on my part;
9. For I once joined the sons of Mosiah in trying to destroy the church of God; but God sent His holy angel to stop us on our path.
10. And behold, he spoke to us like thunder, and the whole ground shook beneath us; and we all fell to the ground, overwhelmed by the fear of the Lord.
11. But then, the voice told me: Get up. So I got up and stood, and saw the angel.
12. And he said to me: If you wish to destroy yourself, stop trying to destroy the church of God.
13. Then I fell to the ground; for three days and three nights, I couldnt speak or move my body.
14. The angel continued to speak more to me, which my brothers heard, but I couldnt hear them; for when I heard the wordsIf you wish to destroy yourself, stop trying to destroy the church of GodI was filled with such great fear and awe that I collapsed, and I didnt hear anything else.
15. But I was tormented continually, for my soul was deeply troubled and anguished by all my sins.
16. Yes, I remembered all my wrongdoings and was tormented with the agony of hell; yes, I realized that I had turned against my God and had not followed his holy commandments.
17. Indeed, I had caused many of His children to fall away, leading them to destruction; my wrongdoings were

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

so severe that just thinking about coming before my God caused indescribable dread in my soul.

18. Oh, I thought, if only I could be removed and cease to exist, both in body and spirit, so that I wouldn't have to stand in front of my God to be judged for my actions.

19. And for three days and three nights, I was overwhelmed with anguish, as if my soul were in despair.

20. While I was in this torment, recalling my many sins, I remembered hearing my father prophesy to the people about the arrival of Jesus Christ, the Son of God, who would atone for the sins of the world.

21. As this thought filled my mind, I cried out in my heart: O Jesus, Son of God, have compassion on me, who am trapped in bitterness and surrounded by the unending chains of death.

22. And as I thought this, I could no longer feel my anguish; I wasn't haunted by my sins anymore.

23. Oh, what joy and incredible light I experienced; my soul was filled with joy that surpassed the pain I had felt!

24. Yes, I tell you, my son, nothing could be as exquisite and bitter as my anguish. And I say again, my son, on the other side, nothing could be as exquisite and sweet as my joy.

25. I seemed to see, just as our father Lehi saw, God on His throne, surrounded by countless angels, singing praises to their God; and my soul longed to be there.

26. But my strength returned to my limbs, and I stood up, showing the people that I had been spiritually reborn.

27. And from that moment until now, I have worked tirelessly to help others repent; so they could experience the immense joy that I felt; that they too might be spiritually reborn and filled with the Holy Ghost.

28. And now, look, O my son, the Lord gives me great joy in the results of my efforts;

29. Because of the message He has given me, many have been spiritually reborn, and have tasted as I have, and have seen clearly as I have; therefore they know of these truths as I do; and the understanding I have comes from God.

30. Through every trial and hardship, I have been upheld; God has rescued me from prison, chains, and death; yes, I trust in Him, and He will continue to save me.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

31. I know that He will raise me to be with Him in glory; yes, and I will praise Him forever, for He brought our ancestors out of Egypt, and drowned the Egyptians in the Red Sea; He guided them by His power into the promised land; yes, He has delivered them from oppression repeatedly.

32. Yes, He also brought our ancestors out of Jerusalem; and by His eternal power, He has saved them from bondage and confinement, time after time, even to this day; and I have always remembered their struggles; yes, and you too should remember, just as I have, their captivity.

33. But look, my son, this isnt everything; you should know, as I do, that if you keep Gods commandments, youll thrive in the land; and also, if you dont keep His commandments, you will be separated from His presence. This is according to His word.

### **Alma Chapter 37**

1. My son Helaman, I instruct you to take the records that have been given to me.

2. I also instruct you to keep a record of this people, just like I have done, on the plates of Nephi, and to keep all these things sacred, as I have kept them; for there is a wise reason for preserving them.

3. These brass plates contain engravings of the holy scriptures and the genealogy of our ancestors from the very beginning.

4. Our ancestors prophesied that these records should be preserved and passed down from generation to generation, protected by the Lord until they are shared with every nation, people, and language, so they may understand the mysteries written upon them.

5. Truly, if these records are maintained, they must shine brightly; yes, they will stay bright, and all the plates that hold holy scripture will do the same.

6. You might think Im being foolish, but I tell you, small and simple things bring great things to pass; often, small things confound the wise.

7. The Lord works through means to fulfill His eternal purposes; and by very small things, He can outsmart the wise and assist in saving many souls.

8. Up to now, it has been wise in God's plan to preserve these records; they have increased the knowledge of

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

this people, convinced many of their errors, and led them back to God for their salvation.

9. If it werent for these records, Ammon and his brothers could not have helped so many thousands of Lamanites see the false traditions of their ancestors; these writings and their messages helped them repent, know the Lord, and rejoice in Jesus Christ as their Savior.

10. Who knows what impact they might have on saving thousands of Lamanites and even many stubborn Nephiteswho are currently hardening their hearts in sinfrom realizing who their Redeemer is?

11. These mysteries are not yet fully revealed to me, so I will refrain from discussing them.

12. It is enough to say that they are preserved for a wise purpose known only to God, who acts wisely in all He does, and His paths are straightforward and cyclical.

13. Oh, keep in mind, my son Helaman, how strict Gods commandments are. He said: If you keep my commandments, you will thrive in the landbut if you do not keep them, you will be cut off from my presence.

14. Remember, my son, that God has entrusted you with these sacred things, and He has a wise reason for keeping them sacred, to demonstrate His power to future generations.

15. If you break God's commandments, these sacred things will be taken from you by His power, and you will be handed over to Satan, who will test you like chaff blown by the wind.

16. However, if you keep Gods commandments and handle these sacred things as the Lord directs you, appealing to Him for guidance in all matters, no earthly or hellish power can take them from you, for God is powerful enough to fulfill all His promises.

17. He will keep all His promises to you, for He has already fulfilled promises made to our ancestors.

18. He promised to preserve these things for a wise reason in Him, to show His power to future generations.

19. Now, He has fulfilled one purpose by restoring many thousands of Lamanites to the truth; He has demonstrated His power with them and will continue to do so for future generations; therefore, they will be preserved.

20. I urge you, my son Helaman, to be diligent in following my words, and to diligently keep God's commandments as written.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

21. Now, I want to discuss the twenty-four plates; you must keep them safe so that the mysteries and dark deeds of those who have been destroyed can be revealed to this people; all their murders, thefts, and wickedness must be made known so that you preserve these interpreters.

22. The Lord saw that His people began to engage in secret darkness, murders, and horrible sins; He warned them that if they did not repent, they would be destroyed from the earth.

23. The Lord said: I will prepare a stone for my servant Gazelem that will shine in darkness to show my faithful people what their brethren are doing in secret, as well as their dark works and wickedness.

24. Now, my son, these interpreters were made so Gods word could be fulfilled, which said:

25. I will bring all their secret works and abominations out of darkness; unless they repent, I will destroy them from the earth; and I will reveal all their hidden secrets and wickedness to every nation that will inherit the land.

26. And now, my son, we see that they did not repent; thus they have been destroyed, and so far, Gods word has been fulfilled; their hidden sins have been exposed.

27. I command you to keep their oaths, covenants, and agreements concerning their secret abominations; keep all their signs and wonders from the people so they do not learn them, lest they fall into darkness and be destroyed as well.

28. There is a curse on this land that destruction will come upon all workers of darkness when they are fully ripe; therefore, I hope this people are not destroyed.

29. Keep the secret plans of their oaths and agreements from this people; only reveal their wickedness, murders, and abominations; teach them to hate such wickedness, and inform them that those who were destroyed did so because of their sins and murders.

30. They murdered all the prophets of the Lord who came to warn them of their wrongdoings; the blood of those they killed cried out to the Lord for vengeance; and thus the judgments of God fell upon these workers of darkness and secret combinations.

31. Cursed be the land forever for these workers of darkness and secret combinations, unto destruction, unless

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

they repent before they reach the point of no return.

32. Now, my son, remember what I've told you; do not trust the secret plans of this people, but teach them a lasting hatred for sin and wrongdoing.

33. Teach them repentance and faith in the Lord Jesus Christ; teach them to be humble and gentle; teach them to resist every temptation of the devil by having faith in the Lord Jesus Christ.

34. Encourage them to never lose enthusiasm for doing good, but to remain humble and gentle; for those who do will find peace for their souls.

35. Oh, remember, my son, and gain wisdom while you are young; learn to keep Gods commandments early on.

36. Cry out to God for all your needs; let everything you do be for the Lord, and wherever you go, do so in the Lord; let your thoughts be focused on the Lord, and keep your heart devoted to Him forever.

37. Consult the Lord in all your actions, and He will guide you for good; when you go to bed, rest in the Lords care; when you get up in the morning, be full of gratitude to God; if you do these things, you will be uplifted in the end.

38. I also want to mention the thing our ancestors called a ball or director what they called Liahona, which means compass; the Lord prepared it.

39. No one can craft such intricate work as this. It was made to show our ancestors the way they should travel in the wilderness.

40. It worked for them according to their faith in God; if they believed that God could guide them with those spindles, then it happened; they experienced this miracle every day.

41. However, because these miracles came from small means, they began to overlook their faith and diligence, and those marvelous signs ceased; they didnt progress in their journey.

42. As a result, they lingered in the wilderness, unable to travel directly and suffering from hunger and thirst because of their wrongdoings.

43. Now, my son, understand that these things have a deeper meaning; just as our ancestors were lazy in



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

paying attention to their compass (which were temporary things), they did not succeed; the same holds true for spiritual matters.

44. It is just as simple to heed the word of Christ, which shows a path to eternal happiness, as it was for our ancestors to follow the compass towards the promised land.

45. I ask you, is there a lesson here? Just as this compass guided our ancestors to the promised land, if we follow Christ's words, they will lead us away from this troubled life to a much better promised land.

46. Oh, my son, do not be idle just because the path is easy; our ancestors had the same chance; it was set up for them so if they looked, they would live; the same is true for us. The way is prepared, and if we look to God, we can have eternal life.

47. Lastly, my son, make sure to take care of these sacred things; look to God and live. Go to this people, share the word, and stay serious. Farewell, my son.

### **Alma Chapter 38**

1. The commandments of Alma to his son Shiblon.

2. Comprising chapter 38.

3. My son, listen carefully to what I say, just like I told Helaman. If you follow God's commandments, you will thrive in the land; but if you do not obey, you will be separated from His presence.

4. Now, my son, I hope to find great happiness in you because of your steadfastness and loyalty to God; since you have started to seek the Lord since your youth, I hope you keep following His commandments, for those who endure to the end are blessed.

5. I want you to know, my son, I have already found great joy in you because of your faithfulness, hard work, patience, and endurance among the Zoramite people.

6. I know you were imprisoned; yes, I know you were stoned for your beliefs, and you faced all those challenges with patience because the Lord was with you. Now you know that the Lord did rescue you.

7. Now, my son Shiblon, remember that if you trust in God, He will deliver you from your trials, troubles, and afflictions, and you will be raised up at the last day.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

8. I dont want you to think I know these things on my own; its the Spirit of God within me that reveals them. If I hadnt been born of God, I wouldnt understand these truths.

9. But look, the Lord, in His great mercy, sent an angel to tell me that I had to stop the destructive work among His people; yes, I saw an angel face to face, and he spoke to me with a voice like thunder that shook the earth.

10. I experienced three days and three nights of intense pain and suffering; and until I cried out to the Lord Jesus Christ for mercy, I didnt find forgiveness for my sins. But when I called to Him, I found peace for my soul.

11. Now, my son, Ive shared this with you so you can gain wisdom. Learn from me that there is no other way for man to be saved, except through Christ. He is the life and light of the world. He embodies truth and righteousness.

12. Now that youve started teaching the word, I want you to keep teaching; be devoted and disciplined in all things.

13. Make sure you dont become proud; dont boast about your wisdom or strength.

14. Be bold, but dont be overbearing. Also, control your passions, so you can be filled with love; avoid being idle.

15. Dont pray like the Zoramites do, trying to be seen by others or gain praise for your wisdom.

16. Instead of saying: "O God, thank you that we are better than others," say: "O Lord, forgive me for my unworthiness, and remember my brothers with mercy"always acknowledge your shortcomings before God.

17. May the Lord bless your soul and welcome you into His kingdom at the last day, where you can find peace. Now go, my son, and share this message with the people. Stay serious. Farewell, my son.

## **Alma Chapter 39**

1. The instructions from Alma to his son Corianton.

2. Covering chapters up to 42.

3. Engaging in sexual sin is very wrongCoriantons actions prevented the Zoramites from accepting the

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

message Christ's redemption also applies to those who lived before him. Around 74 B.C.

4. Now, my son, I want to talk to you about something in addition to what I said to your brother; have you noticed how steady your brother is, his faithfulness, and how he diligently follows Gods commandments? He has set a good example for you.

5. You did not pay as much attention to my teachings as your brother did among the Zoramites. This is what I have against you; you became boastful about your own strength and wisdom.

6. Thats not all, my son. You did something that really upset me; you abandoned your ministry and went into the land of Siron, near the Lamanites, to pursue the harlot Isabel.

7. Yes, she led many astray; but thats no excuse for you. You should have focused on the ministry you were entrusted with.

8. Dont you know, my son, that such actions are detestable to the Lord? They are among the worst sins, second only to murdering innocent people or denying the Holy Ghost.

9. Because if you deny the Holy Ghost after having received it, and you know you are denying it, that is a sin that cannot be forgiven; and whoever kills while knowing the truth of God finds it hard to obtain forgiveness.

10. And now, my son, I wish you had not committed such a serious sin. I wouldnt bring up your wrongdoing just to make you feel bad if it werent important for your well-being.

11. But you cannot hide your sins from God; if you dont repent, they will stand against you on the final day of judgment.

12. Now, my son, I want you to repent and turn away from your sins. Dont follow your lustful desires anymore, but restrain yourself in all these matters; for unless you do this, you cannot inherit Gods kingdom. Please remember this and take it to heart.

13. I urge you to consult your older brothers about your decisions; you are still young and need their guidance. Pay attention to their advice.

14. Dont let yourself be led astray by foolish things; dont allow the devil to pull your heart back to those wicked harlots. Look at the great trouble your actions caused among the Zoramites; they lost faith in my

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

words because of your behavior.

15. Now the Spirit of the Lord tells me: I must instruct my children to do good, so they dont lead many away to destruction; therefore, my son, I urge you in the fear of God to move away from your wrongdoings.

16. Turn to the Lord with all your heart, strength, and mind; dont lead anyone else to do evil; instead, seek to return to them, admit your errors and the harm you have caused.

17. Dont pursue riches or the empty things of this world; remember, you cant take these things with you.

18. Now, my son, I want to share a few thoughts with you about the coming of Christ. I tell you, it is he who will come to take away the sins of the world; he comes to bring good news of salvation to his people.

19. And now, my son, this is the work you were called to do, to share this good news with the people, to prepare their hearts; or rather, for salvation to come to them, so that they can prepare their children to hear the word of God at his coming.

20. Now, I want to help you feel better about this. You might wonder why these things have been revealed in advance. I tell you, is not every soul just as valuable to God now as it will be at the time of his coming?

21. Isn't it just as important for the people to know the plan of redemption now as it will be for their children in the future?

22. Isnt it just as easy for the Lord to send his angel to convey this good news to us now as it will be for our children, or even after his coming?

### **Alma Chapter 40**

1. Now my son, I want to share a bit more with you because I can see you are worried about what happens after death regarding the resurrection.

2. Listen carefully, I want to clarify that there is no resurrection, or in simpler terms, this physical body does not turn into an immortal one, and this decaying body does not become incorruptible, until after Christ comes.

3. Indeed, He is the one who will bring the dead back to life. However, my son, the resurrection is not happening just yet. Now, Im revealing to you a mystery. Although there are many mysteries that only God knows, I want to explain one that I have diligently asked God aboutspecifically about the resurrection.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

4. There is an appointed time for everyone to emerge from the dead. No one knows when that time will be, but God knows when it is.
5. Whether there will be one, two, or multiple times when people rise from the dead doesn't matter; God knows all of this, and it is enough for me to know that there is a designated time for everyone to be resurrected.
6. Now, there must be a period between death and resurrection.
7. And now I want to ask what happens to the souls of people from when they die until the time set for them to rise again?
8. It doesn't really matter if there will be more than one resurrection time; people do not die all at once, and that doesn't matter to God all time is like one day to Him, and we only measure time regarding mankind.
9. So, there is a specific time when people will rise again from the dead; and there is a gap between death and resurrection. Regarding this time gap, what happens to the souls of people is what I have deeply sought to learn from the Lord, and this is what I do know.
10. When the time comes for everyone to rise, they will understand that God knows all timings set for man.
11. Now, talking about the condition of the soul between death and resurrection an angel shared with me that as soon as people leave their physical bodies, all spirits, whether good or bad, return to God who gave them life.
12. Then, the spirits of the righteous will enter a state of happiness known as paradise, a place of rest and peace, where they will no longer be troubled or burdened by sorrow.
13. On the other hand, the spirits of the wicked, those who have chosen to do evil and have no part of God's Spirit, will find themselves cast into outer darkness. They will experience weeping, wailing, and grinding of teeth due to their own wrongdoing, as they are held captive by the devil's influence.
14. This is the state of the wicked lost in darkness, facing fear and expecting God's wrath. They remain in this condition, just as the righteous dwell in paradise, until the time for resurrection comes.
15. Some believe this state of happiness and misery before resurrection might be considered a first resurrection. Yes, it can be described as a form of resurrection, as it involves the spirit or soul being placed in

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

either happiness or misery according to previous teachings.

16. Furthermore, there has been talk of a first resurrection, which refers to all those from Adams time until Christs resurrection.

17. However, we should not think this first resurrection only means the souls being assigned to happiness or misery. Thats not what it means.

18. I tell you, it refers to the reunion of the soul with the body from the time of Adam through to Christs resurrection.

19. Now, I cant say whether the souls and bodies of those mentioned will all be reunited at once, both the wicked and the righteous; what I will say is that they will all rise, or their resurrection will occur before the resurrection of those who die after Christ.

20. My son, I dont claim that their resurrection happens at Christs resurrection; but I believe that the souls and bodies of the righteous are reunited at His resurrection and ascension into heaven.

21. But whether that happens at His resurrection or afterward, I cant specify; what I do say is that there is a period between death and the bodys resurrection, during which the soul is in either happiness or misery until the time appointed by God for the dead to rise and reunite, and stand before Him to be judged for their actions.

22. Indeed, this brings about the restoration of everything that has been prophesied.

23. The soul will be restored to the body, and the body will return to the soul; yes, every limb and joint will be restored; even every hair on the head will be restored; everything will return to its proper and perfect state.

24. Now, my son, this is the restoration that the prophets have spoken about

25. And then the righteous will shine brightly in Gods kingdom.

26. But behold, a terrible fate awaits the wicked; they die in a state of disconnection from goodness; they are impure, and nothing impure can enter Gods kingdom; they will be cast out and will face the consequences of their evil actions, and they will drink from a bitter cup.

## **Alma Chapter 41**

1. In the Resurrection, people will rise to eternal happiness or eternal miserydoing wrong has never led to

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

happinesspeople who focus only on physical things are separated from God in this lifeevery person will regain the traits and characteristics they developed during their time on Earth.

2. Now, my son, I need to talk to you about the idea of restoration that has been mentioned; some people have misunderstood the scriptures and have gone badly astray because of this. I can tell that you have been troubled by this as well. But I will help clarify it for you.

3. I am telling you, my son, that the plan of restoration aligns perfectly with Gods sense of justice; everything must be brought back to its rightful place. It is both right and fair, through the power of Christs resurrection, that each person's spirit returns to their physical body, and that each part of the body returns to its rightful place.

4. It is also just according to God's justice that people should be judged based on their actions; if their actions were good in this life, and their hearts desired good, then they should, on the final day, return to what is good.

5. Conversely, if their actions were bad, then they will face the consequences of those evil actions. Therefore, all things will be set righteverything will return to its natural statemortality will become immortality, and corruption will become incorruptionpeople will be raised to eternal happiness to join God's kingdom or to eternal misery to belong to the devil's kingdom, one on one side and the other on the opposite side.

6. One will rise to happiness based on their desire for it or good based on their desire for goodness; the other will rise to evil based on their desire for wrongdoing; just as they have wanted to do wrong continuously, they will receive their punishment when the time comes.

7. Similarly, if someone repents for their wrongdoings and seeks righteousness until the end of their life, they will be rewarded for their quest for goodness.

8. These are the people who are saved by the Lord; they are those who have been rescued from the endless darkness; their fate is determined by their own choices, whether they choose to do good or to do evil.

9. Now, God's decrees cannot be changed; therefore, the path is set, so anyone who chooses can walk it and find salvation.

10. Now listen, my son, do not risk offending God any further based on these doctrines you have already

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

strayed into with your sins.

11. Don't think that because there is talk of restoration, you can move from sin to happiness. I tell you, wrongdoing has never equated to happiness.

12. Now, my son, everyone living purely by instinct, or in a fleshly state, is trapped in deep bitterness and sin; they are cut off from God in this existence and act against Gods nature; thus, they cannot experience true happiness.

13. Now, consider this: does restoration mean taking something natural and putting it in an unnatural state, or transforming it to something contrary to its original nature?

14. Oh, my son, that is not what it means; restoration means returning evil for evil, or flesh for flesh, or wicked for wickedgood for good; right for right; just for just; merciful for merciful.

15. So, my son, make sure to show mercy towards your fellow beings; act fairly, judge rightly, and continuously do good; if you do these things, you will receive your reward; you will also receive mercy again; justice will be returned to you; your righteous judgment will come back to you; and goodness will be rewarded to you.

16. What you send out will return to you; therefore, the idea of restoration condemns the sinner even more and does not justify them at all.

### **Alma Chapter 42**

1. Mortality is a trial period for humans to have the chance to repent and serve GodThe Fall caused both physical and spiritual death for everyoneRedemption is available through repentanceGod Himself makes up for the sins of the worldMercy is offered to those who repentAll others will face God's justiceMercy exists because of the AtonementOnly those who truly repent will be saved.

2. Now, my son, I notice there's something else bothering you that you can't quite comprehendit's about Gods justice in punishing sinners; you seem to think its unfair for a sinner to face misery.

3. Listen, my son, I will clarify this issue for you. After God sent our first parents out from the garden of Eden to work the ground where they were createdHe removed the man and placed angels at the east side of the



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

garden with a flaming sword that moved in all directions to guard the tree of life

4. Now we realize that the man had gained knowledge like God, understanding good and evil; and so that he wouldnt reach for the tree of life, eat from it, and live forever, the Lord placed the angels and the flaming sword to prevent him from eating its fruit

5. Thus, we see that there was a period given to humanity to repent, yes, a time to repent and serve God.

6. If Adam had immediately taken from the tree of life, he would have lived forever, as God had said, leaving no time for repentance; indeed, this would have made Gods word useless, and the wonderful plan of salvation would have been ruined.

7. But understand this: it was ordained that man should dieso when they were separated from the tree of life, they would also be separated from the earthand humanity became lost forever, yes, they became fallen.

8. Now, you see that our first parents were cut off both physically and spiritually from Gods presence; thus, they became subjects to follow their own desires.

9. It was not beneficial for man to be saved from this physical death, as that would ruin the great plan of happiness.

10. So, since the soul can never die, and the Fall brought both physical and spiritual death upon everyone, meaning they were separated from Gods presence, it was necessary for humanity to be restored from this spiritual death.

11. As they had become earthly, sensual, and sinful by nature, this trial state was meant for them to prepare; it became a time for preparation.

12. And now remember, my son, without the plan of redemption, (putting it aside) after they died, their souls would be miserable, being cut off from the presence of God.

13. There was no way to bring people back from this fallen state, which they had brought on themselves due to their own disobedience;

14. So, according to justice, the plan of redemption couldnt unfold without the condition of individual repentance in this trial state; yes, this preparatory time; for without these conditions, mercy would not function

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

except it would destroy the work of justice. The work of justice cannot be destroyed; otherwise, God would stop being God.

15. Thus, we see that all mankind had fallen, and they were stuck in the grasp of justice; yes, the justice of God, which condemned them to be cut off from His presence forever.

16. Now, the plan of mercy could not happen unless an atonement was made; therefore God Himself makes atonement for the sins of the world, to implement the plan of mercy, satisfying the demands of justice so that God can be both perfect in justice and merciful.

17. Now, repentance could not come to people unless there was a punishment, which was also eternal like the soul's life, opposing the eternal plan of happiness.

18. Now, how could a person repent unless they sinned? How could they sin if there was no law? How could there be a law unless there were a punishment?

19. There was a punishment set and a fair law given, which caused guilt to weigh on man's conscience.

20. If there were no law stating that a person who murdered would die would that person fear death if they murdered?

21. If there was no law against sin, people wouldnt be afraid to sin.

22. And if there was no law given, if individuals sinned, what claim could justice or mercy have, since they would have no authority over the individual?

23. But a law has been established, along with punishment, and repentance is allowed; this repentance is claimed by mercy; otherwise, justice claims the person and enforces the law, applying the punishment; otherwise, justices work would be dismantled, and God would cease to be God.

24. But God never stops being God, and mercy claims the repentant, and mercy exists because of the atonement; the atonement leads to the resurrection of the dead; the resurrection brings people back into Gods presence; and so they are restored to His presence to be judged based on their actions, according to law and justice.

25. Indeed, justice fulfills all its demands, and mercy claims everything that belongs to her; thus, only those

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

who truly repent are saved.

26. Do you think mercy can take away from justice? I tell you, No; not at all. If that were so, God would cease to be God.

27. Thus God fulfills His grand and eternal plans, which were prepared from the beginning of the world. This is how the salvation and redemption of mankind come about, along with their destruction and suffering.

28. So, my son, anyone who wishes to come may come and freely drink from the waters of life; and whoever does not wish to come is not forced to, but on the last day, they will receive back according to their deeds.

29. If someone has wished to do evil and hasnt repented during their life, look, evil will come upon them, according to God's restoration.

30. Now, my son, I hope you let these issues bother you no more, and just let your sins trouble you, with a remorse that leads you to repentance.

31. My son, I desire that you should stop questioning Gods justice. Do not try to lessen your guilt for your sins by denying Gods justice; instead, let Gods justice, mercy, and patience have full control in your heart, and let it bring you down in humility.

32. Now, my son, you are called by God to preach the word to this people. Now, my son, go forth and declare the word with truth and seriousness, so that you can bring souls to repentance, thereby allowing the great plan of mercy to lay claim upon them. And may God grant you according to my words. Amen.

### **Alma Chapter 43**

1. Alma and his sons began to share their teachings with the people, and Alma himself felt restless and joined them in their mission.

2. We wont elaborate further on their preaching other than to say they spoke the truth through the spirit of prophecy, and they preached with divine authority as God had called them.

3. Now, I will return to tell about the conflicts that took place between the Nephites and the Lamanites during the eighteenth year of the judges rule.

4. At that time, the Zoramites switched sides and became Lamanites, so early in the eighteenth year, the

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

Nephites realized that the Lamanites were approaching and started getting ready for battle, gathering their armies in the territory of Jershon.

5. The Lamanites arrived in large numbers, entering the area of Antionum, which belonged to the Zoramites, and they were led by a man named Zerahemnah.

6. Because the Amalekites had a stronger tendency toward wickedness and violence than the Lamanites, Zerahemnah appointed Amalekites and Zoramites as captains over the Lamanite forces.

7. He did this to keep their anger towards the Nephites alive and to control them to fulfill his own ambitions.

8. His plan was to incite the Lamanites to fight against the Nephites so that he could gain significant power over them and dominate the Nephites by enslaving them.

9. Meanwhile, the Nephites aimed to protect their land, homes, wives, and children from their enemies, ensuring their rights, freedoms, and ability to worship God as they wished.

10. They were aware that if they fell into the hands of the Lamanites, anyone who worshipped the true God would be at severe risk of being destroyed.

11. They also understood the Lamanites intense hatred for their brethren, the Anti-Nephi-Lehites, who were known as the people of Ammon these people had made a vow not to take up arms so if the Lamanites captured them, they would face inevitable destruction.

12. The Nephites would not allow that to happen, so they provided them with land to live on.

13. The people of Ammon gave the Nephites a large portion of their resources to support their military efforts, leaving the Nephites to confront the Lamanites by themselves, who were a mix of Laman and Lemuel, the sons of Ishmael, and those who had broken away from the Nephites, including Amalekites, Zoramites, and descendants of the priests of Noah.

14. The descendants of these groups were almost as numerous as the Nephites, forcing the Nephites to go into battle against their own kinsmen, resulting in great bloodshed.

15. As the Lamanite armies assembled in Antionum, the Nephite armies were ready to face them in Jershon.

16. The leader of the Nephites was Moroni, who was appointed to command all their forces.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

17. Moroni took charge of the Nephite armies, and at only twenty-five years old, he led them into battle.
18. He encountered the Lamanites on the borders of Jershon, where his people were equipped with swords, curved swords, and all kinds of weapons.
19. When the Lamanites saw that Moroni had armed his troops with breastplates and shields, and they were also wearing heavy clothing
20. The army led by Zerahemnah was not similarly equipped; they had only their swords, curved swords, bows, arrows, stones, and slings; most of them were practically naked, except for a loincloth; only the Zoramites and Amalekites had some clothing.
21. But they were not wearing breastplates or shields, which made them extremely fearful of the Nephite armies, despite their larger numbers.
22. Seeing this, they were too scared to approach the Nephites in Jershon; so they retreated into the wilderness, planning to go around by the head of the river Sidon to enter Manti and take possession of the land, mistakenly thinking that Moroni wouldnt track them.
23. However, as soon as they left for the wilderness, Moroni sent scouts out to track their camp; knowing of Almas prophecies, he also sent messages to Alma, asking him to seek the Lords guidance on where the Nephite forces should go to defend against the Lamanites.
24. The Lord revealed to Alma that the Lamanites were trying to sneak around in the wilderness to strike at the weaker part of the Nephite population. Alma then communicated this message back to Moroni.
25. So Moroni left part of his troops in Jershon to prevent any Lamanites from taking over that city, while he took the rest of his forces to Manti.
26. He instructed all the people in that region to unite to fight against the Lamanites, to defend their land, homes, rights, and freedoms, preparing for the Lamanite attack.
27. He had his army hide in a valley near the river Sidon, on the western side, in the wilderness.
28. Moroni placed scouts around to keep an eye on the Lamanite camp.
29. Since he understood the Lamanites aimed to destroy their own people or enslave them to establish their

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

own kingdom, he felt justified in using strategy to defend against them, so he learned from his scouts which path the Lamanites would take.

30. Moroni then split his army and positioned part of it in the valley, hiding them to the east and south of the hill Riplah;

31. And the remaining part he concealed in the western valley, to the west of the river Sidon, extending into the borders of Manti.

32. With his forces positioned as he had planned, he was ready for battle.

33. The Lamanites advanced toward the north of the hill where some of Moroni's army was hidden.

34. As the Lamanites passed the hill Riplah and entered the valley, starting to cross the river Sidon, the hidden contingent led by Lehi surrounded them from the east.

35. The Lamanites, realizing they were ambushed from behind by the Nephites, turned to fight back against Lehi's army.

36. Both sides began fighting fiercely, but the Lamanites suffered more because they were exposed and vulnerable to the Nephites' swords, leading to many deaths.

37. On the other hand, while a few Nephites fell due to injury, most were protected by their armor and shields, allowing them to continue effectively battling the Lamanites.

38. As the Lamanites experienced great losses, they began to panic and started to retreat towards the river Sidon.

39. Lehi and his men chased them, driving them into the water of Sidon, while Lehi kept his forces on the riverbank to prevent any from escaping across.

40. Simultaneously, Moroni and his troops confronted the Lamanites in the valley across the river Sidon, striking them down.

41. The Lamanites fled again towards Manti, only to be met once more by Moroni's army.

42. This time, the Lamanites fought with incredible ferocity; they had never fought with such strength before.

43. Their fighting spirit was fueled by the Zoramites and Amalekites, who were their leaders, especially

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

Zerahemnah, who commanded them; they fought fiercely, and many Nephites fell before them, as they broke through some of their armor and wounded them.

44. Despite this, the Nephites were inspired by a nobler cause; they were fighting not for power but for their homes, freedoms, families, and their right to worship.

45. They believed it was their duty to defend themselves, as God had told them not to allow themselves to be victims as long as they had not been the aggressors.

46. God had also commanded them to defend their families, even risking their lives in the process. So, they fought to protect themselves, their families, and their religious beliefs.

47. When Moroni's men witnessed the Lamanites' fierce attack, they were tempted to withdraw in fear. But Moroni noticed their hesitation and motivated them by reminding them of their homes and freedom.

48. They rallied together, crying out to God for help in their fight for liberty.

49. Empowered by their plea to God for freedom, they began to stand firm against the Lamanites, and at that moment, the Lamanites began to flee, retreating towards the river Sidon.

50. Despite the Lamanites outnumbering the Nephites more than two to one, they were being pushed back and gathered into a single grouping in the valley near the river Sidon.

51. Thus, Moroni's forces surrounded them on both sides of the river, with Lehi's men positioned on the east side.

52. When Zerahemnah saw Lehi's men on one side and Moroni's on the other, he was filled with dread.

53. Seeing their fear, Moroni commanded his troops to halt the bloodshed.

### **Alma Chapter 44**

1. They paused and stepped back. Moroni said to Zerahemnah: Look, Zerahemnah, we don't want to be violent. You know we have the power to defeat you, but we don't want to kill you.

2. We haven't come to fight you to take your power; we don't aim to enslave anyone. But you are here because you want to fight us, and you are upset with us because of our beliefs.

3. Look, the Lord is on our side; He has handed you over to us. Understand that this is happening because of

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

our faith in Christ. You can see that you cant destroy our belief.

4. Now you realize that this is the true faith in God; you see that He will support and protect us as long as we remain faithful to Him and our beliefs. The Lord will not allow us to be destroyed unless we turn away from Him and deny our faith.

5. And now, Zerahemnah, I command you, in the name of the all-powerful God who has made us strong enough to defeat you, through our faith and our worship, and because we owe devotion to our families and our land; and by the sacred word of God that brings us happiness

6. Yes, and this is not all; I urge you, by everything you value in life, to give us your weapons. We wont seek to harm you, but we will spare your lives if you leave us in peace and dont come to fight us again.

7. But if you dont do this, you are in our power, and I will tell my men to attack and kill you, so well see who truly has control over this people; well see who ends up being enslaved.

8. When Zerahemnah heard these words, he approached and surrendered his sword, his dagger, and his bow to Moroni, saying: Here are our weapons; we will give them to you, but we refuse to swear an oath to you that we know we would break, along with our children. Take our weapons and let us go into the wilderness; otherwise, well keep our swords and either die or fight back.

9. We dont share your beliefs; we dont think it was God who gave us into your hands; we believe its your cunning that has kept you safe from us. Your armor and shields are what have protected you.

10. After Zerahemnah finished speaking, Moroni returned the sword and weapons he had received, saying: We will end this conflict.

11. I cant take back what I said, so as truly as the Lord lives, you wont leave unless you swear you wont come back to fight us. Now that we have you, we will either kill you or you will accept the terms Ive proposed.

12. After Moroni said this, Zerahemnah kept his sword and was angry with him. He charged at Moroni to strike him, but one of Moronis soldiers struck Zerahemnah's sword down to the ground, breaking it at the hilt. He also struck Zerahemnah, and his scalp fell off. Zerahemnah retreated among his soldiers.

13. The soldier who had severed Zerahemnah's scalp picked it up by the hair, placed it on the tip of his sword,



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

and held it up, loudly declaring:

14. Just as this scalp, the scalp of your leader, has fallen to the ground, so will you fall if you do not give us your weapons and leave in peace.

15. Many, upon hearing these words and seeing the scalp on the sword, were filled with fear; many threw down their weapons at Moroni's feet and made a peace agreement. Those who agreed to the treaty were allowed to go into the wilderness.

16. Zerahemnah was extremely angry and rallied his remaining soldiers to fight more fiercely against the Nephites.

17. Moroni, angered by the Lamanites' stubbornness, ordered his people to attack and kill them. They began to slay them, and the Lamanites fought back with all their strength.

18. But the bare skin and heads of the Lamanites were vulnerable to the sharp swords of the Nephites; they were struck down fast by the Nephites' swords, just as Moroni's soldiers had predicted.

19. When Zerahemnah saw his people were about to be defeated, he cried out to Moroni, promising to agree to peace and asking that the rest of their lives be spared, vowing they would not wage war against the Nephites again.

20. Moroni then told his men to stop killing, and he took the weapons of war from the Lamanites. After they agreed to a peace treaty, they were allowed to leave for the wilderness.

21. The number of dead was too great to count; both the Nephites and Lamanites suffered heavy losses.

22. They cast their dead bodies into the waters of Sidon, where they sank and were buried in the depths of the sea.

23. The Nephite armies, led by Moroni, returned to their homes and lands.

24. Thus ended the eighteenth year of the judges' reign over the Nephites, and thus concluded Alma's record, which was written on the Nephi plates.

## **Alma Chapter 45**

1. The story of the Nephite people, their conflicts and disagreements during Helaman's time, based on the

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

records he maintained.

2. This includes chapters up to 62.

3. Helaman trusts Alma's wordsAlma predicts the Nephites' downfallHe offers blessings and curses for the landAlma may have been taken by the Spirit, similar to MosesTensions in the Church increase. Around 73 B.C.

4. Look, the Nephites were very happy because the Lord had saved them from their enemies again; so they thanked the Lord their God. They fasted and prayed a lot and worshiped God with immense joy.

5. In the nineteenth year of the judges' rule over the Nephites, Alma approached his son Helaman and asked: Do you believe the words I told you about the records that have been kept?

6. Helaman replied: Yes, I believe.

7. Alma then asked: Do you believe in Jesus Christ, who is to come?

8. Helaman answered: Yes, I believe everything you have said.

9. Alma continued: Will you follow my commandments?

10. Helaman responded: Yes, I will follow your commandments with all my heart.

11. Then Alma said: You are blessed; the Lord will help you thrive in this land.

12. But listen, I need to tell you a prophecy; however, you must not share it until it comes true, so write down what I say.

13. Here are the words: I see that this very people, the Nephites, through revelation, will lose their faith in four hundred years after Jesus Christ shows himself to them.

14. Yes, they will then face wars, diseases, famines, and bloodshed until the Nephites are no longer a people

15. This is because they will lose their faith and fall into darkness, immorality, and all kinds of wrongdoing. I tell you, because they will sin against such great light and knowledge, I assure you that the fourth generation will not pass away before this great wickedness happens.

16. When that day arrives, soon those who are now, or are descendants of those currently among the Nephites, will no longer be considered Nephites.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

17. But those who survive and are not destroyed on that terrible day will be counted among the Lamanites and will become like them, except for a few who will be called the disciples of the Lord; these few will be pursued by the Lamanites until they are no more. Because of the wickedness, this prophecy will come to pass.

18. After Alma shared these words with Helaman, he blessed him and his other sons; he also blessed the land for the righteous.

19. He said: This is what the Lord God says This land will be cursed, yes, this land, for every nation, race, language, and people that does evil when their time is full. What I say will happen; this is the blessing and curse of God on the land, because the Lord cannot tolerate sin in any form.

20. After Alma spoke these words, he blessed the church and all those who would remain steadfast in faith from that time onward.

21. Once he finished, Alma left the land of Zarahemla, apparently heading towards Melek. After that, he was never heard from again; we do not know about his death or burial.

22. What we do know is that he was a righteous man; there was a saying in the church that he was taken by the Spirit or buried by the Lord's hand, just like Moses. The Scriptures say the Lord took Moses to Himself, and we assume that Alma was similarly received in the spirit; therefore, we know nothing about his death and burial.

23. At the beginning of the nineteenth year of the judges' reign over the Nephites, Helaman went among the people to share the message with them.

24. This was necessary because of their wars with the Lamanites and the numerous small conflicts among the people, so it was important that God's word be proclaimed and that rules be established in the church.

25. So, Helaman and his brothers went out to re-establish the church across the land and in every city among the Nephites. They appointed priests and teachers throughout all the land for all the churches.

26. After Helaman and his brothers appointed priests and teachers, disagreements arose among them, and they stopped listening to Helaman and his brothers;

27. Instead, they became proud and haughty due to their immense wealth; they saw themselves as rich and

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

would not heed the guidance to live righteously before God.

### **Alma Chapter 46**

1. People who refused to listen to Helaman and his companions gathered together against their fellow believers.
2. They were extremely angry and determined to kill them.
3. Their leader, a strong and big man, was named Amalickiah.
4. Amalickiah wanted to be king, and the angry group wanted him as their leader. Most of them were lower judges in the land, and they sought power.
5. They were influenced by Amalickiahs flattering words, believing that if they supported him, he would make them rulers over the people.
6. Despite Helaman and his companions' teachings and their care for the church, Amalickiah led them to conflict and division.
7. Many in the church were swayed by his flattering speeches, causing them to break away from the church, which put the Nephite people in a very dangerous position, despite their recent victory over the Lamanites and their joyful celebrations of being delivered by God.
8. This shows how quickly people forget the Lord, how easily they do wrong, and how easily they are led astray by the devil.
9. One wicked individual can cause great harm among people.
10. Amalickiah was clever and skilled at flattery, leading many people to commit wrongdoing and threatening to destroy the church of God and the liberty He had given them in the land.
11. When Moroni, the chief commander of the Nephite armies, learned about the conflicts, he was furious with Amalickiah.
12. He tore his coat, took a piece of it, and wrote on it In remembrance of our God, our religion, and freedom, and our peace, our wives, and our children and attached it to a pole.
13. He put on his helmet, armor, and shields, strapped on his weapons, and lifted the pole with the torn coat

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

(calling it the title of liberty). He humbly prayed to God for blessings of freedom for his people, as long as there were faithful Christians in the land.

14. Those who were true followers of Christ were called Christians by those outside the church.

15. The faithful in the church willingly took the name of Christ as Christians because they believed in the coming of Christ.

16. At that time, Moroni prayed for the cause of the Christians and for the freedom of the land to be blessed.

17. After pouring out his heart to God, he named all the land south of Desolation, and all the land north and south, as a chosen land, a land of liberty.

18. He boldly declared that God would not allow those who are despised for following Christ to be crushed and destroyed unless they brought it upon themselves through their own sins.

19. After saying this, Moroni went among the people, holding up the torn piece of his garment so everyone could see the writing and shouted loudly:

20. "Whoever will stand for this title in the land, come forward with the strength of the Lord and make a promise to uphold their rights and their religion, so that God may bless them."

21. When Moroni proclaimed these words, the people rushed together, ready for battle, tearing their garments as a sign of their commitment to God, promising that if they ever disobeyed God's commandments and were ashamed to take the name of Christ, they would suffer just as they had ripped their clothes.

22. This was their promise: they threw their garments at Moroni's feet, pledging that they deserved to be destroyed like their brethren in the north if they fell into sin; just as they had cast their garments before him to be stepped on.

23. Moroni told them: "We are a remnant of Jacob's descendants, a remnant of Joseph, whose coat his brothers tore to pieces. Lets remember to obey God's commandments, or we might be torn apart by our own people and suffer imprisonment, enslavement, or death."

24. "Lets safeguard our freedom as a remnant of Joseph; lets recall Jacob's words before he died. He saw that part of Josephs coat was preserved and had not decayed. He said'Just as this part of my sons coat has been

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

saved, so shall a remnant of my sons descendants be saved by God's hand while the rest of Joseph's descendants perish, just like the remnant of his coat."

25. "Now, this brings me sorrow; yet, I have joy in my son because of the part of his descendants that will be taken to God."

26. This was Jacobs message.

27. Now, who knows if the descendants of Joseph who shall perish like his coat are those who have turned away from us? And it could be us if we do not hold strong in our faith in Christ.

28. After Moroni said these words, he went out and sent messengers throughout the land to gather everyone who wanted to defend their freedom against Amalickiah and his supporters, called Amalickiahites.

29. When Amalickiah realized that Moroni's followers outnumbered his own, and that his group was uncertain about the righteousness of their cause, he feared losing and fled with some of his men to the land of Nephi.

30. Moroni believed it was unwise to let the Lamanites gain any more power, so he planned to confront Amalickiah and eliminate him, knowing he would incite the Lamanites against them to achieve his goals.

31. Therefore, Moroni took his assembled and armed forces, who had agreed to keep peace, and marched into the wilderness to cut off Amalickiah's path.

32. He effectively executed his plan, moving into the wilderness to intercept Amalickiahs armies.

33. As a result, Amalickiah fled with a small group of men, while most were captured by Moroni and returned to the land of Zarahemla.

34. Moroni was appointed by the chief judges and the people, giving him authority over the Nephite armies to establish control.

35. Anyone among the Amalickiahites who refused to agree to support freedom and maintain a free government was put to death; only a handful rejected the freedom covenant.

36. Moroni also made sure the title of liberty was raised on every tower across the Nephite lands, symbolizing freedom among the Nephites.

37. Peace was restored in the land, and they maintained this peace up until nearly the end of the nineteenth

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

year of the judges' reign.

38. Helaman and the high priests also kept order in the church, enjoying four years of significant peace and joy within it.

39. Many died, fully believing that the Lord Jesus Christ had redeemed their souls, leaving the world rejoicing.

40. Some died from fevers that were common during certain seasons, but not as many because of the many beneficial plants and roots God had prepared to cure ailments caused by the climate.

41. Others died of old age; those who died in faith of Christ are surely happy in Him, as we can assume.

### **Alma Chapter 47**

1. Amalickiah becomes king of the Lamanites through deceit, murder, and cunningThe Nephite defectors are even more evil and fierce than the Lamanites. About 72 B.C.

2. Now let's go back to Amalickiah and those who had escaped with him into the wilderness. He took his followers and went into the land of Nephi among the Lamanites, stirring them up to become angry at the Nephites. Because of this, the king of the Lamanites declared a message throughout his land, urging his people to gather and prepare for battle against the Nephites.

3. When the message was received, the Lamanites were very frightened; they feared displeasing the king and also feared going into battle against the Nephites, worried for their lives. Most of them refused to follow the king's commands.

4. The king was angry because they disobeyed him, so he put Amalickiah in charge of the part of his army that obeyed him and ordered Amalickiah to compel the others to fight.

5. This was exactly what Amalickiah wanted; being clever in his evil plans, he secretly decided to overthrow the king of the Lamanites.

6. He had gained control over the obedient portion of the Lamanites and sought to win the favor of the disobedient ones. So he went to a place called Onidah, where the Lamanites had fled, believing an army was coming to destroy them.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

7. They had chosen a man to be their king and leader, fully resolved not to submit to fighting against the Nephites.
8. They gathered on the top of a mountain named Antipas, getting ready for battle.
9. However, Amalickiah did not plan to fight them according to the king's orders; instead, he intended to gain favor with the Lamanite armies, put himself in charge, dethrone the king, and take over the kingdom.
10. He had his army set up their tents in the valley near Mount Antipas.
11. Later that night, he sent a secret message to the leader on the mountain, named Lehonti, asking him to come down because he wanted to speak with him.
12. When Lehonti got the message, he was afraid to go down. Amalickiah sent a second message asking him to come down, but Lehonti still refused. Amalickiah sent a third message.
13. When Amalickiah realized he couldn't persuade Lehonti to come down, he climbed up closer to Lehonti's camp and sent a fourth message asking him to come down, this time requesting that he bring his guards.
14. When Lehonti came down with his guards, Amalickiah arranged for Lehonti and his army to come down at night and surround Amalickiah's men in their camps, promising to turn them over to Lehonti if he would make Amalickiah a second-in-command over the whole army.
15. Lehonti agreed, and when he surrounded Amalickiah's men, they found themselves trapped by Lehonti's forces before they woke up at dawn.
16. Seeing they were surrounded, Amalickiah's men begged him to allow them to join their fellow soldiers so they wouldn't be destroyed. This was precisely what Amalickiah wanted.
17. He then gave his men to Lehonti, going against the king's orders, advancing his plot to dethrone the king.
18. It was customary among the Lamanites that if their leader was killed, the second-in-command would take over.
19. So Amalickiah secretly arranged for one of his servants to gradually poison Lehonti, which led to his death.
20. After Lehonti died, the Lamanites chose Amalickiah to be their leader and head commander.



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

21. Amalickiah then marched with his armies to the land of Nephi, entering the chief city there.
22. When the king came out to meet him with his guards, he believed Amalickiah had fulfilled his orders and gathered a mighty army against the Nephites.
23. But as the king approached, Amalickiah instructed his servants to go and meet him. They bowed before the king, pretending to show respect for his greatness.
24. When the king reached out to help them up, as was the Lamanite custom and a sign of peace, he lifted the first man when, suddenly, Amalickiah stabbed the king in the heart, and the king fell to the ground.
25. The king's servants fled, while Amalickiah's servants shouted:
26. Look, the king's servants have stabbed him, and he has fallen while they run away! Come and see!
27. Amalickiah ordered his troops to go and check what had happened to the king. When they arrived and saw the king lying in his blood, Amalickiah feigned anger, calling out: Whoever loved the king should chase after his servants to kill them!
28. Hearing this, those who cared for the king ran after his fleeing servants.
29. When the king's servants noticed an army pursuing them, they became scared again and ran into the wilderness, crossing over into Zarahemla and joining the people of Ammon.
30. The pursuing army returned, realizing they had failed, and this allowed Amalickiah to win over the people through his trickery.
31. The next day, he entered the city of Nephi with his armies and took it over.
32. Afterward, the queen heard that the king had been murdered. Amalickiah had sent a message to her, claiming that the king had been killed by his own servants, and he had tried to pursue them but they escaped.
33. Upon receiving this news, the queen sent a message to Amalickiah asking him to spare the people of the city and inviting him to meet with her, also requesting that he bring witnesses to confirm the king's death.
34. Amalickiah brought the same servant who had killed the king and others who were with him to the queen, and they all testified that the king had been killed by his own servants, adding that they had fled. This made the queen believe their story about the king's death.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

35. Amalickiah then sought the queen's favor and took her as his wife; through his deceit and with the help of his crafty followers, he became king, being recognized throughout the land by all the Lamanites, which included the Lamanites, Lemuelites, Ishmaelites, and all the dissenters from the Nephites since the time of Nephi.

36. These dissenters, who had received the same teachings and knowledge about the Lord as the Nephites, strangely became even more hardened and unrepentant, more wild, evil, and fierce than the Lamanites. They embraced the traditions of the Lamanites and surrendered to laziness and all forms of wicked behavior, completely forgetting the Lord their God.

### **Alma Chapter 48**

1. After Amalickiah became king, he started to provoke the Lamanites to rise up against the Nephites. He appointed people to speak out from their towers and incite the Lamanites against the Nephites.

2. He managed to instill hatred in the Lamanites, and by the end of the nineteenth year of the judges' reign, having achieved his plans so far and become king over the Lamanites, he wanted to rule over everyone in the land, including both Nephites and Lamanites.

3. His plans were successful, for he hardened the Lamanites' hearts, clouded their minds, and stirred up their anger, gathering a large army to fight against the Nephites.

4. Determined by the size of his army, he aimed to defeat the Nephites and enslave them.

5. He chose leaders from the Zoramites, who were familiar with the Nephites' strengths, their gathering places, and the weakest areas of their cities; these leaders he made the commanders of his forces.

6. Then they packed up their camp and moved towards Zarahemla through the wilderness.

7. While Amalickiah was gaining power through trickery, Moroni was busy preparing the hearts of the Nephites to stay faithful to their God.

8. He strengthened the Nephite armies and built small forts, creating earthen barriers to protect his troops and stone walls to surround their cities and lands.

9. He stationed the majority of his men in the weaker fortifications, thereby fortifying and reinforcing the areas

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

held by the Nephites.

10. Moroni was getting ready to protect their liberty, homes, families, and peace so that they could serve the Lord and uphold what their enemies labeled the Christian cause.

11. Moroni was a strong and powerful leader, wise and not fond of violence; he valued the freedom and liberty of his homeland and his people.

12. He was grateful to God for the many blessings given to his people and dedicated considerable effort to ensure their safety and well-being.

13. He was also a firm believer in Christ, having pledged to defend his people, their rights, their land, and their faith, even if it cost him his life.

14. The Nephites were trained to defend against their enemies even if it meant shedding blood when necessary; they were also taught to avoid conflict unless it was to protect their lives.

15. This was their belief: by doing so, God would help them prosper in the land, meaning if they adhered to God's commandments, He would look after them; He would warn them to flee or prepare for battle as danger approached.

16. Moreover, God would guide them on how to defend themselves and, by following these instructions, He would save them; this was Moroni's faith, and he took pride in it not in violence, but in doing good, protecting his people, obeying God's commandments, and resisting wrongdoings.

17. Truly, I say to you, if everyone had been, is, or will be like Moroni, the very forces of evil would have been cast down forever, and the devil would have no power over people's hearts.

18. He was a man like Ammon, Mosiah's son, as well as the other sons of Mosiah and Alma with his sons, all of whom were righteous men of God.

19. Helaman and his brothers were just as valuable to the people as Moroni; they preached God's word and baptized anyone willing to listen to them.

20. So they went out, and the people repented because of their teachings, which led them to receive God's favor, allowing them to live without wars or conflicts for four years.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

21. However, as I mentioned, towards the end of the nineteenth year, despite their peace, they found themselves reluctantly needing to fight against their Lamanite brethren.

22. Indeed, their wars with the Lamanites persisted for many years, despite their hesitance to engage.

23. They were saddened to take up arms against the Lamanites because they did not enjoy causing bloodshed; they were also troubled to be responsible for sending many of their kindred to the afterlife, unprepared to stand before God.

24. However, they could not allow themselves to sacrifice their lives while their wives and children faced being slaughtered by the brutal actions of those who were once their brothers, who had chosen to leave their faith and ally with the Lamanites to destroy them.

25. They could not tolerate the thought of their brethren celebrating over the deaths of the Nephites while there were still any among them who obeyed God's commandments, for the Lord's promise was clear: if they followed His commandments, they would prosper in the land.

### **Alma Chapter 49**

1. In the eleventh month of the nineteenth year, on the tenth day, the armies of the Lamanites were seen coming toward the land of Ammonihah.

2. The city had been rebuilt, and Moroni had placed an army at the city's borders, with a dirt fortification around them to protect against the Lamanites' arrows and stones.

3. Indeed, while the city of Ammonihah had been partially rebuilt, the Lamanites wrongly believed they could easily conquer it again, having previously destroyed it due to the people's sins.

4. However, they were greatly disappointed, for the Nephites had built a high earth embankment around themselves, making it impossible for the Lamanites to effectively use their stones and arrows against them, except at their entrance.

5. At this time, the chief Lamanite leaders were extremely surprised by the Nephites' clever defenses.

6. The Lamanite leaders had believed that because of their large numbers, they could easily attack as they had before; they had also equipped themselves with shields, breastplates, and thick skin garments to cover

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

themselves.

7. With this preparation, they thought they would easily overpower the Nephites or slay them at will.

8. But to their absolute surprise, the Nephites were ready for them in ways never seen among the descendants of Lehi, prepared for battle according to Moroni's strategies.

9. The Lamanites, or followers of Amalickiah, were greatly shocked by how well the Nephites were prepared for war.

10. If King Amalickiah had led his army personally from the land of Nephi, he might have made the Lamanites attack the Nephites at Ammonihah, as he cared little for his peoples lives.

11. However, Amalickiah did not personally go to battle, and his chief captains were afraid to engage the Nephites at Ammonihah, as Moroni had changed the way the Nephites organized themselves, which left the Lamanites unable to find safe retreats.

12. So, they retreated into the wilderness, and moved toward the land of Noah, thinking that would be a good next place to confront the Nephites.

13. They didnt know that Moroni had built strong defenses in every city surrounding them; thus, they marched towards Noah with firm resolve and took an oath to destroy its inhabitants.

14. Yet, they were stunned to find that the city of Noah, previously weak, had become strong under Moronis leadership, even stronger than Ammonihah.

15. Moroni had wisely anticipated that the Lamanites would be intimidated by Ammonihah, and since Noah had been the weakest location, they would attack there, which worked out just as he hoped.

16. Moroni had appointed Lehi as the chief captain over the men of that city; this was the same Lehi who had fought against the Lamanites in the valley east of the river Sidon.

17. When the Lamanites learned that Lehi was in charge, they were again disappointed because they feared him greatly; nonetheless, their leaders were bound by their oaths to attack, so they gathered their forces.

18. The Lamanites could not enter the Nephites' fortifications except through the main entrance, due to the height of the earth embankment and the depth of the surrounding ditch.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

19. The Nephites were positioned to defeat anyone attempting to climb into their fort through any other means by throwing stones and arrows at them.

20. Thus, they were prepared: a group of their strongest men, armed with swords and slings, stood ready to strike down anyone trying to enter through the main entrance, prepared to defend against the Lamanites.

21. The captains of the Lamanites assembled their armies at the entrance and began fighting against the Nephites to breach their defenses, but they were continually pushed back and suffered tremendous losses.

22. When they realized they couldnt overpower the Nephites at the entrance, they began digging down the earth banks to create a passage for their armies to fair off equally, but they were met with stones and arrows thrown at them; instead of successfully filling in their ditches, they became filled with their slain and wounded.

23. In this way, the Nephites maintained power over their enemies; the Lamanites continued to try to defeat the Nephites until all their chief captains were killed, with over a thousand Lamanites dead, while not a single Nephite was lost.

24. About fifty Nephites were wounded by Lamanite arrows through the pass, but they were protected by their armor, so many of their injuries were on their legs and quite severe.

25. When the Lamanites saw that all their chiefs had been killed, they fled into the wilderness and returned to the land of Nephi to inform their king, Amalickiah, who was originally a Nephite, about their great losses.

26. He became extremely angry with his people for not being able to defeat the Nephites and subject them to slavery.

27. He was filled with rage, cursed God and Moroni, swearing that he would make Moroni pay with his blood, all because Moroni had followed Gods commandments and protected his people.

28. On the other hand, the Nephites expressed gratitude to the Lord their God for His unmatched power in rescuing them from their enemies.

29. Thus, the nineteenth year of the judges reign over the Nephites came to a close.

30. There was ongoing peace among them, and the Church experienced great prosperity due to their careful

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

attention to the word of God, which was preached to them by Helaman, Shiblon, Corianton, Ammon, and others ordained by God, who were baptized unto repentance and sent forth to deliver their message to the people.

### **Alma Chapter 50**

1. Moroni prepares for battle and defends his people against the Lamanites by having his armies start digging trenches around all the cities in Nephite territory at the beginning of the twentieth year of the judges' reign.
2. On top of these earth ridges, he had wooden structures built up to a height of a person around the cities.
3. He had frames of wooden stakes constructed on these structures, making them strong and tall.
4. Moroni also had towers built that overlooked these wooden stakes, with secure areas on the towers to protect them from the stones and arrows of the Lamanites.
5. From the tops of these towers, they could throw stones at anyone trying to get close to the city walls.
6. Moroni set up stronghold defenses all around every city in the land against their enemies.
7. Next, he sent his armies into the eastern wilderness, driving all the Lamanites who were there back into their own lands, located south of Zarahemla.
8. The land of Nephi extended in a straight line from the east sea to the west.
9. Once Moroni cleared the Lamanites from the eastern wilderness that was north of their own territories, he allowed the inhabitants of Zarahemla and the surrounding areas to move into the eastern wilderness and settle by the seashore.
10. He also stationed armies in the south along the borders of their territories and had them build fortifications to protect their people from enemy attacks.
11. Thus, he cut off all Lamanite strongholds in the eastern wilderness and fortified the border between the Nephites and Lamanites, securing the area from the west sea to the head of the river Sidon, with the Nephites possessing all the land northward, extending even beyond the land of Bountiful.
12. With the assurance of safety provided by his defenses, Moroni and his ever-growing armies aimed to diminish the strength and influence of the Lamanites over their lands.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

13. The Nephites started building a new city, naming it Moroni, located by the east sea and south of the Lamanite territories.

14. They also began constructing another city between Moroni and Aaron, naming this one Nephihah.

15. In that same year, they built multiple cities in the northern area, including one specifically called Lehi, situated along the northern seashore.

16. This marked the end of the twentieth year.

17. During these successful times, the Nephite people thrived as they began the twenty-first year of the judges' rule.

18. They became very prosperous and rich, multiplying and growing stronger in the land.

19. This shows how merciful and fair the Lord is in all His dealings, fulfilling His promises to mankind; we see His words being confirmed right now, just as He told Lehi:

20. Blessed are you and your children; they will be blessed as long as they follow my commandments. But remember, if they do not keep my commandments, they will be cut off from My presence.

21. These promises have proven true for the Nephites; their conflicts, quarrels, murders, thefts, idolatries, sexual immorality, and other wicked acts among themselves have led to their wars and destructions.

22. Those who remained faithful to the Lord's commandments were always saved, while many of their sinful brothers faced captivity, death by the sword, or joined the Lamanites.

23. Indeed, there has been no happier period among the Nephites since Nephi's time than during Moroni's leadership, especially in the twenty-first year.

24. The twenty-second year of the judges' reign ended with peace, as did the twenty-third year.

25. However, in the start of the twenty-fourth year, there would have been peace among the Nephites if not for a dispute over the lands of Lehi and Morianton, which were near the seashore.

26. People living in Morianton claimed part of Lehi's land, causing a serious dispute and leading them to take up arms against their neighbors, intent on killing them.

27. The people of Lehi sought refuge in Moroni's camp, pleading for his help because they had done nothing



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

wrong.

28. When the Morianton people, led by a man named Morianton, learned that the people of Lehi had fled to Moronis camp, they feared an assault from Moronis army.

29. Thus, Morianton suggested that they escape to the northern lands, which were mostly water, and take control of the northern territory.

30. They nearly went through with this plan, which would have been disastrous, but Morianton, filled with anger, severely beat one of his slave girls.

31. She escaped to Moronis camp and informed him of everything, including their plans to flee to the north.

32. The people in Bountiful, or Moronis camp, worried that they would listen to Morianton and join him, which would have serious repercussions for the Nephite people and threaten their freedom.

33. So, Moroni sent an army to intercept the Morianton people and prevent their escape to the north.

34. However, they didn't catch them until they reached the borders of the land Desolation, where they intercepted them at a narrow pass leading by the sea into the north.

35. Moroni's army, led by Teancum, confronted the Morianton people. Stubborn and emboldened by their wicked leader's flattering words, a battle broke out, resulting in Teancum killing Morianton, defeating his army, taking prisoners, and returning to Moronis camp. This concluded the twenty-fourth year of the judges' reign over the Nephite people.

36. The Morianton people were brought back, and upon agreeing to maintain peace, they were restored to their land and united with the Lehi people.

37. That same year of restored peace, Nephihah, the second chief judge, passed away after serving righteously in the judgment seat before God.

38. However, he had denied Alma access to sacred records and items, which Alma and his ancestors considered most holy; thus, Alma entrusted them to his son, Helaman.

39. The son of Nephihah was appointed to take his fathers place as chief judge and governor, sworn to judge fairly, preserve the peace and freedom of the people, support their right to worship God, and ensure that the

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

wicked faced justice for their actions.

40. His name was Pahoran. Pahoran succeeded his father and began his reign at the end of the twenty-fourth year among the Nephite people.

### **Alma Chapter 51**

1. In the beginning of the twenty-fifth year of the judges ruling over the Nephites, they had established peace between the people of Lehi and Morianton concerning their lands, and started the year peacefully.

2. However, this peace did not last long, as disagreements arose among the people regarding Chief Judge Pahoran; some wanted certain aspects of the law changed.

3. But Pahoran stood firm and refused to change the law, so he ignored those who submitted their requests for those changes.

4. As a result, those wanting Pahoran replaced were angry with him and wanted him out of his position; this led to heated debates, but there was no violence.

5. Those wanting to remove Pahoran from the judgeship were known as king-men because they wanted to change the law to eliminate the free government and place a king in power.

6. On the other hand, those wanting Pahoran to stay in power called themselves freemen, and thus the division began. The freemen committed to uphold their rights and freedoms through a government that allowed for liberty.

7. This dispute was ultimately resolved by the people's vote. The vote favored the freemen, allowing Pahoran to keep his position, leading to great relief among Pahoran's supporters and many liberty-loving people, who silenced the king-men, forcing them to support freedom.

8. The pro-king faction consisted of nobles seeking power, and they received support from those desiring control over the population.

9. However, this was a critical time for such disputes within the Nephite community; for Amalickiah had once more stirred up the Lamanites against them and was gathering soldiers from all around his land, preparing for war, vowing revenge against Moroni.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

10. Despite his reckless promise, he did organize himself and his armies for battle against the Nephites.
11. His armies weren't as large as before due to the many he lost to Nephite warriors, yet Amalickiah still managed to gather a large force, enough to fearlessly approach the land of Zarahemla.
12. Yes, even Amalickiah himself came down leading the Lamanites during the twenty-fifth year of the judges reign; it was at this time that the disputes over Chief Judge Pahoran were being settled.
13. When the king-men heard about the Lamanite invasion, they were pleased and refused to take up arms, filled with rage against Pahoran and the liberty supporters, unwilling to defend their country.
14. Seeing this, Moroni was extremely angry at the stubbornness of those he had worked tirelessly to protect; he was outraged, feeling betrayed.
15. So, he sent a request, backed by the people's voice, to the governor of the land, asking for authority to make those dissenters defend their country or face death.
16. His top priority was to resolve the fighting and disagreements among the people, as they had caused much of their troubles. This request was agreed upon as per the people's vote.
17. Moroni commanded his army to confront the king-men, to strip away their arrogance and authority, either to fight for freedom or face consequences.
18. The armies marched against the king-men; they brought down their pride, and as the king-men attacked Moroni's warriors, they were defeated and fell to the ground.
19. A total of four thousand dissenters were killed in battle, and their leaders who survived were imprisoned, as there wasn't time for trials during this urgent period.
20. Those who remained chose to fight for their country rather than face death, agreeing to raise the banner of liberty in their cities and take up arms in defense.
21. Thus, Moroni eliminated the king-men; there was no longer anyone identified by that title, and he humbled those who had claimed noble lineage, urging them to join their fellow citizens in defending their freedom.
22. While Moroni was working to quell conflicts and bring his people to peace while preparing for war against the Lamanites, the Lamanites invaded the land of Moroni, close to the coast.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

23. The Nephites were not strong enough in the city of Moroni, and Amalickiah managed to overpower them, killing many and taking control of the city and its defenses.
24. Those who fled from Moroni found refuge in Nephihah, and the people of Lehi also gathered to prepare for battle against the Lamanites.
25. However, Amalickiah did not allow the Lamanites to attack Nephihah but kept them along the coast while leaving soldiers in every city to protect them.
26. He continued taking over many cities, including Nephihah, Lehi, Morianton, Omner, Gid, and Mulek, all located along the eastern coast.
27. Thanks to Amalickiah's cunning, the Lamanites gained many cities, all well-fortified like those of Moroni, providing strongholds for them.
28. They marched toward the borders of Bountiful, pushing the Nephites back and killing many.
29. Fortunately, they were confronted by Teancum, who had already slain Morianton and was leading his people as they fled.
30. Teancum also intercepted Amalickiah as he advanced with his large army, aiming to seize Bountiful and the northern lands.
31. However, Teancum and his men successfully repulsed Amalickiah, as they were stronger and more skilled fighters, gaining the upper hand.
32. They pressed hard against the Lamanites, fighting them until nightfall. Teancum and his warriors pitched their tents in Bountiful while Amalickiah settled his troops near the beach.
33. When night fell, Teancum and his servant secretly entered Amalickiah's camp, where the soldiers had fallen asleep from exhaustion due to the day's heat and battles.
34. Teancum quietly slipped into the king's tent and stabbed him with a javelin, killing him without waking his servants.
35. He then returned quietly to his own camp and found his men asleep. He woke them up and recounted what had occurred.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

36. He organized his soldiers to be ready in case the Lamanites had awoken and would launch an attack.
37. And thus the twenty-fifth year of the judges reign over the Nephites concluded, marking the end of Amalickiah's days.

### **Alma Chapter 52**

1. In the twenty-sixth year of the judges reign over the Nephites, the Lamanites woke up one morning to find Amalickiah dead in his tent, and Teancum was ready to fight them that day.
2. When the Lamanites realized this, they were frightened; they gave up their plan to march north and retreated with their entire army into the city of Mulek, seeking safety behind their fortifications.
3. Amalickiah's brother was made king over the Lamanites, and he was named Ammoron; thus, Ammoron became king in place of his brother Amalickiah.
4. He ordered his people to hold onto the cities they had captured, for they had lost many lives in doing so.
5. Teancum noticed that the Lamanites were set on keeping the cities and land they had taken, and seeing their huge numbers, he decided not to attack them in their forts.
6. Instead, he kept his men nearby as if preparing for war; indeed, he was getting ready to defend himself by building walls and setting up strategic positions.
7. He continued making preparations for war until Moroni sent many soldiers to strengthen his army.
8. Moroni instructed him to keep all the prisoners he captured; since the Lamanites had taken many prisoners, he should hold onto them as leverage for those the Lamanites had taken.
9. He also ordered Teancum to fortify the land of Bountiful and protect the narrow pass leading north, so the Lamanites wouldnt be able to take that point and threaten them from all sides.
10. Moroni sent a message asking Teancum to stay vigilant in defending that part of the land, and to look for every chance to weaken the Lamanites there, so he might regain the cities lost; he was also to strengthen and fortify the cities that had not fallen to the Lamanites.
11. He added that he wished he could come to him, but the Lamanites were attacking them near the western sea; he was going to confront them, so he could not come.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

12. Ammoron had left the land of Zarahemla, informing the queen about his brothers death, gathering many men, and marching against the Nephites in the western coastal areas.

13. He aimed to harass the Nephites and lure part of their forces away, while instructing his remaining troops to hold the cities they captured and harass the Nephites at the eastern sea, seizing as much land as they could based on their army's strength.

14. Thus, the Nephites faced these dangerous circumstances at the end of the twenty-sixth year of the judges reign over the people of Nephi.

15. However, in the twenty-seventh year of the judges reign, Teancum, under Moronis command who had set up armies to protect the southern and western borders and started marching toward Bountiful to assist Teancum in retaking lost cities

16. Teancum received orders to attack and reclaim the city of Mulek if possible.

17. He got ready to assault the city and march against the Lamanites, but seeing it was impossible to overpower them while they were fortified, he abandoned the plan and returned to Bountiful to wait for Moronis arrival for reinforcements.

18. Moroni arrived at Bountiful toward the end of the twenty-seventh year of the judges reign over the Nephites.

19. At the beginning of the twenty-eighth year, Moroni, Teancum, and several chief captains held a war council to decide how to draw the Lamanites out of their defenses for battle, seeking a way to cleverly force them out so they could reclaim Mulek.

20. They sent envoys to the Lamanite army protecting Mulek, asking their leader Jacob to confront them on the plains between the cities. But Jacob, a Zoramite, refused to engage on the plains.

21. With no hope of meeting them in a fair fight, Moroni decided to lure the Lamanites out from their defenses.

22. He ordered Teancum to take a small group of men and march near the beach while he, with his army, stealthily moved through the wilderness west of Mulek. The next day, when the Lamanite guards spotted

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

Teancum, they rushed to inform Jacob.

23. The Lamanite armies advanced toward Teancum, thinking they could easily overpower him due to their larger numbers. Seeing them approach, Teancum began to retreat toward the northern seashore.

24. When the Lamanites saw him fleeing, they gained confidence and chased after him vigorously. As Teancum led the Lamanites in pursuit, Moroni instructed part of his army to enter the city and seize it.

25. They successfully captured the city, killing all those left to defend it who refused to surrender their weapons.

26. Thus, Moroni gained control of Mulek with part of his army while moving with the rest to confront the Lamanites returning from chasing Teancum.

27. The Lamanites pursued Teancum until they were close to Bountiful, where they encountered Lehi and a small force left to protect the city.

28. When the Lamanite leaders saw Lehi approaching with his troops, they fled in confusion, worried they wouldn't reach Mulek before Lehi caught up with them, as they were exhausted from marching while Lehi's men were still fresh.

29. The Lamanites were unaware that Moroni was behind them with his army; their only concern was Lehi and his men.

30. Lehi didn't wish to overtake them until they encountered Moroni and his army.

31. Before long, the Lamanites found themselves surrounded by the Nephite forces, with Moroni's men on one side and Lehi's on the other, all fresh and strong while the Lamanites were weary from their long march.

32. Moroni ordered his men to engage and force the Lamanites to surrender their weapons.

33. Jacob, their leader and a determined Zoramite, led the Lamanites fiercely against Moroni, seeking to break through to Mulek. However, Moroni and his troops were stronger and did not yield to the Lamanites.

34. A fierce battle erupted, with many casualties on both sides; Moroni was injured and Jacob was killed.

35. Lehi pushed forward with great force from behind, causing those Lamanites in the rear to give up their weapons while the rest, confused, didn't know where to flee or fight.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

36. Seeing their confusion, Moroni told them: If you will surrender your weapons, we will not kill you.
37. When the Lamanites heard this, their remaining leaders came forward and threw down their weapons at Moroni's feet, commanding their men to do the same.
38. However, many refused to surrender; those who would not give up their swords were captured and bound, having their weapons taken, and were forced to march with their fellow soldiers into Bountiful.
39. Ultimately, the number of prisoners taken far exceeded the number slain, exceeding the casualties on both sides.

### **Alma Chapter 53**

1. Guards were assigned to watch over the Lamanite prisoners, and they were forced to go and bury their own dead, as well as the dead Nephites who had been killed; Moroni placed men to oversee them while they worked.
2. Moroni, together with Lehi, went to the city of Mulek, took control of it, and handed it over to Lehi. This Lehi had been with Moroni in most of his battles, and he was similar in character to Moroni; they were happy to see each other safe, and they were loved by one another as well as by the Nephite people.
3. Once the Lamanites finished burying their dead and the Nephite dead, they were marched back into the land of Bountiful, and Moroni ordered Teancum to have them start digging a ditch around the city of Bountiful.
4. Moroni instructed that they should build a solid wooden wall on the inside of the ditch, and they piled dirt from the ditch against the wooden wall; thus, the Lamanites worked until they had completely surrounded the city of Bountiful with a tall and strong wall made of wood and earth.
5. This city became a very strong fortress from then on, and the prisoners of the Lamanites were kept there, even within a wall that they had built with their own labor. Moroni had to make the Lamanites work because it was easier to guard them while they were busy, and he wanted all his troops prepared for an attack on the Lamanites.
6. As a result, Moroni achieved a victory over one of the largest Lamanite armies and captured the city of Mulek, which was one of the Lamanites' strongest positions in Nephi; thus, he also built a secure place to keep



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

his prisoners.

7. After this, he did not try to fight the Lamanites again that year, but rather focused on getting his men ready for war, reinforcing defenses against the Lamanites, rescuing their women and children from hunger and suffering, and providing food for their armies.

8. Now, while Moroni was absent due to some conflicts among the Nephites that led to divisions within them, the Lamanite armies in the southern region by the west sea made some gains against the Nephites, taking several of their cities in that area.

9. Their internal conflicts, due to wickedness and divisions among themselves, placed them in a very dangerous situation.

10. Now regarding the people of Ammon, who were originally Lamanites: they were converted to the Lord through Ammon and his brothers, by the power of God, and had moved to the land of Zarahemla, where they were protected by the Nephites.

11. Because of their oath, they refused to take up weapons against their own people, having promised never to shed blood again; and they would have perished or allowed themselves to be captured by their own brethren if it weren't for the compassion and great love that Ammon and his brothers showed them.

12. This led to their arrival in Zarahemla, where they were always safe thanks to the Nephites.

13. However, when they recognized the danger and the troubles the Nephites faced for their sake, they felt compassion and wanted to fight to defend their homeland.

14. Just as they were about to grab their weapons, Helaman and his brothers convinced them not to break their oath.

15. Helaman was concerned that if they broke their promise, they would endanger their souls; therefore, those who had made this covenant were forced to watch their brethren struggle in perilous situations at this time.

16. However, they had many sons who had not made the same vow to refrain from fighting, so those who were able to take up arms gathered together, calling themselves Nephites.

17. They made a promise to fight for the freedom of the Nephites, pledging to defend their land even at the

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

cost of their lives; they vowed never to give up their liberty and to fight for the Nephites and themselves against oppression.

18. Behold, there were two thousand young men who joined this promise and took up weapons to defend their country.

19. These young men had not previously been a burden to the Nephites; they were now a significant asset, as they all took their weapons and chose Helaman to be their leader.

20. They were all young men, full of courage, strength, and energy; but what's more, they were trustworthy and responsible in all tasks assigned to them.

21. They were honest and serious, having been taught to keep God's commandments and live uprightly before Him.

22. Following this, Helaman led his two thousand young soldiers to support the people living in the southern borders by the west sea.

23. Thus ended the twenty-eighth year of the judges' reign over the people of Nephi.

## **Alma Chapter 54**

1. In the beginning of the twenty-ninth year of the judges, Ammoron sent a message to Moroni asking if they could trade prisoners.

2. Moroni was very happy about this request because he needed the food meant for the Lamanite prisoners to help his own people, and he also wanted to rescue his people to make his army stronger.

3. At that time, the Lamanites had taken many women and children captive, and Moroni didn't have any women or children among his prisoners; so Moroni came up with a plan to get as many Nephite prisoners back from the Lamanites as he could.

4. He wrote a letter and sent it back with the same servant of Ammoron who had delivered the initial letter. Here is what he said to Ammoron:

5. Listen, Ammoron, I want to talk to you about the war that you and your brother have started against my people, and which you still want to continue even after his death.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

6. I want to tell you about the justice of God and the severe consequences that are awaiting you unless you repent and pull your troops back to your own land, the land of Nephi.

7. I would explain these things to you if you were willing to listen; I want to warn you about the terrible fate that awaits murderers like you and your brother unless you turn away from your violent plans and return home with your armies.

8. But since you have already rejected this advice and have fought against the people of God, I expect you will do so again.

9. Now, I want you to know that we are ready to confront you; if you don't change your mind, you will face God's anger for rejecting Him, and it will lead to your total destruction.

10. As surely as the Lord lives, our armies will come against you unless you back down, and death will soon be upon you because we will protect our cities and lands; we will defend our faith and our cause.

11. But I suspect that I am just wasting my breath addressing you about these matters; perhaps you are lost to evil; so I will end my letter by saying that I will only exchange prisoners if you give back a man, his wife, and his children for one of your prisoners. If you agree to this, I will go along with the exchange.

12. However, if you refuse, I will come against you with my armies; yes, I will even arm my women and children and pursue you into your own territory, which is the land we originally inherited; it will be an eye for an eye, life for a life, and I will fight you until you are completely wiped out.

13. I am angry, and so is my people; you sought to kill us, while we are only defending ourselves. If you continue to try to destroy us, we will retaliate, and we will take back our land, our original inheritance.

14. Now I end my letter. I am Moroni, the leader of the Nephites.

15. When Ammoron received this letter, he was furious, so he wrote back to Moroni, and here's what he said:

16. I am Ammoron, the king of the Lamanites; I am the brother of Amalickiah, whom you killed. I will take revenge on you, and I will send my armies against you because I am not afraid of your threats.

17. Your ancestors wronged us greatly, taking away our rightful claim to the government that should have belonged to us.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

18. Now, if you lay down your arms and allow yourselves to be ruled by those who rightfully have the government, I will make sure my people will lay down their weapons and we will not fight anymore.

19. You have threatened me and my people many times, but we do not fear your threats.

20. Still, I will agree to exchange prisoners as you requested, happily, so that I can conserve my supplies for my warriors; we are prepared to wage a war that will either make the Nephites serve us or lead to their absolute destruction.

21. As for the God you claim we have rejected, we do not know Him, nor do you; but if such a being does exist, He made us just as He made you.

22. And if there is indeed a devil and a hell, will He not send you to join my brother whom you killed, the one you hinted has gone to such a place? However, these issues are not important to me.

23. I am Ammoron, a descendant of Zoram, whom your ancestors forced out of Jerusalem.

24. Now, I am a bold Lamanite; this war is fought to seek justice for our wrongs and to claim our rightful place in governance; and with that, I conclude my letter to Moroni.

## **Alma Chapter 55**

1. When Moroni received this letter, he became even angrier because he knew that Ammoron understood the deceit behind the conflict; in fact, he knew that Ammoron recognized that there was no fair reason for this war against the Nephite people.

2. He declared: I will not trade prisoners with Ammoron unless he agrees to end his war plans, as I mentioned in my letter; I will not give him any more power than he currently has.

3. Look, I know where the Lamanite guards are keeping my captured people; since Ammoron didnt accept my letter, I will act according to my words; I will fight against them until they ask for peace.

4. Then Moroni told his men to search for someone among them who was a descendant of Laman.

5. They discovered someone named Laman, who was a servant of the king murdered by Amalickiah.

6. Moroni instructed Laman and a small group of men to approach the guards who were looking after the Nephite prisoners.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

7. The Nephites were being held in the city of Gid; thus, Moroni sent Laman with a few men to go there.
8. That evening, Laman approached the guards over the Nephites, and they recognized him and welcomed him; he said to them: Dont be afraid; I am a Lamanite. We have escaped from the Nephites, and they are sleeping; we have brought some of their wine with us.
9. When the Lamanites heard this, they welcomed him joyfully, saying: Share your wine with us so we can drink; we are happy that you have brought wine!
10. Laman replied: Lets save the wine for when we go into battle against the Nephites. But this only made them want to drink the wine even more.
11. They said: We are tired, so lets drink the wine, and later we will get more to boost our strength against the Nephites.
12. Laman said: Do whatever you want.
13. So they drank the wine freely, enjoying its taste and consumed it even more eagerly since it was strong and well-made.
14. Eventually, they became merry and eventually drunk.
15. When Laman and his men saw that all the guards were drunk and deep asleep, they returned to Moroni and reported what had happened.
16. This was exactly what Moroni had planned. He had armed his men with weapons and set off for the city of Gid while the Lamanites slept deeply and were intoxicated, throwing weapons to the prisoners so that they could all arm themselves.
17. Even the women and children capable of holding a weapon were armed by Moroni in complete silence.
18. If the Lamanites had woken up, they would have found themselves drunk, and the Nephites could have easily attacked them.
19. However, Moroni did not want that; he didnt want to kill or shed unnecessary blood but aimed to save his people; to avoid injustice, he chose not to attack the Lamanites in their drunken state.
20. Yet he achieved his goal; he armed the Nephite prisoners inside the city walls, giving them the power to

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

reclaim the areas within the walls.

21. He then instructed his men to step back a little and surround the Lamanite forces.

22. Since this was done at night, when the Lamanites woke up in the morning, they discovered they were surrounded by the Nephites outside and that their prisoners were armed inside.

23. Seeing this, the Lamanites realized the Nephites had power over them, and they felt it was not wise to fight back; thus, their top leaders asked for their weapons back and threw them at the Nephites' feet, begging for mercy.

24. This was precisely what Moroni wanted. He took them as prisoners of war, seized the city, and freed all the Nephite prisoners, who then joined Moroni's army, adding great strength to it.

25. Then he made the Lamanite prisoners begin work on reinforcing the fortifications around the city of Gid.

26. After fortifying the city of Gid as he intended, he moved his prisoners to the city of Bountiful and ensured that city was heavily guarded.

27. Despite the Lamanites' various schemes, they managed to keep all the prisoners safe and maintained control over the territory they had regained.

28. The Nephites began to win again and reclaim their rights and privileges.

29. The Lamanites tried many times to trap them at night, but each time they lost many of their own prisoners.

30. They also often tried to poison the Nephites with wine in hopes of intoxication or worse.

31. However, the Nephites were quick to remember the Lord during their struggles. They weren't fooled by the Lamanite traps; they refused to drink wine unless they first tested it on some Lamanite prisoners.

32. They were careful to make sure no poison was passed on to them; if the wine poisoned a Lamanite, it could also poison a Nephite, so they tested all their drinks.

33. Now, it was necessary for Moroni to get ready to attack the city of Morianton since the Lamanites had greatly fortified it through their efforts.

34. They continually brought fresh troops and supplies to that city.

35. And thus concluded the twenty-ninth year of the judges' reign over the Nephite people.

## **Alma Chapter 56**

1. At the beginning of the thirtieth year of the judges' reign, on the second day of the first month, Moroni received a letter from Helaman, updating him on what was happening with their people in that region.
2. These are the words Helaman wrote: My beloved brother Moroni, both in our shared duty to the Lord and in the struggles we face in battle; I have something important to share about our fight in this area.
3. Look, two thousand sons of the men whom Ammon brought from the land of Nephi these young men are descendants of Laman, the eldest son of our father Lehi.
4. I don't need to remind you about their beliefs or traditions, since you are already familiar with everything related to that.
5. So, I will simply tell you that two thousand of these young men have taken up their weapons and chosen me as their leader; we are determined to defend our homeland.
6. You also know about the promise their fathers made not to take up arms against their brothers and shed blood.
7. But during the twenty-sixth year, when they saw our hardships and struggles on their behalf, they considered breaking their promise and taking up their weapons to help us.
8. However, I did not allow them to break this promise, believing that God would give us strength so we wouldn't suffer more from keeping their oath.
9. But here is something that brings us great joy. In the twenty-sixth year, I, Helaman, led these two thousand young men to the city of Judea to help Antipus, whom you had appointed to lead the people in that area.
10. I joined my two thousand sons (who truly deserve to be called my sons) to Antipus's army, and he was very grateful because his soldiers had been greatly diminished by the Lamanites, who had killed many of our valiant men, leaving us to mourn.
11. Still, we find comfort in knowing that those who died did so fighting for their country and their God, and they are at peace.
12. The Lamanites had also captured many prisoners, all of whom were top leaders, as they spared no others.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

We believe they are now in the land of Nephi if they haven't been killed.

13. These are the cities the Lamanites took after spilling the blood of many of our brave men:

14. The land of Manti, the city of Manti, the city of Zeezrom, the city of Cumeni, and the city of Antiparah.

15. These were the cities they controlled when I got to Judea, and I found Antipus and his men working hard to strengthen the city.

16. They were exhausted both physically and mentally, having fought hard during the day and worked through the night to defend their cities; because of this, they experienced great distress.

17. Now they were determined to either win here or die trying; so you can imagine how much hope and joy my small group, especially my sons, brought them.

18. When the Lamanites saw that Antipus had received additional strength to his army, they were commanded by Ammoron to not attack the city of Judea or us.

19. Thus, we were blessed by the Lord; had they attacked us in our weak state, they could have destroyed our small army, but we were spared.

20. Ammoron instructed them to hold onto the cities they had taken. This concluded the twenty-sixth year. At the start of the twenty-seventh year, we readied our city and ourselves for defense.

21. We wanted the Lamanites to come at us, as we didn't want to attack them in their strongholds.

22. We had spies watching all around to keep an eye on the Lamanites so they wouldn't sneak past us at day or night to assault our cities to the north.

23. We knew those cities weren't strong enough to defend against them; therefore, we were hoping if they did pass us, we could hit them from behind while they faced Antipus in front. We thought we could overpower them, but we were left disappointed.

24. The Lamanites didn't dare pass us with their full army, nor even with part of it, out of fear that they might not be strong enough to win and would be overrun.

25. They didn't dare march down to the city of Zarahemla, nor did they cross the head of Sidon to reach Nephihah.



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

26. With their forces, they were set on holding the cities they had captured.
27. In the second month of this year, we received a lot of supplies from the fathers of my two thousand sons.
28. Additionally, we were sent two thousand men from the land of Zarahemla. So we prepared ourselves with ten thousand men and the supplies we needed, along with provisions for their families.
29. Seeing our forces grow every day and more supplies arriving, the Lamanites started to get anxious and attempted to disrupt our supply chain.
30. When we noticed the Lamanites becoming uneasy, we wanted to execute a clever strategy against them; Antipus directed me to lead my young sons to a nearby city as if we were delivering provisions there.
31. We were to march near the city of Antiparah, pretending we were headed to a city beyond it along the coast.
32. So we marched out, as if delivering our supplies to that city.
33. Antipus led a part of his army as well, leaving the rest to defend the city. He waited until I had moved out with my small army before heading near Antiparah.
34. The strongest and most numerous Lamanite army was stationed in Antiparah.
35. When their spies informed them, they mobilized their army and marched against us.
36. We fled before them to the north, successfully leading away the strongest Lamanite army;
37. Even at a significant distance, when they saw Antipus's army pursuing them bravely, they didnt turn aside but kept their path, aiming to eliminate us before Antipus caught up with them and avoiding being cornered by our forces.
38. Seeing our danger, Antipus hurried his army forward. But since it was night, he couldnt catch up with us, nor could he reach the Lamanites; so we set up camp for the night.
39. Before dawn, the Lamanites were still pursuing us. We were not strong enough to confront them, and I couldnt bear the thought of my young sons falling into their hands; so we continued our trek into the wilderness.
40. They wouldnt turn to the right or left to avoid being surrounded; and I also wouldn't do so to keep from

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

being captured, knowing we wouldnt be able to stand up against them and would be killed while they escaped; thus, we fled that entire day into the wilderness until dark.

41. When morning came, we saw the Lamanites on our trail again, and we fled from them once more.

42. However, they didnt follow us too far before they stopped; it was the third day of the seventh month.

43. Now, whether they were caught by Antipus, we weren't sure, but I told my men: We dont know if they halted to draw us in so they can trap us;

44. So what do you think, my sons, should we go into battle against them?

45. I tell you, my dear brother Moroni, I have never witnessed such bravery, not even among all the Nephites.

46. As I always referred to them as my sons (since they were all quite young), they replied: Father, God is with us and will not allow us to fall; so lets go forward; we dont want to harm our brothers if they leave us alone, so lets move before they overpower Antipuss army.

47. Though they had never fought before, they feared no death and felt more concerned about their fathers freedom than their own lives; they had been taught by their mothers that if they didnt doubt, God would protect them.

48. They recounted to me their mothers words, telling me: We trust our mothers knew this.

49. So I returned with my two thousand to confront those Lamanites pursuing us. When I arrived, I found that Antipuss forces had caught up with them, and a fierce battle was underway.

50. Antipuss army, exhausted from their rapid march, was about to fall prey to the Lamanites; had I not returned with my two thousand, they would not have succeeded.

51. Antipus had been killed, along with many of his leaders, due to their fatigue from marching too fast, leading to confusion among Antipus's men as their leaders fell, and they began to retreat before the Lamanites.

52. Encouraged by this, the Lamanites launched a strong attack when Helaman and my two thousand arrived from behind, and we struck them hard, causing them to halt and turn to face us.

53. When Antipuss people saw the Lamanites diverting their attention, they rallied their forces and attacked the Lamanites from behind.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

54. Then we, the Nephites, the people of Antipus, and I with my two thousand men, surrounded the Lamanites and defeated them; indeed, they were forced to surrender their weapons and themselves as prisoners.

55. When they surrendered to us, I counted the young men who fought beside me, worried that many might have been killed.

56. But to my immense relief, not a single one of them had fallen! They fought as though they had divine strength; indeed, no men had ever been known to fight so valiantly; their courage so intimidated the Lamanites that they surrendered.

57. With no place to safely hold our prisoners without exposing them to the Lamanite armies, we sent them to the land of Zarahemla along with some of Antipus's men who were still alive; the rest I joined with my young Ammonites and we headed back to the city of Judea.

### **Alma Chapter 57**

1. I received a letter from King Ammoron saying that if I handed over the prisoners of war we had captured, he would give us the city of Antiparah.

2. I wrote back to the king, insisting that we were confident in our ability to take Antiparah with our own strength, and that giving up the prisoners for the city seemed foolish to us. We would only give up our prisoners in exchange.

3. Ammoron rejected my letter because he did not want to exchange prisoners. So, we started getting ready to attack the city of Antiparah.

4. The people of Antiparah abandoned the city and fled to their other fortified cities, which allowed us to take control of Antiparah.

5. Thus, the twenty-eighth year of the judges reign came to an end.

6. At the beginning of the twenty-ninth year, we received a shipment of food and reinforcements from Zarahemla and the surrounding areas, adding about six thousand men to our ranks, in addition to sixty sons of the Ammonites who joined my band of two thousand. We were now strong and had plenty of supplies.

7. We decided to engage in battle with the army protecting the city of Cumeni.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

8. I want to show you that we quickly got what we wanted; with part of our strong force, we surrounded the city of Cumeni at night just before they were to receive their food supply.

9. We camped around the city for many nights, sleeping with our swords ready and keeping watch, so the Lamanites could not attack us at night, which they tried to do many times, but each time they attempted it, they were met with death.

10. Eventually, their supplies did arrive, and they intended to enter the city at night. Instead of being the Lamanites, we were the Nephites; so we seized both the supplies and the Lamanites.

11. Even though the Lamanites were cut off from their supplies like this, they still intended to hold the city. Therefore, it made sense for us to take the provisions and send them to Judea, while our prisoners would go to Zarahemla.

12. Shortly thereafter, the Lamanites began to lose all hope of help and eventually surrendered the city to us; thus, we achieved our goal of obtaining the city of Cumeni.

13. However, the number of prisoners we had was so large that we had to use all our strength to contain them or kill them.

14. You see, they tried to break free in large numbers, attacking us with stones, clubs, or anything they could grab, leading to over two thousand of them being killed after they surrendered.

15. So, we had to decide whether to end their lives or keep them under close guard all the way to Zarahemla. Additionally, our supplies were only enough for our own men, despite what we took from the Lamanites.

16. In such critical circumstances, it was difficult to decide what to do with these prisoners; nevertheless, we resolved to send them to Zarahemla. We chose some of our men to take charge of them on the way there.

17. But the next day, they returned instead. We didn't ask about the prisoners because the Lamanites were attacking us, and they arrived just in time to save us from being overrun. Ammoron had sent additional provisions and a large army to support them.

18. Those men we sent with the prisoners arrived just in time to stop the Lamanites, who were about to defeat us.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

19. My small group of two thousand and sixty fought with incredible determination; they stood strong against the Lamanites and dealt death to all who challenged them.

20. While the rest of our army was starting to give in to the Lamanites, those two thousand and sixty remained resolute and fearless.

21. They obeyed every order perfectly; their faith led them to succeed because I remembered what their mothers had taught them.

22. It was this group of my sons, along with the men chosen to escort the prisoners, who made this great victory possible; they drove the Lamanites back to the city of Manti.

23. We managed to keep the city of Cumeni and were not entirely wiped out; still, we suffered significant losses.

24. After the Lamanites fled, I quickly ordered that my wounded men be pulled from among the dead, and I made sure their wounds were treated.

25. Out of my two thousand and sixty men, two hundred had fainted from blood loss; however, thanks to God's goodness and to our astonishment and joy, not one of them died. None of them perished, and all had multiple wounds.

26. Their survival amazed our entire army, especially since a thousand of our fellow soldiers had been killed. We attribute this miracle to God's power, due to their great faith in what they believed that there is a just God who preserves those who do not doubt.

27. This was the faith of those I've mentioned; they were young, strong-minded, and continually trusted in God.

28. After ensuring our wounded men were cared for and burying our dead along with the many dead Lamanites, we asked Gid about the prisoners that were supposed to go to Zarahemla.

29. Gid was the lead captain responsible for guarding them on their way.

30. These are the words Gid shared with me: We started to go down to Zarahemla with our prisoners when we encountered some of our army's spies who were watching the Lamanite camp.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

31. They warned us that the Lamanite armies were marching toward Cumeni and were planning to attack our people.

32. When our prisoners heard this, it gave them courage, and they rebelled against us.

33. Because of their rebellion, we had to defend ourselves. They charged at us, most of them running onto our swords, resulting in many of them being killed, while the few who survived broke free and escaped.

34. When they fled and we couldn't catch up, we hurried back to the city of Cumeni to assist our comrades in defending it.

35. Once more, we were saved from our enemies. Blessed be the name of God; for it is He who has delivered us and accomplished this great thing for us.

36. When I, Helaman, heard Gid's words, I was overwhelmed with joy because of God's goodness in keeping us safe from destruction; I trust that the souls of those who died have found peace with their God.

### **Alma Chapter 58**

1. We decided that our next target was to capture the city of Manti, but our small forces couldn't lure the Lamanites out of the city. They were aware of our past strategies, making it impossible to draw them away from their fortifications.

2. The Lamanites outnumbered us significantly, so we couldn't risk attacking them in their fortified positions.

3. It was necessary for us to keep our forces in the areas we had already reclaimed, so we decided to wait for more reinforcements from Zarahemla along with additional supplies.

4. I sent a message to our governor to keep him updated on our situation. While we waited for reinforcements and supplies from Zarahemla, we encountered more challenges.

5. This situation wasn't very beneficial to us, as the Lamanites were also gaining strength and supplies daily; things were difficult for us during this time.

6. The Lamanites frequently came out against us, trying to find ways to destroy us; however, we couldn't engage them due to their stronghold and quick retreats.

7. We endured these hard times for several months, even nearing starvation due to our lack of food.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

8. But we eventually received provisions brought to us by an army of two thousand men, which was the only help we received to defend ourselves and our land from our many enemies.
9. We were troubled and fearful, unsure why more strength and support werent sent to us. We worried that this might bring the consequences of Gods judgment upon our land and lead to our destruction.
10. So, we earnestly prayed to God for strength and deliverance from our enemies, asking him to help us maintain our cities, lands, and possessions for the sake of our people.
11. And then, God reassured us that he would save us; he filled us with peace, great faith, and hope for our rescue.
12. We gathered the courage we had left and resolved to fight our enemies to keep our lands, possessions, wives, children, and the cause of our freedom.
13. Thus, we marched forward with all our strength against the Lamanites in the city of Manti, setting up our tents near the wilderness close to the city.
14. The next day, when the Lamanites noticed us at the border by the wilderness, they sent out spies to gather information about the size and strength of our army.
15. When they realized we werent numerous and feared we might cut them off from their supplies, they decided to prepare for battle, thinking they could easily defeat us with their large army.
16. Seeing them preparing for battle, I directed Gid and a few of his men to hide in the wilderness, and Teomner and some of his men did the same.
17. Gid and his men were on one side, while Teomner was on the other. Once they were hidden, I stayed with the rest of my army at the spot where we first set up camp, ready for the Lamanites to attack.
18. When the Lamanites finally charged toward us, I commanded my men to retreat into the wilderness.
19. The Lamanites pursued us quickly, eager to catch and kill us, following us into the wilderness while we managed to pass by Gid and Teomner without being noticed.
20. Once the Lamanite army had moved past, Gid and Teomner emerged from their hiding spots and captured the Lamanite spies to prevent them from returning to the city.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

21. After dealing with the spies, they rushed to the city and attacked the remaining guards, killing them and taking control of the city.

22. This happened because the Lamanites had led almost their entire army into the wilderness, leaving only a few guards behind.

23. Thus, Gid and Teomner successfully captured their strongholds. We then set our course, having traveled a long way through the wilderness toward the land of Zarahemla.

24. When the Lamanites spotted Gid and Teomner heading toward Zarahemla, they grew fearful, suspecting a trap was being laid against them, so they decided to retreat back into the wilderness, taking the same route they had come.

25. It was nighttime when they set up their camp, as the Lamanite leaders thought we were exhausted from our march and believed they had forced us to retreat, leading them to neglect the city of Manti.

26. That night, I ordered my men to stay awake and march forward along a different path toward Manti.

27. Due to our night march, we managed to arrive before the Lamanites at the city of Manti the next day.

28. So, through this clever plan, we successfully took control of the city of Manti without any bloodshed.

29. When the Lamanite armies arrived near the city and saw we were ready for battle, they were filled with shock and fear, which made them flee into the wilderness.

30. Yes, the Lamanite armies retreated from this whole region. However, they took many women and children with them.

31. All the cities captured by the Lamanites are now back in our hands, and our families are returning home, except for those who were taken prisoner.

32. However, our forces are still small in comparison to the many cities we need to protect and the great possessions we have.

33. Still, we have faith in our God, who has given us victory over these lands, helping us reclaim our cities and properties.

34. We do not understand why the government hasn't sent us greater reinforcements, nor do those who joined



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

us know why more help hasn't arrived.

35. Perhaps, they think your efforts are not successful, and you have redirected forces to the other side of the land; if that is the case, we will not complain.

36. If that's not it, we fear there may be a division among the government causing them not to send more help since we know they have more troops than what they have sent.

37. Nevertheless, we trust that God will save us, despite our limited forces, and free us from our enemies.

38. This is now the latter part of the twenty-ninth year, and we hold onto our lands, while the Lamanites have fled to the land of Nephi.

39. The sons of the people of Ammon, whom I have praised highly, are with me in Manti, and the Lord has protected them, ensuring that not a single one has been killed.

40. However, they have suffered many injuries, yet they remain steadfast in the freedom God has given them, and they regularly remember to worship the Lord; they abide by his laws, judgments, and commandments, and their faith is strong regarding what is to come.

41. And now, dear brother Moroni, may God, who has redeemed and freed us, keep you always in his presence and grant you success in reclaiming all the things taken from us by the Lamanites, which were vital for our survival. So now, I conclude my letter. I am Helaman, the son of Alma.

### **Alma Chapter 59**

1. In the thirtieth year of the judges' rule over the Nephite people, Moroni felt a great joy after reading Helaman's letter, celebrating the incredible success Helaman had in reclaiming the lands that were previously lost.

2. He shared this good news with everyone in the surrounding areas, encouraging them to rejoice as well.

3. Right away, he wrote to Pahoran, asking him to gather more men to support Helaman's forces so that Helaman could easily defend the areas he had successfully regained.

4. As Moroni sent this letter to Zarahemla, he started planning again to reclaim the rest of the lands and cities that the Lamanites had taken from the Nephites.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

5. While Moroni was preparing to fight the Lamanites, the people of Nephihah, who had come together from the cities of Moroni, Lehi, and Morianton, were suddenly attacked by the Lamanites.
6. Some of those who had been forced to flee from Manti and the surrounding areas joined the Lamanites in this part of the land.
7. Thus the Lamanites grew in number and strength daily, and under Ammoron's command, they aggressively attacked the people of Nephihah, causing a great slaughter.
8. There were so many of the Lamanites that the remaining people of Nephihah had to retreat, eventually joining Moroni's army.
9. Moroni had expected reinforcements to be sent to Nephihah to help protect it, knowing it would be easier to keep it from falling to the Lamanites than to recover it once lost. He believed they would successfully hold the city.
10. Therefore, he kept all of his forces focused on maintaining the areas he had already reclaimed.
11. When Moroni realized that Nephihah had been lost, he felt deep sorrow and began to doubt the loyalty of the people, fearing they might fall into the hands of their own kin.
12. This uncertainty was shared by all his top commanders, who also doubted and were troubled by the wickedness of the people, especially given the Lamanites' successes against them.
13. Moroni grew angry with the government due to their neglect regarding the freedom of their country.

## **Alma Chapter 60**

1. He wrote once more to the governor of the land, Pahoran, and here are the words he wrote: Listen, I am addressing this letter to Pahoran, in the city of Zarahemla, who is the chief judge and governor of the land, and to all others who have been chosen by this people to lead and handle the affairs of this war.
2. I have something to say to you that is quite serious; you know that you have been chosen to gather soldiers, equip them with swords, daggers, and all kinds of weapons, and send them out against the Lamanites, wherever they invade our land.
3. Now I want to tell you that my men, Helaman, and I have suffered tremendously; yes, we have experienced

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

hunger, thirst, exhaustion, and various hardships.

4. But if this were all we had endured, we wouldnt be complaining.

5. However, many of our people have been killed; thousands have died by the sword, and this might have been prevented if you had provided sufficient strength and support to our armies. Truly, you have neglected us greatly.

6. Now, I want to understand the reason for this severe neglect; I want to know why you seem to be indifferent.

7. Can you really sit on your thrones, ignoring the suffering around you, while your enemies are causing death around you? Yes, while they are killing thousands of your brothers

8. Yes, those who looked to you for protection, those who have placed you in a position where you could have helped them, sent armies to support them, and saved thousands from being killed.

9. But thats not all you have even withheld food from them to the point where many have fought and died for their love for these people; yes, they have sacrificed their lives even when facing starvation because of your alarming neglect.

10. And now, my dear brothersyou should be dear to me; you should have acted with more urgency for the safety and freedom of this people; yet you have neglected them to such an extent that the blood of thousands will weigh heavily on your heads in judgment; yes, God has heard all their cries and knows all their sufferings

11. Do you think you could simply sit on your thrones and because of Gods great goodness do nothing and expect Him to rescue you? If you think this way, then you are mistaken.

12. Do you think that the deaths of so many of your brothers are due to their wickedness? I tell you, if you think this you are wrong; many have fallen in battle, and this reveals your own shortcomings;

13. For God allows the righteous to be killed so that justice may be served to the wicked; thus, dont assume that the righteous are lost if they die; indeed, they return to the peace of the Lord their God.

14. And now I fear greatly that Gods judgment will come upon this people because of their extreme laziness, especially the laziness of our leaders, and their great neglect of their brothers, especially those who have died.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

15. If it werent for the wickedness that started at our highest levels, we could have stood against our enemies and they wouldnt have gained any power over us.

16. Yes, if not for the fighting among ourselves; and if it werent for the king-men, who caused so much bloodshed between us; during the time of our internal conflict, if we had united our strength as we used to; if those king-men had pursued true freedom and joined us in facing our enemies instead of turning their swords against us, which led to our internal strife; if we had fought against them with Gods strength, we would have conquered our enemies, as He promised.

17. But now the Lamanites are attacking us, taking over our lands, killing our people including our women and children, and capturing them, causing them to suffer greatly, all due to the wickedness of those who seek power, yes, those king-men.

18. But what more can I say about this? We dont even know if you are trying to gain authority for yourselves. We dont know if you are betraying our country.

19. Or have you neglected us because you are secure in your position and surrounded by safety, making you forget to send us food and troops to reinforce our armies?

20. Have you forgotten Gods commandments? Have you forgotten the captivity of our ancestors? Have you forgotten how many times we were saved from our enemies?

21. Or do you think that the Lord will continue to save us while you just sit on your thrones and refuse to use the resources He has provided us?

22. Will you remain idle while thousands around you, and even tens of thousands, are also idle, while countless others are suffering and dying at the border of the land, wounded and bleeding?

23. Do you think God will view you as innocent while you do nothing and watch this happen? I say to you, No. Remember that God has stated that the inner man must be purged first, and then the outer man will be purified also.

24. And unless you repent of your actions, begin to work, and send food and men to us, as well as to Helaman, so he can defend the parts of our country that he has recaptured, and that we might also regain what we have

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

lost here, it is wise that we do not engage the Lamanites until we have first set ourselves in order, starting with the leadership of our government.

25. And unless you respond to my letter and prove to me you are truly committed to freedom, and strive to strengthen our armies and provide them with food, I will leave some of my free men here to protect this portion of our land, trusting that the strength and blessings of God will be upon them, so no other force can withstand them

26. This is due to their immense faith and patience in their trials

27. I will then come to you, and if theres anyone among you who desires freedom, even if just a flicker of freedom remains, I will incite rebellion among you, until those who seek to seize power and authority are eliminated.

28. Yes, I do not fear your power or authority, but I do fear my God; it is according to His commandments that I take up my sword to defend my country, and because of your wrongdoings, we have suffered substantial losses.

29. It is truly time, yes, the time is now, that unless you rally for the defense of your country and your families, the sword of justice is poised above you; yes, it will fall upon you and bring about your total destruction.

30. I am waiting for help from you; and unless you provide us relief, I will come to you, even to the land of Zarahemla, and strike you with the sword, so that you will no longer hinder our march towards freedom.

31. For behold, the Lord will not allow you to flourish in your wickedness and destroy His righteous people.

32. Can you think that the Lord will spare you and come down in judgment against the Lamanites, when their hatred stems from the traditions passed down from their ancestors, which has only intensified by those who have turned against us, while your wickedness is fueled by your desire for glory and the empty pursuits of the world?

33. You know you break Gods laws; you know you trample them underfoot. Behold, the Lord says to me: If those you have chosen as your leaders do not repent of their sins and wrongdoing, you will face battle against

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

them.

34. Now behold, I, Moroni, am bound by the agreement I made to keep my Gods commandments; therefore, I urge you to stick to Gods word, and quickly send me supplies and your men, also to Helaman.

35. And if you do not do this, I will come to you quickly; for God will not allow us to perish from hunger; He will ensure we receive your food, even if it requires conflict. So make sure you fulfill Gods word.

36. I am Moroni, your chief captain. I do not seek power, but aim to dismantle it. I seek not worldly honor, but the glory of my God, and the freedom and well-being of my country. And with this, I close my letter.

### **Alma Chapter 61**

1. Not long after Moroni wrote a letter to the chief governor, he received a response from Pahoran, the chief governor. Heres what it said:

2. I, Pahoran, the chief governor of this land, write to you, Moroni, the leader of the army. I want you to know that I dont take pleasure in your suffering; it deeply saddens me.

3. However, some people take joy in your hardships to the point that they have rebelled against me and the free citizens of my nation. These rebels are very numerous.

4. Those who are trying to take away my position have caused this major wrongdoing; they have used flattery and misled many people, which has led to serious troubles for us. They have withheld supplies from us and intimidated our free citizens, preventing them from coming to your aid.

5. Because of this, I was forced to flee, finding refuge in the land of Gideon with as many supporters as I could gather.

6. I have sent out a call for help across this region, and people are joining us daily to defend our country and protect our freedoms, seeking to right the wrongs done to us.

7. They have gathered with us to such an extent that the rebels now fear us and do not dare to confront us in battle.

8. The rebels have taken over the city of Zarahemla, appointed a king for themselves, and that king has written to the king of the Lamanites to form an alliance. He believes this alliance will help them maintain control of

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

Zarahemla and ultimately allow the Lamanites to conquer the rest of the land. He expects that he will be made king over the people after they are defeated.

9. In your letter, you criticized me, but it doesn't upset me; instead, I admire your strong spirit. I, Pahoran, am not seeking power for myself, but simply to keep my position to protect the rights and freedoms of my people. I firmly hold onto the liberty that God has granted us.

10. Now, we will fight against wickedness even if it leads to bloodshed. We would prefer not to shed Lamanite blood if they would simply remain in their own territory.

11. We do not wish to harm our fellow countrymen if they choose not to rebel against us.

12. We would endure being in bondage if it were just according to God's will, or if He commanded us to do so.

13. But God does not tell us to submit to our enemies; instead, He instructs us to trust in Him, and He will save us.

14. So, dear brother Moroni, let's stand against evil. For those things we cannot oppose with words, like rebellion and division, let's resist using our swords, so we can keep our freedom and take joy in the blessings of our faith and our God.

15. Therefore, come to me quickly with a few of your men, and leave the rest under the command of Lehi and Teancum. Empower them to lead the fight in that part of the land according to God's spirit, which is also the spirit of freedom within them.

16. I have sent some supplies to them to ensure they do not starve until you can reach me.

17. Gather whatever forces you can for your journey here, and we will swiftly confront those rebels with God's strength and our faith.

18. We will reclaim the city of Zarahemla to secure more food for Lehi and Teancum. With the Lord's help, we will put an end to this serious wrongdoing.

19. Moroni, I am glad to receive your letter because I was becoming concerned about whether it was right for us to go against our fellow countrymen.

20. You mentioned that unless they repent, the Lord has told you to fight against them.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

21. Make sure to build up Lehi and Teancum in their faith; assure them not to be afraid, as God will deliver them and all who stand firm in the liberty He has given them. I now end my letter to you, my dear brother Moroni.

### **Alma Chapter 62**

1. When Moroni got this letter, he felt encouraged and very happy because Pahoran was loyal and not a traitor to his countrys freedom.
2. However, he also felt deep sorrow because of the wrongdoing of those who had forced Pahoran from his position, essentially those who had revolted against their country and their God.
3. So Moroni took a small group of men as Pahoran requested, and he put Lehi and Teancum in charge of the rest of his army as he headed toward Gideon.
4. He raised the flag of liberty wherever he went and gathered as many supporters as he could on his way to Gideon.
5. Many people joined him and took up their swords to defend their freedom, determined not to be enslaved.
6. Thus, after gathering as many men as possible, Moroni reached Gideon, and when he combined forces with Pahoran, they became very strong, even stronger than the army of Pachus, the king of those who had turned against the freemen and taken over Zarahemla.
7. Moroni and Pahoran then marched with their armies into Zarahemla and faced the men of Pachus in battle.
8. Pachus was killed, his men were captured, and Pahoran was reinstated as the leader.
9. The captured men were put on trial according to the law, including those king-men who had been imprisoned, and were executed for refusing to fight in defense of their country, instead turning against it.
10. It was necessary for this law to be strictly enforced for the safety of the nation; anyone denying their freedom was quickly executed.
11. Thus ended the thirtieth year of the judges reign over the Nephites, with Moroni and Pahoran having restored peace to Zarahemla and punishing all who were not loyal to freedom.
12. As the thirty-first year began, Moroni quickly arranged for supplies and an army of six thousand men to be



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

sent to Helaman to help him protect that part of the land.

13. He also sent another army of six thousand men along with enough food to Lehi and Teancum's forces to strengthen defenses against the Lamanites.

14. Moroni and Pahoran, leaving a large group behind in Zarahemla, set out with another large force to Nephihah, determined to defeat the Lamanites there.

15. While marching towards Nephihah, they ambushed many Lamanites, killing a lot of them and seizing their supplies and weapons.

16. After capturing them, they made the Lamanites promise not to take up arms against the Nephites again.

17. Those who agreed to the covenant were sent to live among the people of Ammon, totaling about four thousand who survived.

18. After sending them away, Moroni and his army continued towards Nephihah, where they set up camp just outside the city.

19. Moroni wanted the Lamanites to come out and fight on the plains, but they were too afraid to face his large and courageous army.

20. That night, Moroni stealthily climbed up on the city wall to see where the Lamanite camp was located.

21. He found them camped to the east, all asleep. Moroni returned and had his men quickly prepare ropes and ladders to get down into the city.

22. Moroni directed his men to climb up on the wall and then let themselves down into the part of the city where the Lamanites were stationed.

23. They all entered the city at night using the ropes and ladders, so by morning, they were all inside the city walls.

24. When the Lamanites awoke and realized Moroni's forces were in their city, they were terrified and fled through the escape route.

25. Seeing them run away, Moroni commanded his men to chase after them, killing many, capturing others, while the rest fled to the land of Moroni by the seashore.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

26. Thus Moroni and Pahoran took over Nephihah without losing a single soldier, although many Lamanites were killed.

27. Many of the captured Lamanites wanted to join the people of Ammon and gain their freedom.

28. As many as desired this were granted their wish.

29. So all the Lamanite prisoners joined the people of Ammon and worked hard, farming and raising livestock, which relieved the Nephites of a heavy burden by removing all the captives.

30. After taking Nephihah and reducing the Lamanites army significantly, and recovering many Nephites who had been captured, Moroni moved from Nephihah to the land of Lehi.

31. When the Lamanites saw Moroni advancing, they were frightened and quickly retreated before his army.

32. Moroni and his army pursued the Lamanites from city to city until they joined forces with Lehi and Teancum, who also chased the Lamanites down to the seashore, reaching Moroni's land.

33. The Lamanite armies gathered together so that they were all in one place in the land of Moroni, with Ammoron, their king, among them.

34. Moroni, Lehi, and Teancum camped their armies around the borders of Moroni, completely surrounding the Lamanites near the wilderness.

35. They set up camp for the night. Both the Nephites and the Lamanites were tired from their marches, so they didnt plan any strategies that night, except Teancum, who was very angry at Ammoron and blamed him and his brother Amalickiah for the prolonged war and suffering.

36. In his anger, Teancum snuck into the Lamanite camp, lowering himself over the walls. He roamed around until he found the king and threw a javelin at him, hitting him near the heart. However, the king woke his servants before he died, so they chased and killed Teancum.

37. When Lehi and Moroni learned that Teancum had died, they were deeply saddened because he had bravely fought for their freedom and had endured many hardships. But he was dead and had gone the way of all earthly beings.

38. The next day, Moroni marched out and attacked the Lamanites, resulting in a great slaughter. They

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

expelled the Lamanites from the land, forcing them to flee without returning to attack the Nephites.

39. Thus ended the thirty-first year of the judges reign over the Nephites, a year marked by war, bloodshed, famine, and suffering.

40. There had been killings, disputes, and all sorts of wickedness among the Nephites; however, they were spared for the sake of the righteous, thanks to their prayers.

41. But the long war between the Nephites and the Lamanites had hardened many hearts, while others had softened and humbled themselves before God due to suffering.

42. After Moroni strengthened the most vulnerable parts of the land against the Lamanites, he returned to Zarahemla, and Helaman went back to his inheritance; peace was restored among the Nephites.

43. Moroni handed command of his armies to his son, Moronihah, and retired to his home to live the rest of his days in peace.

44. Pahoran resumed his position as judge, and Helaman began preaching the word of God again, as the many wars and conflicts made it vital to reorganize the church.

45. Therefore, Helaman and his brothers set out and powerfully preached to convince many people of their wrongdoings, leading them to repent and be baptized to the Lord.

46. They successfully reestablished the church of God throughout the land.

47. Regulations regarding the law were also reinstated, and judges were appointed again.

48. The Nephite people began to prosper again, growing in numbers and strength, and becoming very wealthy.

49. Despite their riches, strength, and prosperity, they weren't proud; instead, they remembered the Lord and humbled themselves greatly before Him.

50. They remembered all the great things the Lord had done for them, delivering them from death, imprisonment, and all kinds of suffering, saving them from their enemies.

51. They prayed continuously to the Lord, and He blessed them as promised, allowing them to grow strong and prosper in the land.

52. Thus, everything happened as described, and Helaman died in the thirty-fifth year of the judges reign over

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

the Nephites.

### **Alma Chapter 63**

1. At the beginning of the thirty-sixth year of the judges' rule over the Nephite people, Shiblon received the sacred records that had been given to Helaman by Alma.
2. He was a good and honest man who lived righteously before God, consistently doing good and following the Lords commandments, just like his brother did.
3. Moroni also passed away during this time, marking the end of the thirty-sixth year of the judges' reign.
4. In the thirty-seventh year of the judges' rule, a large group of 5,400 men, along with their wives and children, left the land of Zarahemla and traveled northward.
5. A curious man named Hagoth built a very large ship along the border of the land Bountiful, near the land Desolation, and sent it out into the west sea through the narrow neck that led northward.
6. Many Nephites boarded the ship, sailing away with plenty of supplies, including many women and children, continuing their journey northward. This marked the end of the thirty-seventh year.
7. In the thirty-eighth year, Hagoth constructed more ships. The first ship returned, with more people boarding it, taking additional provisions, and setting out once again to the north.
8. Sadly, those on board were never heard from again, possibly lost in the depths of the ocean. Another ship also sailed, but we do not know where it went.
9. During this year, many people continued to travel northward. Thus, the thirty-eighth year came to an end.
10. In the thirty-ninth year of the judges' rule, Shiblon also passed away, and Corianton had gone northward in a ship to deliver supplies to those who had settled there.
11. Before his death, Shiblon felt it was necessary to pass on the sacred records to Helaman, the son of Helaman, named after his father.
12. All the records in Helamans possession were shared among the people, except for those specific instructions given by Alma that were not to be distributed.
13. These sacred records were meant to be preserved and passed down through generations, so they were

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

entrusted to Helaman before Shiblon died.

14. In that same year, some dissenters went among the Lamanites, reigniting their anger against the Nephites.

15. Also during that year, they came down in large numbers to wage war against Moronihah's army but were defeated and pushed back to their own lands, suffering significant losses.

16. This brings us to the end of the thirty-ninth year of the judges' rule over the Nephite people.

17. This concludes the account of Alma, his son Helaman, and Shiblon, who was also his son.

## **Helaman**

### **Helaman Chapter 1**

1. The Book of Helaman

2. This is a record about the Nephites. It tells of their wars, conflicts, and divisions, as well as the prophecies of many holy prophets before Christ came, based on the writings of Helaman, who was the son of Helaman, and including the accounts of his sons, reaching all the way to the time of Christ. It also details how many Lamanites were converted, describing their transformation and the righteousness they embraced, contrasted with the wickedness and sins of the Nephites, as recorded by Helaman and his sons, extending to Christ's coming, which is known as the book of Helaman, and so forth.

3. Pahoran the second becomes chief judge and is murdered by Kishkumen. Pacumeni takes over the judgment seat. Coriantumr leads the Lamanite armies, takes Zarahemla, and kills Pacumeni. Moronihah defeats the Lamanites and retakes Zarahemla, and Coriantumr is killed. About 5250 B.C.

4. At the beginning of the fortieth year of the judges ruling over the Nephites, serious conflicts arose among them.

5. This happened because Pahoran had died and, like all mortals, had passed away. Consequently, a major dispute began about who should take over the leadership role from Pahoran's brothers.

6. The names of those competing for the leadership were Pahoran, Paanchi, and Pacumeni.

7. These three were not all of Pahoran's sons (for he had many), but they were the ones fighting for the

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

leadership, causing divisions among the people.

8. Despite this, the people chose Pahoran to be the chief judge and governor of the Nephites.

9. Pacumeni, seeing that he couldn't get the leadership role, decided to align himself with the people's choice.

10. However, Paanchi and his followers, who wanted him as their governor, were extremely angry; he planned to manipulate them into rebelling against their fellow Nephites.

11. As he was about to act on this plan, he was caught, put on trial by the people, and sentenced to death for instigating rebellion and trying to take away the people's freedom.

12. When Paanchi's supporters learned of his death sentence, they were furious. They sent a man named Kishkumen to the judgment seat of Pahoran, and he killed Pahoran while he was sitting there.

13. Kishkumen was chased by Pahoran's servants, but he escaped so quickly that no one was able to catch him.

14. He returned to those who sent him, and they all made a pact, promising before God that they would keep quiet about how Kishkumen had killed Pahoran.

15. As a result, Kishkumen was unknown among the Nephites because he was disguised at the time of the murder. Kishkumen and his group mixed in with the people, making it hard for anyone to find them, although those who were discovered were sentenced to death.

16. Pacumeni was then appointed, by popular vote, to be the chief judge and governor, taking over for his brother Pahoran. This was his rightful place, and all of this took place in the fortieth year of the judges' reign, which concluded.

17. In the forty-first year of the judges' reign, the Lamanites assembled an overwhelming army of men, equipped with swords, daggers, bows, arrows, helmets, breastplates, and various types of shields.

18. They came down, intending to battle the Nephites, led by a man named Coriantumr, a descendant of Zarahemla and a former Nephite who had turned against his own people. He was a tall and strong man.

19. Therefore, the Lamanite king, Tubaloth, son of Ammoron, thought Coriantumr, being strong, could lead them to defeat the Nephites through his might and wisdom, believing that by sending him into battle he would gain control over the Nephites.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

20. So, he incited his people to anger, gathered his armies, appointed Coriantumr as their leader, and commanded them to march down to Zarahemla to confront the Nephites.

21. Due to the internal strife and difficulties within their government, the Nephites did not have enough guards in Zarahemla, mistakenly believing that the Lamanites would not dare attack the heart of their territory.

22. However, Coriantumr led his vast army directly to the city, advancing with such speed that the Nephites had no time to rally their forces.

23. Coriantumr took down the guards at the city entrance, marched into the city with his entire army, and killed everyone who resisted, ultimately taking total control of the city.

24. Pacumeni, who was the chief judge, fled before Coriantumr to the city walls. Coriantumr struck him against the wall, resulting in his death, and thus ended Pacumeni's life.

25. When Coriantumr realized he had captured Zarahemla and that the Nephites were fleeing, being killed or taken prisoner, and that he now held the strongest position in the land, he became bold and planned to conquer the entire region.

26. Instead of staying in Zarahemla, he set out with a large army toward the city of Bountiful, determined to fight his way northward.

27. Assuming the Nephites' strongest warriors were in the central region, he marched straight into their land without giving them time to gather, attacking them in smaller groups as they came.

28. Coriantumr's march through the center of the land initially gave Moronihah an advantage, despite the significant number of Nephite casualties.

29. Moronihah had thought the Lamanites would not invade the center but would attack the border cities as they had done before, so he stationed Nephite forces at the borders to defend them.

30. But the Lamanites were bold and moved into the center, capturing Zarahemla and systematically slaughtering residents, including men, women, and children, taking over various cities and strongholds.

31. As soon as Moronihah learned of this, he immediately sent Lehi with an army to intercept the Lamanites before they reached Bountiful.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

32. Lehi managed to cut off the Lamanites before they reached Bountiful and engaged them in battle, forcing them to retreat toward Zarahemla.
33. Moronihah similarly attacked them as they retreated, resulting in a very bloody battle with many fatalities, including Coriantumr himself.
34. The Lamanites found themselves unable to retreat in any direction, as they were surrounded by the Nephites from all sides.
35. Thus, Coriantumr led the Lamanites right into the Nephite forces, which resulted in their defeat, with Coriantumr killed, and the Lamanites surrendering to the Nephites.
36. Eventually, Moronihah regained control of Zarahemla and allowed the captured Lamanites to leave the land peacefully.
37. And this concluded the forty-first year of the judges' reign.

## **Helaman Chapter 2**

1. In the forty-second year of the judges rule, after Moronihah had restored peace between the Nephites and Lamanites, there was no one available to take the position of chief judge; so arguments arose again among the people about who should fill this important role.
2. Helaman, the son of Helaman, was chosen by the people to become the chief judge.
3. However, Kishkumen, who had killed Pahoran, plotted to also kill Helaman, supported by his gang, who had agreed to keep their wrongdoings secret.
4. There was a man named Gadianon, who was very skilled with words and had a talent for carrying out secretive acts of murder and theft; as a result, he became the leader of Kishkumens group.
5. Gadianon flattered Kishkumen and his gang, promising that if they made him chief judge, he would give them power and authority among the people; thus, Kishkumen planned to eliminate Helaman.
6. As Kishkumen moved towards the chief judge's chair to attack Helaman, one of Helaman's servants, who had been out during the night and learned of their schemes in disguise, encountered Kishkumen.
7. The servant gave Kishkumen a sign, and Kishkumen revealed his intention to the servant, asking him to



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

lead him to the chief judges seat so he could murder Helaman.

8. Once the servant understood Kishkumens true intentions to kill and that those in his gang shared the same goals of murder, robbery, and gaining powerthis being their covert planthe servant suggested they proceed to the judgment-seat.

9. Kishkumen was very pleased, thinking he could achieve his aim, but as they headed to the judgment-seat, the servant of Helaman stabbed Kishkumen through the heart, killing him instantly. He then ran to tell Helaman everything he had seen and done.

10. Helaman sent out a call to capture this group of robbers and secret assassins so they could be punished according to the law.

11. However, when Gadianton noticed that Kishkumen did not return, he feared for his own safety; as a result, he ordered his gang to follow him. They secretly fled into the wilderness, making them impossible to locate when Helaman sent out a search.

12. More will be said about Gadianton later. This marks the end of the forty-second year of judges' rule over the Nephites.

13. In the conclusion of this book, you will see that Gadianton caused the downfall, indeed almost the complete destruction, of the Nephite people.

14. I am not referring to the conclusion of the book of Helaman, but to the end of the book of Nephi, from which I have gathered all the accounts I have written.

### **Helaman Chapter 3**

1. In the forty-third year of the judges' reign, there was little conflict among the Nephites except for some pride within the church, which caused minor disagreements among the people; these issues were resolved by the end of that year.

2. During the forty-fourth year, there was no conflict among the people; there was also not much contention in the forty-fifth year.

3. However, in the forty-sixth year, there was much disagreement and many conflicts, causing a significant

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

number of people to leave the land of Zarahemla and move to the north to settle there.

4. They traveled a great distance, reaching large bodies of water and many rivers.

5. They spread out all over the land, into any areas that had not been left barren and treeless by the many inhabitants who had previously lived there.

6. At that time, no part of the land was barren, except for the lack of trees; the destruction of the people who had once lived there was so great that it was known as desolate.

7. There was very little timber in the land, but the people who moved north became very skilled at working with cement, so they built cement houses to live in.

8. They multiplied and expanded, moving from the south to the north, and began to cover the entire earth, from the southern sea to the northern sea, and from the western sea to the eastern sea.

9. In the land northward, the people lived in tents and cement houses, allowing whatever trees grew to flourish so they could eventually use them as timber for building their cities, temples, synagogues, and all kinds of structures.

10. Due to the lack of timber in the north, they sent a lot of shipments by boat.

11. This allowed the people in the north to build many cities, both made of wood and cement.

12. Some of the Lamanites, descendants of Ammon, also moved into this land.

13. Many records were kept about the activities of this people by various individuals, which were detailed and extensive.

14. However, only a small portion of their records, including the accounts of the Lamanites and Nephites, their wars, disputes, preaching, prophecies, shipbuilding, cities, temples, synagogues, righteousness, wickedness, murders, thefts, plundering, and all kinds of evils and immoral acts, could fit in this work.

15. But there are many books and various types of records, mostly kept by the Nephites.

16. These records were passed down through generations by the Nephites until they fell into sin, were murdered, robbed, hunted down, driven away, killed, and scattered over the earth, mixing with the Lamanites until they were no longer called Nephites but became wicked, wild, and fierce, even turning into Lamanites.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

17. Now I return to my account; what I have described occurred after there were significant conflicts, disturbances, wars, and disagreements among the Nephites.

18. The forty-sixth year of the judges ended;

19. And in the forty-seventh year, there was still significant conflict in the land, and this continued into the forty-eighth year.

20. Nevertheless, Helaman maintained the judgment seat with fairness and integrity; he made sure to uphold God's laws, statutes, and commandments, continually doing what was right in God's eyes, following the ways of his father, and prospering in the land.

21. He had two sons, naming the older Nephi and the younger Lehi, and they grew up serving the Lord.

22. As the wars and conflicts among the Nephites began to lessen towards the end of the forty-eighth year of the judges' reign.

23. In the forty-ninth year, continual peace was established in the land, except for the secret groups led by Gadianton the robber in the more settled areas, which were unknown to the leaders of the government at the time and therefore not eradicated from the land.

24. That same year, the church experienced remarkable growth, with thousands joining it and being baptized in repentance.

25. The church's prosperity and the blessings given to the people were so great that even the high priests and teachers were amazed.

26. The Lord's work flourished, leading many, even tens of thousands, to baptism and joining the church of God.

27. Thus, we see that the Lord is kind to all who genuinely call upon His holy name.

28. Indeed, the gate of heaven is open to all who believe in Jesus Christ, the Son of God.

29. Anyone can grasp the word of God, which is living and powerful, cutting through all the schemes of the devil, guiding the followers of Christ along a straight and narrow path across the eternal chasm meant for the wicked

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

30. And land their souls, their immortal souls, on the right side of God in heaven, where they will sit with Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, and all our holy ancestors, never to leave.

31. In that year, there was continuous rejoicing in Zarahemla and all the surrounding areas, even throughout all the lands owned by the Nephites.

32. Peace and immense joy continued in the remainder of the forty-ninth year, as well as in the fiftieth year of the judges' reign.

33. During the fifty-first year of the judges' reign, there was also peace, except for the pride that began to seep into the church not God's church, but into the hearts of those who claimed to belong to God's church.

34. They became proud, even to the point of persecuting many of their fellow members. This was a great evil that caused the more humble members to suffer greatly and endure much hardship.

35. Despite this, they often fasted and prayed, becoming stronger in their humility and faith in Christ, filling their souls with joy and comfort, and purifying their hearts through surrendering to God.

36. The fifty-second year also ended in peace, except for the significant pride that had entered the people's hearts; it grew because of their great wealth and prosperity, increasing day by day.

37. In the fifty-third year of the judges' reign, Helaman died, and his oldest son Nephi took over. He filled the judgment seat with fairness and integrity, keeping God's commandments and walking in his father's ways.

### **Helaman Chapter 4**

1. In the fifty-fourth year, there was a lot of disagreement within the church, and the people were fighting so much that it led to much bloodshed.

2. The rebellious ones were killed and forced out of the land, and they went to the king of the Lamanites.

3. Then they tried to incite the Lamanites to go to war against the Nephites, but the Lamanites were very afraid and didn't listen to these dissenters.

4. However, in the fifty-sixth year of the judges, some dissenters traveled from the Nephites to the Lamanites and managed to provoke them to anger against the Nephites, and they spent that entire year preparing for war.

5. In the fifty-seventh year, they came down to battle against the Nephites, starting a campaign of destruction;

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

by the fifty-eighth year of the judges, they succeeded in taking control of the land of Zarahemla and all the surrounding territories, up to the area near land Bountiful.

6. The Nephites, along with Moronihah's armies, were pushed back into the land of Bountiful;

7. And there, they built defenses against the Lamanites, from the west sea to the east, which was considered a days journey for a Nephite, along the defensive line they set up to protect their northern territory.

8. Thus, these dissenters from the Nephites, with the considerable help of the Lamanites, managed to take over all the Nephite lands in the south. This happened during the fifty-eighth and fifty-ninth years of the judges reign.

9. Then, in the sixtieth year, Moronihah and his armies had some success in reclaiming various parts of the land, regaining several cities that the Lamanites had taken.

10. In the sixty-first year, they were able to reclaim about half of their total possessions.

11. The Nephites suffered great losses and bloodshed, which could have been avoided if it weren't for their wickedness and the evil present among them, including among those who claimed to be part of the Church of God.

12. Their downfall was due to their pride, their wealth, their oppression of the poor, their refusal to help the hungry and naked, hitting their humble brothers, mocking what was sacred, rejecting prophecy and revelation, and engaging in murder, theft, lying, adultery, and violent conflicts, leading many to abandon their faith and join the Lamanites in the land of Nephi.

13. Because of their great wickedness and their bragging about their strength, they were left to rely on their own power, resulting in failure; they were beaten and forced back by the Lamanites, and they nearly lost all their lands.

14. Moronihah preached many things to the people because of their wrongdoings, as did Nephi and Lehi, sons of Helaman, warning them about their sins and the consequences if they didnt repent.

15. Eventually, they did repent, and as they turned from their sins, they began to thrive again.

16. Moronihah noticed their repentance and took them from one place to another, regaining about half of their

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

properties and lands.

17. Thus, the sixty-first year of the judges came to an end.

18. In the sixty-second year of the judges, Moronihah was unable to reclaim any more land from the Lamanites.

19. So, they gave up on trying to take back the rest of their lands, since the Lamanites were too numerous, making it impossible for the Nephites to gain more control; instead, Moronihah focused all his forces on holding the territories he had captured.

20. Due to the large number of Lamanites, the Nephites were filled with fear, worried they would be overpowered, trampled, killed, or destroyed.

21. They began to recall the prophecies of Alma and the words of Mosiah; they realized they had been stubborn people who had ignored God's commandments.

22. They recognized that they had changed and disrespected the laws given to them through Mosiah, and that their laws had become corrupt, making them as wicked as the Lamanites.

23. Their wickedness led to a decline in the church; they started to doubt the spirit of prophecy and revelation, and God's judgments were clear before them.

24. They saw that they had grown weak, just like their Lamanite brothers, and that the Lord's Spirit no longer protected them; it had withdrawn because the Spirit of the Lord does not dwell in unholy places.

25. As a result, the Lord stopped preserving them with His miraculous power because they had fallen into disbelief and great wickedness; they realized the Lamanites were far more numerous, and unless they turned to the Lord, they would inevitably be lost.

26. They recognized that the strength of the Lamanites was equal to their own, man for man. Thus, they found themselves in this grave sin and had weakened due to transgression over a short period.

## **Helaman Chapter 5**

1. In the same year, Nephi handed over the leadership position to a man named Cezoram.

2. Since their laws and government were shaped by the people's voice, and those who chose evil were more

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

numerous than those who chose good, they were heading toward destruction due to the corruption of their laws.

3. Indeed, they were such a stubborn people that they could not be governed by law or justice without leading to their own ruin.

4. Nephi grew tired of their wickedness, so he stepped down from his leadership role and committed himself to preaching Gods word for the rest of his life, as did his brother Lehi.

5. They recalled the advice given to them by their father Helaman, which was:

6. Listen, my sons, I hope you remember to keep Gods commandments, and I want you to share these words with the people. Ive given you the names of our first parents who came from Jerusalem so that when you think of your names, you may remember those good ancestors and their good deeds.

7. Therefore, my sons, I hope you do good things so that it can be said of you, just like it has been said of them.

8. And now, my sons, I want to ask something more of you. Dont do good just to boast, but do good to build a treasure in heaven that lasts forever. I want you to receive the precious gift of eternal life, which we believe has been given to our ancestors.

9. Oh, remember the words that King Benjamin spoke to his people. Remember, there is no other way to be saved except through the atoning blood of Jesus Christ, who will come to redeem the world.

10. Also, remember what Amulek said to Zeezrom in the city of Ammonihah that the Lord will come to save His people, but not to redeem them in their sins, but to save them from their sins.

11. He has been given power from the Father to remove their sins through repentance. Thats why He sent angels to share the message of repentance, which leads to the Redeemers power and the salvation of their souls.

12. And now, my sons, remember that you must build your foundation on the rock of our Redeemer, Jesus Christ, the Son of God. When temptations come like strong winds and storms, they will not overpower you if you are built upon this solid foundation, which ensures that if you build upon it, you cannot fall.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

13. These are the teachings Helaman shared with his sons, and he taught them many things, both written and unwritten.

14. They remembered his words and went out to keep the commandments of God and share His word among all the people of Nephi, starting in the city of Bountiful.

15. From there, they traveled to the city of Gid; and then from Gid to the city of Mulek;

16. They moved from one city to another until they reached all the people of Nephi in the southern land, including Zarahemla among the Lamanites.

17. They preached with such great power that they astonished many dissenters who had joined the Lamanites, leading them to confess their sins and be baptized in repentance, seeking to make amends with the Nephites for their past wrongs.

18. Nephi and Lehi preached to the Lamanites with great authority and power, which had been given to them, and they were told what to say.

19. So they spoke with such amazement that about eight thousand Lamanites in and around Zarahemla were baptized unto repentance and recognized the wickedness of their ancestors' traditions.

20. Then, Nephi and Lehi went on to the land of Nephi.

21. However, they were captured by a Lamanite army and thrown into the same prison where Ammon and his brothers had been held by King Limhi's servants.

22. After being in prison for many days without food, their captors came to take them out to kill them.

23. But Nephi and Lehi were surrounded by fire as if they were in flames, and their captors were too afraid to touch them for fear of burning. Yet, Nephi and Lehi were unharmed, standing there as if in fire without being hurt.

24. When the Lamanites saw this miraculous sight, their courage was restored.

25. They realized they couldn't approach Nephi and Lehi, standing there in awe and amazement.

26. Nephi and Lehi spoke to them, saying: "Don't be afraid. God has shown you this amazing miracle to prove you cannot harm us."



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

27. Just then, as they spoke, the earth shook, and the walls of the prison trembled as though they might fall, but they did not collapse. Among those present were Lamanites and Nephites who had turned away from their faith.

28. They were covered by a cloud of darkness that filled them with fear.

29. Then, a voice came from above the darkness, saying: "Repent, repent, and do not seek to destroy my servants whom I have sent to share good news with you.

30. When they heard this voice, they realized it was not a thunderous noise, but a gentle voice, quiet like a whisper, which pierced straight through to their souls.

31. Despite the gentleness of the voice, the earth shook violently, and the prison walls trembled yet again, surrounded by the persistent cloud of darkness that remained with them.

32. Then the voice spoke again: "Repent, repent, for the kingdom of heaven is close; stop trying to destroy my servants." The earth shook again, and the walls trembled.

33. The third time, the voice offered incredible words beyond what any human could express; once again, the walls trembled, and the earth shook as if it might split apart.

34. The Lamanites couldnt escape because of the enveloping darkness, and they were rooted in place by the fear that overtook them.

35. Among them was a Nephite man who had once been part of the church but had since turned away.

36. He turned around and, through the darkness, saw the glowing faces of Nephi and Lehi, shining like angels. They were looking up, appearing to speak or lift their voices to someone above them.

37. This man shouted to the crowd, urging them to look. They were miraculously able to turn and see the radiant faces of Nephi and Lehi.

38. They asked him: "What do all these wonders mean, and who are these men talking to?"

39. The mans name was Aminadab. He replied: "They are speaking with the angels of God."

40. The Lamanites then asked Aminadab: "What must we do to remove this darkness holding us captive?"

41. Aminadab told them: "You need to repent and call on the voice until you have faith in Christ, taught to you

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

by Alma, Amulek, and Zeezrom. If you do this, the darkness will be lifted."

42. And so, they all began to cry out to the voice that had shaken the earth, pleading until the darkness was removed.

43. When they looked around and saw that the cloud of darkness had lifted, they discovered they were surrounded by a pillar of fire.

44. Nephi and Lehi stood among them, encircled in flames, yet they remained unharmed, nor did the fire affect the walls of the prison; they experienced indescribable joy and glory.

45. Then, the Holy Spirit descended from heaven and filled their hearts as if with fire, allowing them to speak in marvelous ways.

46. Then a gentle voice, like a whisper, said to them:

47. "Peace, peace be unto you because of your faith in my Beloved Son, who has been from the very beginning of the world."

48. When they heard this, they looked up to see where the voice was coming from; the heavens opened, and angels descended to minister to them.

49. Around three hundred people witnessed and heard these events, and they were encouraged to go forth without fear or doubt.

50. They went out ministering to the people, sharing everything they had seen and heard, which led many Lamanites to believe, because of the overwhelming evidence they had experienced.

51. Those who were convinced laid down their weapons of war, their hatred, and the traditions of their ancestors.

52. In turn, they surrendered their lands to the Nephites.

## **Helaman Chapter 6**

1. When the sixty-second year of the judges ended, all these events had transpired, and most of the Lamanites had become a righteous people, surpassing the Nephites in their faithfulness and consistency in belief.

2. Many of the Nephites had become stubborn, unrepentant, and extremely wicked, rejecting Gods word and

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

disregarding the preaching and prophecies among them.

3. Despite this, those in the church felt great joy due to the Lamanites conversion and the establishment of Gods church among them. They enjoyed fellowship and celebrated together, experiencing immense happiness.

4. Many Lamanites came to Zarahemla to share how they had converted and encouraged the Nephites to have faith and repent.

5. They preached powerfully, leading many to humble themselves and become devoted followers of God and His Son.

6. Many Lamanites also traveled north, along with Nephi and Lehi, to preach to the people there. And so the sixty-third year came to a close.

7. Peace prevailed throughout the land, allowing the Nephites to travel freely wherever they wanted, among both Nephites and Lamanites.

8. Likewise, the Lamanites could go wherever they wished, interacting freely with the Nephites for trade and profit.

9. As a result, both the Lamanites and Nephites became very wealthy, accumulating a great abundance of gold, silver, and all types of precious metals in both the southern and northern lands.

10. The southern land was named Lehi, and the northern land was called Mulek, after Zedekiahs son; for the Lord brought Mulek into the northern territory and Lehi into the southern.

11. Both lands possessed various kinds of gold, silver, and precious ores, with skilled workers refining these materials, leading to their wealth.

12. They grew plenty of grain in both regions, flourishing greatly, increasing in strength and multiplying significantly. They also raised many livestock, including sizable herds.

13. Their women worked hard making all kinds of cloth, including fine linen, to cover their nakedness. Thus, the sixty-fourth year passed peacefully.

14. In the sixty-fifth year, they continued to experience great joy and peace, with much preaching and many prophecies about what was yet to come. The sixty-fifth year ended in this way.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

15. In the sixty-sixth year of the judges, Cezoram was murdered by an unknown assailant while sitting in judgment. His son, whom the people had appointed to replace him, was also killed that same year. Thus, the sixty-sixth year concluded.

16. At the start of the sixty-seventh year, the people once again began to become very wicked.

17. The Lord had blessed them with so many worldly riches that they had not been incited to anger, wars, or violence; instead, they became focused on their wealth, seeking to elevate themselves above one another. Consequently, they began to commit secret murders, robberies, and looting to gain more.

18. These murderers and thieves were part of a group formed by Kishkumen and Gadianton. Many, including some Nephites, aligned themselves with Gadianton's band; however, they were more prevalent among the more wicked Lamanites. They were known as Gadianton's robbers and murderers.

19. This group was responsible for the murders of Chief Judge Cezoram and his son while they were in office, and they were never caught.

20. When the Lamanites discovered that there were robbers among them, they were deeply saddened and tried everything in their power to eliminate them.

21. However, Satan stirred up most of the Nephites, leading them to unite with these robber bands and take oaths to protect and support one another in any difficulties they faced, ensuring they would not be punished for their murders, thefts, and other wrongdoings.

22. They established secret signs and words to recognize one another, ensuring a brother could act wickedly without fear of retaliation from fellow members of their band who had taken this covenant.

23. This allowed them to commit murder, theft, sexual immorality, and all kinds of wickedness, contrary to both their laws and the laws of God.

24. Anyone within their band who disclosed their wicked deeds would be judged not by the laws of the land but by the corrupt laws established by Gadianton and Kishkumen.

25. Alma commanded his son not to disclose these secret oaths and covenants to the world, fearing it would lead to the people's destruction.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

26. These secret oaths and covenants didnt come from the records given to Helaman but were instilled in Gadianton by the same being who enticed Adam and Eve to eat the forbidden fruit
27. Yes, this same being who convinced Cain to kill his brother Abel while keeping it hidden from the world, and he continued to plot with Cain and his descendants thereafter.
28. This being also influenced people to construct a tower high enough to reach heaven and led those who came from that tower to this land, promoting wickedness and abominations until the whole population faced destruction and eternal damnation.
29. Yes, it is this same being who inspired Gadianton to persist in his dark deeds and secret murders, a legacy that has lasted from the dawn of humanity to this day.
30. He is the source of all sin, perpetuating dark deeds, secret killings, and spreading plots, oaths, covenants, and plans of horrendous wickedness from generation to generation, as long as he can gain influence over the hearts of humans.
31. At that time, he held significant sway over the Nephites hearts; consequently, they became exceedingly wicked. Most turned away from the path of righteousness, disregarding God's commandments in favor of their selfish desires and crafted idols made of gold and silver.
32. All these immoral actions accumulated swiftly within just a few years, so much so that a significant portion had occurred by the sixty-seventh year of the judges.
33. Their sins increased further in the sixty-eighth year, causing great sorrow and lament from the righteous.
34. Thus, the Nephites began to decline in their belief and became more entrenched in wickedness and abominations, while the Lamanites were growing significantly in their understanding of God; they started to observe His laws and commandments, living truthfully and righteously before Him.
35. As a result, the Lords Spirit began to withdraw from the Nephites due to their wickedness and hardened hearts.
36. Conversely, the Lord began to pour out His Spirit on the Lamanites because of their openness and readiness to accept His words.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

37. The Lamanites actively sought out Gadianton's band of robbers and preached God's word among the more corrupt individuals, completely vanquishing this group from among the Lamanites.

38. On the other hand, the Nephites supported and nurtured the band of robbers, especially among the most wicked of their own, allowing the group to spread throughout Nephite territory and seducing many righteous individuals into believing in their ways, participating in their spoils, and joining them in their secret murders and plots.

39. As a result, the band gained complete control over the government, trampling the poor, meek, and faithful followers of God underfoot and abusing them.

40. Consequently, they were in a terrible state, ready for everlasting destruction.

41. Thus ended the sixty-eighth year of the judges over the people of Nephi.

### **Helaman Chapter 7**

1. In the sixty-ninth year of the judges' reign over the Nephites, Nephi, Helaman's son, returned to Zarahemla from the northern lands.

2. He had been teaching the people in the north and delivering many prophecies to them;

3. But they rejected everything he said, so he could not remain there and went back to his homeland.

4. Seeing the people in such terrible wickedness and the Gadianton robbers taking control of the courtstakeing power illegally and ignoring God's commandments, they were far from him; they were not administering justice to the people;

5. They condemned the righteous for their goodness; let the guilty go free because of their wealth; and kept positions of power in the government, ruling according to their desires to gain and achieve worldly glory, allowing them to commit adultery, steal, kill, and act according to their own wishes

6. This great wickedness had arisen among the Nephites in just a few years; when Nephi witnessed it, he felt deep sorrow in his heart and cried out in anguish:

7. Oh, if only I could have lived in the days when my father Nephi first left Jerusalem, so I could have rejoiced with him in the promised land; back then, his people were easy to persuade, obedient to God's commandments,

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

and slow to commit sin; they were quick to listen to the Lord's words

8. If I had lived in those days, my soul would have rejoiced in the righteousness of my brothers.

9. But alas, I must accept that these are my days, and my soul will be filled with sorrow because of my brothers' wickedness.

10. Now it happened that Nephi was on a tower in his garden by the main road that led to the market in Zarahemla; he had bowed down on this tower, near the garden gate by the highway.

11. Some men passing by saw Nephi pouring out his heart to God on the tower; they ran and informed the people about what they had seen, and together they came in large numbers to understand the reason for such mourning over the people's wickedness.

12. When Nephi got up, he saw the huge crowd that had gathered.

13. He then opened his mouth and asked them: Why have you gathered here? Is it so I can tell you about your wrongdoings?

14. Yes, I've climbed this tower to pour out my soul to God, overwhelmed with sorrow for your sins!

15. You came together because of my mourning and lamentation, and you are amazed; yes, you have good reason to marvel; you should be shocked that the devil has gained such control over your hearts.

16. Yes, how could you allow yourselves to be tempted by the one who seeks to drag your souls into eternal suffering?

17. O repent, please! Why do you choose to die? Turn back to the Lord your God. Why has he turned away from you?

18. It's because you have closed your hearts; you will not listen to the voice of the good shepherd; you have angered him against you.

19. And instead of gathering you, unless you repent, he will scatter you, and you will become prey for dogs and wild animals.

20. O how could you forget your God on the very day he saved you?

21. But it is in your pursuit of gain, in seeking praise from others, and in striving for gold and silver. You have

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

set your hearts on the riches and trivialities of this world, leading you to murder, plunder, steal, bear false witness, and commit all sorts of sins.

22. Because of this, woe will come to you unless you repent. If you refuse to change, this great city, along with all the other major cities in our land, will be removed, and you will have nowhere left; the Lord will no longer give you strength as he has before to resist your enemies.

23. For the Lord says: I will not reveal my power to the wicked more than to others, except to those who sincerely repent of their sins and listen to my words. Therefore, my brothers, know that it will be better for the Lamanites than for you if you do not repent.

24. For indeed, they are more righteous than you because they have not sinned against the great knowledge given to you; thus, the Lord will show mercy to them; he will prolong their days and increase their descendants, even when you face destruction unless you repent.

25. Yes, woe be unto you because of the great corruption in your midst; you have chosen to join that secret group established by Gadianton!

26. Yes, woe will come upon you because of the pride you have allowed to fill your hearts, raising you above what is good because of your immense wealth!

27. Yes, woe be unto you because of your wickedness and sins!

28. Unless you repent, you will perish; yes, your lands will be taken from you, and you will be wiped off the face of the earth.

29. Now, I do not declare these things by my own authority, for I know these truths not by my own strength; I know them because the Lord God has revealed them to me, and therefore I testify that they are true.

## **Helaman Chapter 8**

1. As Nephi spoke these words, some judges who were part of the secret Gadianton group became furious and shouted to the crowd: Why aren't you arresting this man and bringing him forward to be punished for his actions?

2. Why do you allow this man to insult us and speak against our people and our laws?



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

3. Nephi had talked to them about how corrupt their laws were; he spoke many things that couldn't be written down, and nothing he said was contrary to God's commandments.
4. The judges were angry because he spoke openly about their secret evil deeds; still, they didnt dare to harm him because they feared the people might turn against them.
5. So, they shouted to the crowd: Why do you let this man insult us? He condemns everyone to destruction and claims we will lose our great cities, leaving us with no place to call home.
6. But we know that this cannot happen, because we are strong and our cities are powerful, so our enemies cannot defeat us.
7. Thus, they stirred up the people against Nephi and caused arguments among them; some shouted: Leave this man alone, for he is a good man, and his words will certainly come true unless we repent.
8. Yes, all the judgments he warned us about will happen because he has rightly testified about our sins. He knows everything that will happen to us, just as he knows our wrongdoings.
9. And truly, if he were not a prophet, he wouldn't be able to speak about those future events.
10. The people who wanted to harm Nephi were afraid, so they didn't attack him; seeing that he had some supporters, he started speaking to them once more, knowing that the rest now feared him.
11. So he felt compelled to say: Brothers, havent you read that God gave one man, Moses, the power to strike the waters of the Red Sea, causing them to part so that the Israelites, our ancestors, could walk through on dry ground? The waters then closed over the Egyptian armies and destroyed them.
12. Now, if God gave such power to Moses, why are you arguing and claiming he hasnt given me the ability to know the judgments that will come upon you unless you repent?
13. But you not only deny what I say, you deny the words of our ancestors and the words of Moses, who was given great power, and the visions he had about the coming of the Messiah.
14. Did he not testify that the Son of God would come? And just as he lifted up the copper snake in the wilderness, so too will the one who is to come be lifted up.
15. And just as those who looked at the snake lived, so everyone who looks upon the Son of God with faith

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

and a humble spirit can have eternal life.

16. And remember, Moses did not just testify of these things; all the holy prophets from his time to Abraham also did.

17. Yes, and Abraham knew of his coming and was filled with joy.

18. And I tell you, Abraham was aware of these matters, but there were many others before him chosen by God, even those after the order of his Son, to show the people thousands of years ahead of time that redemption would come.

19. And I want you to know that since the days of Abraham, many prophets have testified about these things; the prophet Zenos boldly declared them and was killed for it.

20. Also Zenock, Ezias, Isaiah, and Jeremiah, who warned of Jerusalem's destruction, and we see that Jerusalem was indeed destroyed as Jeremiah foretold. So why wouldnt the Son of God come as prophesied?

21. Will you argue that Jerusalem was not destroyed? Will you say that Zedekiah's sons were not killed, except for Mulek? And dont you see that Zedekiahs descendants are among us, driven away from Jerusalem? But thats not all

22. Our father Lehi was forced out of Jerusalem because he spoke about these things. Nephi also testified, as did almost all our ancestors down to this day; they have looked forward to Christ's coming and rejoiced at the thought of it.

23. And he is God, and he was with them, showing them that they were redeemed by him; they glorified him for what was to come.

24. Now that you know these truths and cant deny them unless you lie, you have sinned by rejecting them, even with the many signs you've received; youve witnessed so much in heaven and on earth that is true.

25. But you have turned away from the truth and rebelled against your holy God; instead of building up treasures in heaven, which cannot spoil or be touched by impurity, you are gathering your own punishment for the day of judgment.

26. Yes, right now you are becoming ripe for everlasting destruction because of your murders, sexual

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

immorality, and wickedness; unless you repent, it will soon come upon you.

27. Yes, it is right at your doorstep; go to the judgment seat and see for yourself; your judge has been killed and lies in his blood; his brother, who wants to take the judgment seat, murdered him.

28. And they are both part of your secret society, whose leader is Gadianon, the evil one who seeks to destroy the souls of men.

### **Helaman Chapter 9**

1. After Nephi spoke these words, some men among the crowd hurried to the judgment seat; there were five of them, and they whispered to one another as they ran:

2. Now we will finally know for sure if this man is a prophet and if God has really told him to speak such amazing things to us. We don't believe he is a prophet; however, if what he said about the chief judge being dead is true, then we will trust that the other things he said are also true.

3. They rushed to the judgment seat, and when they arrived, they found the chief judge lying on the ground in a pool of his own blood.

4. When they saw this, they were extremely shocked, so much so that they fell to the ground; they hadn't believed Nephi's words about the chief judge.

5. But once they saw the truth, they believed, and fear took hold of them because they worried that all the judgments Nephi had warned about would come upon them. As a result, they trembled and fell to the ground.

6. Right after the judge was murdered the victim being stabbed by his brother in secret he fled, and the servants ran to tell everyone, shouting that there had been a murder;

7. The people gathered at the judgment seat, and to their surprise, they saw the five men lying on the ground.

8. The people were unaware of the large crowd that had assembled in the garden of Nephi, so they whispered to one another: These men are the ones who murdered the judge, and God has struck them down so they could not escape.

9. They seized the five men, tied them up, and threw them into prison. An announcement was made to everyone that the judge was dead and that the murderers had been captured and jailed.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

10. The next day, the people gathered to mourn and fast for the burial of the great chief judge who had been killed.

11. Those judges who had been in the garden of Nephi and had heard his words were also gathered for the burial.

12. They asked the crowd: Where are the five men who were sent to check if the chief judge was dead? The people replied: About the five you mention, we don't know where they are; but we do have five murderers locked up in prison.

13. The judges wanted the five men to be brought to them; and they were brought forth, only to discover that they were indeed the same five who had been sent. The judges asked them what happened, and they explained:

14. We rushed to the judgment seat, and when we found everything just as Nephi had said, we were so astonished that we fell to the ground. When we regained our composure, we were thrown into prison.

15. As for the murder, we don't know who did it, but we did come as you requested, and it is true that he was dead, just as Nephi said.

16. The judges then explained to the people what had happened and yelled out against Nephi, saying: Look, we know that this Nephi must have conspired with someone to kill the judge, so he could tell us about it to convert us to his beliefs and elevate himself as a chosen prophet of God.

17. We will expose this man, and he will confess and reveal the real murderer of the judge.

18. On the day of the burial, the five men were set free. However, they scolded the judges for their accusations against Nephi, challenging them one by one to the point of confusion.

19. Despite this, they ordered Nephi to be captured and tied up to stand before the crowd, where they began questioning him in various ways to catch him in a lie and to ultimately accuse him of murder

20. They demanded: You must have worked with someone; who did this murder? Now confess your wrongdoing; look, here's money; we'll spare your life if you admit what you did!

21. Nephi responded: You foolish people with uncircumcised hearts, you blind and stubborn folks, do you not understand how long the Lord will tolerate you continuing in your sinful ways?

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

22. You should start crying out in grief because of the imminent destruction that awaits you unless you repent.
23. You claim I conspired with a man to murder Seezoram, our chief judge. But I say this is only because I warned you about the wrongdoings that exist among you, as a witness of the wickedness you possess.
24. And since I have done this, you accuse me of colluding to commit this act; yes, you are angry with me for revealing this sign, and you want to take my life.
25. Now I will give you another sign to see if you will still try to destroy me.
26. I tell you: Go to the house of Seantum, the brother of Seezoram, and ask him
27. Did Nephi, the false prophet who speaks so much evil about this people, conspire with you in the murder of Seezoram, your brother?
28. And he will say to you, No.
29. You will then ask: Did you kill your brother?
30. He will stand there in fear and wont know what to say. He will deny it and seem shocked; however, he will claim he is innocent.
31. But you will investigate him and find blood on the hem of his cloak.
32. When you see this, you will ask: Where did this blood come from? Dont you realize it is the blood of your brother?
33. Then he will tremble and turn pale, as if death has struck him.
34. You will then declare: Because this fear and paleness have come upon you, we know you are guilty.
35. And even greater fear will come upon him; he will then confess and no longer deny that he committed the murder.
36. He will say that he knows nothing about it except what has been revealed to him through the power of God. Then you will recognize that I am an honest man sent to you from God.
37. They followed Nephis instructions, and what he said came to pass; he denied and later confessed just as Nephi had foretold.
38. He was proven to be the actual murderer, resulting in the five men being set free, as well as Nephi.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

39. Some Nephites believed Nephi's words, while others believed because of the testimony of the five, as they had been converted during their time in prison.

40. Some among the people said Nephi was a prophet.

41. Others claimed: Look, he must be divine, for no one could know all this unless they were a god. He has revealed our innermost thoughts and has informed us of the true killer of our chief judge.

### **Helaman Chapter 10**

1. There was a disagreement among the people, causing them to scatter in different directions and leave Nephi standing alone in their midst.

2. Nephi then went home, reflecting on the things the Lord had shown him.

3. While he was deep in thought, feeling troubled by the wickedness of the Nephites their secret sins, murders, thefts, and all kinds of wrongdoing a voice spoke to him.

4. The voice said: You are blessed, Nephi, for what you have done; I have seen how tirelessly you have shared the word I gave you to this people. You have not been afraid of them, you have not sought to protect your own life, but you have sought my will and followed my commandments.

5. Since you have done this with such diligence, I will bless you forever; I will make you strong in your words and actions, in faith and deeds; indeed, whatever you say will be done according to your word, as long as you do not ask for things against my will.

6. Listen, you are Nephi, and I am God. I proclaim to you in front of my angels that you will have power over this people, and you will strike the earth with famine, plagues, and destruction according to their wickedness.

7. I give you the power that whatever you seal on earth will also be sealed in heaven, and whatever you loosen on earth will also be loosened in heaven; thus you will have authority among this people.

8. If you say to this temple that it should be torn apart, it will happen.

9. If you command this mountain to be thrown down and made smooth, it will happen.

10. And if you say that God will punish this people, it will occur.

11. Now, I command you to go and tell this people that the Lord God, the Almighty, says: Unless you repent,

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

you will face destruction.

12. After the Lord spoke these words to Nephi, he paused and chose not to go home; instead, he returned to the crowd scattered across the land and started delivering the message from the Lord, warning them of destruction if they did not repent.

13. Despite the great miracle Nephi performed by revealing the death of the chief judge, the people hardened their hearts and refused to listen to the Lord's words.

14. So Nephi continued to tell them what the Lord said: Unless you repent, the Lord declares, you will face destruction.

15. After Nephi delivered this message, the people still hardened their hearts and ignored him; they began to insult him and sought to imprison him.

16. However, God's power was with him, and they couldn't capture him to imprison him, for he was taken by the Spirit and removed from their midst.

17. Nephi then moved from group to group, in the Spirit, sharing the word of God until he had communicated it to all people.

18. Yet, the people refused to listen to his words; soon there was fighting among them, causing divisions and leading to them killing one another with swords.

19. And so ended the seventy-first year of the judges' rule over the Nephites.

## **Helaman Chapter 11**

1. In the seventy-second year of the judges rule, conflicts grew so intense that wars broke out among all the people of Nephi.

2. This secret group of robbers was responsible for the ongoing destruction and evil actions. The war persisted throughout that year and continued into the seventy-third year.

3. During that year, Nephi cried out to the Lord, saying:

4. "O Lord, please dont let this people be destroyed by fighting; instead, let there be a famine in the land to help them remember You, their God, so that they might repent and return to You."

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

5. And it happened just as Nephi asked. A severe famine plagued the land among all the people of Nephi. Thus, in the seventy-fourth year, the famine continued, and while the destruction by sword stopped, people suffered greatly from hunger.

6. The destruction continued into the seventy-fifth year. The earth was struck so that it became dry and produced no grain during the regular harvest season; this happened to all the land, affecting both the Lamanites and the Nephites, leading to the deaths of thousands in the more sinful regions.

7. As the people realized they were on the brink of dying from hunger, they began to remember the Lord their God and recalled Nephi's words.

8. The people pleaded with their chief judges and leaders to ask Nephi to pray to the Lord, saying, "We know you are a man of God, so please ask Him to take away this famine, or else what you have said about our destruction will come true."

9. The judges spoke to Nephi as the people desired. When Nephi noticed that the people had repented and humbled themselves in sackcloth, he called out to the Lord again, saying:

10. "O Lord, look, this people is repenting; they have driven out the Gadianon robbers to the point of their extinction and buried their secret schemes in the ground."

11. "Now, O Lord, please turn away Your anger and let it be calmed concerning the destruction of those wicked men who have already faced judgment."

12. "O Lord, will You please remove Your anger and stop this famine in the land?"

13. "O Lord, please listen to me and allow it to happen as I have asked, sending rain so that the earth can produce its fruits and grains in their harvest season."

14. "O Lord, You listened to me when I asked for a famine to stop the violence; and I trust that now, just as You promised, You will listen to me again, since You said that if this people repents, You will save them."

15. "Yes, O Lord, You see they have repented because of the hunger and destruction they have faced."

16. "And now, O Lord, will You turn away Your anger and see if they will serve You again? If they do, O Lord, You can bless them just as You have promised."



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

17. Then, in the seventy-sixth year, the Lord turned His anger away from the people and sent rain upon the earth, bringing forth its fruits in the proper seasons for harvest. The crops grew abundantly.

18. The people rejoiced and praised God, filling the land with happiness; and they no longer sought to harm Nephi but instead honored him as a great prophet and man of God, endowed with power and authority from God.

19. And Lehi, Nephi's brother, was equally righteous and respected.

20. Consequently, the people of Nephi began to thrive again in the land, rebuilding their destroyed places and multiplying, spreading until they covered the entire land, both north and south, from coast to coast.

21. The seventy-sixth year ended in peace, and the seventy-seventh year began peacefully; the church expanded across the land, with most people, both Nephites and Lamanites, joining the church, experiencing great peace in the land, thus concluding the seventy-seventh year.

22. They enjoyed peace in the seventy-eighth year, except for a few disputes regarding the doctrines put forth by the prophets.

23. In the seventy-ninth year, strife broke out again. However, Nephi and Lehi, along with many others who understood the true doctrines and received daily revelations, preached to the people and ended the conflicts in that same year.

24. In the eightieth year of the judges' rule, a group of dissenters from the Nephites, who had earlier joined the Lamanites and taken their name, began a war against their former people, inciting anger among the true Lamanites.

25. They committed murder and robbery, retreating into the mountains and wilderness to hide themselves, continuously growing in numbers from other dissenters who joined them.

26. Over time, not many years later, this group became a large band of robbers, uncovering the secret plans of Gadianton, thus becoming known as Gadianton robbers.

27. These robbers caused significant destruction among the Nephites and Lamanites.

28. Seeing the need to stop the violence, an army of strong men was sent into the wilderness and mountains to

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

find and defeat this group of robbers.

29. However, that year, they were pushed back into their own territories, concluding the eightieth year of the judges reign over the Nephites.

30. At the start of the eighty-first year, they once more went after the robbers, killing many, yet they suffered heavy losses themselves.

31. They had to retreat again from the wilderness and mountains back to their lands because the robbers had grown too powerful.

32. Thus, this year came to an end. The robbers continued to grow stronger, challenging all the armies of the Nephites and Lamanites, creating great fear among the people across the land.

33. They wreaked havoc in various regions, killing many and taking others captive into the wilderness, especially targeting women and children.

34. This great evil, a result of the people's sins, reminded them once again of the Lord their God.

35. And so the eighty-first year of the judges ended.

36. In the eighty-second year, the people began to forget the Lord again. In the eighty-third year, they grew stronger in their sins. By the eighty-fourth year, they didnt change their bad ways.

37. In the eighty-fifth year, they became increasingly proud and wicked, leading them toward destruction once more.

38. Thus ended the eighty-fifth year.

## **Helaman Chapter 12**

1. People can be unreliable, foolish, and quick to do wrongThe Lord corrects His peopleThe insignificance of humans is compared to God's powerOn judgment day, people will either receive eternal life or eternal damnation. About 6 B.C.

2. We can see how false and unstable the hearts of people are; truly, we observe that the Lord, in His immense goodness, blesses and succeeds with those who trust in Him.

3. Indeed, we can see that at the very moment He blesses His people, in the increase of their farms, animals,

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

wealth, and treasures; saving their lives and freeing them from their enemies; softening the hearts of their foes so they don't wage war against them; ultimately, doing all things for the well-being and happiness of His people; yet, during this time, they harden their hearts, forget the Lord their God, and disrespect the Holy One. This happens because of their comfort and great prosperity.

4. Therefore, we see that unless the Lord puts His people through various difficulties, including death, fear, famine, and all kinds of diseases, they will not remember Him.

5. Oh how foolish, vain, evil, and quick to do wrong the children of men are; they are quick to listen to the words of evil and focus on the worthless things of the world!

6. Yes, they are quick to become prideful; quick to boast and engage in all sorts of wrongdoing; yet they are slow to remember the Lord their God and to listen to His guidance, very slow to follow the path of wisdom!

7. Look, they do not want their Creator, the Lord their God, to rule over them; despite His immense goodness and mercy toward them, they ignore His counsel and refuse to let Him be their guide.

8. Oh how insignificant the children of men are; they are even less than the dust on the earth.

9. For the dust of the earth moves back and forth, breaking apart, at the command of our great and everlasting God.

10. Yes, at His voice, the hills and mountains shake and tremble.

11. By the power of His voice, they break apart and become smooth, like a valley.

12. Yes, by His voice, the entire earth shakes;

13. Yes, by His voice, the foundations of the earth rock, even to its very core.

14. And if He tells the earth to move, it moves.

15. If He tells the earth to return, and stretch out the day for many hours, it happens;

16. Thus, according to His word, the earth moves back, making it seem to us that the sun stands still; indeed, this is true; for it is the earth that moves, not the sun.

17. Also, if He tells the waters of the deep to be dry, it happens.

18. If He tells a mountain to be raised up, come over, and fall on that city to bury it, it is done.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

19. And if a person hides a treasure in the earth, and the Lord says Let it be cursed because of the wrong done by the one who hid it it will be cursed.
20. And if the Lord says Be cursed, so that no one will find you from this time on and forever no one will find it from that time onward.
21. And if the Lord says to a man Because of your wrongs, you will be cursed forever it will be so.
22. And if the Lord says Because of your wrongs, you will be cut off from my presence it will be done.
23. Woe to anyone to whom He says this, for it will be for those who commit wrong and cannot be saved; therefore, repentance has been declared so that people might be saved.
24. Blessed are those who repent and listen to the voice of the Lord their God; for these are the ones who will be saved.
25. May God, in His generosity, help people turn to repentance and good deeds, so they may be restored to grace for grace based on their actions.
26. I wish for all people to be saved. But we read that on the final day, some will be cast out, those who will be separated from the presence of the Lord;
27. They will be sent to a state of endless misery, fulfilling the words that say: Those who do good will receive everlasting life; and those who do evil will face everlasting damnation. And that is how it is. Amen.

## **Helaman Chapter 13**

1. The message of Samuel, the Lamanite, to the Nephites.
2. This message consists of chapters through 15.
3. Samuel the Lamanite warns the Nephites of their destruction if they do not change their ways Their wealth is cursed They reject the prophets, are surrounded by evil spirits, and mistakenly look for happiness in sinful behavior. This was around 6 B.C.
4. In the eighty-sixth year, the Nephites continued in their wickedness, even to a great extent, while the Lamanites strictly followed Gods commandments as outlined in the law of Moses.
5. In that year, a man named Samuel, who was a Lamanite, came to Zarahemla and started preaching to the

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

people. He spent many days calling for the people to repent, but they threw him out, and he was about to return home.

6. But the Lord spoke to him, giving him the command to go back and proclaim whatever He placed in his heart.

7. Since the people would not allow him to enter the city, he climbed onto the wall, raised his hand and shouted loudly, sharing the messages that God had inspired in him.

8. He told them: "I, Samuel, a Lamanite, speak the words the Lord has placed in my heart; He has instructed me to inform you that the sword of justice hangs over you, and in less than four hundred years, that sword will strike you down."

9. Indeed, severe destruction is coming for this people, and nothing can save them except they turn back to God and have faith in Jesus Christ, who will come into the world, experience great suffering, and be killed for His people.

10. An angel of the Lord has shown this to me, bringing joy to my soul. I was sent to share this news with you, so you too could have glad tidings; but you chose not to accept me.

11. Therefore, the Lord declares: Due to the stubbornness of the Nephites, unless they repent, I will take away my word from them, withdraw my Spirit, and allow them to suffer, while turning their brethren against them.

12. In less than four hundred years, I will ensure they face devastation; I will come among them in fierce anger, and your enemies will witness your complete destruction, unless you repent, says the Lord. Your enemies will witness your downfall.

13. But if you repent and return to the Lord your God, I will turn away my anger, says the Lord. Thus, the Lord says, blessed are those who repent and turn to me, but woe unto those who do not.

14. Woe unto the city of Zarahemla; it is saved only because of the righteous living among you. Indeed, woe to this city, as I perceive that most of its people are hard-hearted against me, says the Lord.

15. But blessed are those who repent; for their sake, I will spare the city. If it weren't for the righteous, I would send fire down from heaven to destroy it.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

16. But it is for the righteous that the city is spared. The time will come, says the Lord, when you cast out the righteous among you; then you will be ready for destruction. Woe unto this great city for the wickedness and the sins dwelling within it.

17. Woe unto the city of Gideon for the wickedness and abominations present there.

18. Woe unto all cities surrounding the Nephites, for the wickedness and abominations that stain them.

19. The Lord of Hosts has decreed that a curse will come upon the land because of the wickedness and sins of its people.

20. The Lord of Hosts, our great God, promises that anyone who hides treasures in the earth will find them lost forever due to the grave curse on the land, unless they are righteous and dedicate them to the Lord.

21. The Lord desires that treasures be dedicated to Him; cursed is anyone who does not do this. Only the righteous bury their treasures with God, and those who do not, along with their treasures, will be cursed. None will redeem them because of the lands curse.

22. There will come a day when they will hide their treasures due to their love of wealth; when they flee from their enemies, they will try to hide them but will not succeed; those who keep treasures from me will be cursed, along with their treasures; that day they will suffer, says the Lord.

23. Listen, people of this great city, and pay attention to my words; the Lord says you are cursed because of your wealth, and your wealth is also cursed because you value it more than your relationship with Him.

24. You forget the Lord your God and fail to thank Him for your blessings; your hearts do not reach out to Him, but swell with pride, leading to boasting, envy, conflict, malice, persecution, murder, and all kinds of sins.

25. This is why the Lord has brought a curse upon the land and on your wealth, all due to your sins.

26. Woe to this people for the time has come when you push away the prophets, mock them, throw stones at them, kill them, and commit all sorts of wickedness against them, just like they did in earlier times.

27. When you speak, you often say: If we had lived back in the days of our ancestors, we wouldn't have killed the prophets; we wouldnt have cast them out or stoned them.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

28. But you are worse than they were; for as the Lord lives, when a prophet comes to you bringing a word from God that reveals your sins, you get angry and throw him out, seeking to destroy him. You label him a false prophet, a sinner, and of the devil because he tells you the truth about your actions.

29. Yet, if someone comes and tells you to do whatever you want and that there's no wrongdoing, you will gladly accept him and call him a prophet.

30. You will praise him, give him your wealth, your gold, your silver, and clothe him in fine clothes. Because he speaks flattering words and claims that all is well, you won't criticize him.

31. Oh, wicked and perverse generation; how long do you think the Lord will tolerate you? How long will you allow yourselves to be guided by foolish and blind leaders? How long will you choose darkness instead of light?

32. Behold, the Lord is already angry with you; He has cursed the land because of your sins.

33. The time is coming when He will curse your riches making them unusable, and in times of need, you won't be able to keep hold of them.

34. During your poverty, you will cry out to the Lord; but your cries will be futile, for destruction has already come upon you, and your downfall is certain. Then you will weep and wail, says the Lord of Hosts. You will lament, saying:

35. "Oh, if only I had repented and not harmed the prophets, stoned them, or cast them out! In that day you will say: If only we had remembered the Lord our God when He blessed us with riches; then our wealth wouldn't have slipped from us."

36. Behold, every tool we place here today is gone tomorrow; our swords get taken from us just when we need them for battle.

37. We have stored our treasures, and they have slipped away from us because of the land's curse.

38. Oh, if only we had repented when the Lord's word came to us! Now the land is cursed, everything is slipping away, and we can't grip it.

39. We are surrounded by evil spirits, encircled by the angels of the one who seeks to destroy our souls. Our

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

sins are great. Oh Lord, cant you turn your anger away from us? These will be your words in those days.

40. But your time for trial is over; you have put off your salvation until its too late, and your destruction is guaranteed; you have spent your lives chasing what you cannot have and seeking happiness in wrongdoing, which is the opposite of true righteousness.

41. Oh, people of this land, if only you would hear my words! I pray that the Lord's anger might turn away from you, and that you would repent and be saved.

### **Helaman Chapter 14**

1. Samuel, the Lamanite prophet, shared many prophecies that cant all be recorded here.

2. He told them: Im giving you a sign; in five years, the Son of God will come to save everyone who believes in Him.

3. He said another sign will occur at His arrival: there will be bright lights in the sky, so much so that the night before His birth will be as bright as day.

4. So, there will be one day and a night and a day, appearing as one long day with no night, and this will be a sign for you. You will see the sunrise and sunset, knowing for certain that it is two days and a night; yet the night will not be dark, and it will happen the night before He is born.

5. A new star will appear, unlike any you have ever seen, and this too will be a sign for you.

6. And this is not all; there will be many signs and miracles in the heavens.

7. You will all be astonished and amazed to the point of falling to the ground.

8. Anyone who believes in the Son of God will be granted eternal life.

9. God has commanded me, through His angel, to come and share this with you; He told me to proclaim these things to you and to urge you to repent and prepare for the Lords coming.

10. Now, because I'm a Lamanite and have spoken the words God commanded, you are upset and wish to harm me, even casting me out from among you.

11. You should listen to my words because I have come here to the walls of this city so you can hear and understand the judgments of God that await you for your wrongdoings, and also to inform you of the



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

conditions for repentance.

12. And also so you can learn about the coming of Jesus Christ, the Son of God, the Father of heaven and earth, the Creator of everything from the beginning; and you will also learn of the signs of His coming, so you may believe in His name.

13. If you believe in His name, you will turn away from all your sins, so that you may receive forgiveness through His grace.

14. Here is another sign I give you, a sign of His death.

15. He must die in order for salvation to happen; it is necessary for Him to die to enable the resurrection, allowing people to be brought back into the presence of the Lord.

16. Yes, His death will lead to resurrection and will save all humanity from spiritual death; because of Adam's fall, all people are cut off from Gods presence and are considered dead, both physically and spiritually.

17. But Christs resurrection restores everyone, bringing all people back into the presence of the Lord.

18. This resurrection allows for repentance; if someone repents, they will not be cut down and thrown into the fire, but if someone does not repent, they will be cut down and thrown into the fire. They will again face a spiritual death, a second death, because they are severed from righteousness once more.

19. So, repent, repent, or else by knowing these things and not acting on them, you will bring condemnation upon yourselves, facing a second death.

20. As I mentioned regarding another sign, a sign of His death, on the day He dies, the sun will go dark and will not shine for you; the moon and stars will also not give light. There will be complete darkness for three days after He dies until He rises again.

21. When He dies, there will be thunder and lightning for many hours, and the earth will shake and tremble; the solid rocks on the earth will be broken apart.

22. They will be split in two and will forever be found in cracks and fragments all over the earth, both above and below.

23. There will be great storms, and many mountains will be laid flat like valleys; many places now considered

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

valleys will become tall mountains.

24. Many roads will be destroyed, and many cities will become empty and desolate.

25. Graves will open up, revealing many of the dead, and many holy people will appear to many others.

26. The angel told me there would be thunder and lightning for many hours.

27. He also said that while the thunder and lightning occur, darkness would cover the whole earth for three days.

28. The angel told me that many will witness even bigger events, all to ensure that people believe these signs and wonders will happen on this land, so there will be no excuse for disbelief.

29. This is so that anyone who believes can be saved, while those who choose not to believe will face a fair judgment; if they are condemned, they do so to themselves.

30. Now remember, remember, my brothers, that those who perish do so because of their own actions; and anyone who does wrong does it to themselves. You are free; you have the ability to choose for yourselves. God has given you knowledge and has made you free.

31. He has given you the ability to distinguish between good and evil, enabling you to choose between life or death; you can do good and be restored to goodness, or you can choose evil and have evil restored to you.

## **Helaman Chapter 15**

1. The Lord corrected the Nephites because He cared for them  
Converted Lamanites are strong and unwavering in their faith  
In the last days, the Lord will show mercy to the Lamanites. About 6 B.C.

2. And now, my dear brothers, I want to emphasize that if you do not change your ways, your homes will be left in ruins.

3. Yes, unless you repent, your women will have great reasons to mourn when they give birth; for when you try to escape, there will be no safe place to go; and woe to those who are pregnant, for they will be burdened and unable to flee; therefore, they will be trampled and left to die.

4. Yes, woe to the people called the Nephites unless they repent, especially when they witness all the signs and miracles that will be shown to them; for they have been a chosen people of the Lord; indeed, the Nephites

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

have been loved by Him, and He has corrected them; yes, He has chastened them in times of their wickedness because of His love for them.

5. But you see, my brothers, the Lord has not loved the Lamanites due to their continual evil actions, stemming from the wrong traditions of their ancestors. Yet, salvation has reached them through the preaching of the Nephites; and for this reason, the Lord has allowed them to continue living.

6. I want you to know that most of them are following the right path, living carefully before God, and trying to keep His commandments and laws based on Mosess teachings.

7. Yes, I tell you that most of them are doing this, and they are working tirelessly to help the rest of their people learn the truth; therefore, many are joining their ranks daily.

8. And you know this to be true, for you have seen it: as many of them as come to know the truth and learn about the evil traditions of their fathers, and are led to trust in the holy scriptures and the prophecies of the holy prophets, which guide them to faith in the Lord and to repentance, which then brings about a change of heart

9. Therefore, those who reach this understanding are known to be firm and steadfast in their faith and in the freedoms they have gained.

10. And you also know that they have laid down their weapons of war, fearing to pick them up lest they sin; indeed, you can see that they fear to sin for they would rather be trampled and killed by their enemies than raise their swords against them, all because of their faith in Christ.

11. And now, because of their steadfastness in what they believe, the Lord will bless them and extend their lives, in spite of their wrongdoing

12. Yes, even if they face moments of disbelief, the Lord will keep them living until the time spoken of by our ancestors, as well as by the prophet Zenos and many others, about the restoration of our brethren, the Lamanites, back to the knowledge of the truth

13. Yes, I tell you that in the last days, the Lords promises have been given to our brethren, the Lamanites; and despite the many troubles they will endure, and although they will be tossed around the earth, hunted, and

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

scattered without a place to find safety, the Lord will show them mercy.

14. This aligns with the prophecy that they will again come to the true knowledge, which is the understanding of their Redeemer, their great and true shepherd, and be counted among His flock.

15. Therefore, I tell you, it will be better for them than for you unless you repent.

16. For consider this: if the mighty works shown to you had been shown to them, those who have strayed in disbelief due to their fathers traditions would never have strayed again.

17. Therefore, the Lord declares: I will not completely destroy them, but I will bring them back to me in my chosen time.

18. And now, listen to what the Lord says concerning the Nephites: If they do not repent and do my will, I will completely destroy them, says the Lord, because of their disbelief, despite all the miracles I have performed among them; and as surely as the Lord lives, these things will come to pass, says the Lord.

## **Helaman Chapter 16**

1. Many people listened to the words of Samuel, the Lamanite, as he spoke from the city walls. Those who believed his message searched for Nephi and, upon finding him, admitted their wrongdoings and asked to be baptized by the Lord.

2. However, those who rejected Samuel's words became furious with him. They threw stones and shot arrows at him while he stood on the wall, but the Spirit of the Lord protected him so that they couldn't hit him.

3. Seeing that they could not strike him, even more people came to believe his message and went to Nephi to be baptized.

4. Nephi was busy baptizing and prophesying, urging the people to repent. He performed signs and miracles among them so they would recognize that Christ was coming soon.

5. He told them about events that were going to happen soon so that they would remember these things and believe when they occurred. So many who believed Samuel sought Nephi to be baptized, coming with repentance for their sins.

6. Most of the people, however, did not accept Samuel's words. When they realized they couldn't harm him,

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

they called to their leaders, demanding that he be captured, saying he was possessed by a devil, which explained why their attempts to hit him failed.

7. As they approached to seize him, he jumped down from the wall and escaped to his homeland, where he continued to preach and prophesy to his people.

8. He was never seen again among the Nephites, and that was the state of the people.

9. The eighty-sixth year of the judges' reign over the Nephites came to a close.

10. The eighty-seventh year also concluded, with most of the people remaining prideful and wicked, while a smaller group acted more carefully in the sight of God.

11. The same conditions existed in the eighty-eighth year of their reign.

12. Little changed among the people, except that they became increasingly hardened in their wrongdoing, doing more that went against God's commandments in the eighty-ninth year.

13. Then, in the ninetieth year of the judges' reign, numerous signs and wonders were given to the people, and the words of the prophets began to come true.

14. Angels appeared to wise men, bringing them joyful news; thus, that year, the scriptures began to be fulfilled.

15. Yet, most of the people hardened their hearts, except for the most faithful among the Nephites and Lamanites. They began to rely on their own strength and wisdom, claiming:

16. They might have guessed correctly about some things, but all the miraculous events spoken of could not possibly happen.

17. They started arguing with each other, saying:

18. It doesn't make sense for someone like Christ to come; if he really is the Son of God, as has been said, why doesn't he show himself to us just like he will to those in Jerusalem?

19. Why doesn't he reveal himself here as well as in Jerusalem?

20. They believed that this idea was a false tradition passed down from their ancestors, meant to make them expect some significant event that would not occur among them but in a distant place they didn't know, thus

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

keeping them in ignorance because they could not witness it.

21. By the deceitful methods of the devil, some great mystery might be created that they wouldnt be able to comprehend, which would keep them submissive to the teachings of others. They relied on them to instruct them in the truth, allowing themselves to remain uninformed throughout their lives.

22. Many other foolish and vain thoughts filled the people's hearts, troubling them greatly, as Satan stirred them constantly toward wrongdoing. He spread lies and conflicts across the land to harden their hearts against what was good and what was to come.

23. Even with the signs and wonders performed by the Lord's people and the many miracles they witnessed, Satan managed to seize control of the hearts of the people throughout the land.

24. This marked the end of the ninetieth year of the judges' reign over the Nephites.

25. Thus concluded the book of Helaman, according to the records kept by Helaman and his sons.

## **3 Nephi**

### **3 Nephi Chapter 1**

1. Third Nephi

2. The Book of Nephi, the Son of Helaman

3. Helaman was the son of another Helaman, who was the son of Alma, who was also a son of Alma. They were descendants of Nephi, the son of Lehi, who left Jerusalem in the first year of Zedekiah's reign as king of Judah.

4. Nephi, the son of Helaman, left the land, and his son Nephi took care of the records. Even though there were many miracles and signs, the wicked plotted to kill the righteous. The night of Christ's birth approached. The sign was given, and a new star appeared. Lies and deceit grew, and the Gadianon robbers killed many people. This was around A.D. 14.

5. The ninety-first year had ended, and it was six hundred years since Lehi left Jerusalem. Lachoneus was the chief judge and governor of the land that year.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

6. Nephi, the son of Helaman, had left Zarahemla, entrusting the brass plates and all sacred records to his oldest son Nephi.

7. He left the land, and no one knew where he went. His son Nephi maintained the records of the people in his place.

8. At the start of the ninety-second year, the prophecies of the prophets began to come true more clearly, with even greater signs and miracles happening among the people.

9. However, some started to claim that the time had passed for Samuels prophecies to be fulfilled.

10. They rejoiced in front of their brethren, saying, Look, the time has passed, and Samuel's words have not come true; therefore, your happiness and faith regarding this are in vain.

11. They created a loud uproar throughout the land, causing believers to become very sad, fearing that the prophecies might not come to pass.

12. But they remained watchful for the day and night when it would be as one continuous day without night, hoping to prove that their faith was not in vain.

13. The unbelievers designated a day for all who believed in those traditions to be killed if the sign that Samuel prophesied did not happen.

14. When Nephi, the son of Nephi, saw the wickedness among his people, he felt deep sorrow.

15. He went out, knelt on the ground, and earnestly prayed to God on behalf of his people, especially those about to be destroyed because of their faith in their ancestors' traditions.

16. He cried out to the Lord all day long, and the voice of the Lord answered him, saying:

17. "Lift up your head and be cheerful; for the time is near, and this night the sign will be given, and tomorrow I will come into the world to fulfill everything I have spoken through my holy prophets."

18. "Look, I come to my own people to fulfill all things I have revealed to humanity since the world's foundation, and to do the will of both the Father and the Son through me, and the Son through my earthly form. The time is near, and the sign will be given tonight."

19. The words spoken to Nephi were fulfilled just as they had been said; at sunset, there was no darkness, and

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

the people were astonished that when night came, it remained light.

20. Many who had doubted the prophets fell to the ground as if they were dead, realizing that the destructive plan they had for those who believed the prophets was foiled, for the sign had already come.

21. They began to understand that the Son of God would soon appear; indeed, everyone on earth, from west to east, both in the north and south, were so astonished that they fell to the ground.

22. They knew that prophets had testified of these events for many years, and the sign was now here; they began to fear because of their sins and disbelief.

23. There was no darkness throughout that night; it was as bright as midday. The sun rose the next morning as usual, and they recognized that it was the day the Lord was to be born, based on the sign given.

24. Everything happened exactly as the prophets had spoken.

25. A new star also appeared, just as prophesied.

26. From that moment on, lies began to spread among the people by Satan to harden their hearts so they would not believe the signs and wonders they had witnessed. Despite these lies, most of the people believed and turned to the Lord.

27. Nephi went among the people, along with many others, baptizing them in repentance, leading to a significant forgiveness of sins. So, the people started to find peace in the land again.

28. There were few disagreements, except for those who began to preach that it was no longer necessary to follow the law of Moses. In this matter, they were mistaken, as they did not understand the scriptures.

29. However, they soon became converted and recognized their errors when it was revealed to them that the law was not yet fulfilled and must be completed in every detail; they learned that not a single jot or tittle would pass away until everything was accomplished. Thus, in that same year, they were made aware of their mistakes and confessed their sins.

30. The ninety-second year passed, bringing good news to the people because of the fulfilled signs, as prophesied by all the holy prophets.

31. The ninety-third year also passed peacefully, except for the Gadianton robbers who lived in the mountains



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

and plagued the land. Their strongholds and secret hideouts made it impossible for the people to defeat them, causing many murders and much bloodshed among their ranks.

32. By the ninety-fourth year, the robbers began to grow in strength, as many disaffected Nephites sought refuge with them, causing great sorrow among the Nephites who remained.

33. The Lamanites also experienced sorrow, as they had many children growing up who became strong and were led astray by some Zoramites with their lies and flattering words, joining the ranks of the Gadianton robbers.

34. Thus, the Lamanites faced their own challenges and began to lose their faith and righteousness due to the wickedness of the young generation.

### **3 Nephi Chapter 2**

1. The ninety-fifth year came to an end, and the people started to forget the miraculous signs and wonders they had witnessed. They became less impressed by heavenly signs, which hardening their hearts and blinding their minds, led them to doubt everything they had heard and seen.

2. They created false ideas in their hearts, claiming that these miracles were performed by humans and the devil's power, intended to mislead and deceive them. This allowed Satan to regain control over the people's hearts, blinding them to the truth and leading them to believe that Christ's teachings were foolish and meaningless.

3. Consequently, the people grew stronger in their wickedness and sinful acts. They no longer believed that any more signs or wonders would be shown to them. Meanwhile, Satan roamed about, tempting the people and urging them to commit great evils throughout the land.

4. Thus passed the ninety-sixth, ninety-seventh, ninety-eighth, and ninety-ninth years;

5. And a hundred years had gone by since the time of King Mosiah, who ruled over the Nephite people.

6. It had been six hundred and nine years since Lehi left Jerusalem.

7. Nine years had passed from when the prophetic sign indicating that Christ would come into the world was given.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

8. Now, the Nephites started counting their years from this event, or from Christ's coming; thus, nine years had elapsed.

9. Nephi, who was the father of Nephi responsible for the records, did not return to Zarahemla and could not be found anywhere in the land.

10. Despite much preaching and prophecy trying to guide them, the people continued in their wickedness; thus, the tenth year also passed, followed by another year of iniquity.

11. In the thirteenth year, wars and disputes began to break out across the land because the Gadianton robbers had become numerous, killing many of the people, destroying cities, and spreading death and destruction throughout the land. It became necessary for everyone, both Nephites and Lamanites, to take up arms against them.

12. All the converted Lamanites joined forces with the Nephites, compelled to arm themselves to protect their lives, women, and children from the Gadianton robbers, and to defend their rights, church, worship, freedom, and liberty.

13. Before the thirteenth year was over, the Nephites faced the threat of total destruction due to this intense conflict.

14. Those Lamanites who had allied with the Nephites were categorized with them;

15. Their curse was lifted, and their skin became white like the Nephites;

16. Their young men and daughters became very fair, and they were counted among the Nephites, adopting the name Nephites. Thus, the thirteenth year came to an end.

17. At the start of the fourteenth year, the war between the robbers and the Nephite people intensified; however, the Nephites managed to push the robbers back into the mountains and their hidden places.

18. Thus, the fourteenth year came to a close. In the fifteenth year, the robbers again attacked the Nephites. Due to the Nephites' wickedness, numerous conflicts, and divisions among themselves, the Gadianton robbers gained several advantages.

19. Thus the fifteenth year also ended, and the people faced great hardships. The threat of destruction hung

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

over them, ready to strike because of their sins.

### **3 Nephi Chapter 3**

1. In the sixteenth year after Christ came, Lachoneus, the governor of the land, got a letter from the leader of a group of robbers. This is what the letter said:
2. Lachoneus, the respected governor of the land, I'm writing to you to give you a lot of praise for your determination and that of your people in standing up for what you believe is your right and freedom. You seem to hold your ground as if you were backed by the strength of a god, defending your liberty, property, and country, or what you consider to be so.
3. It seems foolish to me, Lachoneus, that you think you can withstand so many brave men at my command, who are currently armed and anxiously waiting for the order to attack the Nephites and destroy them.
4. I know their unbeatable spirit, having faced them in battle, and I understand their enduring hatred for you because of the many wrongs you have done. If they come against you, they would bring complete destruction.
5. That's why I wrote this letter with my own hand, concerned for your well-being due to your unwavering belief in what is right and your brave spirit in battle.
6. So, I urge you to surrender to my people, giving up your cities, lands, and possessions, rather than face the sword and destruction.
7. In other words, give yourselves to us, join us, learn our secret ways, and become like us, not our slaves, but our brothers and partners in everything we have.
8. I swear to you, if you do this, you will not be destroyed; but if you refuse, I swear that next month I will send my armies against you, and they will not hold back or spare you, but will kill you until you are completely wiped out.
9. I am Giddianhi, the governor of this secret society of Gadianton, which I believe to be good and is of ancient origin, passed down to us.
10. I hope that you will hand over your lands and possessions peacefully, so that my people can reclaim their rights and government, which they have left because of your wickedness in denying them their rights. If you

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

don't do this, I will take revenge for their grievances. I am Giddianhi.

11. When Lachoneus received this letter, he was greatly shocked by Giddianhi's boldness in demanding the Nephites' land and threatening them while avenging wrongs done to those who had only harmed themselves by joining those wicked robbers.

12. Lachoneus was a fair man and wouldn't be intimidated by a robber's demands, so he ignored Giddianhi's letter. Instead, he urged his people to pray to the Lord for help when the robbers attacked.

13. He sent a proclamation for everyone to gather their women, children, flocks, herds, and all their possessions, except for their land, in one location.

14. He had strong fortifications built around their gathering place, with great strength. He also organized both Nephite and Lamanite armies, or anyone counted among the Nephites, to guard them against the robbers day and night.

15. He said to them: As the Lord lives, unless you repent of your sins and cry out to the Lord, you will not be saved from the hands of those Gadianton robbers.

16. Lachoneus's powerful words and prophecies instilled fear in all the people, motivating them to follow his advice with great effort.

17. He appointed chief captains over all Nephite armies to lead them when the robbers would come down from the wilderness to attack.

18. The highest-ranking of these captains, the main commander of all Nephite armies, was named Gidgiddoni.

19. It was common among the Nephites to choose their chief captains (except in times of wickedness) to be individuals with the spirit of prophecy and revelation; therefore, Gidgiddoni was a great prophet, just like the chief judge.

20. The people said to Gidgiddoni: Pray to the Lord, and let's go into the mountains and wilderness to surprise the robbers and defeat them in their own land.

21. But Gidgiddoni replied: The Lord forbids it; if we go against them, the Lord would hand us over to them. So we will prepare ourselves in the center of our land, gathering all our armies together, and we won't attack

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

them; instead, we'll wait for them to come against us. As the Lord lives, if we do this, He will deliver them into our hands.

22. In the seventeenth year, towards the end of the year, Lachoneus's proclamation spread across the land, and the people gathered everything: their horses, chariots, cattle, flocks, herds, grain, and possessions. They marched in large groups to the place designated to come together to defend against their enemies.

23. The appointed area was the land of Zarahemla and the space between Zarahemla and Bountiful, up to the border between Bountiful and Desolation.

24. Many thousands of people called Nephites gathered in this land. Lachoneus had them come together in the south because of the great curse upon the northern land.

25. They fortified themselves to defend against their enemies, living as one community, and were so moved by Lachoneus's words that they repented of their sins and prayed to the Lord to save them when their enemies came to battle.

26. They were very sorrowful because of their enemies. Gidgiddoni ensured they made all kinds of weapons for war, and that they equipped themselves with armor, shields, and bucklers according to his guidance.

### **3 Nephi Chapter 4**

1. At the end of the eighteenth year, the robber armies were ready for battle and began to come down from the hills, mountains, wilderness, strongholds, and secret places. They started to take over the lands that the Nephites had abandoned, including the cities that were left in ruins.

2. However, there were no wild animals or game in the deserted lands, and the robbers could only find food in the wilderness.

3. The robbers struggled to survive without food because the Nephites had left their lands empty and taken their livestock and possessions with them, gathering into one group.

4. As a result, the robbers had no opportunity to steal food unless they attacked the Nephites directly. The Nephites were united, had a large number of people, and had stored enough supplies, horses, cattle, and flocks to survive for seven years. During this time, they hoped to eliminate the robbers from their land, and thus, the

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

eighteenth year came to an end.

5. In the nineteenth year, Giddianhi realized he needed to attack the Nephites because the robbers could not survive without stealing, killing, and plundering.

6. The robbers did not dare to spread out across the land to farm because they feared the Nephites would come after them, so Giddianhi ordered his troops to prepare for battle against the Nephites.

7. They advanced to fight in the sixth month, and it was a fearsome and terrible day of battle. They were dressed like robbers, wearing lambskin around their waists dyed in blood, with their heads shorn and wearing headplates. The sight of Giddianhi's armies was frightening due to their terrifying appearance.

8. When the Nephite armies saw how Giddianhi's troops looked, they fell to the ground and cried out to their God, asking Him to spare them and save them from their enemies.

9. Seeing this, Giddianhi's armies shouted loudly in joy, thinking the Nephites were afraid of them.

10. But they were mistaken; the Nephites did not fear the robbers; they feared God and prayed for His protection. So, when Giddianhi's armies attacked, the Nephites were ready to fight back; they relied on the strength of the Lord to confront them.

11. The battle began in the sixth month, and it was fierce and deadly, with great losses on both sides, unlike any slaughter among the people of Lehi since they left Jerusalem.

12. Despite Giddianhi's threats and promises, the Nephites defeated them, pushing them back.

13. Gidgiddoni ordered his troops to chase the robbers all the way to the wilderness' edge, showing no mercy to anyone who fell into their hands along the way, and they pursued and killed many until they obeyed Gidgiddoni's command.

14. Giddianhi, who had fought bravely, was chased as he fled. Exhausted from the fighting, he was caught and killed, marking the end of Giddianhi the robber.

15. The Nephite armies returned to safety, and the nineteenth year ended without further attacks from the robbers; they did not try again in the twentieth year.

16. In the twenty-first year, the robbers didn't come for battle but surrounded the Nephite people to lay siege,

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

believing that cutting them off from their lands and outside support would force them to surrender.

17. They had chosen a new leader named Zemnarihah, who was responsible for the siege.

18. However, this worked in favor of the Nephites, who had stockpiled supplies that made it impossible for the robbers to lay siege effectively.

19. The robbers had very little food, relying only on meat from the wilderness for survival.

20. As the wild game became scarce, the robbers were on the brink of starving.

21. The Nephites kept moving out day and night, attacking the robbers and cutting down thousands at a time.

22. Faced with such devastation, Zemnarihah's people wanted to abandon their plan due to the continuous destruction they suffered.

23. Zemnarihah then ordered his troops to stop the siege and retreat to the far northern parts of the land.

24. Now, knowing their plan and their weakness from lack of food and heavy losses, Gidgiddoni sent his armies out at night to block their escape and positioned them along their retreat path.

25. They managed to move ahead of the robbers in the night, so when the robbers began to march, they were confronted by Nephite armies both in front and behind.

26. The robbers in the south also found their escape routes cut off. All of this was done under Gidgiddoni's orders.

27. Many thousands of robbers surrendered to the Nephites, while the rest were killed.

28. Their leader, Zemnarihah, was captured and hung from a tree until he died. After he was hanged, they cut down the tree and shouted loudly:

29. "May the Lord protect His people in righteousness and pure hearts, helping them to overcome all who seek to destroy them through power and secret plots, just as this man has fallen."

30. They rejoiced and cried out together, "May the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob protect this people in righteousness, as long as they call on His name for safety."

31. Then they all burst into song and praised their God for the incredible deliverance from their enemies.

32. They cried praises to the Most High God and blessed the name of the Lord Almighty.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

33. Their hearts swelled with joy and tears flowed from their eyes because of God's great goodness in saving them from their enemies; they recognized that their deliverance came because they had repented and humbled themselves.

### **3 Nephi Chapter 5**

1. Many among the Nephites had complete faith in the words of the holy prophets; they were certain that these prophecies would come true.
2. They understood that it was necessary for Christ to come because of the many signs given by the prophets, and because the earlier events affirmed that everything would happen as foretold.
3. Because of this understanding, they gave up all their sins, immoral behaviors, and wrongful acts; they served God diligently, both day and night.
4. When they captured all the robbers, ensuring none escaped unless they were killed, they put their prisoners in jail and preached God's word to them; those who were willing to repent and promise not to kill again were released.
5. However, those who refused to make this promise and who still harbored thoughts of secret murders, as well as those who threatened their fellow citizens, were punished under the law.
6. This ended the wicked and secretive groups that had caused so much evil and committed many murders.
7. Thus, the years went by: the twenty-second, twenty-third, twenty-fourth, and twenty-fifth years passed, totaling twenty-five years.
8. Many significant events occurred during that time, some of which people might find remarkable, but this book cannot include all of them; it cant even contain one-hundredth of everything that took place among so many people during those twenty-five years.
9. However, there are other records that detail all the activities of these people, and Nephi provided a shorter, accurate account.
10. So, I have compiled my own record based on Nephi's writings, which were engraved on the plates known as the plates of Nephi.



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

11. And I am writing on plates I created with my own hands.

12. I am Mormon, named after the land of Mormon, where Alma first established the church among the people after their wrongdoing.

13. I follow Jesus Christ, the Son of God, and I have been chosen by Him to share His word with my people so they can have eternal life.

14. It has become important, according to God's will, for me to write down what has happened to fulfill the prayers of the holy ones who have passed away, based on their faith.

15. This will be a brief record of events from the time Lehi left Jerusalem to the present day.

16. I create my record from the accounts provided by those before me, leading up to my time.

17. Then, I will include my account of the things I have personally witnessed.

18. I know that what I am recording is accurate and truthful; however, there are many things that our language cannot adequately express.

19. Now, I will conclude my personal remarks and move on to recount the events that have occurred before me.

20. I am Mormon, a direct descendant of Lehi. I have great reason to thank my God and Savior, Jesus Christ, for bringing our ancestors out of Jerusalem, known only to Him and those who left with Him, and for giving me and my people so much knowledge for our salvation.

21. He has certainly blessed the house of Jacob and shown mercy to the descendants of Joseph.

22. As long as Lehi's children have followed His commandments, He has blessed and prospered them as promised.

23. Indeed, He will again lead a remnant of Joseph's descendants to the knowledge of the Lord their God.

24. Just as surely as the Lord lives, He will gather all of Jacob's scattered descendants from across the earth.

25. And as He has made promises to all of Jacob's descendants, He will fulfill those promises in His perfect timing, restoring all of Jacob's house to the knowledge of their covenant with Him.

26. Then they will know their Redeemer, Jesus Christ, the Son of God, and they will be gathered from all

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

corners of the earth back to their own lands whence they have been scattered; as the Lord lives, it will happen. Amen.

### **3 Nephi Chapter 6**

1. The Nephites thrivedpride, wealth, and social classes emergedThe Church faced deep divisionsSatan led the people to outright rebellionMany prophets called for repentance and were killedTheir murderers conspired to seize control of the government. About A.D. 2630.
2. In the twenty-sixth year, the Nephite people returned to their homes, with every person bringing along their family, livestock, horses, cattle, and all their belongings.
3. They hadnt consumed all their supplies, so they took whatever food they hadnt eaten, including all types of grain, and their gold and silver, returning to their lands and possessions in both the northern and southern regions.
4. They gave land to the robbers who made a pact to maintain peace and wished to remain Lamanites, granting them enough land based on their numbers so they could support themselves through their work; this helped to establish peace throughout the land.
5. They began to thrive and grow; the twenty-sixth and seventh years passed with great order in the land, and they had laws rooted in fairness and justice.
6. There was nothing stopping the people from continuing to prosper, except for the possibility of their own wrongdoing.
7. The leaders responsible for this peace were Gidgiddoni, the judge Lachoneus, and others appointed to lead.
8. Many new cities were built, and several old cities were repaired.
9. They constructed numerous highways and roads connecting cities and different areas of the land.
10. Thus, the twenty-eighth year ended with continued peace among the people.
11. However, in the twenty-ninth year, arguments began to arise among the people; some became prideful and boastful due to their significant wealth, even leading to severe persecution.
12. There were many traders, lawyers, and officials in the land.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

13. The people started to be categorized based on their wealth and education; some were ignorant due to poverty while others gained extensive education because of their riches.

14. Some became arrogant, while others remained very humble; some retaliated to insults, while others chose to endure insults and persecution with humility and repentance before God.

15. This led to significant inequality throughout the land, causing the Church to begin to fall apart; by the thirtieth year, the Church was nearly nonexistent throughout the land, except for a few Lamanites who had embraced the true faith and steadfastly adhered to it, diligently keeping God's commandments.

16. The root of this wickedness among the people was that Satan had great influence, inciting them to commit all sorts of wrongdoings, filling them with pride, and tempting them to seek power, authority, wealth, and fleeting pleasures.

17. Satan led the peoples hearts away from righteousness, which is why their peace lasted only a few years.

18. At the beginning of the thirtieth year, the people, having long been swayed by the devil's temptations to commit various sins, found themselves in a state of dreadful wickedness.

19. They were not ignorant of their sins, as they understood Gods will for them, having received teachings about it; therefore, they intentionally chose to rebel against God.

20. This was during the time of Lachoneus, the son of Lachoneus, who succeeded his father and governed the people that year.

21. Men inspired by heaven began preaching and boldly denouncing the sins of the people, declaring the redemption that the Lord would bring for his people, which was the resurrection of Christ, and they testified about his suffering and death.

22. Many people grew very angry with those who spoke about these matters; those who were upset mostly included the chief judges, former high priests, and lawyers; in fact, all lawyers were angry at those who testified.

23. No lawyer, judge, or high priest had the authority to condemn anyone to death without the governor's approval.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

24. Many who boldly testified about Christ were secretly put to death by the judges, and their deaths went unnoticed by the governor until after they had died.

25. This practice violated the laws of the land, which stated that no one could be put to death unless authorized by the governor.

26. Thus, a complaint was raised in Zarahemla against the judges who wrongfully condemned the prophets to death in violation of the law.

27. They were brought before the judge to be tried for their crimes as set forth by the law established by the people.

28. These judges had many friends and connections, while nearly all the lawyers and high priests joined forces with the families of those judges about to be tried.

29. They entered into a pact with one another, similar to an ancient covenant that was associated with the devil, to unite against anything good.

30. Consequently, they combined forces against the people of the Lord, agreeing to eliminate them and protect those guilty of murder from justice as mandated by the law.

31. They openly defied the law and the rights of their country, making an agreement to overthrow the governor and establish a king, so that the land would no longer be free but be ruled by kings.

### **3 Nephi Chapter 7**

1. The chief judge was killed, the government fell apart, and the people split into tribes. Jacob, an anti-Christ, became the leader of a secret group. Nephi preached about turning back to God and trusting in Christ. Angels helped him every day, and he even brought his brother back to life. Many people repented and were baptized. About A.D. 3033.

2. Now look, I will show you that they did not make a king for the land; but in this same year, the thirtieth year, they did kill the chief judge on the judgment seat.

3. And the people turned against each other; they separated into tribes, with each person following their family, relatives, and friends; thus, they destroyed the government.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

4. Each tribe chose a leader for themselves; so they became tribes with their own leaders.
5. Now see, there was no one among them who didnt have a large family and many friends; therefore, their tribes became very large.
6. All of this happened, and there were no wars among them yet; all this wrongdoing came upon the people because they gave in to Satan.
7. The rules of the government were destroyed because of the secret group formed by friends and relatives of those who killed the prophets.
8. This caused great turmoil in the land, so much so that almost all of the more righteous people became wicked; there were only a few good men left among them.
9. And thus six years went by since most of the people had turned away from their goodness, like a dog returning to its vomit, or a pig wallowing in the mud.
10. Now this secret group, which brought so much evil upon the people, gathered together and appointed a man they called Jacob.
11. They named him their king; so he became the king of this evil group, and he was one of the most prominent voices against the prophets who preached about Jesus.
12. It happened that they were not as numerous as the tribes of the people, who were united together unless it was their leaders who established their laws, each according to their tribe; still, they were enemies. Even though they were not a righteous people, they united in their hatred of those who made a pact to destroy the government.
13. So, Jacob, seeing that their enemies outnumbered them, he being the king of the group, commanded his people to flee to the northernmost part of the land, to build a kingdom for themselves, until they could be joined by defectors, (for he flattered them that many would join them) and they could become strong enough to fight against the tribes of the people; and they did.
14. Their movement was so swift that nothing could stop them until they left the reach of the people. And thus ended the thirtieth year; and thus were the happenings with the people of Nephi.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

15. In the thirty-first year, they were divided into tribes, each according to their family, relatives, and friends; yet they agreed not to fight each other; but they were not united in their laws and ways of governing, which were based on the preferences of their chiefs and leaders. They did set very strict laws to prevent one tribe from invading another, so to some extent they had peace in the land; yet their hearts were turned away from the Lord their God, and they stoned the prophets and cast them out.

16. And it happened that Nephi having been visited by angels and the voice of the Lord, therefore having seen angels, being an eyewitness, and having the power to know about the mission of Christ, and also witnessing their quick return from righteousness to their wickedness and terrible acts;

17. Therefore, saddened by their hard-heartedness and mental blindness went among them that same year and boldly began to testify about repentance and forgiveness of sins through faith in the Lord Jesus Christ.

18. He taught them many things; the full account cannot be written, and part of it would not be enough, so it is not recorded in this book. Nephi taught with power and great authority.

19. The people became angry with him, even because he had greater power than they, for it was impossible for them to disbelieve his words, because his faith in the Lord Jesus Christ was so great that angels helped him every day.

20. In the name of Jesus, he cast out demons and evil spirits; and he even raised his brother from the dead, after he had been stoned and died at the hands of the people.

21. The people witnessed this and were angry with him because of his power; he performed many more miracles before them, in the name of Jesus.

22. So the thirty-first year passed, and there were only a few who turned to the Lord; but those who did turn to Him genuinely showed the people that they had experienced the power and Spirit of God, which was in Jesus Christ, whom they believed in.

23. And those who had demons cast out and were healed of their sicknesses and weaknesses truly demonstrated to the people that they had been affected by the Spirit of God and had been healed; they also showed signs and performed some miracles among the people.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

24. Thus passed the thirty-second year. Nephi cried out to the people at the start of the thirty-third year; and he preached to them about repentance and forgiveness of sins.

25. Now I want you to remember that everyone who repented was baptized in water.

26. Therefore, Nephi ordained men for this ministry, so that anyone who approached them would be baptized in water, as a witness and testimony before God, and to the people, that they had repented and received forgiveness for their sins.

27. At the beginning of this year, many were baptized in repentance; and thus the majority of the year passed.

### **3 Nephi Chapter 8**

1. A series of natural disasters like storms, earthquakes, fires, and whirlwinds demonstrate the significance of Christ's crucifixion many people perish darkness envelops the land for three days those who survive lament their situation.

2. Now, according to our records, which we trust to be accurate, a righteous man maintained the records. He performed numerous miracles in Jesus's name, and no one could perform miracles in that name unless they were completely free from sin.

3. At this point, if this man didn't err in tracking our time, the thirty-third year has passed.

4. People began to earnestly look for the sign mentioned by the prophet Samuel, the Lamanite, specifically the sign indicating a period of darkness lasting three days over the land.

5. Doubts and debates arose among the people, despite having witnessed so many signs.

6. In the thirty-fourth year, during the first month, on the fourth day, a massive storm arose, unlike anything known in the land before.

7. A fierce and terrible tempest came; the thunder was so powerful it shook the entire earth, as if it might break apart.

8. There were sharp flashes of lightning, unprecedented in all the land.

9. The city of Zarahemla caught fire.

10. The city of Moroni sank beneath the sea, and its people drowned.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

11. The land where the city of Moronihah stood was lifted up, becoming a large mountain in its place.
12. A massive and terrible destruction occurred in the southern lands.
13. But a greater and more horrible destruction unfolded in the northern lands; the landscape was completely altered due to the storms, whirlwinds, thunder, lightning, and an immense shaking of the earth.
14. The roads were broken, and smooth paths were ruined, turning many flat areas into rough terrain.
15. Numerous significant cities sank, many were burned, and countless others trembled until their buildings collapsed, killing their inhabitants and leaving the places deserted.
16. Some cities remained, but they were severely damaged, and many lives were lost in them.
17. Some people were swept away by the whirlwind; their fate is unknown, except that they were taken away.
18. The entire earth's surface became scarred and disfigured due to the storms, thunder, lightning, and the shaking of the ground.
19. The rocks split apart, breaking into fragments and creating seams and cracks all over the land.
20. When the thunder, lightning, storm, tempest, and earthquakes finally stopped lasting roughly three hours, though some claimed it lasted longer all these terrifying events occurred in this short time darkness fell over the land.
21. A thick darkness covered the entire land, so that those who remained standing could feel the oppressive darkness around them.
22. No light could be found because of the darkness; there were no candles or torches, and even dry wood could not be lit, leaving them in total darkness.
23. No light was visible at all no fire, no flicker, no sun, no moon, no stars such was the intensity of the darkness that covered the land.
24. This lasted for three days without any light; great mourning, wailing, and tears filled the people continually, echoing the intense groans among them due to the darkness and the devastation that had struck.
25. In one location, they cried out, regretting, If only we had repented before this terrible day, then our brothers might have been saved and not perished in the great city of Zarahemla.



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

26. In another place, they mourned, crying out, If only we had repented before this dreadful day and not hurt and rejected the prophets, our mothers, daughters, and children could have been spared, and not buried in the great city of Moronihah. The wailing of the people was immense and horrifying.

### **3 Nephi Chapter 9**

1. A voice was heard across all the land, calling to everyone living here:
2. Woe, woe, woe to this people; woe to everyone on the earth unless they repent; because the devil laughs, and his angels rejoice over the death of my good people; and it is their sins and wickedness that have led to their downfall!
3. Look, I have burned that great city Zarahemla with fire, along with its people.
4. And look, I have caused that great city Moroni to sink into the depths of the sea, drowning its people.
5. And see, I have covered that great city Moronihah with soil, and its people, so that their sins and wrongdoings are hidden from my sight, so that the blood of the prophets and saints wont come before me anymore against them.
6. And behold, I caused the city of Gilgal to sink, along with its people buried deep in the earth;
7. Yes, and the city of Onihah and its people, and the city of Mocum and its people, and the city of Jerusalem and its people; and I made waters to rise in their place, to hide their wickedness from my sight, so the blood of the prophets and saints wont come before me anymore against them.
8. And see, the cities of Gadiandi, Gadiomnah, Jacob, and Gimgimno, I have caused to sink, creating hills and valleys where they were, and their people have been buried in the depths of the earth to hide their wickedness and wrongdoings from my sight, so that the blood of the prophets and saints would not call out to me against them anymore.
9. And see, that great city Jacobugath, where King Jacob's people lived, I caused to be burned with fire for their sins, which were worse than all the wickedness in the world, because of their secret murders and conspiracies; for they destroyed the peace of my people and the governance of the land, so I made them burn, that the blood of the prophets and saints would not call out to me against them anymore.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

10. And behold, the city of Laman, and the city of Josh, and the city of Gad, and the city of Kishkumen, I caused to be burned with fire, along with the people there, due to their wickedness in throwing out the prophets and stoning those I sent to warn them about their sins and wrongdoings.

11. Because they cast out all the righteous, I sent down fire to destroy them, so that their wickedness and wrongdoings could be hidden from my sight, so that the blood of the prophets and saints I had sent among them wouldnt call out to me from the ground against them.

12. And I have caused many great destructions to come upon this land and these people because of their sins and iniquities.

13. O all of you who have been spared because you were more righteous than them, will you not return to me, repent of your sins, and change your hearts, so that I may heal you?

14. Yes, I truly say to you, if you come to me, you will have eternal life. Look, my arm of mercy is extended toward you, and whoever will come, I will welcome; and blessed are those who come to me.

15. Look, I am Jesus Christ, the Son of God. I created the heavens and the earth and everything in them. I was with the Father from the very beginning. I am in the Father, and the Father is in me; and through me, the Father has glorified His name.

16. I came to my own people, but they did not accept me. The prophecies about my coming have been fulfilled.

17. And to all who have accepted me, I have given the power to become the children of God; and I will also do this for those who will believe in my name, for through me comes redemption, and in me, the law of Moses is fulfilled.

18. I am the light and the life of the world. I am the beginning and the end.

19. You will no longer need to offer me blood sacrifices; indeed, your sacrifices and burnt offerings will no longer be accepted, for I will not accept any of them.

20. Instead, you should offer me a broken heart and a humble spirit. Whoever comes to me with a broken heart and a humble spirit, I will baptize with fire and with the Holy Spirit, just as the Lamanites were baptized with

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

fire and the Holy Spirit because of their faith in me at the time of their conversion, even though they did not realize it.

21. Look, I have come into the world to bring redemption to everyone and to save the world from sin.

22. Therefore, anyone who repents and comes to me as a little child, I will receive, for such is the kingdom of God. Look, for them, I laid down my life and took it back again; therefore, repent, and come to me, all you ends of the earth, and be saved.

### **3 Nephi Chapter 10**

1. Everyone in the land heard these words and confirmed what they observed. After that, the land was silent for many hours.

2. The people were so amazed that they stopped grieving and wailing for their lost loved ones; thus, there was silence across the land for many hours.

3. Then a voice came again to the people, and they all heard it and testified about it, saying:

4. "O people of these great cities that have fallen, descendants of Jacob and part of the house of Israel, how often have I gathered you like a hen gathers her chicks under her wings and cared for you.

5. And again, how often would I have gathered you like a hen gathers her chicks under her wings, O people of Israel who have fallen; O inhabitants of Jerusalem who have fallen; how often I would have gathered you like a hen gathers her chicks, but you didn't want it.

6. O house of Israel whom I have preserved, how often will I gather you like a hen gathers her chicks under her wings if you will repent and come back to me with a sincere heart?

7. But if not, O house of Israel, your homes will become deserted until the promises made to your ancestors are fulfilled.

8. After the people heard these words, they began to cry and mourn again for their lost family and friends.

9. Thus, three days passed. It was morning when the darkness lifted from the land, the earth stopped shaking, the rocks stopped breaking apart, the awful groans ceased, and all the loud noises disappeared.

10. The earth came back together as it was, and the mourning, weeping, and wailing of those who survived

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

stopped; their sadness turned to joy, and their cries became praise and thanks to the Lord Jesus Christ, their Redeemer.

11. So far, the scriptures spoken by the prophets were fulfilled.

12. It was the more righteous part of the people who were saved; they received the prophets and did not harm them. They had not shed the blood of the saints and were spared

13. They were protected; they didnt fall into the earth, drown in the sea, be burned by fire, crushed to death, swept away in a whirlwind, or overcome by smoke and darkness.

14. Now, anyone reading this should understand; if you have the scriptures, search them and see if all these deaths and destructions by fire, smoke, storms, whirlwinds, and the earth opening up to take them in are not fulfilling the prophecies of many holy prophets.

15. Look, I say unto you, many have witnessed these things at the coming of Christ and were killed because they testified about them.

16. Yes, the prophet Zenos testified about these things, as did Zenock, because their testimonies were specifically about us, who are the remnant of their descendants.

17. Behold, our father Jacob also testified of a remnant from the seed of Joseph. Arent we a remnant of Joseph's seed? And arent these testimonies about us written on the brass plates that our father Lehi brought from Jerusalem?

18. And it came to pass that at the end of the thirty-fourth year, I will show you that the spared people of Nephi and those called Lamanites, also spared, received great favors and abundant blessings, so much so that soon after Christ ascended into heaven, he truly showed himself to them

19. Showing his body to them and serving them; a detailed account of his ministry will be provided later. Therefore, for now, I will conclude my words.

### **3 Nephi Chapter 11**

1. Jesus Christ revealed Himself to the Nephite people while they were gathered at the temple in the land of Bountiful, and He taught them; this is how He made Himself known to them.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

2. A large crowd of Nephites had assembled around the temple in Bountiful, and they were amazed and talking about the incredible changes that had occurred.
3. They were also discussing Jesus Christ, about whom a sign had been given regarding His death.
4. While they were conversing, they heard a voice that seemed to come from heaven; they looked around because they did not understand the voice they heard. It wasn't harsh or loud, but even though it was small, it penetrated deeply into those who heard it to the core of their being, making them tremble and causing their hearts to feel an intense burning.
5. They heard the voice again, but still did not understand it.
6. The third time they heard the voice, they opened their ears to listen; they fixed their gaze upward towards heaven where the sound was coming from.
7. On the third occasion, they finally understood the voice, which told them:
8. Look at my Beloved Son, in whom I am very pleased, in whom I have honored my name; listen to Him.
9. As they understood, they looked back up towards heaven; and behold, they saw a Man coming down from heaven, dressed in a white robe, who came and stood among them. The whole crowd looked at Him, unable to speak to one another, puzzled and thinking that it was an angel who had appeared to them.
10. The Man raised His hand and spoke to the people, saying:
11. I am Jesus Christ, the one whom the prophets foretold would come into the world.
12. I am the light and life of the world; I have endured the bitter suffering that the Father gave me, and I have honored the Father by taking on the sins of the world, suffering according to His will from the very beginning.
13. When Jesus finished speaking these words, the entire crowd fell to the ground, for they remembered that it had been prophesied that Christ would reveal Himself to them after ascending into heaven.
14. Then the Lord spoke to them, saying:
15. Get up and come to me, so you can place your hands on my side and feel the marks of the nails in my hands and feet. This will help you know that I am the God of Israel, and the God of the whole world, who was sacrificed for the sins of everyone.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

16. The crowd approached and reached out to touch His side, and they felt the nail prints in His hands and feet. They each took turns doing this until everyone had come forward, seen with their own eyes, felt with their hands, and known for sure that it was He whom the prophets said would come.

17. Once everyone had witnessed it themselves, they all cried out together, saying:

18. Hosanna! Blessed is the name of the Most High God! They fell down at Jesus' feet and worshiped Him.

19. Then Jesus spoke to Nephi (who was among the crowd) and commanded him to come forward.

20. Nephi got up, approached, bowed down before the Lord, and kissed His feet.

21. The Lord instructed him to stand up. Nephi did so and stood before Him.

22. The Lord said to him: I give you the authority to baptize this people when I ascend back into heaven.

23. The Lord called others as well and gave them the same authority to baptize, instructing them on how to do it; He told them that there should be no arguments among them.

24. Truly, I say to you, anyone who repents of their sins through your teachings and wishes to be baptized in my name, heres how you should baptize themgo down into the water and baptize them in my name.

25. And here are the words you should say, calling them by name:

26. I baptize you in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghost. Amen.

27. Then you shall immerse them in the water and bring them back up out of the water.

28. This is how you should baptize in my name; for truly, I say to you, the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghost are one; I am in the Father, the Father is in me, and we are one.

29. As I have commanded you, this is how you should baptize. There should be no arguments among you, as there have been so far; nor should there be disputes regarding my doctrine.

30. For truly, I say to you, anyone who has a spirit of contention does not belong to me, but rather to the devil, who is the father of contention and stirs up anger in people so they fight against each other.

31. Pay attention, this is not my teaching; I do not want to stir up anger between people, but rather that these things should be put aside.

32. Truly, truly, I tell you, I will share my teachings with you.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

33. This is my doctrine, given to me by the Father; I testify of the Father, and the Father testifies of me, and the Holy Ghost testifies of both the Father and me. I bear witness that the Father requires all people everywhere to repent and believe in me.

34. Anyone who believes in me and is baptized will be saved; they will inherit the kingdom of God.

35. Anyone who does not believe in me and is not baptized will face condemnation.

36. I truly affirm that this is my teaching, and I testify of it from the Father; and whoever believes in me also believes in the Father, and the Father will also testify of me to them for He will come to them in the presence of fire and the Holy Ghost.

37. This is how the Father will testify of me, and the Holy Ghost will also testify to them about the Father and me; for the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghost are one.

38. And again I tell you, you must repent, become like little children, and be baptized in my name, or you cannot receive these things.

39. And again I say to you, you must repent, be baptized in my name, and be like little children, or you cannot inherit the kingdom of God.

40. Truly, truly, I say to you, this is my doctrine, and anyone who builds on it is building on my foundation, and the gates of hell will not overpower them.

41. Anyone who teaches more or less than this and establishes it as my doctrine is coming from evil and is not built on my foundation; they are building on a weak foundation, and the gates of hell will be open to receive them when storms come and winds blow upon them.

42. Therefore, go out to this people and proclaim the words I have spoken to the ends of the earth.

## **3 Nephi Chapter 12**

1. When Jesus finished speaking, he addressed Nephi and the others he had chosen; there were twelve of them who had been given the ability and authority to baptize. He raised his hand to the crowd and exclaimed: You are blessed if you listen to the words of these twelve I have chosen to serve you; I have given them the power to baptize you with water, and after that, I will baptize you with fire and the Holy Ghost. So you are blessed if

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

you believe in me and are baptized after seeing me and knowing who I am.

2. Moreover, more blessed are those who believe your words because you will testify that you have seen me and know that I am. Yes, blessed are those who believe what you say, who come to me with great humility to be baptized, for they will be touched by fire and the Holy Ghost, and their sins will be forgiven.

3. Yes, blessed are the humble who come to me, for the kingdom of heaven belongs to them.

4. And again, blessed are those who grieve, for they will find comfort.

5. And blessed are the gentle, for they will inherit the earth.

6. And blessed are those who strive for righteousness, for they will be filled with the Holy Ghost.

7. And blessed are the compassionate, for they will receive compassion.

8. And blessed are the pure in heart, for they will see God.

9. And blessed are the peacemakers, for they will be called children of God.

10. And blessed are those who suffer for my names sake, for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.

11. And blessed are you when people insult you, persecute you, or say all kinds of false things about you because of me;

12. For you will have great joy and be very glad, for your reward in heaven will be great; this is how they treated the prophets who lived before you.

13. Truly, I tell you, I have made you to be the salt of the earth; but if the salt loses its taste, how can it be salty again? Its no longer good for anything except to be thrown out and walked on by people.

14. Truly, I tell you, I have made you to be the light for this people. A city on a hill cant be hidden.

15. Do people light a lamp and put it under a bowl? No, they put it on a stand so it gives light to all in the house;

16. So let your light shine in front of others so they can see your good deeds and praise your Father in heaven.

17. Dont think I came to abolish the law or the prophets. I did not come to abolish but to fulfill;

18. For truly I tell you, not the smallest letter, not the least stroke of a pen, will disappear from the law until everything is accomplished.



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

19. I have given you the commandments from my Father, so that you will believe in me, repent of your sins, and come to me with a broken heart and a humble spirit. You have the commandments before you, and the law is fulfilled.

20. Therefore, come to me to be saved; for truly I tell you, unless you keep my commandments given to you now, you will not enter the kingdom of heaven.

21. You have heard it said in ancient times, that you shall not kill, and anyone who kills will be judged by God;

22. But I say to you, anyone who is angry with a brother will also face judgment. And anyone who insults a brother will be brought before the council; and anyone who calls someone a fool is in danger of hellfire.

23. So, if you come to me and want to come closer but remember that your brother has something against you

24. Go and make peace with your brother first, then come to me with sincere purpose, and I will accept you.

25. Make peace with your opponent quickly while you are still with them, or you might end up in court, and then you'll be sentenced to prison.

26. Truly, I say to you, you will not get out until you have paid the last penny. And when you are in prison, can you pay even one penny? Truly, I say to you, no.

27. You have heard it said that you shall not commit adultery;

28. But I say to you, anyone who looks at a woman with lust has already committed adultery in their heart.

29. I give you this commandment: do not let such thoughts enter your heart;

30. For it is better for you to deny yourself these desires, taking up your cross, than to be thrown into hell.

31. It has been written that if you put away your wife, you must give her a certificate of divorce.

32. Truly, I tell you, anyone who puts away their wife, except for sexual immorality, causes her to commit adultery; and anyone who marries a divorced woman commits adultery.

33. Again, it is written, you shall not break your oath, but must fulfill your vows to the Lord;

34. But truly, I tell you, do not swear at all; neither by heaven, for it is God's throne;

35. Nor by the earth, for it is God's footstool;

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

36. Nor should you swear by your head, because you cannot change even one hair from black to white;
37. Instead, let your yes be yes and your no be no; anything beyond this is evil.
38. And it is written, an eye for an eye, and a tooth for a tooth;
39. But I say to you, do not resist an evil person; instead, if someone strikes you on the right cheek, turn to them the other cheek as well;
40. And if someone takes you to court to take away your shirt, let them have your coat too;
41. And if anyone forces you to go a mile, go with them two miles.
42. Give to the one who asks of you, and do not turn away from those who want to borrow from you.
43. It is also written that you shall love your neighbor and hate your enemy;
44. But I say to you, love your enemies, bless those who curse you, do good to those who hate you, and pray for those who mistreat you and persecute you;
45. So you can be children of your Father in heaven; for he makes the sun rise on both the good and the evil.
46. Therefore, everything from old times that was under the law is fulfilled in me.
47. The old ways are gone, and everything has become new.
48. So, I ask that you strive for perfection just as I or your Father in heaven is perfect.

### **3 Nephi Chapter 13**

1. Truly, truly, I tell you that I want you to give to the poor; however, be careful not to do it in front of others just to be noticed by them; otherwise, you will not receive any reward from your Father in heaven.
2. So, when you give to the poor, do not announce it with trumpets, like the hypocrites do in the synagogues and on the streets, so that people can praise them. Truly, I tell you, they already have their reward.
3. But when you give to the poor, don't let your left hand know what your right hand is doing;
4. So that your giving remains a secret; and your Father, who sees what is done in secret, will reward you openly.
5. And when you pray, do not be like the hypocrites, for they love to stand and pray in the synagogues and on the street corners to be seen by others. Truly, I tell you, they already have their reward.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

6. But you, when you pray, go into your room, shut the door, and pray to your Father in secret; and your Father, who sees what is hidden, will reward you openly.
7. And when you pray, do not use meaningless repetitions like the pagans, because they think they will be heard for their many words.
8. Do not be like them, for your Father knows what you need before you ask Him.
9. This is how you should pray: Our Father in heaven, may your name be honored.
10. May your will be done on earth as it is in heaven.
11. And forgive us our debts, as we forgive those who owe us.
12. And do not let us fall into temptation, but rescue us from evil.
13. For the kingdom, the power, and the glory belong to you forever. Amen.
14. For if you forgive others their offenses, your heavenly Father will also forgive you;
15. But if you do not forgive others, neither will your Father forgive you.
16. Also, when you fast, do not look gloomy like the hypocrites, for they disfigure their faces to show others that they are fasting. Truly, I tell you, they already have their reward.
17. But when you fast, anoint your head and wash your face;
18. So that it will not be obvious to others that you are fasting, but only to your Father, who is in secret; and your Father, who sees what is done in secret, will reward you openly.
19. Do not store up treasures for yourselves on earth, where moth and rust destroy, and thieves break in and steal;
20. But store up treasures for yourselves in heaven, where neither moth nor rust destroys, and where thieves do not break in or steal.
21. For where your treasure is, there your heart will be also.
22. The eye is the lamp of the body; if your eye is good, your whole body will be full of light.
23. But if your eye is bad, your whole body will be full of darkness. If, then, the light within you is darkness, how great is that darkness!

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

24. No one can serve two masters; either you will hate one and love the other, or you will be devoted to one and despise the other. You cannot serve God and money.

25. Now, after Jesus spoke these words, he looked at the twelve he had chosen and said to them: Remember what I have said. For you are the ones I have chosen to serve this people. Therefore, I say to you, do not worry about your life, what you will eat or drink; or about your body, what you will wear. Is not life more than food, and the body more than clothing?

26. Look at the birds of the air; they do not sow, reap, or gather into barns, and yet your heavenly Father feeds them. Are you not more valuable than they?

27. Which of you can, by worrying, add a single hour to your life?

28. And why do you worry about clothes? Consider how the lilies of the field grow; they do not labor or spin;

29. Yet I tell you that not even Solomon in all his splendor was dressed like one of these.

30. Now if God clothes the grass of the field, which is here today and thrown into the fire tomorrow, will he not much more clothe you, you of little faith?

31. So do not worry, saying, What shall we eat? or, What shall we drink? or, What shall we wear?

32. For your heavenly Father knows that you need all these things.

33. But seek first the kingdom of God and his righteousness, and all these things will be given to you as well.

34. Therefore, do not worry about tomorrow, for tomorrow will worry about itself. Each day has enough trouble of its own.

### **3 Nephi Chapter 14**

1. Jesus says: Dont judge others; ask God for guidance; be cautious of false prophetsHe promises salvation to those who follow the Father's willReference Matthew 7. About A.D. 34.

2. When Jesus finished speaking, He turned back to the crowd and said: Truly, I tell you, do not judge others, so that you won't be judged.

3. Because the way you judge others is how you will be judged, and the way you measure it out will be measured back to you.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

4. Why do you notice the small problem in your brother's eye, but you dont see the big problem in your own eye?
5. How can you say to your brother: Let me remove the small problem from your eye, when you have a big problem in your own eye?
6. You hypocrite, first remove the big problem from your own eye; then you will be able to see clearly to help your brother with their small problem.
7. Do not give what is holy to those who dont appreciate it, and dont throw your valuable things in front of pigs, because they will just trample them and turn on you.
8. Ask, and you will receive; seek, and you will find; knock, and the door will be opened for you.
9. For everyone who asks receives; the one who seeks finds; and to the one who knocks, the door will be opened.
10. Which of you, if your son asks for bread, would give him a stone?
11. Or if he asks for fish, would give him a snake?
12. If you, even though you are flawed, know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father in heaven give good things to those who ask him?
13. So, treat others as you want to be treated, because this sums up the law and the teachings of the prophets.
14. Enter through the narrow gate; for the gate is wide, and the path is broad that leads to destruction, and many people choose to go that way;
15. But the gate is narrow, and the way is tight that leads to life, and only a few find it.
16. Be on the lookout for false prophets. They may seem harmless, but inside, they are dangerous.
17. You will recognize them by what they produce. Do people pick grapes from thorn bushes, or figs from thistles?
18. In the same way, every good tree produces good fruit, but a bad tree produces bad fruit.
19. A good tree cant produce bad fruit, and a bad tree cant produce good fruit.
20. Every tree that does not produce good fruit is cut down and thrown into the fire.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

21. So, you will know them by what they produce.

22. Not everyone who calls me "Lord, Lord" will enter the kingdom of heaven, but only the one who does the will of my Father in heaven.

23. Many will say to me on that day: "Lord, didnt we prophesy in your name, cast out demons in your name, and perform many amazing works in your name?"

24. And I will tell them plainly: I never knew you; go away from me, you who do wrong.

25. So, everyone who hears these words of mine and puts them into practice is like a wise person who built their house on solid rock

26. When the rain fell, the floods came, and the winds blew and beat against that house, it did not fall, because it was built on a solid foundation.

27. But everyone who hears these words of mine and does not put them into practice is like a foolish person who built their house on sand

28. When the rain fell, the floods came, and the winds blew and beat against that house, it fell, and it was a terrible crash.

### **3 Nephi Chapter 15**

1. Jesus declares that the teachings of Moses have been completed in HimThe Nephites are the other flock He spoke of in JerusalemBecause of wrongdoing, the Lords people in Jerusalem do not recognize the scattered Israelites. Around A.D. 34.

2. After Jesus finished speaking, He looked around at the crowd and said: Look, you have heard what I taught before I went back to my Father; so, whoever remembers my teachings and acts on them will be raised at the final judgment.

3. Once Jesus finished these words, He noticed that some people were amazed and curious about His thoughts on the law of Moses; they didnt understand that the old ways were gone and everything had been made new.

4. He told them: Dont be surprised that I said the old ways are gone and everything is new.

5. Listen, I am telling you that the law given to Moses has been completed.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

6. I am the one who gave the law, and I made a covenant with the people of Israel; therefore, because I fulfill the law, it has come to an end.
7. I do not eliminate the prophets; every prophecy not fulfilled in me will indeed come to pass.
8. And when I say old things have passed, I am not doing away with what has been said about future events.
9. Look, the covenant I made with my people is still partially unfulfilled; however, the law given to Moses finds its fulfillment in me.
10. I am the law and the light. Turn to me, endure in faith, and you will live; for those who endure will receive eternal life.
11. I have given you my commandments; so, keep them. This is what the law and the prophets are about, for they truly spoke of me.
12. After Jesus spoke these words, He addressed the twelve disciples He had chosen:
13. You are my followers; you are a light to this people, who are the remnants of the house of Joseph.
14. And this is your promised land; the Father has given it to you.
15. At no time did the Father instruct me to tell your brothers in Jerusalem about it.
16. Neither has the Father commanded me to inform them about the other tribes of Israel that were led away.
17. This is what the Father has commanded me:
18. I have other sheep that are not part of this group; I must bring them too, and they will recognize my voice; and there will be one flock and one shepherd.
19. However, due to their stubbornness and lack of belief, they did not understand my message; hence, I was told not to say more about this matter to them.
20. But truly, I tell you, the Father commanded me and I share it with you that you were separated from them because of their wrongdoing; it is their wrongdoing that makes them unaware of you.
21. I also tell you again that the other tribes are separated from them by the Father; and it is because of their wrongdoing that they do not know about them.
22. I assure you that you are the ones I referred to when I said: I have other sheep that are not part of this

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

group; I must bring them too, and they will recognize my voice; and there will be one flock and one shepherd.

23. They didnt understand me because they thought I was talking about the Gentiles; they didnt grasp that the Gentiles would be converted through their preaching.

24. They didnt get that I said they would hear my voice, nor did they understand that the Gentiles wouldnt hear my voice unless it was through the Holy Ghost.

25. But, look, you have both heard my voice and seen me; you are my sheep, and you are counted among those the Father has given to me.

### **3 Nephi Chapter 16**

1. Jesus has other followers who are not from this land, not from Jerusalem, and not from its surrounding areas where I have ministered.

2. These people Im referring to haven't yet heard my message, nor have I shown myself to them at any time.

3. However, I have received a command from the Father to go to them, so they can hear my voice and be counted among my followers, creating one united group with one leader; therefore, I will go and reveal myself to them.

4. I instruct you to write down these words after I am gone, so that if my people in Jerusalem, who have seen and been with me during my ministry, do not ask the Father in my name to know about you through the Holy Ghost, and also about the other tribes they arent aware of, then the things you write will be preserved and revealed to the Gentiles. This way, through the fullness given to the Gentiles, the remaining descendants of Israel, who are scattered around the world due to their lack of faith, can come to know me, their Redeemer.

5. Then I will gather them from all corners of the earth; I will fulfill the covenant the Father made with the house of Israel.

6. The Gentiles are blessed because of their faith in me and in the Holy Ghost, which testifies to them about me and the Father.

7. Look, because the Gentiles believe in me, the Father says, and due to the disbelief among you, O house of Israel, in the latter days, the truth will reach the Gentiles, and the fullness of these things will be revealed to



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

them.

8. But woe to the unbelieving Gentiles, says the Father, for even though they have come to this land and have scattered my people, who belong to the house of Israel, my people have been driven away from among them and have been trampled upon.

9. Because of the Fathers mercy toward the Gentiles, and the judgments He has placed upon my people after causing my people of Israel to suffer, be afflicted, killed, pushed away, hated, and scorned among others

10. The Father commands me to say: At that time, when the Gentiles go against my gospel, reject its fullness, and become proud above all nations and people, and fill themselves with lies, deceit, wickedness, hypocrisy, murders, manipulative practices, sexual immorality, and secret evils; if they engage in all these actions and reject the fullness of my gospel, the Father says, I will remove the fullness of my gospel from among them.

11. Then I will remember my covenant with my people, O house of Israel, and I will bring my gospel to them.

12. I will make it clear to you, O house of Israel, that the Gentiles will not dominate you; I will keep my covenant with you, O house of Israel, and you will come to understand the fullness of my gospel.

13. But if the Gentiles repent and return to me, the Father says, they will be counted among my people, O house of Israel.

14. I will not allow my people, who belong to the house of Israel, to be trampled upon by them, says the Father.

15. However, if they refuse to turn to me and listen to my voice, I will allow my people, O house of Israel, to pass through among them, be trampled down, and become like salt that has lost its flavor, which is only good to be thrown out and walked on by my people, O house of Israel.

16. Truly, truly, I tell you, this is the command from the Father to me that I should give this land to this people as their inheritance.

17. Then the words of the prophet Isaiah will come to pass, which say:

18. Your watchmen will lift their voices together in song, for they will see eye to eye when the Lord restores Zion.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

19. Shout for joy, sing together, you desolate areas of Jerusalem; for the Lord has comforted his people and has redeemed Jerusalem.

20. The Lord has revealed his holy power to all nations; and everyone on earth will witness the salvation of God.

### **3 Nephi Chapter 17**

1. When Jesus finished speaking, he looked around at the crowd and told them that his time was near.

2. He could tell they were struggling to understand everything he had to say, which had been given to him by the Father.

3. So, he told them to return home, think carefully about his messages, and ask God in his name for understanding, preparing themselves for his return the next day.

4. He mentioned that he would be going to the Father and also to reveal himself to the lost tribes of Israel, reminding them that the Father knows exactly where they are.

5. After saying this, Jesus looked at the crowd again and saw they were crying, staring at him as if they wanted him to stay longer.

6. He expressed his deep compassion for them.

7. He asked if anyone among them was sick and invited them to come forward. He offered to heal those who were lame, blind, disabled, or suffering in any way, saying he felt deep mercy for them.

8. He sensed that they wanted to see what he had accomplished for their brethren in Jerusalem, and he observed that their faith was enough for him to heal them.

9. So, everyone in the crowd, united in purpose, came forward bringing their sick and afflicted, and he healed every one of them as they arrived.

10. Both those who had been healed and those who were whole bowed down at his feet in worship, while many from the crowd kissed his feet, bathing them with tears.

11. Then he instructed that their little children should be brought to him.

12. The people brought their children and placed them on the ground around him, while Jesus stood in the

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

center. The crowd made space for all the children.

13. When all the children were gathered around, Jesus commanded the crowd to kneel on the ground.

14. As they knelt, Jesus felt troubled within himself and expressed his concern over the wickedness among the people of Israel.

15. After saying this, he knelt down and prayed to the Father. The content of his prayer was beyond what could be written down, and those who heard him bore witness to it.

16. This is how they recorded it: No one has ever seen or heard anything as wonderful as what we witnessed Jesus discussing with the Father.

17. Nothing can adequately describe or write about the greatness of what we saw and heard from Jesus, and no heart can grasp the immense joy that filled us while he prayed for us.

18. When Jesus finished praying, he stood up, but the crowd was so overwhelmed with joy that they could barely contain themselves.

19. Then he spoke to them and told them to get up.

20. They stood from the ground, and he said: You are blessed because of your faith. Now, my joy is complete.

21. After saying this, he cried, and the crowd noticed. He took each child one by one, blessed them, and prayed to the Father on their behalf.

22. After this, he cried again;

23. He addressed the crowd, telling them to look at their little ones.

24. As they turned their gaze upward, they saw the heavens opening, and angels descending from on high, appearing to be surrounded by fire. The angels came down and surrounded the children, and were encircled by fire as they ministered to them.

25. The crowd witnessed this and testified to it; they knew their accounts were true because each person experienced it firsthand. There were about two thousand five hundred individuals present, including men, women, and children.

## **3 Nephi Chapter 18**

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

1. Jesus instructed his disciples to bring Him some bread and wine.
2. While the disciples went to get the bread and wine, He told the crowd to sit down on the ground.
3. Once the disciples returned with the bread and wine, Jesus took the bread, broke it, blessed it, and gave it to the disciples, instructing them to eat.
4. After they had eaten and were satisfied, He told them to share with the crowd.
5. He then told the disciples that one of them would be chosen and given the power to break bread, bless it, and distribute it to the members of His church, for those who would believe and be baptized in His name.
6. They must continue to do this as I have done, breaking and blessing the bread just like I did for you.
7. This is to remind you of my body, which I have shown to you. It serves as a testimony to the Father that you always remember me. If you remember me, my Spirit will always be with you.
8. After saying this, He instructed His disciples to take the cup of wine, drink from it, and also give it to the crowd so they could drink.
9. They followed His instructions, drank, and were satisfied; then they gave the wine to the crowd, who also drank and were filled.
10. After this, Jesus told the disciples: You are blessed for what you have done, for this fulfills my commandments and testifies to the Father that you are willing to follow my instructions.
11. You will do this for those who repent and are baptized in my name, remembering my blood, which I shed for you, to witness to the Father that you always remember me. If you do remember me, my Spirit will be with you.
12. I command you to do these things. If you keep doing them, you are blessed, for you are built upon my rock.
13. But anyone among you who does anything more or less than this is not on my rock but on a shaky foundation; when troubles come, they will fall, and the gates of hell await them.
14. So, you are blessed if you keep my commandments, which the Father asked me to give you.
15. Truly, I say to you, always watch and pray, so you are not tempted by the devil and led away.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

16. Just as I have prayed among you, so you should pray within my church, among those who repent and are baptized in my name. I am the light; I have set an example for you.

17. After saying this to His disciples, He turned back to the crowd and said:

18. Listen, I say to you, always watch and pray so you do not fall into temptation; for Satan wants to have you and sift you like wheat.

19. So you need to always pray to the Father in my name;

20. Whatever you ask the Father in my name, believing it is right, it will be given to you.

21. Pray in your families to the Father, always in my name, so that your wives and children are blessed.

22. You should gather together often, and don't prevent anyone from joining you when you meet, allowing them to come to you.

23. Instead, pray for them, and do not cast them out; if they come to you often, pray for them to the Father in my name.

24. So, let your light shine for the world to see. I am the light that you should show what you have seen me do. You have witnessed me praying to the Father.

25. You see that I have told none of you to leave, but I have commanded you to come to me so that you can feel and see; you should do the same for the world, and anyone who breaks this command will be led into temptation.

26. Now, when Jesus finished saying these things, He looked again at the disciples He had chosen and said:

27. Listen, I say to you, I give you another commandment, and then I need to go to my Father to fulfill other commandments He has given me.

28. Now, here is the commandment I give you: Do not allow anyone to partake of my flesh and blood unworthily when you administer it;

29. For anyone who eats and drinks my flesh and blood unworthily brings judgment upon themselves; therefore, if you know someone is unworthy, you should prevent them.

30. However, do not cast them out from your midst, but serve them and pray for them to the Father in my

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

name; if they repent and are baptized in my name, then you may welcome them and administer my flesh and blood to them.

31. But if they do not repent, they will not be included among my people, to protect my people, for I know my sheep, and they are counted.

32. Nonetheless, do not cast them out of your places of worship; you should continue to minister to them because they may return, repent, and come to me sincerely, and I will heal them; you will help bring salvation to them.

33. Therefore, keep these teachings I have given you so that you do not fall under condemnation; woe to anyone the Father condemns.

34. I give you these commandments because of the disagreements that have been among you. Blessed are you if you do not have disagreements among you.

35. Now I go to the Father, as it is necessary for your sake that I should go to Him.

36. After Jesus finished these sayings, He touched each of His chosen disciples, one by one, until He had touched them all and spoke to each of them.

37. The crowd did not hear what He said, so they did not record it; but the disciples recorded that He gave them the power to confer the Holy Ghost. I will later show you that this record is true.

38. When He had touched all of them, a cloud came and covered the crowd so they could not see Jesus.

39. While they were covered, He left them and ascended into heaven. The disciples saw it and recorded that He ascended again into heaven.

### **3 Nephi Chapter 19**

1. After Jesus returned to heaven, the crowd scattered, and each person took their family back home.

2. News quickly spread among the people, even before nightfall, that the crowd had seen Jesus and that he had cared for them, and that he would reveal himself to them again the next day.

3. Throughout the night, the news about Jesus circulated widely, causing many people to work hard to ensure they would be present in the place where Jesus would return the following day.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

4. The next day, when the crowd gathered, Nephi and his brother Timothy, whom he had raised from the dead, along with Nephi's son Jonas, and Mathoni, Mathonihah, Kumen, Kumenonhi, Jeremiah, Shemnon, Jonas, Zedekiah, and Isaiah, all of whom were the disciples chosen by Jesus, came forward and stood among the crowd.
5. The crowd was so large that they needed to break into twelve groups.
6. The twelve disciples taught the crowd, and they urged everyone to kneel down on the ground and pray to the Father in the name of Jesus.
7. The disciples also prayed to the Father in Jesus' name. Afterward, they stood up and served the people.
8. When they prayed the exact words Jesus had spoken without changing anything, they knelt again to pray to the Father in Jesus' name.
9. They prayed for what they deeply desired, asking for the Holy Ghost to be given to them.
10. After they prayed, they went to the water's edge, and the crowd followed them.
11. Nephi stepped into the water and was baptized.
12. He came out of the water and began baptizing others, including everyone whom Jesus had chosen.
13. When they had all been baptized and emerged from the water, the Holy Ghost descended upon them, and they were filled with the Holy Ghost and with fire.
14. It seemed as if they were surrounded by fire that came down from heaven, and the crowd witnessed this and testified to it; angels came down from heaven and ministered to them.
15. While the angels were serving the disciples, Jesus appeared and stood among them to minister to them.
16. He spoke to the crowd, commanding them to kneel again on the ground, and he instructed his disciples to kneel as well.
17. When everyone had knelt down, Jesus instructed his disciples to pray.
18. They began to pray, addressing Jesus as their Lord and God.
19. After that, Jesus stepped away from them for a short distance, knelt down, and said:
20. Father, I thank you for giving the Holy Ghost to those whom I have chosen; it is their belief in me that has led me to choose them from the world.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

21. Father, I ask you to give the Holy Ghost to everyone who believes in what they preach.
22. Father, you have given them the Holy Ghost because they have faith in me; you see their faith because they pray to me, and they pray to me because I am with them.
23. Now Father, I pray for them and for all those who will believe in their words, so that they may believe in me, and I may be in them just as you, Father, are in me, so that we may be one.
24. After Jesus prayed to the Father, he approached his disciples, who continued to pray to him without stopping, using only a few words as they were inspired about what to pray for, filled with a strong desire.
25. Jesus blessed them as they prayed, smiling upon them, and the light of his face shone on them, making them as white as Jesus himself; indeed, their whiteness was far beyond anything else on earth.
26. Jesus told them: Keep praying; however, they did not stop praying.
27. He turned away again, moved a little ways off, and prayed again to the Father, saying:
28. Father, I thank you for purifying those I have chosen because of their faith, and I pray for them and for those who will believe in their words so that they may also be purified in me through faith, just as they have been purified in me.
29. Father, I do not pray for the world, but for those you have given me from the world because of their faith, so that they may be purified in me, so that I may be in them as you, Father, are in me, so that we may be one and I may be glorified in them.
30. When Jesus finished speaking, he returned to his disciples, who were still praying steadfastly to him, and he smiled on them again, and they were white, just like Jesus.
31. He moved away a little distance and prayed to the Father;
32. And the words he prayed were beyond what any tongue could express or human could write.
33. The crowd heard him and testified to it; their hearts were open, and they understood the words he prayed.
34. However, the words he prayed were so wonderful and extraordinary that no one could write them down or express them.
35. When Jesus finished praying, he came back to his disciples and told them: I have never seen such great



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

faith among all the Jews; therefore, I could not perform such great miracles among them because of their lack of faith.

36. Truly, I tell you, none of them have seen such wonderful things as you have seen, nor have they heard such impressive things as you have heard.

### **3 Nephi Chapter 20**

1. Jesus miraculously bread and wine and once again shares the sacrament with the people. The remaining descendants of Jacob will learn about the Lord their God and inherit the Americas. Jesus is a prophet similar to Moses, and the Nephites are considered children of the prophets. Other followers of the Lord will be gathered to Jerusalem. This event occurred around A.D. 34.

2. He instructed the crowd to stop praying out loud, but also told his disciples to keep praying quietly in their hearts.

3. He told them to get up and stand on their feet, and they did so.

4. Then, he broke the bread again, blessed it, and gave it to the disciples to eat.

5. After they ate, he instructed them to break the bread and share it with the crowd.

6. Once they provided the bread to the crowd, he also offered them wine to drink and commanded that they share that as well.

7. The disciples had not brought any bread or wine, nor did the crowd have any.

8. But he truly provided them with bread to eat and wine to drink.

9. He told them: "Whoever eats this bread is receiving a part of my body for their spirit; and whoever drinks this wine is receiving a part of my blood for their spirit; and their spirit will never feel hunger or thirst, but will be satisfied."

10. Once everyone had eaten and drunk, they were filled with the Spirit and cried out in unison, giving glory to Jesus, whom they could both see and hear.

11. After they had praised Jesus, he said to them: "Now I complete the command that the Father has given me concerning this people, who are the remnants of the house of Israel."

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

12. "You remember that I told you, that when the words of Isaiah would be fulfilled look, they are written down, you have them before you, so search them.
13. And I assure you, that when they are fulfilled, the promise made by the Father to his people, O house of Israel, will also be fulfilled."
14. "Then, the remnants who are scattered across the earth will be gathered from the east and the west, the south and the north; and they will come to know the Lord their God, who has saved them."
15. "And the Father has instructed me to give this land to you as your inheritance."
16. "I tell you, if the Gentiles do not repent after receiving blessings and after having scattered my people"
17. "Then you, the remnants of the house of Jacob, will go among them; and you will be in their midst, who will be numerous; you will be like a lion among the beasts of the forest, and like a young lion among the flocks of sheep, who, as he passes through, crushes and tears apart, with no one able to rescue."
18. "Your hand will be raised against your enemies, and all your foes will be cut off."
19. "I will gather my people together like a farmer gathers his harvest into the barn."
20. "I will make my people, with whom the Father has made a covenant, strong and powerful. I will give you strength and the ability to defeat many, and I will dedicate their gains and resources to the Lord of all the earth. And behold, I am the one who will do this."
21. "And it will happen, says the Father, that on that day, my justice will remain over them; unless they repent, it will fall on them, says the Father, even upon all the Gentile nations."
22. "And it will come to pass that I will establish my people, O house of Israel."
23. "And behold, I will establish this people in this land, fulfilling the promise I made to your father Jacob; and it will be a New Jerusalem. The powers of heaven will be present among this people; in fact, I will be among you."
24. "Behold, I am the one Moses spoke of, saying: 'The Lord your God will raise up a prophet from among your brothers, like me; you must listen to whatever he tells you. Anyone who does not listen to that prophet will be cut off from the people.'"

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

25. "Truly, I say to you, indeed, all the prophets from Samuel onward have borne witness of me."
26. "Behold, you are children of the prophets; you belong to the house of Israel; and you are part of the covenant that the Father made with your ancestors, saying to Abraham: 'Through your descendants, all the families of the earth will be blessed.'"
27. "The Father has raised me up first to you and sent me to bless you by turning each one of you away from your sins; and this is because you are the children of the covenant"
28. "After you have been blessed, then the Father fulfills the covenant he made with Abraham, saying: 'In your seed, all the families of the earth will be blessed'this will lead to the outpouring of the Holy Ghost through me upon the Gentiles, a blessing that will make them mighty, resulting in the scattering of my people, O house of Israel."
29. "They will become a scourge to the people of this land. However, after they receive the fullness of my gospel, if they harden their hearts against me, I will return their wrongdoings upon their own heads, says the Father."
30. "And I will remember the covenant I have made with my people; I have promised them that I would gather them in my own time, that I would restore to them the land of their fathers for their inheritance, which is Jerusalem, the promised land to them forever, says the Father."
31. "And it will happen that the time will come when the fullness of my gospel will be preached to them."
32. "They will believe in me, that I am Jesus Christ, the Son of God, and will pray to the Father in my name."
33. "Then their watchmen will shout together, and with their voices they will sing, for they will see eye to eye."
34. "Then the Father will gather them again, and grant them Jerusalem as their inheritance."
35. "They will rejoice and shoutSing together, you desolate places of Jerusalem; for the Father has comforted his people; he has redeemed Jerusalem."
36. "The Father has revealed himself to all nations; and all parts of the earth will see the salvation of the Father; and the Father and I are united."

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

37. "Then what is written will occur: 'Awake, wake up anew, and put on your strength, O Zion; dress in your beautiful garments, O Jerusalem, the holy city, for from now on, the uncircumcised and unclean will no longer enter you.'"

38. "Shake off the dust; rise up and sit down, O Jerusalem; free yourself from the chains around your neck, O captive daughter of Zion."

39. "This is what the Lord says: 'You have sold yourselves for nothing, and you will be redeemed without paying any money.'"

40. "Truly, I say to you, my people will come to know my name; yes, on that day they will know that I am the one who speaks."

41. "And then they will say: 'How beautiful on the mountains are the feet of those who bring good news, who proclaim peace; who bring glad tidings of good, who announce salvation; who say to Zion: Your God reigns!'"

42. "Then a call will spread: 'Get away, get away, leave that place, do not touch anything unclean; leave the midst of her; be clean, you who carry the vessels of the Lord.'"

43. "You will not leave in haste or flee; for the Lord will go before you, and the God of Israel will be your protector from behind."

44. "Behold, my servant will act wisely; he will be lifted up, honored, and exceedingly exalted."

45. "Many will be amazed at youhis appearance marred more than any man, and his form more than the sons of men"

46. "So will he sprinkle many nations; kings will shut their mouths because they will see what had not been told to them; and they will understand what they had not heard."

47. "Truly, I say unto you, all these things will surely happen, just as the Father has commanded me. Then this covenant that the Father has made with his people will be fulfilled; and Jerusalem will once again be inhabited by my people, and it will be their inheritance."

## **3 Nephi Chapter 21**

1. Israel will be brought back together when the Book of Mormon is revealedThe non-Israelite nations will

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

find freedom in America They will be saved if they have faith and follow Me; if not, they will face ruin Israel will create a New Jerusalem, and the lost tribes will return. About A.D. 34.

2. I truly tell you, I'm giving you a sign so you can recognize when these events are about to happen I'm going to gather my people, the house of Israel, from their long separation and re-establish my Zion among them;

3. And look, this is the sign I will provide you truly, I say to you, when these things I'm telling you now, and those I will share later, revealed through the Holy Ghost given to you by the Father, are made known to the non-Israelites, they will learn about this group that is a remnant of Jacobs house and about my people who will be scattered by them;

4. I truly say to you, when these things come to be known by them from the Father, they will come from the Father to you;

5. For it is wise in the Father to establish them in this land and set them up as a free people by His power, so that these things can reach a remnant of your descendants, fulfilling the covenant the Father has made with His people, the house of Israel;

6. So, when these miracles and the works that will happen among you in the future are brought forth by the non-Israelites to your descendants who will lose faith because of wickedness;

7. For it is necessary for the Father to work through the non-Israelites to demonstrate His power to them, so that if they do not harden their hearts, they may repent, come to me, be baptized in my name, and understand my true teachings, allowing them to be counted among my people, the house of Israel;

8. And when these events happen, your descendants will begin to understand these things it will be a sign to them that the Fathers work has already started to fulfill the promise made to the house of Israel.

9. And when that day comes, it will be a time when kings will be silent, for they will see things that were never told to them and think about things they never heard.

10. For in that day, for My sake, the Father will perform a wonderful and remarkable work among them; and there will be people among them who will not believe it, even if someone explains it to them.

11. But behold, my servant's life will be under my protection; therefore, they will not harm him, though he

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

may suffer because of them. Yet, I will heal him, for I will show them that my wisdom exceeds the devils tricks.

12. So, it will happen that whoever does not believe my words, which I, Jesus Christ, will have the Father cause to be shared with the non-Israelites, and whom He will empower to share them (just as Moses said), they will be cut off from my covenant people.

13. And my people a remnant of Jacob will be among the non-Israelites, yes, right in their midst, like a lion among the beasts of the forest, like a young lion among sheep, who, if he walks through, will trample and tear apart, and no one can rescue.

14. Their hand will be lifted up against their enemies, and all their foes will be cut off.

15. Yes, woe to the non-Israelites unless they repent; for the Father has said that in that day, He will remove your horses and destroy your chariots;

16. And I will destroy the cities of your land and tear down your strongholds;

17. And I will eradicate witchcraft from your land, and you will have no more soothsayers;

18. I will cut down your carved idols and your standing images, and you will no longer worship what you have created with your hands;

19. And I will uproot your groves from among you; thus, I will destroy your cities.

20. It will come to pass that all lying, deception, envy, strife, priesthood abuses, and immoral behaviors will be removed.

21. For it will happen, says the Father, that on that day, anyone who does not repent and come to my Beloved Son will be cut off from among my people, O house of Israel;

22. And I will bring wrath and judgment upon them, just as I would against the heathens, things they have never heard before.

23. But if they repent and listen to my words, and do not harden their hearts, I will establish my church among them, and they will join in the covenant and be counted among the remnant of Jacob, to whom I have granted this land as their inheritance;

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

24. And they will help my people, the remnant of Jacob, and anyone from the house of Israel who comes, so that they can build a city that will be called the New Jerusalem.

25. And then they will help gather my people who are scattered throughout the land into the New Jerusalem.

26. Then the power of heaven will be among them; I will also dwell with them.

27. And then the Fathers work will start on that day when this gospel is preached to the remnant of this people. Truly, I say to you, on that day the Fathers work will begin among all the scattered people, including the lost tribes whom the Father has led away from Jerusalem.

28. Yes, the work will begin among all the dispersed of my people, with the Father preparing the way for them to come to me, so they may call upon the Father in my name.

29. Yes, and then the work will begin, with the Father among all nations, preparing the way for His people to gather home to their promised land.

30. And they will go out from all nations; they will not leave quickly or in a hurry, for I will go before them, says the Father, and I will be their protector from behind.

## **3 Nephi Chapter 22**

1. In the final days, Zion and its communities will be established, and Israel will be gathered with compassion and kindness they will succeed Refer to Isaiah 54. Around A.D. 34.

2. Then what has been prophesied will happen: Sing, O woman who has never given birth; start singing and shout, you who have never had a child; because there will be more children from the abandoned than from those who are married, says the Lord.

3. Make your living space larger, and let your tents stretch out; do not hold back, lengthen your ropes and strengthen your pegs;

4. Because you will spread out to the right and to the left, and your descendants will take over the nations and repopulate the deserted cities.

5. Do not be afraid, for you will not be humiliated; do not be confused, for you will not be disgraced; you will forget the shame of your youth and will no longer recall the disgrace of your widowhood.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

6. Because your creator, your protector, is the Lord of Hosts; and your Savior, the Holy One of Israel He is called the God of the entire earth.
7. For the Lord has called you as a woman deserted and troubled, like a young bride who was rejected, says your God.
8. For a brief moment I abandoned you, but I will gather you back with great compassion.
9. For a short time I turned away in anger, but I will show you everlasting kindness and mercy, says the Lord who redeems you.
10. This is like the waters of Noah to me, because just as I promised that the waters of Noah would never flood the earth again, I promise that I will not be angry with you.
11. Though the mountains may disappear and the hills may be taken away, my kindness will never leave you, nor will the agreement of my peace be taken from you, says the Lord who has mercy on you.
12. O you who are distressed, tossed about and without comfort! Look, I will adorn your stones with beautiful colors and lay your foundations with sapphires.
13. I will make your windows out of agates, your gates from precious stones, and your borders with delightful gems.
14. All of your children will be taught by the Lord, and great will be the peace of your children.
15. You will be established in righteousness; you will be far from oppression because you will not fear, and from terror because it will not approach you.
16. Look, they will gather against you, but it will not be by my hand; whoever gathers against you will fall because of you.
17. Look, I created the smith who forges the coals in the fire and who makes tools for his work; and I also created the destroyer to ruin.
18. No weapon forged against you will succeed; and any tongue that accuses you in judgment, you will silence. This is the heritage of the Lord's servants, and their righteousness comes from me, says the Lord.

## **3 Nephi Chapter 23**



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

1. You should really take the time to look into these matters. I strongly encourage you to search carefully, because the words of Isaiah are incredibly significant.
2. He certainly spoke about everything related to my people, the house of Israel; so it makes sense that he would also speak to the Gentiles.
3. Everything he said has happened and will happen just as he proclaimed.
4. So pay attention to what I have said; write down the things I've shared with you, and in the right time and according to the Fathers will, this information will be shared with the Gentiles.
5. Anyone who listens to my words, repents, and is baptized will be saved. Look to the prophets, as many testify about these truths.
6. When Jesus finished speaking these words, he addressed them again. After explaining all the scriptures they had received, he told them: Now, I want you to write down other scriptures that you don't currently have.
7. He then told Nephi: Bring forward the record you have kept.
8. When Nephi presented the records and placed them before Jesus, he looked at them and said:
9. Truly, I instructed my servant Samuel, the Lamanite, to testify to this people that on the day when the Father glorifies his name in me, many saints will rise from the dead and show themselves to many, ministering to them. Did this not happen?
10. The disciples replied: Yes, Lord, Samuel prophesied exactly what you said, and it all came true.
11. Jesus then asked them: Why have you not written about this, that many saints rose, appeared to many, and ministered to them?
12. Nephi remembered that this had not been recorded.
13. Then Jesus commanded that it be written down; so it was inscribed just as he instructed.
14. After Jesus had explained all the scriptures that they had written together, he instructed them to teach what he had revealed to them.

## **3 Nephi Chapter 24**

1. The Lord's messenger will prepare the way for the Second Coming. Christ will sit in judgment. Israel is

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

commanded to pay tithes and offeringsA book of remembrance is keptCompare Malachi 3. About A.D. 34.

2. He instructed them to record the words the Father had given to Malachi, which he would share with them. After they were written down, he explained them. Here are the words he shared: The Father said to MalachiLook, I will send my messenger to prepare the way for me, and the Lord you are looking for will come to his temple unexpectedly, even the messenger of the covenant that you find joy in; yes, he will come, says the Lord of Hosts.

3. But who can endure the day of his coming? Who will stand when he appears? For he is like a refiners fire and like soap used for cleansing.

4. He will act as a refiner and purifier of silver; he will cleanse the sons of Levi and refine them like gold and silver, so that they can offer the Lord offerings that are righteous.

5. Then the offerings from Judah and Jerusalem will be pleasing to the Lord, just like in the past and previous years.

6. I will approach you for judgment; I will be a quick witness against sorcerers, adulterers, false swearers, those who cheat their workers, widows, orphans, those who mistreat outsiders, and those who do not respect me, says the Lord of Hosts.

7. For I am the Lord, and I do not change; that is why you, the descendants of Jacob, are not destroyed.

8. From the days of your ancestors, you have turned away from my commandments and have not followed them. Return to me, and I will return to you, says the Lord of Hosts. But you ask: How can we return?

9. Can a man steal from God? Yet you have stolen from me. You ask: How have we stolen from you? In tithes and offerings.

10. You are under a curse because you have stolen from me, this entire nation.

11. Bring all the tithes into the storehouse, so there may be food in my house; test me in this, says the Lord of Hosts, and see if I will not open the windows of heaven and pour out blessings so great that you will not have enough space to receive them.

12. I will protect your crops, and insects will not destroy the produce of your land, and your vines will not lose

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

their fruit before harvest, says the Lord of Hosts.

13. All nations will recognize you as blessed, for you will be a delightful land, says the Lord of Hosts.

14. Your words have been harsh against me, says the Lord. Yet you ask: What have we said against you?

15. You have said: Serving God is pointless, and what do we gain by keeping his commands and walking in sadness before the Lord of Hosts?

16. Now we find the proud happy; yes, those who do evil seem to prosper; even those who challenge God escape trouble.

17. Then those who feared the Lord spoke frequently to one another, and the Lord listened and heard; a book of remembrance was written in his presence for those who feared the Lord and thought about his name.

18. They will be mine, says the Lord of Hosts, on that day when I gather my treasures; I will protect them like a father protects his son who serves him.

19. Then you will return and see the difference between the righteous and the wicked, between those who serve God and those who do not.

### **3 Nephi Chapter 25**

1. A day is coming that will be as hot as a furnace; all the proud and everyone who does wrong will be like dry chaff; that day will consume them completely, says the Lord of Hosts, leaving nothing but ashes.

2. But for those who respect my name, the Son of Righteousness will rise, bringing healing to them, and they will grow strong and well-fed like young calves in a barn.

3. You will trample on the wicked, for they will be reduced to ashes beneath your feet on the day I carry this out, says the Lord of Hosts.

4. Don't forget the laws of Moses, my servant, which I commanded him at Horeb for all of Israel, along with the rules and judgments.

5. Look, I will send the prophet Elijah to you before the arrival of that great and terrible day of the Lord;

6. And he will help restore the relationships between fathers and children, and between children and their fathers, otherwise I will come and bring destruction upon the earth.

## **3 Nephi Chapter 26**

1. Jesus explains everything from start to finish little children say amazing things that can't be documented Everyone in the Church of Christ shares everything.
2. After Jesus shared this, he explained it to the crowd, covering all topics, both large and small.
3. He said: These scriptures that you didn't have before are what the Father instructed me to give you; it was wise for Him to ensure they would be handed down to future generations.
4. He explained everything from the beginning until his glorious return this includes everything that would happen on earth until everything is melted away with intense heat, and the earth rolls up like a scroll, with the heavens and the earth passing away.
5. And this includes the final day when everyone, from all backgrounds and languages, will stand before God to be judged based on their actions, whether good or evil.
6. If their deeds are good, they will be resurrected to everlasting life; and if evil, to a resurrection of condemnation, with both judgments being equal, based on the mercy, justice, and holiness found in Christ, who existed before the world.
7. There isn't enough space in this book to write even one percent of all that Jesus truly taught the people;
8. However, the plates of Nephi have most of his teachings recorded.
9. I have written a smaller selection of these teachings so that they can be returned to this people from the Gentiles, according to what Jesus said.
10. When they receive these teachings, which are necessary for their faith, if they believe these, then greater truths will be revealed to them.
11. But if they refuse to believe these, then those greater truths will be kept from them, leading to their condemnation.
12. I was about to write everything that was recorded on the plates of Nephi, but the Lord stopped me, saying: I will test my people's faith.
13. So I, Mormon, write what the Lord has commanded me. Now, I finish my words and continue with what I

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

have been instructed to write.

14. I want you to know that the Lord truly taught the people for three days; afterwards, he continued to show himself to them often, breaking bread with them, blessing it, and sharing it.

15. Afterward, he taught and ministered to the children of the crowd, freeing their tongues, and they spoke to their fathers about amazing things, even greater than what he revealed to the adults, as he enabled them to express these.

16. The next day after he had ascended into heaven after appearing to them a second time and returning to the Father, having healed everyone among them, from the sick and lame to the blind and deaf, as well as raising a man from the dead and showing his power, then ascending to the Father

17. The following day, the crowd gathered again, and they saw and heard these children; even babies opened their mouths and spoke wonderful things that no one was allowed to write down.

18. The disciples chosen by Jesus began to baptize and teach everyone who came to them; those who were baptized in Jesus' name received the Holy Ghost.

19. Many of them saw and experienced things that were indescribable and couldn't be legally recorded.

20. They taught and ministered to each other, sharing all things in common, treating one another justly.

21. They did everything just as Jesus had instructed them.

22. Those who were baptized in Jesus' name were called the Church of Christ.

### **3 Nephi Chapter 27**

1. Jesus commands that the Church be named after Him. His mission and sacrifice make up His gospel. People are instructed to repent and be baptized so they can be made holy by the Holy Spirit. They should strive to be like Jesus.

2. As the followers of Jesus traveled, preaching what they had learned and baptized in His name, they came together for powerful prayer and fasting.

3. Jesus appeared to them again while they were praying to the Father in His name; He stood among them and asked: What do you want me to give you?

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

4. They replied: Lord, we want you to tell us the name we should use for this church, since there are disputes among the people about it.
5. The Lord said: Truly, I tell you, why should the people argue about this?
6. Havent they read the scriptures that say you must adopt the name of Christ, which is my name? For by this name you will be called on the final day;
7. And anyone who takes my name upon themselves and remains faithful until the end will be saved on the last day.
8. So, whatever you do, do it in my name; therefore, you will call the church by my name; and you will pray to the Father in my name so that He will bless the church for my sake.
9. How can it be my church if it is not called by my name? If the church is named after Moses, then it belongs to Moses; if it is named after a man, then it belongs to that man; but if it is called in my name, then it is my church, provided that it is built upon my gospel.
10. I assure you, you are built on my gospel; therefore, anything you refer to must be in my name; thus, if you pray to the Father for the church, and it is in my name, the Father will listen to you;
11. And if the church is built on my gospel, then the Father will show His works in it.
12. But if it isnt built on my gospel, and instead is based on human efforts or the works of the devil, I tell you that they may find temporary joy in their works, but eventually they will face destruction and be thrown into the fire, from which there is no escape.
13. Their deeds will follow them; its their actions that lead to their downfall; so remember what Ive told you.
14. Look, I have given you my gospel, and this is the gospel I have shared with youthat I came into the world to fulfill my Fathers will, as my Father sent me.
15. And my Father sent me so that I could be lifted on the cross; and after I was lifted up on the cross, I would draw all people to me, that as I have been raised by men, so shall men be raised by the Father, to stand before me and be judged for their deeds, whether they are good or evil
16. And for this reason I was lifted up; so, by the power of the Father, I will draw everyone to me for

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

judgment based on their actions.

17. It will come to pass that whoever repents and is baptized in my name will be filled with the Spirit; and if they remain faithful until the end, I will declare them innocent before my Father at that time when I stand to judge the world.

18. But anyone who does not stay faithful until the end will also be cut down and thrown into the fire, from which they cannot return, due to the Fathers justice.

19. These are the words He has given to mankind. He fulfills what He has promised; He does not lie, but fulfills all His words.

20. Nothing impure can enter His kingdom; therefore, only those who have been cleansed by my blood, through their faith, repentance of all sins, and faithfulness until the end, can enter His rest.

21. Now this is the command: Repent, all you people, and come to me and be baptized in my name, so that you may be purified by receiving the Holy Spirit, and stand clean before me on the last day.

22. Truly, I say to you, this is my gospel; and you know what you must do in my church; for the actions you have seen me perform, you should also carry out; what you have seen me do, you will do;

23. Thus, if you do these things, you will be blessed, and you will be exalted on the last day.

24. Write the things you have seen and heard, except for what is forbidden.

25. Document the works of this people, which will match what has been written about the past.

26. Look, from the records that have been and will be made, this people will be judged, for through these, their actions will be made known to others.

27. And know that everything is recorded by the Father; therefore, from the books that will be created, the world will be judged.

28. You will be judges of this people based on the fair judgment I will give you. So, what kind of people should you be? I tell you, be like me.

29. And now I return to the Father. I assure you, anything you ask the Father in my name will be given to you.

30. So, ask, and you will receive; knock, and it will be opened to you; for whoever asks receives, and whoever

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

knocks, it will be opened.

31. Look, I feel immense joy because of you and this generation; yes, the Father rejoices, and all the holy angels rejoice because of you and this generation; for none of them are lost.

32. I want you to understand; I refer to those who are living in this generation; and none of them are lost; in them, I find complete joy.

33. But, I feel sorrow for the fourth generation from this one, for they will be led away like the son of destruction; they will betray me for silver and gold, for things that decay and can be stolen. And on that day, I will repay them for their actions.

34. After Jesus spoke these things, he told his disciples: Enter through the narrow gate; for narrow is the gate, and difficult is the way that leads to life, and few find it; while the gate is wide, and the path is easy that leads to destruction, and many follow that path until the night arrives when no one can work.

### **3 Nephi Chapter 28**

1. When Jesus finished speaking, he addressed each of his disciples individually, asking them what they wanted from him after he returned to the Father.

2. All the disciples spoke except for three, saying: We hope that after living a full life, our service, for which you have called us, may come to an end quickly so we can be with you in your kingdom.

3. He told them: You are blessed because you asked this of me; thus, after you reach the age of seventy-two, you will join me in my kingdom, where you will find rest.

4. After talking to the other disciples, he turned to the three and asked: What do you want from me when I go to the Father?

5. They felt sorrowful inside and didn't dare to ask him for what they desired.

6. He said to them: I know your thoughts, and you are wishing for the same thing that John, my beloved disciple who was with me before I was taken by the Jews, asked of me.

7. Therefore, you are even more blessed because you will never experience death; you will live to see all the works of the Father among mankind until everything is fulfilled as he wishes, when I return in my glory with



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

heavenly powers.

8. You will not feel the pain of death; when I come in my glory, you will be transformed in an instant from mortality to immortality; then you will be blessed in my Father's kingdom.

9. Additionally, you will not suffer while you are in the flesh, except for the sins of the world; all this I will do because you wished to bring the souls of men to me while the world exists.

10. Because of this, you will experience complete joy; you will sit in my Father's kingdom, and your joy will be full, just as the Father has given me complete joy; you will be like I am, just as I am like the Father; we are one.

11. The Holy Spirit testifies of the Father and me; the Father gives the Holy Spirit to people because of me.

12. When Jesus finished speaking, he touched each disciple with his finger except for the three who were meant to stay on earth, and then he left.

13. Then the heavens were opened, and they were taken up into heaven, where they saw and heard things beyond words.

14. They were forbidden to share what they experienced or had the power to express what they saw and heard;

15. They couldn't tell if they were in their bodies or not; it seemed like they changed from their physical bodies to an immortal state so they could see the things of God.

16. But they returned to minister on earth; however, they did not share what they had witnessed or heard because of the command they received in heaven.

17. I can't say whether they were mortal or immortal after their transformation,

18. But according to the record given, they ministered across the land, bringing many people to believe in their teachings, baptizing them, and those who were baptized received the Holy Ghost.

19. They were imprisoned by those outside the church, but the prisons could not contain them; they were torn apart.

20. They were thrown into the ground, but they struck the earth with God's word, and by his power, they were freed from the depths of the earth; hence, they could not be trapped.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

21. They were thrown into a furnace three times and emerged unharmed.
22. They were thrown into a den of wild animals two times; they played with the beasts like a child with a lamb and suffered no harm.
23. So they preached the gospel of Christ to all the people of Nephi; many were converted to the Lord and united with the church of Christ, blessing the generation as Jesus promised.
24. And now I, Mormon, pause my account of these matters for a time.
25. I was going to write the names of those who would never die, but the Lord forbade me; therefore, I will not disclose them, for they are hidden from the world.
26. However, I have seen them, and they have served me.
27. They will appear among the Gentiles, but the Gentiles will not recognize them.
28. They will also be present among the Jews, but the Jews will likewise not know them.
29. When the Lord decides in his wisdom, they will serve all the scattered tribes of Israel and all nations, helping many souls come to Jesus, fulfilling their desire and demonstrating God's convincing power within them.
30. They are like God's angels, and if they pray to the Father in Jesus' name, they can reveal themselves to whomever they choose.
31. So, significant and extraordinary works will be done by them before the day comes when all people must stand before Christ's judgment seat;
32. Even among the Gentiles, great and marvelous works will be performed by them before that judgment day.
33. If you had all the scriptures documenting the marvelous works of Christ, you would understand, according to his words, that these things are certain to happen.
34. Woe will come to anyone who does not listen to the words of Jesus and those he has chosen to send among them; for whoever rejects the words of Jesus and his sent servants will not receive him; thus, they will not receive them on the last day;
35. It would be better for them never to have been born. Do you think you can escape the justice of a God who

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

has been trampled by men just so that salvation could come?

36. Now, concerning those whom the Lord has chosen, particularly the three who were taken up into heaven, I was unsure if they were cleansed from mortality to immortality

37. But since writing this, I have sought the Lord, and he has shown me that a change must occur in their bodies, or else they must experience death;

38. Thus, to prevent them from tasting death, a change was made in their bodies so that they would not suffer pain or sorrow, except for the sins of the world.

39. Now, this transformation was not the same as what will occur on the last day; but they were changed so that Satan could not overpower them or tempt them; they were made holy in the flesh, and the earthly powers could not hold them.

40. In this state, they were to remain until the judgment day of Christ; on that day, they will undergo a greater transformation and will be received into the Father's kingdom, where they will dwell with God forever in heaven.

### **3 Nephi Chapter 29**

1. The publication of the Book of Mormon is proof that the Lord has started to gather Israel and keep His promises. Those who reject His revelations and gifts in these latter days will face consequences.

2. Pay attention, for when the Lord decides, in His wisdom, to share these messages with the Gentiles as He has promised, you can be sure that the agreement the Father made with the children of Israel, about bringing them back to their promised lands, is already beginning to happen.

3. You can trust that the Lord's words, delivered by holy prophets, will all come true; you shouldn't think that the Lord is delaying His return to the children of Israel.

4. Do not doubt in your hearts that these messages are empty, because the Lord will remember His promise to the people of Israel.

5. When you see these messages being shared among you, don't dismiss the ways of the Lord, for His justice is powerful; know that if you disregard His actions, consequences will swiftly follow.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

6. Woe to anyone who dismisses the works of the Lord; indeed, woe to anyone who denies Christ and what He has done!
7. Woe to anyone who rejects the revelations from the Lord, claiming that He is no longer guiding us through revelation, prophecy, gifts, speaking in tongues, healing, or the power of the Holy Spirit!
8. Woe to those who, in their pursuit of profit, claim that Jesus Christ cannot perform miracles, for those who do this will end up like the son of perdition, who received no mercy according to Christs words!
9. You should no longer mock or belittle the Jews or the remnant of Israel, for the Lord remembers His covenant with them, and He will act according to what He has promised.
10. Therefore, do not think you can change the course of the Lord's hand so that He won't execute judgment as He fulfills His promise to the house of Israel.

### **3 Nephi Chapter 30**

1. Listen, you Gentiles, and pay attention to the words of Jesus Christ, the Son of the living God. He has instructed me to speak to you, and He has commanded me to write these words, saying:
2. All you Gentiles should turn away from your sinful behaviors; repent of your wrong actions, your lies and deceit, your sexual immorality, your hidden sins, your idol worship, murders, misuse of priesthood, jealousy, conflicts, and from all your wickedness and sins. Come to me and be baptized in my name so that you can be forgiven for your sins and receive the Holy Spirit, allowing you to be counted among my people, who belong to the house of Israel.

### **4 Nephi**

#### **4 Nephi Chapter 1**

1. Fourth Nephi
2. The Book of Nephi Who Is the Son of NephiOne of the Disciples of Jesus Christ
3. A description of the people of Nephi, according to his record.
4. The Nephites and Lamanites turned to the LordThey shared everything, performed miracles, and thrived in

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

the land After two centuries, divisions, evil, false churches, and persecution began After three hundred years, both groups became wicked Ammaron hid the sacred records. About A.D. 35321.

5. After thirty-four years had passed, and then thirty-five, the disciples of Jesus established a church of Christ in all surrounding lands. All who came to them and truly repented were baptized in Jesus' name and received the Holy Ghost.

6. In thirty-six, everyone became converted to the Lord across the entire land, both Nephites and Lamanites; there were no conflicts among them, and everyone treated each other fairly.

7. They shared everything equally; thus, there were no rich or poor, slaves or free their freedom was complete, and they all enjoyed heavenly blessings together.

8. Then thirty-seven years passed, and peace remained in the land.

9. The disciples of Jesus performed many remarkable miracles: they healed the sick, raised the dead, helped the lame walk, gave sight to the blind, and made the deaf hear; every miracle was done in Jesus' name.

10. The years continued, with thirty-eight, thirty-nine, forty-one, and forty-two passing by, right up to fifty-nine years.

11. The Lord prospered them greatly in the land; they rebuilt cities that had been destroyed by fire.

12. They even rebuilt the great city of Zarahemla.

13. However, many cities had sunk beneath the water, so they could not be restored.

14. And behold, the people of Nephi grew stronger and multiplied very quickly, becoming a beautiful and delightful people.

15. They married and were given in marriage, and they were blessed according to the numerous promises the Lord had made to them.

16. They no longer followed the law of Moses but adhered to the commandments given to them by their Lord and God, continuing to fast and pray, gathering often to pray and listen to the word of the Lord.

17. There was no conflict among the people; many great miracles were performed by the disciples of Jesus.

18. As the seventy-first year passed, then the seventy-second and eventually up to seventy-nine years, a

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

hundred years had gone by, and all the chosen disciples of Jesus had departed for paradise, except for three who remained; other disciples were appointed in their place, and many from that generation had also passed away.

19. There was no contention in the land due to God's love residing in the hearts of the people.

20. There were no envies, conflicts, riots, immoral acts, lies, murders, or any kind of wickedness; surely, no happier people existed among all of God's creation.

21. There were no robbers or murderers, nor were there Lamanites or any divisions; they were united as the children of Christ, heirs to God's kingdom.

22. They were truly blessed! The Lord blessed their efforts, and they thrived until an additional hundred ten years had gone by; the first generation from the time of Christ had all passed, and there was peace throughout the land.

23. Nephi, who kept this final record on the plates of Nephi, died, and his son Amos took over the record, also on the plates of Nephi.

24. He maintained it for eighty-four years, during which peace endured, except for a small group of people who had revolted from the church and called themselves Lamanites; thus, Lamanites reappeared in the land.

25. Eventually, Amos died too, and it was one hundred ninety-four years after Christ came; his son Amos continued the record, again on the plates of Nephi, and it was also written in the book of Nephi, which is this book.

26. After two hundred years had passed, only a few from the second generation remained.

27. Now I, Mormon, want you to know that the people multiplied to the point where they spread across the land and became very wealthy due to their prosperity in Christ.

28. In this two hundred first year, pride began to arise among them, manifesting in the form of expensive clothing, fancy pearls, and luxurious possessions.

29. From that time onward, their possessions were no longer shared.

30. They started to divide into classes and began establishing churches for profit, denying the true church of

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

Christ.

31. When two hundred ten years passed, numerous churches emerged in the land; many claimed to know Christ yet rejected key parts of his gospel, allowing all kinds of wickedness and offering sacred things to those unworthy.

32. One church grew significantly due to their iniquity and the influence of Satan over their hearts.

33. Another church emerged that rejected Christ and persecuted the true church because of its humility and faith; they despised those believers due to the many miracles seen among them.

34. Therefore, they exerted power and authority over the disciples of Jesus who stayed with them, throwing them into prison; but through the power of God's word in them, the prisons were miraculously opened, and they performed mighty miracles among the people.

35. Despite all these miracles, the people grew hard-hearted, seeking to kill them, just as the Jews in Jerusalem sought to kill Jesus.

36. They threw them into fiery furnaces, but they emerged unharmed.

37. They also cast them into dens of wild animals, but they played with the beasts like children with a lamb; and again, they came out unscathed.

38. Still, the peoples hearts hardened, led by many false priests and prophets to create many churches and commit many wrongs. They struck the people of Jesus, but the followers of Jesus did not retaliate. Thus, they fell into unbelief and wickedness year after year, until two hundred thirty years had passed.

39. In the year two hundred thirty-one, a significant division arose among the people.

40. This year marked the rise of a group known as Nephites, who were true believers in Christ; among them were those labeled by the Lamanites as Jacobites, Josephites, and Zoramites.

41. Thus, the authentic followers of Christ, including the three disciples meant to remain, were called Nephites, Jacobites, Josephites, and Zoramites.

42. Those who rejected the gospel were referred to as Lamanites, Lemuelites, and Ishmaelites; they did not simply dwindle in disbelief but actively opposed the gospel of Christ, teaching their children not to believe,

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

just as their forefathers had.

43. Their rejection stemmed from the sins and abominations of their ancestors, just as it had from the outset.

They were taught to hate Gods children, exactly as the Lamanites had been taught to hate the Nephites.

44. Two hundred forty-four years went by, and such were the conditions of the people. The wicked faction grew stronger, becoming much more numerous than the people of God.

45. They continued to establish churches for themselves, adorning them with countless valuables. Thus two hundred fifty years passed, then two hundred sixty.

46. The wicked segment of the population rekindled the secret oaths and secret combinations of Gadianon.

47. Likewise, the people called Nephites became proud due to their great wealth, adopting vanity similar to that of the Lamanites.

48. From this moment, the disciples began to mourn for the worlds sins.

49. After three hundred years had passed, both Nephites and Lamanites became exceedingly wicked, much like each other.

50. The Gadianon robbers infiltrated the entire land, with hardly anyone righteous aside from the disciples of Jesus. They hoarded gold and silver and engaged in all sorts of trade.

51. After three hundred five years, the people remained in wickedness; Amos died, and his brother Ammaron took over the record.

52. When three hundred twenty years had passed, Ammaron, influenced by the Holy Ghost, hid away the sacred recordsindeed, all the sacred records handed down through generationsup to the three hundred twentieth year since Christ's arrival.

53. He hid them for the Lord, so that they might return to the remnant of Jacobs house, in accordance with the Lord's prophecies and promises. Thus ends the record of Ammaron.

## **Mormon**

### **Mormon Chapter 1**



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

1. I, Mormon, am writing down everything I have seen and heard, and I call this book the Book of Mormon.
2. When Ammaron hid the records for the Lord, he came to me when I was about ten years old and starting to learn. Ammaron said to me, I see that you are a serious child and quick to notice things.
3. So, when you turn about twenty-four years old, I want you to remember what you have seen about this people. When you reach that age, go to the land Antum, to a hill called Shim. There, I have hidden all the sacred records concerning this people.
4. You will take the plates of Nephi for yourself, but leave the rest where they are. You should write on the plates of Nephi everything you have observed about this people.
5. I, Mormon, am a descendant of Nephi (my father's name was also Mormon), and I remembered what Ammaron told me.
6. When I was eleven years old, my father took me to the land southward, to the land of Zarahemla.
7. The entire area was filled with buildings, and the people were nearly as numerous as the grains of sand on the shore.
8. During that year, a war started between the Nephites (composed of Nephites, Jacobites, Josephites, and Zoramites) and the Lamanites, Lemuelites, and Ishmaelites.
9. The Lamanites, Lemuelites, and Ishmaelites were all called Lamanites, and the two opposing groups were the Nephites and the Lamanites.
10. The fighting began near Zarahemla, by the waters of Sidon.
11. The Nephites gathered a large army of over thirty thousand men. During that same year, they fought several battles and defeated the Lamanites, killing many of them.
12. Eventually, the Lamanites decided to pull back from their plans, and peace returned to the land for about four years, during which time there was no bloodshed.
13. However, wickedness took over the land, and because of the people's wrongdoings, the Lord took away His beloved disciples, and miracles and healings stopped.
14. There were no gifts from the Lord, and the Holy Ghost did not touch anyone due to their wickedness and

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

lack of faith.

15. At the age of fifteen, I was somewhat serious-minded, so the Lord visited me, and I experienced and understood the goodness of Jesus.

16. I tried to preach to the people, but I was stopped and forbidden to speak because they had deliberately rebelled against their God, and the beloved disciples were taken away because of their sins.

17. I stayed among them but was not allowed to preach because of their hardened hearts. Because of their stubbornness, the land was cursed.

18. The Gadianon robbers who were with the Lamanites infested the land, causing the people to start hiding their treasures underground. The land became treacherous because the Lord cursed it, so they could not keep their treasures.

19. It also became a time of sorceries, witchcraft, and magic; the power of evil spread across the land, fulfilling the prophecies of Abinadi and Samuel the Lamanite.

### **Mormon Chapter 2**

1. In that same year, a war broke out again between the Nephites and the Lamanites. Even though I was young, I was tall; so, the Nephite people chose me to be their leader and commander of their armies.

2. So, when I turned sixteen, I led the Nephite army against the Lamanites, and by that time, three hundred and twenty-six years had passed.

3. In the three hundred and twenty-seventh year, the Lamanites attacked us with overwhelming force, frightening my troops so much that they refused to fight and started retreating toward the northern territories.

4. We reached the city of Angola, took control of it, and prepared to defend against the Lamanites. We fortified the city with all our strength; however, despite our defenses, the Lamanites came and drove us out of the city.

5. They also pushed us out of the land of David.

6. We marched on and arrived at the land of Joshua, which was located along the western seashore.

7. We gathered our people as quickly as possible to assemble them into one group.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

8. However, the land was filled with robbers and Lamanites; and despite the imminent danger facing my people, they did not turn away from their wickedness. As a result, there was widespread violence and bloodshed across the land, on both sides, creating a cycle of destruction.

9. Now, the Lamanites had a king named Aaron, who led an army of forty-four thousand against us. I confronted him with an army of forty-two thousand. Eventually, I was able to defeat him, forcing him to flee from me. This all occurred after three hundred and thirty years had gone by.

10. The Nephites began to feel remorse for their sins and cried out, just as Samuel the prophet had predicted; for people could no longer protect what was theirs because of the thieves, robbers, murderers, and practitioners of dark arts present in the land.

11. This caused deep mourning and grief throughout the land, especially among the Nephites.

12. When I, Mormon, witnessed their grieving and sorrow towards the Lord, my heart started to rejoice, thinking the Lord's mercy might lead them to become righteous once more.

13. However, my joy was misguided, as their sorrow wasn't a true repentance brought on by God's goodness, but rather the kind of despair that comes from being lost, as the Lord would not allow them to find happiness in their sins.

14. They did not turn to Jesus with humble hearts but instead cursed God and wished for death while still fighting for their lives.

15. My sorrow returned as I realized it was too late for them, both in this life and the next; I saw thousands killed in outright rebellion against God, their bodies littering the land like refuse. By now, three hundred and forty-four years had passed.

16. In the three hundred and forty-fifth year, the Nephites began to flee from the Lamanites, who chased them all the way to the land of Jashon, where they couldn't be stopped.

17. The city of Jashon was close to where Ammaron had hidden the records to protect them from destruction. Following Ammaron's instructions, I retrieved the plates of Nephi and began chronicling the events according to his words.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

18. On the plates of Nephi, I documented the complete history of all the wickedness and sinful acts; still, I refrained from detailing everything, as I had witnessed a constant existence of evil since I was capable of understanding human actions.

19. Woe is me for their wickedness; my heart has been burdened with sorrow because of their actions all my life; yet, I have faith that I will be uplifted in the end.

20. In that year, the Nephite people were again hunted and forced to flee. We made our way north until we reached a land called Shem.

21. We fortified the city of Shem and gathered our people as best as we could, hoping to save them from destruction.

22. In the three hundred and forty-sixth year, the Lamanites began to attack us once more.

23. I spoke to my people with great passion, encouraging them to bravely stand up against the Lamanites and fight for their families and homes.

24. My words motivated them to some extent, leading them to stand their ground instead of running away from the Lamanites.

25. We faced an army of thirty thousand against an army of fifty thousand. We stood firm against them, causing them to flee from us.

26. When they retreated, we pursued them and encountered them again, defeating them; however, we lacked the strength of the Lord with us; we were left to our own devices, and without the Spirit of the Lord, we became weak like our brethren.

27. I mourned for the great disaster that befell my people due to their sins and abominations. Nevertheless, we fought against the Lamanites and the robbers of Gadianton until we regained control of our ancestral lands.

28. Three hundred and forty-nine years had passed. In the three hundred and fiftieth year, we negotiated a treaty with the Lamanites and the Gadianton robbers, leading to the division of our lands.

29. The Lamanites granted us the northern land, extending all the way to the narrow passage into the southern land. In return, we gave them all the land to the south.

## **Mormon Chapter 3**

1. The Lamanites did not come to fight again until ten more years had gone by. During that time, I had my people, the Nephites, get their land and weapons ready for battle.
2. The Lord told me to call out to these people Repent and come to me, be baptized, rebuild my church, and you will be saved.
3. I called out to them, but it was useless; they didnt understand that it was the Lord who had spared them and given them a chance to change. Instead, they hardened their hearts against God.
4. After ten years passed, which made it a total of three hundred sixty years since Christs coming, the king of the Lamanites sent me a letter informing me that they were getting ready to attack us again.
5. I gathered my people together at the land Desolation, near a city by the narrow pass that led south.
6. We set up our armies there, intending to stop the Lamanite forces from taking any of our land; we fortified ourselves with all our strength.
7. In the year three hundred sixty-one, the Lamanites attacked the city of Desolation; we defeated them so badly that they retreated to their own territories.
8. In the year three hundred sixty-two, they came to battle again. We defeated them once more and killed many of them, whose bodies were thrown into the sea.
9. Now, because of this victory, my people, the Nephites, began to boast about their strength and declared before heaven that they would take revenge for the blood of their slain brothers.
10. They vowed by heaven and the throne of God that they would go to battle against their enemies and remove them from the land.
11. At this point, I, Mormon, refused to be their commander or leader because of their wickedness and corruption.
12. I had led them many times into battle despite their wrongdoing, caring for them deeply with Gods love in my heart; I prayed for them constantly, but my prayers lacked faith due to their hardened hearts.
13. I had saved them from their enemies three times, but they never truly repented for their sins.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

14. After swearing by everything forbidden by our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ that they would fight their enemies for revenge, the Lord spoke to me, saying:

15. Vengeance is mine, and I will repay; because this people did not repent after I delivered them, they will be cut off from the earth.

16. I completely refused to fight my enemies and obeyed the Lords command; I chose to remain a silent witness to show the world what I saw and heard, as the Spirit revealed future events to me.

17. So, I write to you, Gentiles, and to the house of Israel, when the work begins, to prepare to return to your land of inheritance;

18. Yes, I write to all people everywhere; especially to you, twelve tribes of Israel, who will be judged according to your actions by the twelve disciples chosen by Jesus in Jerusalem.

19. I also write to the remnant of my people, who will be judged by the same twelve chosen by Jesus in this land and by another group of twelve chosen in Jerusalem.

20. The Spirit has revealed these things to me, and thats why I write to all of you. I want you to understand that you will all stand before the judgment of Christ, every person from Adam's family, to be judged for your deeds, whether good or bad.

21. And I want you to believe in the gospel of Jesus Christ, which you will have among you; also, the Jews, who are Gods chosen people, will have another witness besides the one they saw and heard, confirming that Jesus, whom they crucified, is the true Christ and God.

22. I hope to persuade everyone on earth to repent and prepare to stand before Christ's judgment seat.

## **Mormon Chapter 4**

1. In the year 363, the Nephites went to battle against the Lamanites from the land known as Desolation.

2. The Nephite troops were pushed back to Desolation, and while they were still tired, a new Lamanite army attacked them fiercely. The Lamanites captured the city of Desolation, killed many Nephites, and took several prisoners.

3. The remaining Nephites fled and found refuge with the people in the city of Teancum, which was located

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

along the shore near Desolation.

4. The Nephites were suffering defeats because they took the initiative to attack the Lamanites; otherwise, the Lamanites wouldn't have been able to overpower them.

5. However, it is clear that Gods judgment will come upon the wicked, and its the wicked who incite violence in the hearts of others.

6. The Lamanites started preparing to attack the city of Teancum.

7. In the year 364, the Lamanites attacked Teancum with the intent to capture it as well.

8. However, the Nephites managed to repel the Lamanites and drive them back. Seeing their success, the Nephites boasted about their strength and regained control of the city of Desolation.

9. After all these events, there had been thousands killed on both sides the Nephites and the Lamanites.

10. By the year 366, the Lamanites returned to battle against the Nephites once again, but the Nephites did not repent for their wrongdoing and continued in their evil ways.

11. Words cannot adequately capture the horrific scenes of bloodshed among the Nephite and Lamanite people; their hearts became hard and they took pleasure in violence.

12. There had never been such widespread evil among the descendants of Lehi, nor among all the people of Israel, as the Lord had said about these people.

13. The Lamanites took control of the city of Desolation because their numbers greatly outnumbered the Nephites.

14. They also marched against the city of Teancum, driving out its residents, capturing many women and children, and sacrificing them to their idol gods.

15. In the year 367, the Nephites, furious over the sacrifices of their women and children, attacked the Lamanites with great rage, defeating them and driving them from their lands.

16. The Lamanites did not confront the Nephites again until the year 375.

17. In that year, they came against the Nephites with overwhelming strength; their numbers were so large they werent even counted.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

18. From that point on, the Nephites could not regain control over the Lamanites and began to be defeated easily, like dew evaporating in the sun.
19. The Lamanites launched an attack against the city of Desolation, resulting in a fierce battle where they triumphed over the Nephites.
20. The Nephites fled once more and reached the city of Boaz, where they stood their ground against the Lamanites, fighting valiantly until the Lamanites returned for a second assault.
21. During the second attack, the Nephites suffered heavy casualties, and their women and children were again sacrificed to idols.
22. The Nephites fled again from the Lamanites, taking all the people from their towns and villages with them.
23. Seeing that the Lamanites were about to conquer the land, I, Mormon, went to the hill Shim and took all the records that Ammaron had hidden up with the Lord.

## **Mormon Chapter 5**

1. I went among the Nephites and regretted the promise I made not to help them anymore; they put me back in charge of their armies because they believed I could save them from their troubles.
2. However, I felt hopeless because I understood the Lord's judgments that were coming upon them. They did not repent of their wrongdoings, and instead, they fought for their lives without turning to the God who created them.
3. The Lamanites attacked us again while we were trying to escape to the city of Jordan, but they were pushed back and didn't capture the city at that time.
4. They returned to battle again, and we managed to hold the city. Other cities were also defended by the Nephites, which blocked the Lamanites from entering our territory to harm the people living there.
5. But any land we passed by where the people did not gather together was destroyed by the Lamanites; their towns, villages, and cities were burned down, and thus three hundred and seventy-nine years went by.
6. Then, in the three hundred and eightieth year, the Lamanites attacked us again, and we stood firm against them, but it was hopeless since their numbers were so great that they trampled over the Nephite people.



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

7. We had to flee once more, and those who could run faster than the Lamanites escaped, while those who couldnt were caught and killed.

8. Now, I, Mormon, do not want to distress anyone by describing the horrific scenes of bloodshed I witnessed; however, since these events must be shared and everything hidden must be revealed from the rooftops

9. I also know that the survivors of this people, as well as the Gentiles who care about Israel, must understand where their blessings come from.

10. For I know these people will grieve for Israels misfortunes; yes, they will mourn for this people's destruction and regret that they did not repent so they could embrace Jesus.

11. These writings are meant for the remnant of the house of Jacob; they are written this way because God knows that wickedness will not lead them to truth, and they will be kept safe until His timing.

12. This is the command I received: they will come forth as the Lord commands when it is His wise decision.

13. They will be sent to the unbelieving Jews with the purpose of convincing them that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of the living God, so that the Father can fulfill His great eternal plan to restore the Jews, or all of Israel, to the land He has promised them as part of His covenant.

14. Also, the descendants of this people will be encouraged to believe in the gospel that will be shared with them by the Gentiles; this people will be scattered and will become dark, filthy, and despicable, more than any described among us, even worse than the Lamanites, due to their lack of faith and idol worship.

15. For the Spirit of the Lord has already stopped striving with their ancestors, and they are lost without Christ and God in their lives, tossed about like chaff in the wind.

16. They used to be a joyful people with Christ as their shepherd, led by God the Father.

17. But now they are led by Satan, just like chaff is swept away in the wind, or like a ship tossed on the waves, without sail or anchor, unable to steer; they are just like that ship.

18. The Lord has held back the blessings they could have received in that land for the Gentiles who will take possession of it.

19. But it will happen that they will be driven and scattered by the Gentiles; after they have been scattered, the

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

Lord will remember the covenant He made with Abraham and all of Israel.

20. The Lord will also remember the prayers of the righteous that have been offered for them.

21. Then, O Gentiles, how can you stand before Gods power if you do not repent and abandon your wrong ways?

22. Do you not realize that you are in God's hands? Do you not understand that He has all power, and at His command, the earth will be rolled up like a scroll?

23. Therefore, repent and humble yourselves before Him, or He will come against you justlylike a remnant of Jacobs descendants that will rise up like a lion and tear you apart with no one to save you.

### **Mormon Chapter 6**

1. I am concluding my record about the destruction of my people, the Nephites. We advanced towards the Lamanites.

2. I, Mormon, wrote a letter to the Lamanite king, asking him to allow us to bring our people to the hill called Cumorah, so we could prepare for battle there.

3. The Lamanite king agreed to my request.

4. We marched to the land of Cumorah and set up our tents around the hill; this area was filled with rivers and springs, and we hoped to gain an advantage against the Lamanites.

5. After three hundred eighty-four years, we gathered all our remaining people to the land of Cumorah.

6. When we gathered all our people there, I, Mormon, began to feel old. Realizing this would be our final struggle and knowing that I must protect the sacred records from falling into the hands of the Lamanites (who would destroy them), I created this record from the plates of Nephi and buried all other sacred records given to me by the Lord in the hill Cumorah, except for a few plates I gave to my son Moroni.

7. As my people, along with their families, saw the Lamanite armies approaching, they were filled with the deep fear of death that plagues the wicked.

8. The Lamanites charged at us, and our hearts were gripped with terror at their overwhelming numbers.

9. They attacked my people with swords, bows, arrows, axes, and every kind of weapon.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

10. My men were killed, including the ten thousand who fought with me, and I was wounded during the battle but left alive.
11. After they had slain all my people except for twenty-four of us (including my son Moroni), we survived the massacre and the next day, while looking from the top of the hill Cumorah, we saw the ten thousand of my people who had fallen, with me leading them.
12. We also saw the ten thousand led by my son Moroni.
13. And we saw that Gidgiddonah and his ten thousand had also fallen, along with him.
14. Lamah and his ten thousand fell, as did Gilgal, Limhah, Jeneum, Cumenihah, Moronihah, Antionum, Shiblom, Shem, and Josh, with their ten thousand each.
15. Moreover, ten others also fell in battle, each with ten thousand; truly all my people were lost except those twenty-four with me, and a few who escaped south or deserted to the Lamanites; their remains lay on the ground, left by those who killed them to decay and return to the earth.
16. My heart ached with sorrow for my fallen people, and I cried out:
17. O beautiful ones, how could you turn away from the Lord! O beautiful ones, how could you reject Jesus, who wanted to welcome you with open arms!
18. If you had not done this, you wouldnt have fallen. But now you have fallen, and I mourn your loss.
19. O lovely sons and daughters, fathers and mothers, husbands and wives, how could you have fallen!
20. But now you are gone, and my grief cannot bring you back.
21. The day will come when your mortal bodies must become immortal, and these decaying bodies will turn into incorruptible ones; then you will stand before Christs judgment seat to be judged for your actions; if you are righteous, you will be blessed alongside your righteous ancestors.
22. O that you had repented before this great destruction occurred! But now you are gone, and the Heavenly Father knows your situation, and He treats you according to His justice and mercy.

## **Mormon Chapter 7**

1. Now, I would like to share some words with the remaining members of this people who have been spared,

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

hoping that God will allow me to share my message, so they can learn about their ancestors; I speak to you, the remnants of Israel; and these are my words:

2. Understand that you are part of the house of Israel.
3. Realize that you need to repent, or you won't be saved.
4. Recognize that you must give up your weapons and stop enjoying violence, and only take them up again if God Himself commands you.
5. Acknowledge that you need to learn about your ancestors, repent for all your wrongdoings, and have faith in Jesus Christ the Son of God, who was killed by the Jews and rose again through the power of the Father, conquering death, and the pain of death is overcome through Him.
6. He ensures the resurrection of the dead, meaning that everyone will be raised to stand before His judgment.
7. Through Him, the world is redeemed, so that those who are innocent when they stand before Him on judgment day will be permitted to live in God's presence in His kingdom, singing endless praise alongside the heavenly choirs to the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit, who are one God, in an eternal state of happiness.
8. So, repent and be baptized in Jesus' name, and embrace the gospel of Christ, which will be presented to you not only in this record but also in the record that will come to the Gentiles from the Jews, and that will eventually come from the Gentiles to you.
9. This is written so that you may come to believe; and if you believe that, you will also believe this; and if you believe this, you will learn about your ancestors and the amazing things that God did among them.
10. You will also come to understand that you are part of Jacob's seed; therefore, you belong to those who hold the first covenant; and if you believe in Christ and are baptized first with water, then with fire and the Holy Spirit, following the example of our Savior and His commands it will go well for you on judgment day. Amen.

## **Mormon Chapter 8**

1. I, Moroni, am finishing the record of my father, Mormon. I have only a few things left to write, which my father commanded me to do.
2. After the huge and terrible battle at Cumorah, the Nephites who escaped to the south were pursued by the

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

Lamanites until they were all wiped out.

3. My father was also killed by them, and now I am left alone to tell the tragic story of my people's destruction. But they are gone, and I must follow my fathers command. I do not know if they will kill me.

4. So, I will write and bury the records in the ground; where I go doesnt matter.

5. My father created this record and wrote its purpose. I would write more if there was space on the plates, but there's not, and I have no metal to write on because I'm alone. My father was killed in battle, and all my relatives are gone, and I have no friends or place to go; I dont know how much longer the Lord will allow me to live.

6. Four hundred years have passed since the arrival of our Lord and Savior.

7. The Lamanites have chased my people, the Nephites, from city to city until they no longer exist; their fall has been great, and the destruction of my people is both significant and astonishing.

8. It is the Lord who has caused this. The Lamanites are also fighting among themselves, and this entire land is filled with ongoing murder and bloodshed; no one knows when the fighting will end.

9. Now, I will say no more about them; only the Lamanites and robbers are left in the land.

10. Only the disciples of Jesus know the true God; they stayed in the land until the people's wickedness became so severe that the Lord would not allow them remain; no one knows if they still live on the earth.

11. Yet, my father and I have seen them, and they have helped us.

12. Whoever receives this record and does not condemn it for its flaws will learn about even greater things. I am Moroni; if I could, I would reveal everything to you.

13. I will stop talking about this people. I am Mormon's son, and my father was a descendant of Nephi.

14. I am the one who hides this record before the Lord; the plates themselves are not valuable because the Lord commanded it. He says that no one should use them for personal gain; however, the record is very important, and whoever brings it to light will be blessed by the Lord.

15. No one can reveal it unless God gives them that power; for God desires that it happen with the intention of glorifying Him and for the benefit of His dispersed covenant people.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

16. Blessed is the one who brings this to light; it will emerge from darkness into light, as God has promised; it will come out of the earth, shine brightly, and be recognized by the people; and this will be accomplished by God's power.

17. If there are mistakes, they belong to a human. But we claim no faults; God knows everything; therefore, those who judge should be cautious, lest they risk severe consequences.

18. And those who demand signs be careful, as they might compel what the Lord has forbidden.

19. For anyone who judges impulsively will be judged in the same way; their actions will determine their consequences; so, those who harm will themselves be harmed by the Lord.

20. Listen to what the scriptures say people should not harm others or judge; because judgment is the Lord's, and He will repay.

21. Anyone who speaks angrily against the work of the Lord, or against His covenant people, the house of Israel, and declares that they will destroy the Lord's work, thinking He will forget His covenant to Israel, is in serious danger of being destroyed.

22. For the eternal plans of the Lord will continue until all His promises are fulfilled.

23. Look into the prophecies of Isaiah. I cannot write them all. The saints who came before me and lived in this land will speak from beyond the grave; as surely as the Lord lives, He will remember the covenant He made with them.

24. He knows their prayers for their siblings. He knows their faith, as they could move mountains in His name; and by His command, they could make prisons collapse; not even fiery furnaces, wild animals, or poisonous snakes could harm them because of His power.

25. Their prayers also included asking the Lord to allow the bringing forth of these records.

26. No one can claim they won't come forth, because they will; for the Lord has declared it; they will emerge from the earth through God's hand, and nothing can stop this; and it will happen at a time when people say miracles no longer happen; it will be like someone is speaking from beyond the dead.

27. It will come at a time when the blood of saints cries to the Lord because of secret plots and evil deeds.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

28. Yes, it will be a time when the power of God is denied, and churches become corrupted and proud; even a time when church leaders become proud and envy those who belong to their faith.

29. Yes, it will happen during a time of fires, storms, and smoke in distant places.

30. There will be wars, rumors of war, and earthquakes in various locations.

31. Yes, it will be a time filled with pollution across the earth; there will be murders, theft, lies, deception, sexual immorality, and all kinds of wickedness; many will say, "Do this or that," and think it doesn't matter because the Lord will eventually uphold them. But woe to them, for they are trapped in bitterness and sin.

32. Yes, it will be a time when churches will arise saying, "Come to me, and I will forgive you your sins for money."

33. Oh, you wicked and stubborn people, why have you built churches for profit? Why have you twisted the holy word of God to condemn your own souls? Behold, pay attention to God's revelations; the time is coming when all these things must happen.

34. The Lord has shown me remarkable things about what will soon come, at that day when these things will be revealed to you.

35. I speak to you as if you were right here, yet you are not. But Jesus Christ has shown you to me, and I know what you are doing.

36. I see that you walk in pride; only a few of you humble yourselves instead of flaunting lavish clothing, envying others, and engaging in conflicts, hatred, and all sorts of wrongdoing; your churches, every single one, have become tainted by your pride.

37. For you love money, your possessions, your fancy clothing, and the beauty of your churches more than you care for the poor, the needy, the sick, and the hurting.

38. Oh, you hypocrites, you teachers who sell yourselves for fleeting gain, why have you stained God's holy church? Why are you embarrassed to take Christ's name upon you? Why can't you see that eternal happiness is far more valuable than a temporary misery brought on by seeking the world's approval?

39. Why do you adorn yourselves with lifeless things, while ignoring the hungry, the needy, the naked, the

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

sick, and the afflicted as they pass by you without recognition?

40. Yes, why do you build up your hidden sins for profit, causing widows to grieve before the Lord, orphans to weep before the Lord, while the blood of fathers and husbands cries out to the Lord from the ground for revenge?

41. The sword of vengeance is poised above you, and the time will soon come when the Lord will exact retribution for the blood of the saints upon you, for He will no longer tolerate their cries.

### **Mormon Chapter 9**

1. Now, I want to talk about those who do not believe in Christ.

2. Will you believe when the Lord comes, on that great day when the earth will be changed completely and the elements will burn away? On that day, when you stand before the Lamb of God will you then say that there is no God?

3. Will you keep denying Christ, or can you bear to see the Lamb of God? Do you think you can be with Him while fully aware of your sins? Do you think it would make you happy to be with Him this holy being when your conscience is troubled by the guilt of having broken His laws?

4. I tell you, you would be more miserable being with a holy and just God while feeling unclean before him than you would be with those who are condemned in hell.

5. When you are shown your sins before God, and also His glory and the purity of Jesus Christ, it will ignite an unbearable fire within you.

6. So, unbelievers, turn to the Lord; plead urgently with the Father in Jesus's name, that you might be found pure, clean, and holy, having been washed by the blood of the Lamb on that final day.

7. Again, I address those of you who reject God's revelations and say that they are no longer relevant; that there are no revelations, prophecies, gifts, or healings, or instances of speaking in tongues and interpreting those languages;

8. I say to you, anyone who denies these things does not know the gospel of Christ; they probably haven't read the scriptures; if they have, they do not understand them.



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

9. Do we not read that God remains the same throughout time, and in Him, there is no change or variation?
10. If you have imagined a God who changes, then you have created a false image of God, one who does not perform miracles.
11. But look, let me show you a God of miracles the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob; the very God who created the heavens and the earth, along with everything in them.
12. See, He created Adam, and through Adam, sin entered the world. Through this, Jesus Christ came, both the Father and the Son; and because of Him, there is redemption for mankind.
13. And through the redemption brought by Jesus Christ, people can return to God's presence; this is how all will be freed, because Christ's death leads to resurrection, which allows all to wake from an endless sleep; when the trumpet sounds, everyone will rise both small and great and stand before Him, redeemed and loosed from the chains of death, which is only a temporary separation.
14. Then comes the judgment from the Holy One; at that time, those who are impure will remain impure, and the righteous will still be righteous; the joyful will stay happy, and the sad will remain sad.
15. Now, you who have imagined a god who cannot perform miracles, let me ask you have the events I've described already occurred? Has the end come? I say to you, no; God continues to be a God of miracles.
16. Aren't the things performed by God astonishing to us? Indeed, who can fathom the amazing works of God?
17. Who will claim it was not a miracle that He created the heavens and the earth with His words; that He formed man from the dust through His words; and by His words, miracles have been done?
18. And who will deny that Jesus Christ performed many great miracles? The apostles also accomplished many remarkable miracles through their actions.
19. And if miracles occurred then, why would God stop being a God of miracles while also remaining unchanging? I tell you, He does not change; if He did, He would cease to be God; He is continually God and a God of miracles.
20. The reason miracles are less frequent among people is that they fall into unbelief, stray from the right path, and fail to know the God they should trust.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

21. I tell you that whoever believes in Christ, without doubt, will have what they ask from the Father in the name of Christ granted to them, and this promise is given to everyone, even to the ends of the world.

22. For Jesus Christ, the Son of God, told His disciples who were to remain behind, and all His followers listening to the crowd: Go out into all the world and share the gospel with every living creature;

23. Whoever believes and is baptized will be saved, but whoever does not believe will be condemned;

24. These signs will follow those who believe in My name, they will drive out demons; they will speak in new languages; they will handle snakes; and if they drink poison, it will not harm them; they will lay hands on the sick, and they will recover;

25. And anyone who believes in My name, without doubting, I will affirm all My words to them, even to the ends of the earth.

26. Now, who can stand against the works of the Lord? Who can deny His words? Who will oppose the mighty power of the Lord? Who will disregard the work of the Lord? Who will look down on the children of Christ? All who scorn the works of the Lord, take heed you will be filled with wonder and perish.

27. So do not scoff, and do not be in awe, but listen to the words of the Lord, and ask the Father in Jesus's name for whatever you need. Don't doubt, but believe, and return to the Lord wholeheartedly, and work out your salvation with fear and trembling before Him.

28. Be wise during the time you have; rid yourselves of all impurity; ask not for your own desires, but ask with unwavering faith, that you will not yield to any temptation, but will serve the true and living God.

29. Make sure you are not baptized unworthily; ensure you partake of the sacrament of Christ in worthiness; and do everything with worthiness, doing it in the name of Jesus Christ, the Son of the living God; if you do this and endure to the end, you will never be cast out.

30. I speak to you as if I were speaking from beyond the grave because I know you will hear my words.

31. Do not judge me for my faults, nor my father for his faults, nor those who wrote before him; instead, thank God for revealing our imperfections to you, so that you can learn to be wiser than we have been.

32. Now, we have written this record based on what we know, using the characters we call reformed Egyptian,

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

which we have adapted and changed to fit how we speak.

33. If our plates were big enough, we would have written in Hebrew; but we have also changed the Hebrew; had we been able to write in Hebrew, you would not have found imperfections in our record.

34. Yet, the Lord knows what we have written, and none other people knows our language; and since no other people understands our language, He has prepared ways for translating it.

35. These writings are made so we may cleanse ourselves of the blood of our brothers who have strayed into unbelief.

36. Look, we desire for our brothers, even their return to the knowledge of Christ, to be fulfilled according to the prayers of all the saints who have lived in this land.

37. May the Lord Jesus Christ fulfill their prayers according to their faith; may God the Father remember the covenant He made with the house of Israel; and may He bless them forever, through faith in the name of Jesus Christ. Amen.

## **Ether**

### **Ether Chapter 1**

1. The Book of Ether

2. The record of the Jaredites, taken from the twenty-four plates found by the people of Limhi during King Mosiah's reign.

3. Moroni summarizes the writings of EtherEther's family lineage is outlinedThe language of the Jaredites was not confused at the Tower of BabelThe Lord promises to guide them to a special land and make them a great nation.

4. Now, I, Moroni, will tell you about those ancient people who were destroyed by the hand of the Lord in this northern region.

5. I base my account on the twenty-four plates that were discovered by Limhi's people, known as the Book of Ether.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

6. I believe that the first part of this record, which discusses the creation of the world, Adams story, and the events leading up to the great tower, is already recorded among the Jews.
7. So, I wont write about things that happened from Adam's time up to that point; these details are on the plates, and whoever finds them will have the ability to access the complete story.
8. But pay attention, I am not providing the full story; rather, I will share a portion of it, starting from the tower down to their destruction.
9. Heres how I present the account: The author of this record was Ether, who was a descendant of Coriantor.
10. Coriantor was the son of Moron.
11. Moron was the son of Ethem.
12. Ethem was the son of Ahah.
13. Ahah was the son of Seth.
14. Seth was the son of Shiblon.
15. Shiblon was the son of Com.
16. Com was the son of Coriantum.
17. Coriantum was the son of Amnigaddah.
18. Amnigaddah was the son of Aaron.
19. Aaron was a descendant of Heth, who was the son of Hearthom.
20. Hearthom was the son of Lib.
21. Lib was the son of Kish.
22. Kish was the son of Corom.
23. Corom was the son of Levi.
24. Levi was the son of Kim.
25. Kim was the son of Morianton.
26. Morianton was a descendant of Riplakish.
27. Riplakish was the son of Shez.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

28. Shez was the son of Heth.

29. Heth was the son of Com.

30. Com was the son of Coriantum.

31. Coriantum was the son of Emer.

32. Emer was the son of Omer.

33. Omer was the son of Shule.

34. Shule was the son of Kib.

35. Kib was the son of Orihah, who was the son of Jared;

36. Jared came with his brother, their families, and some others from the great tower when the Lord confused the language of the people and, in His anger, declared they would be scattered across the earth, which happened as He said.

37. Jared, having a large and mighty brother who was favored by the Lord, urged him to pray to the Lord so that their language would not be confused, allowing them to understand each other.

38. The brother of Jared cried out to the Lord, and the Lord showed kindness to Jared, so their language remained intact, and they could still understand one another.

39. Then Jared told his brother: Pray again to the Lord so He may spare our friends from being confused and losing their language.

40. The brother of Jared prayed again, and the Lord showed compassion for their friends and families, ensuring they were not confused either.

41. After that, Jared told his brother: Go ask the Lord if He will drive us out of this land and if He does, pray to know where we should go. Who knows if the Lord will lead us to a land that is better than anywhere else? If so, let us remain faithful so we can receive it as our inheritance.

42. The brother of Jared prayed to the Lord just as Jared had suggested.

43. The Lord heard the brother of Jared's prayer, showed compassion, and said to him:

44. Gather all your flocks, both male and female, of every kind; also gather the seeds of the earth and your

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

families, along with Jared and his family, and their friends and families.

45. Once you have done this, lead them down into the northern valley. There I will meet you, and I will guide you to a land that is better than all other lands.

46. There, I will bless you and your descendants, raising up from them and your brother's descendants a great nation, one greater than any other nation from your lineage on the earth. I will do this for you because you've been crying out to me for a long time.

### **Ether Chapter 2**

1. Jared, his brother, their families, and their friends went down into the northern valley called Nimrod, named after a great hunter, bringing all their livestock, both male and female, of every kind.

2. They set traps and caught birds, and they also prepared a container to carry fish from the waters.

3. They brought honey bees with them, as deseret means honey bee in translation, and took swarms of bees along with various seeds from the land.

4. When they arrived in the valley of Nimrod, the Lord came down and spoke to the brother of Jared; He was in a cloud, and the brother of Jared could not see Him.

5. The Lord instructed them to travel into the wilderness, to a place where no man had been before. The Lord guided them and spoke with them while standing in a cloud, showing them where to go.

6. They traveled through the wilderness and built barges to cross many waters, continuously guided by the Lord.

7. The Lord did not allow them to stop beyond the sea in the wilderness; He wanted them to reach the promised land, which was more precious than any other land, reserved by God for a righteous people.

8. He had sworn to the brother of Jared that whoever possessed this promised land would need to serve Him, the true God, or they would be removed when His full wrath came upon them.

9. Now we understand God's decrees regarding this land: it is a promised land, and any nation that possesses it must serve God; otherwise, they will be removed when His full wrath arrives, which happens when they are fully corrupt.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

10. This is a treasured land above all others; thus, whoever possesses it must serve God or be removed, as is God's eternal decree. They will only be removed when their wickedness is at its peak.

11. This message is for you, Gentiles, so you may understand God's decrees repent and do not continue in your sins until its too late, so you do not invoke God's full wrath as others in the land have previously done.

12. This is a choice land, and any nation that possesses it will be free from bondage and captivity from other nations under heaven, as long as they serve the God of the land, who is Jesus Christ, as we have recorded.

13. Now I continue with my account; the Lord brought Jared and his brethren to the great sea that separates the lands. When they arrived, they set up their tents and named the place Moriancumer, living in tents on the seashore for four years.

14. At the end of four years, the Lord came again to the brother of Jared, standing in a cloud and conversing with him. The Lord spoke to him for three hours, correcting him for forgetting to call upon His name.

15. The brother of Jared repented of his wrongs and prayed for his brethren. The Lord responded that He would forgive them, but they must not sin again, reminding him that His Spirit would not always strive with man. If they continued to sin until they were completely wicked, they would be cut off from His presence. He shared His thoughts about the land He would give them, stating it would be especially choice.

16. The Lord instructed them to build barges like those they had constructed before. The brother of Jared and his brethren began building the barges as the Lord instructed, making them small and light, floating on the water like a bird.

17. They built the barges so tightly that they would hold water like a bowl; the bottom was tight like a bowl; the sides were tight like a bowl; the ends came to a point; the top was tight like a bowl; and their length was like that of a tree; when the door was shut, it was tight like a bowl.

18. The brother of Jared then prayed to the Lord, saying he had finished the work commanded of him, and he made the barges as directed.

19. However, he pointed out that the barges had no light; where would they steer? Also, they were at risk of perishing since they could not breathe without air in them.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

20. The Lord replied, telling the brother of Jared to make a hole at the top and bottom; when they needed air, they could open the hole. If water started to enter, they should block the hole to avoid drowning.

21. The brother of Jared did as the Lord commanded.

22. He prayed again, saying he had followed the Lord's instructions, but there was no light in the vessels. He asked if they would cross the great water in darkness.

23. The Lord asked what the brother of Jared wanted to do to provide light in their vessels, explaining that they couldnt have windows as they would break, nor could they take fire with them, since they would not be guided by firelight.

24. He explained that they would be like a whale in the sea, buffeted by the waves. However, He would lift them from the depths of the sea because He had sent forth the winds and the rains and floods.

25. The Lord assured him that He was preparing them for these challenges; they wouldnt be able to cross the deep unless He equipped them against the waves, winds, and floods. Therefore, He asked what the brother of Jared wanted Him to prepare so they could have light while they were submerged in the depths of the sea.

### **Ether Chapter 3**

1. The brother of Jared sees the finger of the Lord as He touches sixteen stonesChrist shows His spirit body to the brother of JaredThose who have a perfect knowledge cannot be kept from within the veilInterpreters are provided to bring the Jaredite record to light.

2. The brother of Jared (who had prepared eight vessels) went up to a very tall mountain called Shelem, where he shaped sixteen small stones out of rock. They were clear and white like glass, and he carried them in his hands to the top of the mountain, where he cried out to the Lord, saying:

3. O Lord, you told us that we would be surrounded by floods. Please dont be angry with me for my weaknesses; I know that you are holy and live in heaven, and that we are undeserving of your attention because our nature is continuously inclined toward evil due to the fall. Still, O Lord, you commanded us to call on you so we can receive what we desire from you.

4. Look, O Lord, you have struck us for our sins and forced us into the wilderness for many years; yet you



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

have been merciful to us. O Lord, have compassion on me, and do not let your anger be directed at your people. Dont allow them to cross this raging sea in darkness; instead, look at the stones I made from the rock.

5. I know, O Lord, that you have all power and can do whatever you choose for our greater good. So, please touch these stones with your finger and prepare them to shine in the darkness. They will provide light in the vessels we made, so we can have light while we cross the sea.

6. Look, O Lord, you can do this. We know that you can demonstrate great power, which might seem small to human understanding.

7. And after the brother of Jared said this, the Lord reached out his hand and touched each stone with his finger. The veil was lifted from the eyes of the brother of Jared, and he saw the Lords finger; it looked like a human finger, made of flesh and blood, and the brother of Jared fell down in fear.

8. The Lord saw that the brother of Jared had fallen to the ground and asked him: Get up, why are you on the ground?

9. He replied: I saw the finger of the Lord and was afraid he might strike me, not knowing that the Lord had flesh and blood.

10. The Lord said: Because of your faith, you have seen that I will take upon myself flesh and blood. No one has ever come before me with such great faith as yours; if that werent the case, you wouldnt have seen my finger. Did you see anything more than this?

11. He answered: No; Lord, please show yourself to me.

12. The Lord asked him: Do you believe what I am about to say?

13. He replied: Yes, Lord, I know that you speak the truth because you are a God of truth and cannot lie.

14. After he said this, the Lord revealed himself to him and said: Because you know these things, you are saved from the fall; you can now be close to me, so I reveal myself to you.

15. Look, I am the one who was prepared from the beginning to redeem my people. I am Jesus Christ. I am both the Father and the Son. Through me, all people can have eternal life if they believe in my name; they will become my sons and daughters.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

16. I have never shown myself to anyone I created because no one has ever believed in me like you have. Do you see that you were made in my image? Yes, every person was created in the beginning in my image.

17. Look, this body you see before you is my spirits body; I created mankind after the likeness of my spirit. Just as I appear to you in spirit, I will appear in the flesh to my people.

18. Now, as I, Moroni, mentioned, I cannot give a full account of these things that are written, so I will simply say that Jesus appeared to this man in spirit and showed himself in the same way he did to the Nephites.

19. He ministered to him just like he ministered to the Nephites, so this man would know that he was God due to the many great works the Lord had shown him.

20. And because of what this man knew, he could not be prevented from seeing beyond the veil; he saw the finger of Jesus, which caused him to fall in fear because he realized it was the Lords finger. His faith became unwavering, as he no longer doubted.

21. With this perfect knowledge of God, he could not be kept from the veil, thus he saw Jesus, who ministered to him.

22. The Lord then said to the brother of Jared: You must not let what you have seen and heard be shared with the world until the time I glorify my name in the flesh; therefore, treasure what you have seen and heard and dont show it to anyone.

23. And when you come to me, you will write these things down and seal them so that no one can interpret them; you will write them in a language that cannot be read.

24. Look, I will give you these two stones, and you will seal them with the writings you create.

25. You see, I have confused the language you will write in; therefore, in my own time, these stones will allow people to see what you have written.

26. After the Lord said these things, he showed the brother of Jared all the people who had ever lived on the earth and all who would live; he revealed everything to him, even to the ends of the earth.

27. He had previously told him that if he believed, he could show him all things, so the Lord could not withhold any knowledge from him because he understood that the Lord could reveal anything.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

28. The Lord instructed him: Write these things down and seal them; I will reveal them to humanity in my own time.

29. It happened that the Lord commanded him to seal the two stones he had received and not to show them until the Lord intended to reveal them to mankind.

### **Ether Chapter 4**

1. The Lord told the brother of Jared to come down from the mountain and write what he had seen; these writings were to remain hidden from people until after Christ was crucified. King Mosiah made sure that these writings would not be revealed until Christ showed Himself to His people.

2. Once Christ had truly revealed Himself to His people, He instructed that these writings should be made known.

3. However, now all the people have turned away from faith, except for the Lamanites, who have rejected Christ's gospel; because of this, I have been instructed to hide the writings back in the earth.

4. Look, I have written on these plates exactly what the brother of Jared witnessed; there have never been greater revelations than those shown to him.

5. Because of this, the Lord has commanded me to write them down, and I have done so. He also told me to seal them up, along with their interpretation, so I have followed His command and sealed the interpreters as well.

6. The Lord told me that these writings will not be shared with the Gentiles until they repent of their sins and become pure before Him.

7. On the day they put their faith in Me, like the brother of Jared did, and become sanctified through Me, I will reveal to them all that the brother of Jared saw, including all My revelations, says Jesus Christ, the Son of God, the Creator of heaven and earth and everything in it.

8. Anyone who argues against the word of the Lord will be condemned; anyone who denies these truths will face the same fate, for I will not show them greater things, says Jesus Christ, for I am the one speaking.

9. At My command, the heavens can be opened or closed; at My word, the earth will shake, and its inhabitants

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

will pass away as if by fire.

10. Anyone who does not believe My words does not believe My followers; and if you think I do not speak, you will judge for yourselves, for you will know it is I speaking in the last days.

11. But those who believe My words, I will share My Spirit with them, and they will know and testify to the truth. My Spirit will confirm to them that what I say is true because it inspires goodness in people.

12. Anything that inspires people to do good comes from Me; good cannot come from any other source. I am the one who guides people toward all that is good; anyone who does not believe My words will not recognize who I am. Likewise, if they do not believe Me, they will not believe in the Father who sent Me. See, I am the Father; I am the light, the life, and the truth of the world.

13. Come to Me, O Gentiles, and I will reveal to you the greater truths that are hidden because of your lack of faith.

14. Come to Me, O house of Israel, and you will see how great the blessings the Father has stored up for you since the world's beginning; these blessings haven't reached you due to your unbelief.

15. Look, when you tear away that barrier of disbelief that keeps you in your terrible state of wickedness and hard-heartedness, then the amazing truths that have been hidden from you will be revealed. Yes, when you call upon the Father in My name, with a sincere heart and humble spirit, you will know that the Father has remembered the promise He made to your ancestors, O house of Israel.

16. Then all the revelations I had John write down will be shown to all the people. Remember, when you see these events unfold, you will know that the time has come for them to be revealed.

17. So, when you receive this record, you can understand that the Father's work has begun across the entire earth.

18. Therefore, repent all you nations, come to Me, believe in My gospel, and be baptized in My name; whoever believes and is baptized will be saved, but whoever does not believe will be condemned, and signs will follow those who believe in My name.

19. Blessed is the one who is faithful to My name at the end, for they will be taken up to live in the kingdom

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

prepared for them since the beginning of the world. And know that it is I who has said this. Amen.

### **Ether Chapter 5**

1. Three witnesses and the work itself will serve as proof of the truth of the Book of Mormon.
2. Now, I, Moroni, have written the words that were instructed to me, based on what I remember; and I have shared the things that I have sealed up, so do not attempt to handle them for translation; such an act is not allowed unless, in due time, it is part of God's wisdom.
3. Look, you may be allowed to show the plates to those who will help bring forth this work;
4. And three people will be shown them by God's power; thus, they will know for certain that these things are true.
5. The testimony of three witnesses will establish these truths; and the testimony of these three, combined with this work, will reveal Gods power and His word, which is confirmed by the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghost and all of this will stand as evidence against the world on the last day.
6. If they repent and turn to the Father in the name of Jesus, they will be welcomed into the kingdom of God.
7. Now, if I don't have authority regarding these things, you can judge for yourselves; you will know I have authority when you see me, and we will stand before God on the last day. Amen.

### **Ether Chapter 6**

1. Now I, Moroni, will continue to tell the story of Jared and his brother.
2. After the Lord prepared the stones that the brother of Jared had carried up the mountain, he brought them back down and placed the stones in the boats, one at each end. Suddenly, the stones began to shine and provided light for the boats.
3. This is how the Lord made the stones shine in the darkness, so that everyonemen, women, and children could see as they crossed the great waters.
4. Once they had prepared all kinds of food to sustain themselves and their animals for the journey on the water, they boarded their boats, putting their trust in the Lord, and set off into the sea.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

5. Then the Lord caused a powerful wind to blow across the waters toward the promised land, and they were tossed around on the waves.
6. They were often submerged in the depths of the sea due to the massive waves and terrible storms brought on by the fierce wind.
7. Even when they were submerged, the water couldnt harm them because their boats were sealed tight like a dish and like Noahs ark. So, when surrounded by deep waters, they cried out to the Lord, and He brought them back to the surface.
8. Throughout their journey, the wind kept blowing toward the promised land, pushing them along the water.
9. They sang praises to the Lord; the brother of Jared sang and thanked the Lord all day long, and didnt stop praising Him even when night fell.
10. Thus, they were carried along, and no sea creatures could harm them. They had constant light, whether above or below the water.
11. They were driven forth for three hundred forty-four days on the water.
12. Finally, they landed on the shore of the promised land. When they stepped onto the land, they knelt down and humbled themselves before the Lord, shedding tears of joy for His abundant mercy.
13. Then they moved across the land and began to cultivate the earth.
14. Jared had four sons named Jacom, Gilgah, Mahah, and Orihah.
15. The brother of Jared also had sons and daughters.
16. The friends of Jared and his brother totaled about twenty-two people; they too had children before reaching the promised land, so their numbers grew.
17. They were taught to live humbly before the Lord and received teachings from on high.
18. Eventually, they began to spread across the land, multiply, and farm; they grew stronger in the land.
19. As the brother of Jared grew older, he realized he would soon die, so he told Jared, Lets gather our people to count them and understand what they want from us before we pass away.
20. The people were gathered. The brother of Jared had twenty-two children, while Jared had twelve,

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

including his four sons.

21. They counted their people and asked them what they wanted their leaders to do before dying.

22. The people requested that they appoint one of their sons to be their king.

23. This request troubled them. The brother of Jared warned them, This will lead to bondage.

24. But Jared said to his brother: Let them have a king. So tell them to choose one of our sons to be king, whoever they want.

25. Eventually, they selected the firstborn son of the brother of Jared, whose name was Pagag. However, he refused to be their king. The people wanted his father to force him, but his father would not do so and commanded them not to force anyone to be king.

26. Then they chose Pagags brothers, but they refused as well.

27. In the end, the sons of Jared also declined, except for one; Orihah was anointed to be the king.

28. He began to reign, and the people prospered and became very wealthy.

29. Eventually, Jared and his brother both died.

30. Orihah continued to walk humbly before the Lord, remembering the great things the Lord had done for his father, and taught his people about the wonderful deeds of the Lord in their family history.

## **Ether Chapter 7**

1. Orihah ruled the land with fairness, making just decisions throughout his long life.

2. He had many children, a total of thirty-one, including twenty-three sons.

3. In his old age, he had a son named Kib, who took over as king after him, and Kib fathered Corihor.

4. When Corihor turned thirty-two, he rebelled against his father and moved to the land of Nehor, where he had many beautiful children, attracting a large following.

5. Gathering an army, Corihor attacked the land of Moron, where the king lived, and captured him, fulfilling a prophecy spoken by the brother of Jared about future captivity.

6. The land of Moron, where the king stayed, was close to the Nephite territory called Desolation.

7. Kib remained a captive under his son Corihor until he was very old; even then, he had a son named Shule

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

while still imprisoned.

8. Shule became angry with his brother, grew strong, and showed great skill in making decisions.

9. So, he went to hill Ephraim, mined some metal, and crafted swords for his followers; after equipping them, he returned to Nehor city and fought his brother Corihor, reclaiming the kingdom for their father Kib.

10. Due to Shule's actions, his father granted him the kingdom, and he began to rule in Kib's place.

11. Shule judged fairly and expanded his kingdom because the population had greatly increased.

12. Shule also had many sons and daughters.

13. Corihor felt remorse for his wrongdoings, so Shule allowed him to participate in the kingdom's affairs.

14. Corihor had many children, one of whom was named Noah.

15. Noah rebelled against King Shule and his father Corihor, convincing his brother Cohor and many others to join him.

16. He fought against King Shule and took control of the land they had first inherited, becoming king of that region.

17. Noah challenged Shule again, captured him, and planned to kill him, but Shule's sons snuck into Noah's home at night, killed Noah, and freed their father, restoring him to his throne.

18. Afterward, Noah's son tried to claim the throne for himself, but he couldn't regain power over King Shule, whose people thrived and grew strong.

19. The territory became divided into two kingdoms: the kingdom of Shule and the kingdom of Cohor, Noah's son.

20. Cohor led his people to fight against Shule, but Shule defeated them and killed Cohor.

21. Cohor's son, Nimrod, surrendered the kingdom back to Shule and gained Shule's favor, enjoying privileges within Shule's reign.

22. During Shule's rule, prophets were sent by the Lord to warn the people that their wickedness and idol worship were bringing disaster upon the land, and they would face destruction unless they turned away from their sins.



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

23. The people insulted and mocked the prophets, so King Shule punished those who disrespected them.
24. He established a law throughout the land that gave the prophets the freedom to go wherever they wanted, which helped lead the people to repent.
25. When the people turned away from their wrongdoings and idolatries, the Lord showed mercy, and they began to flourish again. In his later years, Shule had more children.
26. There were no more wars during Shule's reign, and he remembered the great deeds done by the Lord for his ancestors, who had brought them across the ocean to the promised land; thus, he ruled fairly for the rest of his life.

## **Ether Chapter 8**

1. There is conflict and fighting over the rule of the kingdomAkish creates a secret group bound by oaths to kill the kingThese secret groups come from the devil and lead to the downfall of nationsPeople today are warned about such secret groups that aim to take away freedom from all lands and nations.
2. So, Omer had a son named Omer, who took over as king. Omer had a son named Jared, and Jared also had sons and daughters.
3. Jared turned against his father and moved to the land of Heth. He flattered many with his clever words until he took control of half the kingdom.
4. Once he had taken control of half the kingdom, he fought against his father, captured him, and made him serve as a prisoner.
5. During Omer's reign, he spent half his life in captivity. He had sons and daughters, including Esrom and Coriantumr.
6. They were very angry about what their brother Jared had done, so they created an army and attacked Jared at night.
7. After they defeated Jared's army, they were ready to kill him too; he begged them not to, offering to give the kingdom back to his father. They let him live.
8. Jared felt very sad about losing the kingdom because he had been focused on it and the glory that came with

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

it.

9. Jared's daughter, who was very clever and noticed her father's sadness, thought of a way to bring the kingdom back to him.

10. She was very beautiful and spoke to her father, asking him why he was so sad. She reminded him that they had records from their ancestors who had gained kingdoms and glory through secret plans.

11. She suggested that her father should invite Akish, the son of Kimnor, and she would dance for him to win his favor; then, if he wanted her as his wife, her father should say: I will give her to you if you bring me my father's head.

12. Omer was friendly with Akish; when Jared sent for Akish, his daughter danced for him and pleased him, so he wanted her as his wife. He then asked Jared for her.

13. Jared replied that he would give her to him if he would bring him the head of his father, the king.

14. Akish then gathered all his relatives and asked them to swear loyalty to him for what he would ask of them.

15. They all promised him by the God of heaven and everything else, that anyone who did not support Akish would lose their head, and anyone who revealed his plans would lose their life.

16. So they agreed to Akish's terms. Akish had them take oaths like those taken long ago by others who sought power, which were passed down since Cain, the first murderer.

17. These oaths were supported by the devil's power, keeping people in darkness, allowing those who sought power to gain it through murder, theft, lies, and all kinds of wickedness.

18. Jared's daughter inspired him to look into these ancient practices, and Jared influenced Akish, who then shared these ideas with his family and friends, leading them away with enticing promises to do whatever he wished.

19. They formed a secret group, just like those from the past; this kind of group is the most wicked and detestable in God's eyes.

20. God does not work through secret groups, nor does he want people to shed blood; he has forbidden it since

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

the beginning of humanity.

21. Now, I, Moroni, won't describe the details of their oaths and alliances, since I know they exist among all people, including the Lamanites.

22. These secret groups have led to the destruction of the people Im talking about, as well as the downfall of the Nephites.

23. Any nation that supports such secret groups to gain power and wealth will face destruction; God will not allow the blood of his faithful to continue crying out for justice from the ground without taking action.

24. Therefore, you Gentiles, it is wise in God's plan for you to be shown these things so you can repent of your sins and not let these murderous groups rise to power over you. If you do, the execution of justice by God will come upon you, leading to your destruction.

25. So, the Lord commands you, when you see these things emerging among you, to wake up to your terrible situation because of this secret group; woe to it because of the blood of those who have been killed; they call from the dust for vengeance against it and those who support it.

26. Whoever creates such a group aims to destroy the freedom of lands and nations, leading to the downfall of all people because it is built by the devil, the father of lies; the same deceiver who misled our first parents and who incited murder from the start; who has made mens hearts hard so they have killed prophets, stoned them, and cast them out since the beginning.

27. Thus, I, Moroni, am instructed to write these things to eliminate evil, so the time will come when Satan will have no power over humanitys hearts, and that they will be inspired to continually do good, turning toward the source of all righteousness and being saved.

## **Ether Chapter 9**

1. The kingdom is taken over through inheritance, deception, and murderEmer witnessed the Son of RighteousnessMany prophets called for repentanceA serious famine and venomous snakes troubled the people.

2. Now, I, Moroni, continue with my account. So it happened that due to the secret plots of Akish and his

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

allies, they overthrew the kingdom of Omer.

3. However, the Lord was kind to Omer and his sons and daughters who did not seek to harm him.

4. The Lord warned Omer in a dream to leave the land; therefore, Omer left with his family and traveled for many days, passing by the hill of Shim and the place where the Nephites were destroyed, then heading eastward until he reached a location by the sea called Ablom, where he set up his tent with his sons, daughters, and all his household, except for Jared and his family.

5. Eventually, Jared was made king over the people through treachery; he gave his daughter as a wife to Akish.

6. Then, Akish plotted to kill his father-in-law. He reached out to those he had sworn an oath to, and they killed his father-in-law while he was sitting on his throne, listening to his people.

7. This wicked secret society had spread so much that it corrupted everyone's hearts; thus, Jared was murdered on his throne, and Akish took his place.

8. Then, Akish grew jealous of his son and imprisoned him, providing him hardly any food until he died.

9. Now, the brother of the one who died, named Nimrah, was angry with his father for what he had done.

10. Nimrah gathered a small group of men and escaped from the land to join Omer.

11. Meanwhile, Akish had other sons who won the people's hearts, even though they had sworn to follow Akish's corrupt desires.

12. The people of Akish wanted wealth, just as Akish wanted power; so, the sons of Akish offered money to persuade most of the people to follow them.

13. This led to a war between the sons of Akish and Akish himself, which continued for many years and resulted in the near destruction of everyone in the kingdom, with only thirty souls remaining, along with those who fled with the house of Omer.

14. As a result, Omer returned to his land of inheritance.

15. Omer grew old, but in his old age, he fathered Emer and appointed him to be king.

16. After Emer was anointed king, Omer saw two years of peace in the land before dying, having lived a long

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

life filled with sorrow. Emer then took over, following in his fathers footsteps.

17. The Lord began to lift the curse from the land, and the family of Emer thrived under his reign; in sixty-two years, they grew very strong and wealthy

18. They had all kinds of fruit, grain, silk, fine linen, gold, silver, and precious items;

19. And they also had many cattle, including oxen, cows, sheep, pigs, goats, and other animals useful for food.

20. Additionally, they had horses and donkeys, along with elephants and other useful creatures, particularly the elephants.

21. Thus, the Lord poured out his blessings upon this special land, commanding that anyone who owned it should dedicate it to Him, or they would be destroyed when their sins reached their peak, saying that He would unleash His full wrath on them.

22. Emer judged righteously throughout his reign, having many sons and daughters, and he appointed Coriantum to rule in his place.

23. After appointing Coriantum, Emer lived for four more years, witnessing peace in the land; he even saw the Son of Righteousness and rejoiced in his day before dying peacefully.

24. Coriantum followed his father's example, building mighty cities and bringing good leadership to his people throughout his life. Yet he had no children until he was very old.

25. Eventually, his wife passed away at the age of one hundred and two. In his old age, Coriantum married a young woman and had sons and daughters; he lived to be one hundred and forty-two years old.

26. Coriantum had a son named Com, who succeeded him and reigned for forty-nine years, fathering Heth and other sons and daughters.

27. The people began to spread across the land again, and wickedness increased, causing Heth to resurrect the secret plots of old to kill his father.

28. Heth eventually overthrew his father, killing him with his sword and taking the throne.

29. Once more, prophets appeared in the land, calling for repentance and warning that they must prepare for the Lord's coming or suffer a curse, including a devastating famine that would lead to their destruction.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

30. But the people dismissed the prophets words, casting them out, and some were thrown into pits to die. This happened by the order of King Heth.

31. As a result, a severe drought afflicted the land, and the inhabitants faced fast destruction due to the lack of rain.

32. Venomous snakes also appeared, poisoning many people, and their livestock fled south toward a Nephite area called Zarahemla.

33. Many perished along the way; however, some managed to flee into the southern land.

34. The Lord caused the snakes to stop pursuing the people, blocking their way, so that anyone attempting to pass might fall victim to the poisonous snakes.

35. The people followed the animals and ate the carcasses of those that died along the way, until they had consumed them all. Realizing they were facing death, they began to repent of their sins and cried out to the Lord.

36. Once they humbled themselves enough, the Lord sent rain upon the earth, and the people started to recover; there was a return of fruit in the northern regions and across the surrounding lands. The Lord demonstrated His power by saving them from famine.

## **Ether Chapter 10**

1. Kings come and goSome are good, some are badWhen good leadership is in place, the people are blessed and flourish from the Lord's blessings.

2. Shez, a descendant of Hethwho had died in a famine along with his family, except for Shezbegan to rebuild a people who had lost hope.

3. Shez remembered the downfall of his ancestors and established a good kingdom; he recalled how the Lord helped Jared and his brother cross the ocean, and he followed the Lords path, having sons and daughters.

4. His oldest son, also named Shez, rebelled against him; however, this Shez was attacked by a thief due to his great wealth, which eventually restored peace to his father.

5. His father built many cities across the land, and the people began to scatter once more. Shez lived to an old

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

age and had a son named Riplakish. After his death, Riplakish became king.

6. Riplakish did not follow the Lord's ways; he had many wives and concubines, and he imposed heavy burdens on his people, unfairly taxing them to build extravagant structures.

7. He created a beautifully ornate throne and constructed many prisons. Anyone who refused to pay taxes or couldn't afford them was imprisoned, made to work continuously to support themselves; those who didn't work were put to death.

8. As a result, he extracted all kinds of valuable resources, including gold, from the prisoners; he forced them to create fine artworks while oppressing them with his immoral actions.

9. After ruling for forty-two years, the people revolted against Riplakish, leading to war in the land, resulting in Riplakish's death and the exile of his family.

10. Many years later, Morianton, a descendant of Riplakish, gathered a group of outcasts and fought the people, gaining control over several cities. The war became fierce and lasted many years, eventually allowing him to rule over all the land.

11. Once he established his kingship, he lightened the people's burdens, earning their favor, and they anointed him as their king.

12. He administered justice to the people, though not to himself because of his many sins; as a result, he was cut off from the Lord's presence.

13. Morianton built many cities, and the people thrived during his reign, accumulating wealth in buildings, gold, silver, crops, livestock, and restoring their resources.

14. Morianton lived to a very old age and had a son named Kim, who took over as king and reigned for eight years before his father's death. Kim did not rule righteously and therefore was not favored by the Lord.

15. His brother rebelled against him, capturing him; he remained imprisoned for the rest of his life, having children in captivity, including Levi, before he died.

16. Levi served in captivity for forty-two years after his father's death. He waged war against the king of the land and eventually claimed the throne for himself.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

17. Once he had the kingdom, he followed the Lords commandments; the people prospered under his rule. He lived to a good old age, had children, and appointed Corom as king in his place.
18. Corom did what was right in the Lords eyes throughout his life, having many children. After many years, he passed away, just like everyone else, with Kish taking over as king.
19. Kish also passed away, and Lib ascended to the throne.
20. Lib acted righteously in the Lords sight, and during his reign, poisonous snakes were eliminated. As a result, they ventured south to hunt food for the people because the land was full of game. Lib became a skilled hunter himself.
21. They constructed a large city near the narrow strip of land where the sea separates the land.
22. They kept the southern land as a wilderness for hunting. The northern land was densely populated.
23. The people worked hard, buying, selling, and trading with one another for profit.
24. They mined different ores and produced gold, silver, iron, brass, and other metals; they dug deep into the earth, creating large mounds to access their resources, including gold, silver, iron, and copper, and they crafted fine goods.
25. They had silks and fine linen, making various types of clothing to cover themselves.
26. They created tools for farming, including plows and sickles for harvesting.
27. They also made tools for caring for their animals.
28. They developed various weapons for war and ingeniously crafted intricate works of art.
29. No people could be more blessed than they were, prospered by the Lords grace. They lived in a land better than any other, for the Lord had declared it so.
30. Lib lived many years, fathered children, and had a son named Hearthom.
31. Hearthom succeeded his father as king. After twenty-four years, his kingdom was taken from him, and he was held captive for the rest of his life.
32. He had a son named Heth, who remained in captivity his entire life. Heth fathered Aaron, who also lived in captivity all his days, and Aaron had a son named Amnigaddah, who also continued in captivity, followed by



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

Coriantum, who too was held captive for his whole life, and then Com.

33. Com took control of half the kingdom and reigned for forty-two years. He fought against King Amgid, battling for many years, during which Com defeated Amgid and reclaimed the rest of the kingdom.

34. During Com's reign, robbers emerged in the land, reviving old schemes, taking oaths like in ancient times, and trying to destroy the kingdom.

35. Com fought against them vigorously, but despite his efforts, he was unable to defeat them.

### **Ether Chapter 11**

1. During the time of Com, many prophets came and warned that this great nation would be destroyed unless they turned back to the Lord and stopped their murders and evil deeds.

2. The people did not listen to the prophets and tried to harm them, so the prophets sought refuge with Com.

3. They told Com many important things, and he was blessed for the rest of his life.

4. He lived a long life and had a son named Shiblom, who became king after him. However, Shiblom's brother rebelled, leading to a very large war throughout the land.

5. Shiblom's brother ordered the execution of all prophets who warned about the destruction of their people.

6. There was great suffering across the land because the prophets declared that a terrible curse would fall upon them, resulting in the kind of destruction that had never been seen before, turning their bones into piles of dirt unless they repented from their sins.

7. They did not listen to the Lord due to their wickedness, so wars and strife broke out throughout the land, along with many famines and diseases, bringing about unprecedented destruction; this all occurred during Shiblom's reign.

8. The people began to feel remorse for their wrongdoings, and as they did, the Lord showed them mercy.

9. Eventually, Shiblom was killed, and Seth was taken captive, remaining in captivity for the rest of his life.

10. Seth's son, Ahah, took over the kingdom, ruling over the people for his entire life, during which he committed many wrongdoings that led to much bloodshed, and his reign was short.

11. Ethem, a descendant of Ahah, came into power and also committed wrongdoings during his rule.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

12. During Ethem's reign, many prophets appeared again, warning the people that the Lord would completely destroy them from the earth unless they repented for their sins.
13. However, the people hardened their hearts, ignoring the prophets' messages, which caused the prophets to grieve and distance themselves from the people.
14. Ethem ruled unjustly throughout his life and fathered Moron. Moron then became king but continued to act wickedly in the eyes of the Lord.
15. A rebellion broke out among the people due to a secretive group seeking power and wealth; a powerful man emerged and challenged Moron, defeating him and taking control of half the kingdom for many years.
16. Eventually, Moron managed to overthrow him and regain the kingdom.
17. Then arose another powerful man who was related to the brother of Jared.
18. He defeated Moron and took the kingdom for himself; as a result, Moron lived in captivity for the rest of his life and became the father of Coriantor.
19. Coriantor also spent his entire life in captivity.
20. During Coriantor's time, several prophets came forward with significant messages, calling the people to repent or face God's judgment that would lead to their total destruction.
21. They warned that God would bring a new people to inherit the land through His power, just as He did for their ancestors.
22. Despite these warnings, the people dismissed the prophets because of their secret society and evil practices.
23. Coriantor fathered Ether and died, having lived his entire life in captivity.

## **Ether Chapter 12**

1. During the time of Ether, Coriantumr was the king over the entire land.
2. Ether was a prophet sent by the Lord, and during Coriantumr's reign, he began to preach to the people, feeling compelled by the Spirit of the Lord within him.
3. He cried out from dawn until sunset, urging the people to believe in God and repent to avoid destruction,

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

explaining that faith is the key to achieving all things.

4. Thus, anyone who believes in God can confidently hope for a better life and a place beside Him, as this hope is rooted in faith, acting as an anchor for our souls, helping us to be steadfast and willing to do good, leading to the glorification of God.

5. Ether proclaimed amazing and remarkable things to the people, but they didn't believe him because they couldn't see these things themselves.

6. Now, I, Moroni, want to discuss these matters; I want to show the world that faith is about believing in things we hope for but cannot see. Therefore, do not argue because you cannot see; a witness comes only after you have tested your faith.

7. It was through faith that Christ revealed himself to our ancestors after rising from the dead; He only showed himself to those who had faith in Him; thus, some must have had this faith, as He didn't reveal himself to everyone.

8. However, because of people's faith, He demonstrated His presence to the world, honored His Father's name, and made a way for others to receive a heavenly gift, giving them hope for the things not yet seen.

9. Therefore, you too can hope and receive this gift if you simply have faith.

10. Look, it was through faith that those of old were called by God's holy order.

11. Thus, the law of Moses was given through faith. However, with the gift of His Son, God has prepared a superior way; and this has been realized through faith.

12. Because without faith among humanity, God cannot perform miracles; therefore, He did not reveal himself until after they had faith.

13. It was Alma and Amulek's faith that caused the prison to fall to the ground.

14. It was Nephi and Lehi's faith that changed the Lamanites, allowing them to be baptized with fire and the Holy Ghost.

15. It was Ammon and his brothers' faith that created a significant miracle among the Lamanites.

16. Indeed, everyone who performed miracles did so through faith, whether they lived before or after Christ.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

17. The three disciples received a promise through faith that they would not experience death, but that promise came only after they demonstrated their faith.

18. And no one has performed miracles until after they had faith; so they first believed in the Son of God.

19. Many of those who possessed extraordinarily strong faith before Christ came could see beyond the veil and truly observed the things their faith allowed them to envision, and they rejoiced.

20. One of these was the brother of Jared, whose faith was so immense that when God pointed His finger, Jared could not hide from seeing it because of the promise he had received through faith.

21. After the brother of Jared saw the Lords finger, he was granted the ability to see everything because his faith had allowed him to do so; he could no longer remain behind the veil.

22. It is by faith that my ancestors received the promise that these revelations would come to their descendants through the Gentiles; this is why the Lord commanded me, even Jesus Christ.

23. I said to Him, "Lord, the Gentiles will ridicule these things due to our writing weaknesses; for although You have made us powerful in speech through faith, you haven't made us strong in writing. You gave this people the ability to speak abundantly, through the Holy Ghost You provided them."

24. "You have made us able to write very little, given our awkwardness; we aren't as eloquent in writing as was the brother of Jared, for the things he wrote were mighty and vast, making it difficult for mankind to comprehend."

25. "You have also provided us with powerful and profound words that we struggle to put down on paper; so, when we write, we become aware of our weaknesses and stumble over how we arrange our words. I fear that the Gentiles will mock us."

26. When I had said this, the Lord spoke to me, saying: "Fools may mock, but they will end up mourning; my grace is enough for those who are humble, so they won't take advantage of your weaknesses."

27. "If people come to me, I will reveal their weaknesses to them. I give people weaknesses so they might be humble; my grace is sufficient for anyone who humbles themselves before me; if they humble themselves and believe in me, I will turn weak things into strengths for them."

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

28. "Look, I will reveal the weakness of the Gentiles; showing them that faith, hope, and charity lead to methematically the source of all righteousness."

29. And I, Moroni, after hearing these words, felt comforted and said: "O Lord, may Your righteous will be fulfilled, for I know that You work with humanity according to their faith."

30. For the brother of Jared said to Mount Zerin, "Move!" and it moved. If he had lacked faith, it would not have budged; thus, You act after people have faith.

31. This is how you revealed yourself to your disciples; after they had faith and spoke in Your name, You showed yourself to them with great power.

32. I also recall that You indicated you have prepared a home for man, yes, even among the mansions of your Father, granting them a greater hope; therefore, man must have hope, or he cannot receive an inheritance in the place You have prepared.

33. Again, I remember you saying that You loved the world so much you laid down Your life for it, so You might take it back to prepare a place for the children of men.

34. Now I understand that this love You have for humanity is charity; therefore, if people do not have charity, they cannot inherit the home You have prepared in the mansions of Your Father.

35. Consequently, by what You have said, I know that if the Gentiles lack charity due to our weaknesses, You will test them, taking away their talents, even what they do have, and giving it to those who have more abundantly.

36. I then prayed to the Lord asking Him to grant grace to the Gentiles so that they would have charity.

37. The Lord replied: "If they do not have charity, it doesn't concern you; you have been faithful, and thus, your garments will be made clean. Because you acknowledge your weakness, you will find strength, even leading you to the place I have prepared in the mansions of my Father."

38. Now I, Moroni, say farewell to the Gentiles, and to my beloved brethren, until we meet at the judgment seat of Christ, where everyone will know that my garments are clean of your blood.

39. Then you shall know that I have seen Jesus and talked with Him face to face, and He spoke plainly to me,

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

just as one man speaks to another in his own language about these matters.

40. I wrote only a few of these things because I struggle with writing.

41. Now, I encourage you to seek this Jesus about whom the prophets and apostles have spoken, so that the grace of God, the Father, along with the Lord Jesus Christ and the Holy Ghost, which testifies of them, may dwell in you forever. Amen.

### **Ether Chapter 13**

1. Moroni continues to write about the downfall of the people he has been discussing.

2. They ignored everything Ether said; he had truthfully told them all things, starting from the creation of mankind, that after the floods receded, this land became the most important land, a special land chosen by God, where everyone living there should serve Him.

3. This land was also the future site of the New Jerusalem, which would descend from heaven and be the sacred dwelling place of God.

4. Ether foresaw the time of Christ and spoke about the New Jerusalem that would be established on this land.

5. He also talked about the house of Israel and the Jerusalem that Lehi was from after it was destroyed, it would be rebuilt as a holy city dedicated to God; thus, it couldn't be considered a new Jerusalem since it once existed but would be restored and become a holy city for Israel.

6. A New Jerusalem would be built on this land for the remaining descendants of Joseph, serving as a symbol for what was to come.

7. Just as Joseph took his father to Egypt, he also died there; therefore, God brought away a remnant of Joseph's descendants from Jerusalem so that they wouldn't be lost, demonstrating mercy just as He did for Joseph's father.

8. Thus, the remaining descendants of Joseph will inhabit this land as their inheritance, and they will build a holy city for God that will resemble the ancient Jerusalem; and they will no longer face confusion until the world ends.

9. Then there will be a new heaven and a new earth, which will be similar to the old, except that the old will

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

have disappeared, and everything will become new.

10. At that point, the New Jerusalem will come, and those who live there will be blessed, for their clothes will be made pure through the sacrifice of the Lamb, and they will be counted among the descendants of Joseph from Israel.

11. Then the original Jerusalem will also be restored, and its inhabitants will be blessed; they will have been made pure through the Lamb's sacrifice, and they will be gathered from all corners of the earth, fulfilling God's promise to their ancestor, Abraham.

12. When these events happen, it will confirm the scriptures that say those who were first shall be last, and those who were last shall be first.

13. I was about to write additional things, but I was not allowed; Ether's prophecies were extraordinary, but the people regarded him as worthless and cast him out; he then hid in a rock by day and watched the events that would unfold for the people at night.

14. While he was hiding in the rock, he completed his record, witnessing the destructions that befell the people during the night.

15. That same year, after he was expelled from society, a great war broke out among the people, as many powerful individuals rose up to destroy Coriantumr through their secret plans of evil.

16. Coriantumr, trained in all military tactics and worldly cunning, fought against those who sought to kill him.

17. However, neither he, nor his handsome sons and daughters, nor the attractive children of Cohor, nor the beautiful children of Corihor showed any sign of repentance; in fact, there were no attractive sons and daughters anywhere who repented for their sins.

18. As a result, during the first year that Ether was hiding in the rock, many people were killed by the sword of these secret combinations fighting against Coriantumr in hopes of taking over the kingdom.

19. The sons of Coriantumr fought fiercely and suffered many wounds.

20. In the second year, God instructed Ether to go and tell Coriantumr that if he repented, along with his

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

family, God would restore his kingdom and save the people

21. Otherwise, they would be destroyed, with only Coriantumr surviving to witness the prophecies about another group receiving the land as their inheritance. Coriantumr would be buried by them, and everyone else would perish except for him.

22. Coriantumr did not repent, nor did his family, nor did the people; the wars continued, and they sought to kill Ether, but he escaped and hid once again in the rock.

23. Then Shared rose up and fought Coriantumr, defeating him and capturing him in the third year.

24. In the fourth year, the sons of Coriantumr fought Shared and reclaimed the kingdom for their father.

25. A war spread across the entire land with every man and his group fighting for what they wanted.

26. Robbers and all kinds of wickedness were rampant throughout the land.

27. Coriantumr was extremely angry with Shared and went to battle against him with his army; they clashed with intense fury in the valley of Gilgal, leading to a very ferocious battle.

28. Shared fought against Coriantumr for three days. Eventually, Coriantumr defeated him and chased him to the plains of Heshlon.

29. On the plains, Shared engaged Coriantumr in battle again, this time defeating him and driving him back to the valley of Gilgal.

30. Once again, Coriantumr fought Shared in the valley of Gilgal, where he defeated and killed Shared.

31. Shared inflicted a wound on Coriantumr's thigh, which kept him from fighting for two years, during which period bloodshed covered the land, with no one to stop it.

## **Ether Chapter 14**

1. The wrongdoing of the people causes a curse on the landCoriantumr goes to war against Gilead, then Lib, and finally ShizBlood and violence fill the land.

2. Because of the people's wrongdoing, a terrible curse fell on the land. If someone put down their tool or sword, they would not be able to find it the next day, as the curse was so severe.

3. As a result, everyone clung tightly to their possessions and refused to borrow or lend anything. Each person



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

kept their sword ready in their hand to protect their property, life, and family.

4. After two years and the death of Shared, Shared's brother arose and fought Coriantumr, who defeated him and chased him into the wilderness of Akish.

5. Shared's brother battled Coriantumr in the wilderness, and the fighting was intense, with many thousands being killed.

6. Coriantumr laid siege to the wilderness, but Shared's brother snuck out at night and attacked part of Coriantumr's army, who were drunk.

7. He then went to the land of Moron and took the throne of Coriantumr for himself.

8. Coriantumr stayed with his army in the wilderness for two years, gathering great strength for his forces.

9. Shared's brother, named Gilead, also strengthened his army through secret alliances.

10. However, during this time, his high priest killed him while he was sitting on his throne.

11. Then one of these secret groups killed him quietly and took control of the kingdom. His name was Lib, and he was a very tall man, larger than anyone else among the people.

12. In the first year of Lib's reign, Coriantumr came to Moron and fought against Lib.

13. During their fight, Lib injured Coriantumr's arm, but Coriantumr's army continued to press him until Lib fled to the edges of the seashore.

14. Coriantumr pursued Lib, and they fought again at the seashore.

15. Lib defeated Coriantumr's army, forcing them to retreat back to the wilderness of Akish.

16. Lib chased Coriantumr until they reached the plains of Agosh. During this retreat, Coriantumr took all his people with him.

17. At the plains of Agosh, Coriantumr fought Lib and managed to kill him, but Lib's brother attacked Coriantumr in his place, leading to an even fiercer battle that made Coriantumr flee once more.

18. The name of Lib's brother was Shiz. As he pursued Coriantumr, he destroyed many cities and killed both women and children while burning everything down.

19. Fear of Shiz spread across the land, and people cried out Who can stand up to the army of Shiz? He sweeps

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

everything away!

20. People began to gather in armies across the land.

21. They were divided: some joined Shiz's army, while others joined Coriantumr's.

22. The war had been so fierce and long that the land was covered with the bodies of the dead.

23. The fighting was so rapid and intense that no one was left to bury the dead. They moved from one battle to another, leaving bodies of men, women, and children lying everywhere for the worms to consume.

24. The stench of death filled the land, causing the people to feel disturbed both day and night.

25. Still, Shiz continued to pursue Coriantumr, driven by a vow to avenge his brother's death and by the word from the Lord that Coriantumr would not be killed.

26. This shows how the Lord punished them for their sins, as their wickedness led directly to their eventual destruction.

27. Shiz chased Coriantumr eastward to the coast, where they fought for three days.

28. The destruction on Shiz's side was so terrible that his troops began to panic and ran from Coriantumr's forces, retreating to the land of Corihor and driving out its inhabitants.

29. They set up their camps in the valley of Corihor, while Coriantumr camped in the valley of Shurr, which was next to the hill Comnor. Coriantumr gathered his armies there and blew a trumpet to challenge Shiz to battle.

30. Shiz's forces came out to fight but were pushed back. They tried again and were repelled a second time. When they came out for a third time, the battle became very fierce.

31. In that fight, Shiz struck Coriantumr, inflicting many serious wounds, and Coriantumr fainted from blood loss, appearing to be dead.

32. The toll of the battle had been so severe on both sides that Shiz instructed his men not to chase after Coriantumr, and they returned to their camp instead.

## **Ether Chapter 15**

1. A huge number of Jaredites died in battle  
Shiz and Coriantumr gathered everyone for a fight  
The Lord's

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

Spirit stopped guiding themThe whole Jaredite nation was completely destroyedOnly Coriantumr was left.

2. After Coriantumr healed from his injuries, he recalled what Ether had told him.

3. He realized that nearly two million of his people had already been killed, and he felt deep sorrow in his heart; indeed, two million strong men had been killed, along with their wives and children.

4. He started to regret the wrongs he had done; he recalled the words spoken by the prophets and realized they had all come true so far, which made him mourn deeply and he couldn't find comfort.

5. So he wrote a letter to Shiz, asking him to spare the people, offering to give up the kingdom to save their lives.

6. When Shiz got his letter, he replied to Coriantumr, saying that if Coriantumr surrendered, he would kill him with his own sword but would spare the people.

7. But the people did not turn away from their wickedness; Coriantumr's followers grew angry at Shiz's followers, and vice versa; therefore, the people of Shiz attacked the people of Coriantumr.

8. When Coriantumr saw he was losing, he fled once more from Shiz's forces.

9. He reached the waters of Ripliancum, which means "large" or "to exceed all;" when they arrived there, they set up their tents, and Shiz did the same nearby; so the next day they prepared for battle.

10. They fought a very intense battle, where Coriantumr was wounded again and fainted from blood loss.

11. Coriantumr's armies pushed against Shiz's forces, forcing them to retreat, and they fled southward, setting up camp in a place called Ogath.

12. Coriantumr's army pitched their tents by the hill Ramah, the same hill where my father Mormon hid the sacred records.

13. They gathered everyone left alive on the land, except for Ether.

14. Ether watched all that was happening; he saw that those loyal to Coriantumr were joining his army, and those loyal to Shiz were joining his.

15. For four years they worked to gather all the people on the land, trying to bring all possible strength together.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

16. When everyone came together, each group joined their chosen side, bringing their wives and childrenmen, women, and children were armed for battle with shields, armor, and dressed for warthey marched against each other, fought all day, but neither side won.

17. When night fell, they were exhausted and returned to their camps; after resting, they cried out in sorrow for their slain, and their wails filled the air with anguish.

18. The next day, they went into battle again, and it was a day of great terror; however, they still didn't win, and when night came, their cries of mourning filled the air once more.

19. Coriantumr wrote another letter to Shiz, asking him not to battle again but to take the kingdom and spare the peoples lives.

20. However, the Spirit of the Lord stopped guiding them, and Satan had fully taken control of the people's hearts; they had become hard-hearted and blind-minded, which led them to destruction; thus, they went into battle once more.

21. They fought that entire day, and when night came, they rested on their swords.

22. The next day, they continued fighting until night came.

23. When night arrived, they were filled with rage, like someone intoxicated with wine; they again rested on their swords.

24. The following day, they fought again, and by night, everyone except for fifty-two of Coriantumr's men and sixty-nine of Shiz's had been killed.

25. That night they rested on their swords, then fought again the next day, using all their might with swords and shields throughout the day.

26. When night came, there were thirty-two from Shiz's side and twenty-seven from Coriantumr's left.

27. They ate, slept, and prepared for death the next day. They were mighty men in strength.

28. They fought for three hours and then swooned from blood loss.

29. When Coriantumr's men regained enough strength to move, they were about to flee for their lives; but Shiz rose up with his men, vowing in his rage that he would kill Coriantumr or die trying.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

30. So he chased them down, and the next day, they fought again. In the end, all had fallen except Coriantumr and Shiz, and Shiz fainted from blood loss.

31. When Coriantumr leaned on his sword to rest briefly, he struck Shiz's head off.

32. After that, Shiz tried to rise but fell; after struggling for breath, he died.

33. Coriantumr fell to the ground, as if he had no life left.

34. The Lord spoke to Ether, instructing him to go forth. Ether did so and saw that everything the Lord had said had come true; he finished his record (and I have not written a hundredth part) and hid them in a way that Limhi's people found them.

35. Now Ethers last words are these: Whether the Lord wishes me to be taken up to heaven, or to endure what He wills in the flesh, it does not matter, as long as I am saved in God's kingdom. Amen.

## **Moroni**

### **Moroni Chapter 1**

1. I, Moroni, after finishing the summary of the story of the people of Jared, thought I wouldnt write anything more, but since Im still alive, Im not telling the Lamanites who I am because they might kill me.

2. Look, their battles are really intense among themselves, and because they hate us, they execute every Nephite who refuses to reject Christ.

3. And I, Moroni, refuse to reject Christ, so I do whatever I can to stay safe and protect my life.

4. Therefore, I am writing a few more things, even though I initially thought I wouldnt write again; Im doing this hoping it might be helpful to my relatives, the Lamanites, in the future, based on what the Lord wants.

### **Moroni Chapter 2**

1. Jesus empowered the twelve Nephite disciples to give others the gift of the Holy Spirit. This happened around A.D. 40121.

2. These are the words of Christ that he spoke to his chosen twelve disciples as he placed his hands on them

3. He called them by name, saying: You should pray to the Father in my name with great faith; and after you

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

do this, you will have the power to give the Holy Spirit to anyone upon whom you lay your hands. You will give it in my name, just like my apostles do.

4. At the time of his first appearance, Christ spoke these words to them; the crowd did not hear, but the disciples did, and the Holy Spirit came upon everyone they laid their hands on.

### **Moroni Chapter 3**

1. Elders appoint priests and teachers by placing their hands on them. This occurred around A.D. 40121.
2. This is how the disciples, known as the elders of the church, appointed priests and teachers
3. Once they had prayed to the Father in Jesus Christ's name, they placed their hands on them and declared:
4. "In the name of Jesus Christ, I appoint you to be a priest (or if you are a teacher, I appoint you to be a teacher) to share the message of repentance and forgiveness of sins through Jesus Christ, with faith in His name until the end. Amen."
5. In this way, they appointed priests and teachers, based on the gifts and callings that God gives to people; they appointed them through the power of the Holy Ghost that was present in them.

### **Moroni Chapter 4**

1. This chapter explains how elders and priests serve the sacramental bread. About A.D. 40121.
2. The way the elders and priests serve the body and blood of Christ to the church is described, and they did it following Christ's instructions; therefore, we know their method is correct; and the elder or priest served it
3. They knelt down with the congregation and prayed to the Father in the name of Christ, saying:
4. O God, our Eternal Father, we ask you in the name of your Son, Jesus Christ, to bless and make this bread holy for all who partake of it; that they may eat in remembrance of the body of your Son, and witness to you, O God, our Eternal Father, that they are willing to take upon themselves the name of your Son, always remember him, and follow the commandments he has given them, so they may always have his Spirit with them. Amen.

### **Moroni Chapter 5**

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

1. The way to serve the sacramental wine is described. About A.D. 40121.
2. How to serve the wineLook, they took the cup and said:
3. O God, our Eternal Father, we ask You, in the name of Your Son, Jesus Christ, to bless and make this wine holy for everyone who drinks it, so they may remember the blood of Your Son that was given for them; that they may testify to You, O God, the Eternal Father, that they always remember Him, so that they can have His Spirit with them. Amen.

### **Moroni Chapter 6**

1. I want to discuss baptism. Look, elders, priests, and teachers were baptized, but they were only baptized if they demonstrated good deeds that showed they were worthy.
2. They were not accepted for baptism unless they approached with a humble and remorseful heart, and testified to the church that they truly repented for all their wrongdoings.
3. No one was accepted for baptism unless they took upon themselves the name of Christ, showing a commitment to serve Him for the rest of their lives.
4. After they were baptized and received the cleansing power of the Holy Spirit, they were recognized as part of the church of Christ; their names were recorded so they could be remembered and guided by the teachings of God, helping them stay on the right path and remain vigilant in prayer, relying solely on the grace of Christ, who is the source and end of their faith.
5. The church met frequently to fast, pray, and discuss the well-being of their souls.
6. They gathered often to share bread and wine as a reminder of the Lord Jesus.
7. They were careful to ensure that no wrongdoing took place among them; if someone was found guilty of wrongdoing, and three witnesses from the church condemned them before the elders, and if they did not repent or confess, their names were removed, and they were no longer counted among the people of Christ.
8. Whenever they repented and sought forgiveness sincerely, they were forgiven.
9. Their meetings were led by the church following the guidance of the Spirit and the power of the Holy Ghost; as the Holy Ghost directed them on whether to preach, encourage, pray, plead, or sing, they acted

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

accordingly.

### **Moroni Chapter 7**

1. An invitation is extended to find peace in the Lord  
Pray sincerely  
The Spirit of Christ helps people distinguish between good and evil  
Satan tries to lead people away from Christ and toward wrongdoing  
Prophets testify about Christ's arrival  
Through faith, miracles happen and angels serve  
People should aspire for eternal life and embrace love.

2. Now, I, Moroni, will share some teachings of my father Mormon, who spoke about faith, hope, and love while instructing the people in the place of worship they had built.

3. At this moment, I, Mormon, speak to you, my dear brothers; I am able to address you now due to the grace of God the Father and our Lord Jesus Christ, which is part of His divine plan for me.

4. So, I want to talk to you who are members of the church, peaceful followers of Christ, who have hope strong enough to find rest in the Lord from now until you rest with Him in heaven.

5. I come to this conclusion about you based on how peacefully you interact with others.

6. I remember the words of God that say you can recognize people by what they do; if their actions are good, then they are good too.

7. Because, truly, God has said an evil person cannot do good things; if they give a gift or pray to God, its worthless unless its done sincerely.

8. For, truly, it won't count as righteousness for them.

9. If an evil person gives a gift, they do so with reluctance, so its as if they never gave it; thus, they are seen as evil in Gods eyes.

10. The same goes for praying without sincere intent; it brings no benefit because God does not accept such prayers.

11. So, an evil person cannot do good things; they won't offer good gifts, either.

12. One cannot bring forth good from a bad source; likewise, someone who serves the devil cannot follow Christ, and if they do follow Christ, they cannot be a servant of the devil.



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

13. All good things come from God, while evil comes from the devil, who is against God and constantly fights Him, tempting and encouraging people to sin and do bad things.

14. However, everything from God invites and encourages doing good constantly; therefore, anything that urges you to do good, love God, and serve Him is inspired by God.

15. So, be careful, my dear brothers, that you do not mistake evil for good or misjudge what is good as something from the devil.

16. For, my brothers, you have the ability to tell good from evil; and the way to judge it is clear, like daylight is from the darkest night.

17. Every person receives the Spirit of Christ to discern good from evil; that's how I show you how to judge everything that invites you to do good and believe in Christ is sent by His power and gift, allowing you to know for sure it is from God.

18. But anything that encourages doing evil and denies Christ and does not serve God is definitely from the devil; that's how the devil workshe never leads anyone to do good, not even one person; neither do his angels, nor those who follow him.

19. Now, my brothers, since you recognize the light that allows you to judge, which is the light of Christ, make sure you don't judge incorrectly; because with the same judgment you use, you will also be judged.

20. So, I ask you, brothers, to search diligently with the light of Christ to identify good from evil; and if you embrace every good thing without dismissing it, you will indeed be a child of Christ.

21. And now, my brothers, how can you grasp every good thing?

22. I now address that faith I mentioned; I will explain how you can seize every good thing.

23. God, who knows everything and has existed forever, sent angels to guide humanity, revealing the coming of Christ; and in Christ, every good thing will be realized.

24. God has also spoken directly to prophets, declaring that Christ would come.

25. He revealed many ways to teach humanity about good things, and all goodness comes from Christ; otherwise, people would have fallen and received no good.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

26. Through the sending of angels and every word from God, people began to believe in Christ; in this way, through faith, they laid hold on every good thing until Christ arrived.

27. After His arrival, people were also saved by faith in His name; they became children of God through faith. And as surely as Christ lives, He told our ancestors: Whatever you ask the Father in my name, believing you will receive, it shall be granted to you.

28. So, my beloved brothers, have miracles stopped because Christ has ascended to heaven and sits at Gods right hand, claiming His rights of mercy for humanity?

29. For He has fulfilled the laws requirements, claiming all who have faith in Him; those with faith will hold fast to every good thing; thus, He advocates for humanity, and He eternally resides in the heavens.

30. And because of this, my beloved brothers, have miracles ceased? I tell you, no; angels still minister to humanity.

31. For, behold, they follow His commands, appearing to those with strong faith and a sincere heart in every form of goodness.

32. Their role is to call people to repentance and fulfill the covenants God made with humanity, preparing the way among people by proclaiming Christs word to His chosen vessels so they can testify of Him.

33. In this way, God prepares for the rest of humanity to have faith in Christ so the Holy Ghost may enter their hearts, thus fulfilling the Fathers promises to humanity.

34. And Christ has said: If you have faith in me, you will have the power to achieve whatever is right in my name.

35. He also says: Repent, all ends of the earth, and come to me, and be baptized in my name, and have faith in me so you can be saved.

36. And now, my beloved brothers, if these things I speak are true, God will show you in power and glory on the last day that they are true; and if they are true, do miracles still happen?

37. Or have angels stopped appearing to people? Or has He kept the power of the Holy Ghost from them? Or will He withhold it as long as the earth stands or until someone is saved?

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

38. I say to you, no; because miracles are performed through faith, and angels appear and serve through faith; so, if these things have stopped, woe to humanity, for it is due to unbelief, and everything is meaningless.

39. No one can be saved unless they have faith in His name, according to Christs words; therefore, if these things have ceased, then faith has ceased too; and how terrible is humanitys condition, as if redemption never existed.

40. But I say, my beloved brothers, I see better things in you; I believe you have faith in Christ because of your humility; if you did not have faith, you wouldn't belong among His church.

41. Moreover, my dear brothers, I want to discuss hope. How can you achieve faith if you lack hope?

42. And what should you hope for? I tell you that you can have hope through Christ's Atonement and the power of His resurrection, for eternal life, based on your faith in Him through His promise.

43. So, if a person has faith, they must have hope because without faith, hope cannot exist.

44. Furthermore, I say to you that one cannot have faith and hope unless they are humble and gentle in spirit.

45. If that is not the case, their faith and hope are meaningless, for God only accepts the humble and gentle; and if someone is humble and recognizes through the Holy Ghost that Jesus is the Christ, they must also have love; for without love, they are nothing; they must have love.

46. Love is patient, kind, does not envy, is not proud, does not seek its own interests, is not easily angered, does not hold onto wrongs, and rejoices in the truth, bearing all things, believing all things, hoping all things, enduring all things.

47. Therefore, my beloved brothers, if you do not have love, you are nothing; love never fails. So, hold tight to love, which is the greatest of all things, for everything else must eventually fail

48. But love is the pure love of Christ, and it lasts forever; whoever possesses it on the last day will be in a good place.

49. So, my beloved brothers, pray to the Father with all your heart's energy that you may be filled with this love, which He gives to everyone who truly follows His Son, Jesus Christ; that you may become Gods children; that when He appears, we will be like Him, for we will see Him as He is; so we may have this hope;

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

so we may be purified just as He is pure. Amen.

### **Moroni Chapter 8**

1. The practice of baptizing little children is utterly wrongLittle children are innocent and safe in Christ because of his AtonementHaving faith, repenting, being humble, receiving the Holy Ghost, and persevering in faith will lead to salvation. Around A.D. 40121.
2. This is a letter from my father Mormon, addressed to me, Moroni, and it was written soon after I began my ministry. He wrote to me like this:
3. My dear son, Moroni, I am incredibly glad that the Lord Jesus Christ has thought of you and has called you to serve in his ministry and his sacred work.
4. I always remember you in my prayers, constantly praying to God the Father, in the name of his Holy Child, Jesus, that, because of his amazing goodness and grace, he will help you stay strong in faith until the end.
5. Now, my son, I want to talk to you about something that greatly troubles me; it hurts me that there are arguments among you.
6. Because, if I have understood correctly, there have been disagreements among you about whether you should baptize your little children.
7. So, my son, I urge you to work hard to correct this serious mistake; I have written this letter for that purpose.
8. As soon as I learned about these things from you, I asked the Lord about the matter. The Lord answered me through the Holy Ghost, saying:
9. Listen to the words of Christ, your Redeemer, your Lord, and God. I came into the world not to call the righteous but sinners to repent; those who are well do not need a doctor, but those who are sick; so, little children are innocent, and they do not sin; thus, they are free from the curse of Adam through me, and the law of circumcision is no longer needed because of me.
10. This is how the Holy Ghost revealed God's word to me; therefore, my beloved son, I know that it is a grave insult to God that you should baptize little children.

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

11. I say to you that this is what you should teach repentance and baptism for those who are accountable and capable of sin; yes, teach parents that they must repent and be baptized, and become humble like their little children, and then they will all be saved along with their little children.

12. And little children do not need to repent or be baptized. Remember, baptism is for those who are repenting and fulfilling commandments for forgiveness of sins.

13. But little children are alive in Christ, even from the very beginning; if not, God would be unfair, changeable, and show favoritism; for how many little children have died without baptism!

14. Therefore, if little children could not be saved without baptism, they would have gone to an everlasting hell.

15. I say to you that anyone who thinks little children need baptism is deeply mistaken and is in a state of sin; they lack faith, hope, and charity; if they die while holding such beliefs, they will face hell.

16. It is incredibly wrong to believe that God saves one child because they are baptized, while another must suffer because they are not.

17. Woe to those who distort the ways of the Lord in this manner; they will perish unless they repent. I speak boldly under authority from God; I am not afraid of what people can do, for perfect love drives away all fear.

18. I am filled with charity, which is everlasting love; hence, all children are the same to me; therefore, I love little children perfectly, and they all share in salvation.

19. For I know that God is not unfair; he does not change; he is constant from eternity to eternity.

20. Little children cannot repent; thus, it is terribly wrong to deny the pure mercies of God to them, as they are all alive in him due to his mercy.

21. Anyone who claims that little children need baptism denies Christ's mercies and disregards his atonement and the power of his redemption.

22. Woe to them, for they risk death, hell, and endless torment. I speak this confidently; God has instructed me. Listen to them and pay attention, or you will stand against them when judged by Christ.

23. For all little children are alive in Christ, and so are all those who live without the law. The power of

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

redemption is available to all who are not bound by the law; therefore, those who aren't condemned cannot repent; and for them, baptism means nothing

24. Instead, it's mockery before God, denying Christ's mercies, the power of his Holy Spirit, and relying on meaningless actions.

25. Behold, my son, this should not be; for repentance is for those under condemnation and the consequences of breaking the law.

26. The first step of repentance is baptism; baptism comes through faith to fulfill commandments; fulfilling commandments brings forgiveness of sins;

27. And forgiveness of sins brings humility and a lowly heart; because of humility and a lowly heart comes the outpouring of the Holy Ghost, the Comforter who fills us with hope and perfect love, and that love continues with diligence in prayer until the end comes, when all the faithful will live with God.

28. My son, I will write to you again if I do not have to confront the Lamanites soon. The pride of our people, the Nephites, has led them toward destruction unless they repent.

29. Pray for them, my son, that they may find repentance. But I fear that the Spirit has stopped urging them; in this part of the land, they are also trying to eliminate all power and authority from God; they are rejecting the Holy Ghost.

30. After rejecting such great knowledge, my son, they will soon face destruction, fulfilling the prophecies spoken by the prophets and the words of our Savior himself.

31. Farewell, my son, until I write to you again or meet you once more. Amen.

## **Moroni Chapter 9**

1. The second letter from Mormon to his son Moroni.

2. This chapter covers various sad events.

3. Both the Nephites and the Lamanites have become morally corrupt. They harm and kill each other. Mormon hopes that mercy and goodness will always be with Moroni. Around A.D. 401.

4. My dear son, I am writing to you again to let you know that I am still alive, though I must talk about some

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

very painful things.

5. I have faced a terrible battle with the Lamanites, and we did not win; Archeantus has been killed, along with Luram and Emron; indeed, we have lost many of our best men.

6. Now I worry, my son, that the Lamanites will wipe out our people because they refuse to change, and evil keeps stoking their anger towards one another.

7. I am working hard to help them, but when I speak God's word strongly, they become furious with me; and when I speak gently, they harden their hearts against it; so I fear that the Lords Spirit is no longer trying to reach them.

8. They are so filled with anger that it seems they dont fear death anymore; they have lost their love for each other, and they constantly crave blood and revenge.

9. Now, my dear son, despite their stubbornness, we must work hard; for if we stop working, we will face punishment; we have a task to do while we are in this mortal body, so we can defeat the enemy of all righteousness and find peace in Gods kingdom.

10. Now I want to mention a bit about how much this people is suffering. From what I learned from Amoron, the Lamanites have taken many prisoners from the tower of Sherrizah, including men, women, and children.

11. They have killed the husbands and fathers of those women and children; they feed the women the flesh of their husbands and the children the flesh of their fathers; they provide them with only a small amount of water.

12. Despite the horrific acts of the Lamanites, what our people in Moriantum have done is just as bad. Many Lamanite daughters have been taken as captives; after taking away what is most precious to them their purity and virtue

13. They too have been brutally murdered, tortured to death; and after that, their bodies are eaten like those of wild animals, hardened by their hearts; they do this to show their bravery.

14. Oh, my beloved son, how can a people like this, who are so uncivilized

15. (And just a few years ago, they were a civilized and joyful people)

16. But oh my son, how can a people like this, who relish in such wickedness

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

17. How can we think that God will not judge us?

18. Look, my heart cries out: Woe to this people. Come forth in your judgment, O God, and hide their sins and evil actions from your sight!

19. And again, my son, many widows and their daughters are left in Sherrizah; whatever supplies the Lamanites didnt take, the army of Zenephi has taken, leaving them to wander wherever they can find food; many old women have collapsed and died along the way.

20. The army with me is weak; the Lamanite armies are positioned between Sherrizah and me; and many who fled to Aaron's army fell victim to their horrible cruelty.

21. Oh, the depravity of my people! They are chaotic and merciless. Look, I am just a man, and I have only human strength, and I cant enforce my orders anymore.

22. They are growing strong in their corruption; they are equally ruthless, sparing neither old nor young; they find pleasure in everything except what is good; the suffering of our women and children across this land is beyond words; it cannot be fully expressed.

23. Now, my son, I wont dwell on this terrible scene any longer. You know how wicked these people are; you know they have no principles and are past feeling; their evil exceeds that of the Lamanites.

24. Look, my son, I cannot recommend them to God, or I would be struck down.

25. But, my son, I recommend you to God, and I have faith in Christ that you will be saved; I pray to God that He will spare your life so you can see either the return of His people to Him or their complete destruction; I know they will perish unless they repent and come back to Him.

26. If they perish, it will be just like the Jaredites did, because of their stubborn hearts, seeking blood and revenge.

27. If they do perish, we know many of our brothers have gone over to the Lamanites, and many more will follow; so please write down some things, in case I dont live to see you again; but I hope to see you soon, because I have sacred records I want to give you.

28. My son, stay faithful in Christ; and may the things I have written not distress you or weigh you down to



## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

despair; but may Christ lift you up, and may His suffering and death, and the appearance of His body to our ancestors, along with His mercy, patience, and the hope of His glory and eternal life, remain in your thoughts forever.

29. And may the grace of God the Father, who reigns high in the heavens, and our Lord Jesus Christ, who sits in power at His side until all things are subject to Him, be with you and stay with you always. Amen.

### **Moroni Chapter 10**

1. A testimony of the Book of Mormon is given through the Holy GhostThe gifts of the Spirit are given to those who are faithfulSpiritual gifts always come with faithMoronis words will be heard even from the graveCome to Christ, be perfected in Him, and purify your souls. About A.D. 421.

2. I, Moroni, am writing what I believe is important; Im addressing my brothers, the Lamanites; I want them to understand that over four hundred and twenty years have passed since the sign of Christs coming was given.

3. I am sealing these records after sharing some encouraging words with you.

4. Please remember, as you read these words, if its Gods will that you should read them, to think about how merciful the Lord has been to humankind, from the time of Adam until now, and reflect on this in your hearts.

5. When you receive these teachings, I encourage you to ask God, the Eternal Father, in the name of Christ, whether they are true; if you ask sincerely and with real intent, having faith in Christ, He will reveal the truth to you through the Holy Ghost.

6. Through the Holy Ghost, you can discover the truth of everything.

7. Anything that is good is just and true; therefore, nothing good denies Christ, but rather acknowledges Him.

8. You can come to know Him through the power of the Holy Ghost; so I urge you not to reject Gods power because He acts according to the faith of His children, now and always.

9. Again, I urge you, my brothers, not to reject God's gifts, for there are many, all given by the same God. These gifts are shared in various ways, but it is the same God who works in all; they are provided by the Spirit of God for the benefit of everyone.

10. To one person, the Spirit of God gives the ability to teach wisdom;

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

11. To another, the ability to teach knowledge through that same Spirit;
12. To another, great faith; and to another, the ability to heal through that Spirit;
13. To another, the power to perform great miracles;
14. To another, the ability to prophesy about all things;
15. To another, the ability to see angels and ministering spirits;
16. To another, the ability to speak in different languages;
17. And to another, the ability to interpret languages and understand various tongues.
18. All these gifts come through the Spirit of Christ; and each person receives what they are allowed.
19. I urge you, my cherished brothers, to remember that every good gift comes from Christ.
20. I also urge you, my beloved brothers, to remember that He is unchanging yesterday, today, and forever and that all these spiritual gifts I spoke of will never cease as long as the world exists, except due to the disbelief of mankind.
21. For that reason, faith is essential; and where there is faith, there must also be hope; and if there is hope, there will be charity.
22. If you do not have charity, you cannot be saved in Gods kingdom; you cannot be saved there without faith, and likewise without hope.
23. If you lack hope, you must be in despair; and despair arises from wrongdoing.
24. Christ truly told our ancestors: If you have faith, you can accomplish all things that are necessary for me.
25. Now I address everyone across the earth that if the day comes when Gods power and gifts are no longer among you, it will be due to disbelief.
26. Woe unto humanity if that happens; for there will be no one doing good among you, not a single person. Because if even one person among you does good, they will be able to do so through Gods power and gifts.
27. Woe to those who turn away from these things and then die, for they perish in their sins and cannot be saved in Gods kingdom; I declare this based on Christ's teachings, and I am not lying.
28. I urge you to remember these things; a time is coming swiftly when you will see that I am telling the truth,

## **The Book of Mormon - simplified**

for you will stand before God, and He will ask you: Did I not declare my messages to you, as if crying from the grave, yes, as if speaking from the dust?

29. I state these things to fulfill the prophecies. And behold, they will come from the mouth of the everlasting God; His words will be passed down from generation to generation.

30. God will show you that what I have written is true.

31. Again, I urge you to come to Christ, embrace every good gift, and avoid evil and unclean things.

32. Wake up, rise from the dust, O Jerusalem; put on your beautiful garments, O daughter of Zion; strengthen your foundations and expand your borders forever, so you will no longer be confused, and so the everlasting covenants made with you, O house of Israel, might be fulfilled.

33. Yes, come to Christ, be perfected in Him, and turn away from all ungodliness; if you turn from all ungodliness and love God with all your might, mind, and strength, then His grace will be enough for you, and through His grace, you may be perfect in Christ; if you are perfect in Christ through Gods grace, you cannot deny Gods power.

34. And again, if you are perfect in Christ through Gods grace and do not deny His power, you will be made holy in Christ by Gods grace, through the blood of Christ, as part of the Fathers covenant for the forgiveness of your sins, so that you become pure, without blemish.

35. Now I say goodbye to all. I will soon rest in Gods paradise until my spirit and body reunite, and I am brought forth in triumph through the air to meet you before the kind judgment of the great Jehovah, the Eternal Judge of both the living and the dead. Amen.

36. The End